User Manual

APM32F411xCxE

Arm® Cortex®-M4F core-based 32-bit MCU

Version: V 1.5

Contents

1 Introduction and document description rules

1.1 Introduction

This user manual provides application developers with all the information about how to use MCU (micro-controller unit) system architecture, memory and peripherals.

For information about Arm® Cortex®-M4F core, please refer to Arm® Cortex®-M4F T*echnical Reference Manual*; for detailed data such as model information, dimensions and electrical characteristics of the device, please refer to the corresponding datasheet; for the memory mapping, peripheral existence and the number of all MCU series models, please refer to the corresponding datasheet.

Note that: Zhuhai Geehy Semiconductor Co., Ltd. is hereinafter referred to as "Geehy".

1.2 Document description rules

1.2.1 "Register functional description" rules

(1) Control (CTRL) registers are all "set to 1 and cleared to 0 by software", unless otherwise specified.

(2) The control registers are usually followed by verb abbreviations to make a distinction. The verbs can be: EN-Enable, CFG-Configure, D-Disable, SET-Setup and SEL-Select

(3) The status register abbreviation is usually followed by FLG to make a difference.

(4) The value and data registers usually include V, VALUE, D and DATA, which are not followed by verbs, such as: xxPSC and CNT.

1.2.2 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Table 1 Abbreviation and Description of R/W Modes

R/W mode	Description	Abbreviations
read/write	The software can read and write this bit.	R/W
read-only	The software can only read this bit.	R
write-only	Software can only write this bit, and after reading this bit, the reset value will be returned.	W
read/clear	The software can read this bit and clear it by writing 1. Writing 0 has no effect on this bit.	RC_W1
read/clear	The software can read this bit and clear it by writing 0. Writing 1 has no effect on this bit.	RC_W0

R/W mode	Description	Abbreviations
read/clear by read	The software can read this bit and reading this bit will automatically clear it to 0, and writing this bit is invalid.	RC_R
read/set	The software can read and set this bit, and writing 0 has no effect on this bit.	R/S
read-only write trigger	The software can read this bit and writing 0 or 1 can trigger an event but has no effect on the value of this bit.	RT_W
toggle	The software can flip this bit only by writing 1, and writing 0 has no effect on this bit.	T

Table 2 Functional Description and Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms of Commonly Used Registers

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Enable	EN
Disable	D
Clear	CLR
Select	SEL
Configure	CFG
Contrl	CTRL
Controller	C
Reset	RST
Stop	STOP
Set	SET
Load	LD
Calibration	CAL
Initialize	INIT
Error	ERR
Status	STS
Ready	RDY
Software	SW
Hardware	HW
Source	SRC
System	SYS
Peripheral	PER
Address	ADDR
Direction	DIR

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Clock	CLK
Input	I
Output	O
Interrupt	INT
Data	DATA
Size	SIZE
Divider	DIV
Prescaler	PSC
Multiplier	MUL
Period	PRD

Table 3 Full Name and Abbreviation of Modules

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Static Memory Controller	SMC
Reset and Clock Management Unit	RCM
Power Management Unit	PMU
Nested Vector Interrupt Controller	NVIC
External Interrupt /Event Controller	EINT
Direct Memory Access	DMA
Debug MCU	DBG MCU
General-Purpose Input Output Pin	GPIO
Alternate Function Input Output Pin	AFIO
Timer	TMR
Watchdog Timer	WDT
Independent Watchdog Timer	IWDT
Windows Watchdog Timer	WWDT
Real-Time Clock	RTC
Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter	USART
Inter-Integrated Circuit Interface	I2C
Serial Peripheral Interface	SPI
Inter-IC Sound Interface	I2S
Quad Serial Peripheral Interface	QSPI

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Controller Area Network	CAN
Secure Digital Input and Output	SDIO
Universal Serial Bus Full-Speed Device	USB
Analog-to-Digital Converter	ADC
Comparator	COMP
Cyclic Redundancy Check Calculation Unit	CRC
Float Point Unit	FPU

2 System architecture

2.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 4 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Advanced High-Performance Bus	AHB
Advanced Peripheral Bus	APB

2.2 System architecture block diagram

Arm® Cortex®-M4F core of the product includes FPU. The system mainly consists of six master modules and five slave modules.

The master modules are respectively I-bus, D-bus and S-bus of Arm® Cortex®-M4 core with FPU, as well as general-purpose DMA1, general-purpose DMA2, and DMA2 peripheral bus.

The slave modules are respectively I-bus and D-bus of internal Flash, main internal memory SRAM, all peripherals connected to AHB1 bus and AHB1/APB bridge, and peripherals on AHB2 bus.

The bus matrix provides a platform to support the master module to access the slave module. The matrix can realize concurrent access, and the CPU still has efficient processing capacity when multiple peripherals are running at high speed.

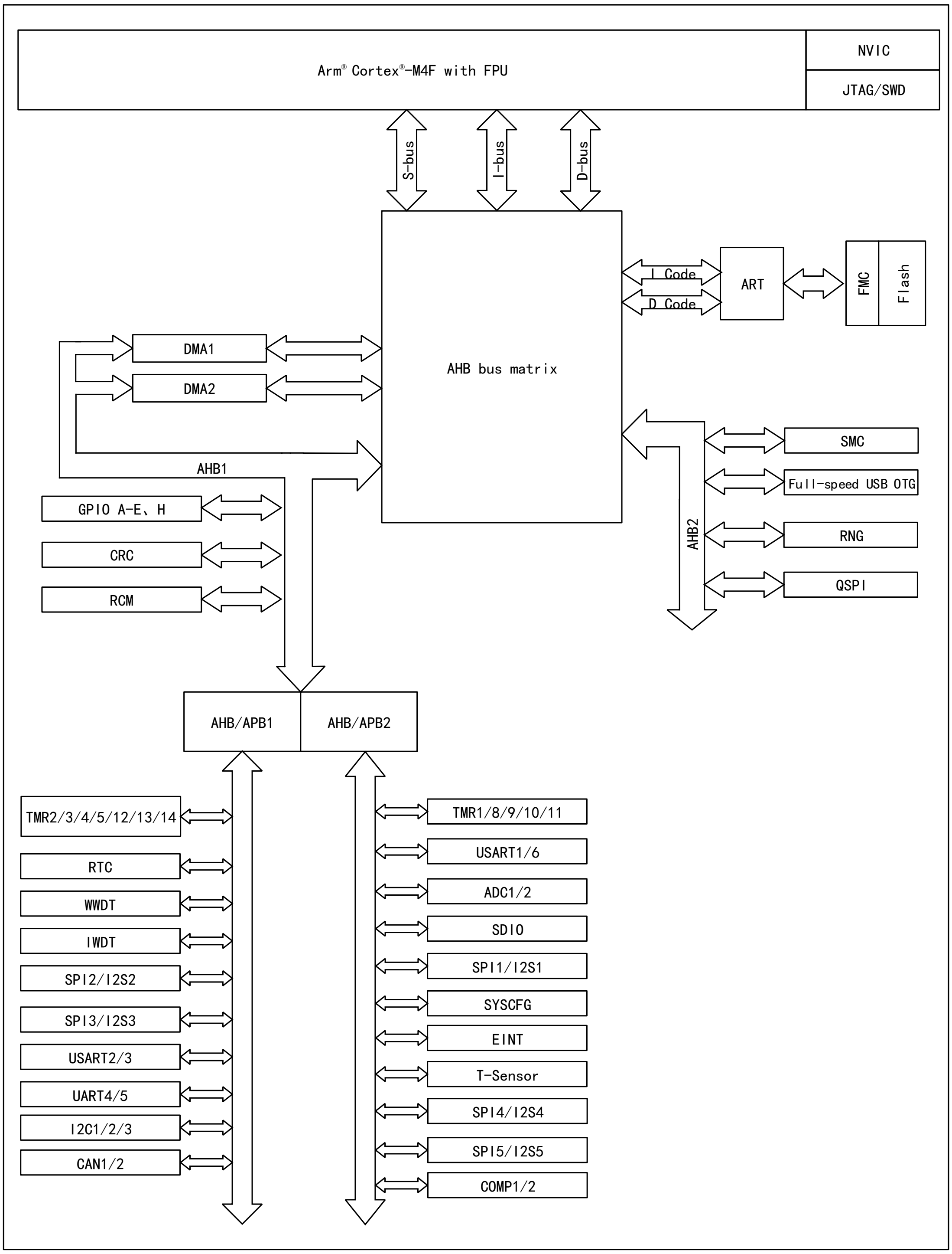
The name and description of the bus are shown in the following table.

Table 5 Bus Name

Name	Description
I-bus	Connect the instruction bus of Arm® Cortex®-M4F core and the bus matrix. Used for obtaining instructions.
D-bus	Connect the data bus of Arm® Cortex®-M4F core and the bus matrix. Used for text loading and debugging access.
S-bus	Connect the system bus (peripheral bus) of Arm® Cortex®-M4F core and the bus matrix. Used for accessing the data in peripherals and SRAM.
DMA memory bus	Connect the main interface of DMA memory and the bus matrix. Realize transmission related to the memory through DMA.
DMA peripheral bus	Connect the main interface of DMA peripherals and the bus matrix. It can not only realize access of DMA to the peripherals on AHB, but also realize transmission among memories.

Name	Description
Bus matrix	Coordinate the access among modules, and roll polling algorithm is used during arbitration.
AHB/APB bridge	The bridge provides synchronous connection between AHB and APB buses. The non-32-bit access to APB register will be converted into 32 bits automatically.

Figure 1 APM32F411xCxE System Architecture Block Diagram



Note: For the information of products of each model, please see the datasheet.

2.3 Memory mapping

The assigned addresses of memory mapping include the core (including core peripherals), on-chip Flash (including main memory area, system memory area and option bytes), on-chip SRAM, and bus peripherals (including AHB and APB peripherals). Please refer to the data manual of the corresponding model for specific information of various addresses.

2.3.1 Embedded SRAM

Built-in static SRAM. It allows access by byte, half word (16 bits) or full word (32 bits). The start address of SRAM is 0x2000 0000.

2.3.2 Bit band

Arm® Cortex®-M4F memory is mapped with two bit-band areas, and it maps each word in the alias memory area to one bit in the bit-band memory. Write a word to the alias memory and there will be the same effect as the read-change-write operation on the target of the bit-band area. Both peripheral register and SRAM are mapped into one bit band area, and it is allowed to perform single bit-band write and read operations.

A mapping formula is given below:

$$\text{bit\_word\_addr} = \text{bit\_band\_base} + (\text{byte\_offset} \times 32) + (\text{bit\_number} \times 4)$$

2.4 Startup configuration

APM32F411xCxE series MCU realizes a special mechanism. By configuring the BOOT[1:0] pin, three different startup modes can be used, and the system can not only start from Flash memory or system memory, but also start from the built-in SRAM. The memory selected as the start zone is determined by the selected startup mode.

Table 6 Startup Mode Configuration and Access Mode

Startup mode configuration		**Startup mode**	**Access methods**
BOOT1 pin	BOOT0 pin		
X	0	Main flash memory（Flash）	The main flash memory is mapped to the boot space, but it can still be accessed at its original address, that is, the contents of the flash memory can be accessed in two address areas.
0	1	System memory	The system memory is mapped to the boot space (0x0000 0000), but it can still be accessed at its original address.

Startup mode configuration		Startup mode	Access methods
BOOT1 pin	BOOT0 pin		
1	1	Built-in SRAM	SRAM can be accessed only at the starting address.

Note:

(1) The boot space address is 0x0000 0000

(2) The original address of Flash is 0x0800 0000

(3) The original address of the system memory is 0x1FFF 0000

(4) The start address of SRAM is 0x2000 0000

(5) The user can select the startup mode after reset by setting the state of BOOT[1:0] pin.

(6) BOOT pin should keep the startup configuration required by user in standby mode. When exiting the standby mode, the value of boot pin will be latched.

(7) If you choose to start from built-in SRAM, you must use NVIC's exception table and offset register to remap the vector table to SRAM when writing the application code.

Physical remapping

After BOOT pin is selected, MMSEL bit of SYSCFG_MMSEL register can be modified through software program to configure some register to allow access from I-Code bus. See SYSCFG register for specific configuration.

Embedded BootLoader

In embedded BootLoader mode, users can choose to reprogram Flash through any of the following serial interfaces:

- USART1(PA9/PA10)
- USART2(PD5/PD6)
- I2C1(PB6/PB7)
- SPI1(PA4/PA5/PA6/PA7)
- SPI2(PB12/PB13/PB14/PB15)
- USB OTG_FS slave mode(PA11/PA12)

Note: The external pull-down resistor of BOOTO is essential. It can affect the edge of the pull-down level in application and may also have an impact on system startup.

3 Flash memory

3.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 7 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Flash Memory Controller	FMC
One-time Programmable	OTP
Flash Accelerator	FACC

3.2 Introduction

This chapter mainly introduces the storage structure, read, erase, write, read/write protection, unlock/lock characteristics of Flash, and the involved register functional description.

3.3 Main characteristics

(1) Flash memory structure

- Contain main memory area and information block
- The capacity of main memory area is up to 512KB
- The information block is divided into three areas, i.e. system memory, OTP area and option byte
- The capacity of the system memory area is 30KB. It is used for storing BootLoader program, 96-bit unique UID, and main memory area capacity information
- The OTP area is 528 Bytes, 512 OTP bytes are used for storing user data, and the remaining 16 bytes are used for locking the corresponding OTP data block
- The capacity of the option byte area is 16 Bytes

(2) Functional Description

- Operate the Flash:
  - Read
  - Sector/Erase all
  - Write
  - Read/Write protection
- Perform operation on the option byte:
  - Read
  - Erase
  - Write
  - Read/Write protection

3.4 Flash memory structure

Table 8 Flash Memory Structure

Block	Name	Address range	Size (bytes)	Sector
Main memory block		0x0800 0000–0x0800 3FFF	16K	Sector 0
		0x0800 4000–0x0800 7FFF	16K	Sector 1
		0x0800 8000–0x0800 BFFF	16K	Sector 2
		0x0800 C000–0x0800 FFFF	16K	Sector 3
		0x0801 0000 – 0x0801 FFFF	64K	Sector 4
		0x0802 0000 – 0x0803 FFFF	128K	Sector 5
		0x0804 0000 – 0x0805 FFFF	128K	Sector 6
		0x0806 0000–0x0807 FFFF	128K	Sector 7
Information block	System storage	0x1FFF 0000–0x1FFF 77FF	30K	-
	OTP area	0x1FFF 7800–0x1FFF 7A0F	528	-
	Option byte	0x1FFF C000–0x1FFF C00F	16	-

Note: The number of sectors included in the main memory block of APM32F411xCxE series products is related to the specific Flash capacity; see the Datasheet for the Flash capacity of different models.

3.5 Functional description

3.5.1 Read Flash

Flash has a prefetch buffer area, and it can be enabled only when the power supply voltage is not lower than 2.1V.

The reading speed of Flash is affected by the number of wait cycles, and the number of wait cycles is affected by HCLK and power supply voltage. Assuming the wait cycle is n, and the rising base of HCLK range is X

- When (n+1) X is less than the recommended value:
  $nX < HCLK \le (n+1)X$
- When (n-1) X is greater than the recommended value:
  $nX < HCLK \le$ recommended value

Table 9 X Affected by Voltage Range and Recommended Value of HCLK

Voltage range	1.8V-2.1V	2.1V-2.4V	2.4V-2.7V	2.7V-3.6V
X	16MHz	18MHz	24MHz	30MHz
Recommended value	100MHz	100MHz	100MHz	100MHz

Note: When VOSSEL=0x01 for PMU_CTRL register, the recommended value of HCLK is 64MHz; when VOSSEL=0x10, the recommended value of HCLK is 84MHz; when VOSSEL=0x11, the recommended value of HCLK is 100MHz.

CPU frequency can be adjusted by selecting different wait cycles, so as to adjust the reading speed of Flash.

3.5.1.1 Flash accelerator (FACC)

FACC accelerator can improve the execution speed of Flash, so that the Flash can execute programs with fewer wait cycles at high CPU frequency.

Prefetch buffer

When wait cycle needs to be inserted to access Flash, the next instruction line of Flash can be pre-read through I-Code bus, to improve the access rate.

I-cache

I-cache is an instruction buffer memory. The instructions in I-cache can be obtained without delay. The system can store 64 lines of 128-bit instructions in I-cache and the I-cache function can be enabled through the ICACHEEN bit of FMC_ACCTRL register.

D-cache

D-cache is a data buffer memory. The system accesses the data buffer area of Flash through D-Bus to reduce the waiting time. Access of D-bus is prior to I-bus. The system can store 8 lines of 128-bit instructions in D-cache and the D-cache function can be enabled through DCACHEEN bit of FMC_ACCTRL register.

3.5.2 Main memory block

When erasing/writing to the main storage area, Flash can no longer be read.

Number of parallel bits

The number of parallel bits is the number of bytes to be processed when erasing/writing to the Flash, and it is determined by the power supply voltage and the use of external power supply. The number of parallel bits is configured by programming the PGSIZE bit of FMC_CTRL register. The determinant factors and the number of parallel bits are shown in the table below:

Table 10 Relationship between Determinant Factors and Number of Parallel Bits

Voltage range (V)	1.8-2.1	2.1-2.4	2.4-2.7	2.7-3.6	2.7-3.6 (external VPP is used)
Number of parallel bits	8-bit	16-bit		32-bit	64-bit

3.5.2.1 **Erase main memory block**

Flash can support sector erase and mass erase (erase all). Mass erase does not affect OTP sector or configuration sector.

Main memory page erase

Page erase is an independent erase according to the main memory area page selected by the program, which will not have any impact on the page not selected for erasure.

After the correct page erase (or flash write operation) is completed, OPRCMP bit of FMC_STS register will be set. If OPCINTEN interrupt is enabled, an operation completion interrupt will be triggered. Users need to pay attention that the page selected for erase must be a valid page (the valid address of the main memory area and the address not write-protected).

Main memory mass erase

The mass erase operation will erase all the contents in the main storage area of Flash, so the users need to pay special attention during use to avoid the loss of important data caused by misoperation.

Mass erase does not affect OTP sector or configuration sector.

3.5.2.2 **Write main memory block**

Flash supports byte, half-word, word, and double-word write operation, specifically depending on the number of parallel bits.

It should be noted that, to ensure correct writing, it is necessary to check whether the destination address has been erased before writing. Flash unit can be written only when it is erased to 1.

If the destination address has write protection, the written data is invalid and a write protection error will be triggered (WPROTERR bit of FMC_STS register is set to "1").

In FMC_STS register, there are three write error bits, which are PGALGERR (programming alignment error), PGPRLERR (programming parallelism error) and PGSEQERR (programming sequence error).

Programming alignment error

To program more than 128-bit lines of data to the Flash, a programming alignment error will occur, and the PGALGERR bit will be set to 1.

Programming parallelism error

If the width of the write operation is inconsistent with the number of parallel bits, the write operation will be suspended, a programming parallelism error will be generated, and the PGPRLERR bit will be set to 1.

Programming sequence error

The correct programming sequence is:

(1) Confirm the operation currently not performed on the Flash through FMC_STS[BUSY]

(2) Set FMC_CTRL[PG] to 1

(3) Perform write operation

(4) Operation is completed, waiting for BUSY bit to be cleared to zero

If the programming sequence is wrong, a programming sequence error will occur, and the PGSEQERR bit will be set to 1.

3.5.2.3 Lock/unlock

FMC_CTRL[LOCK] can only be set to 1, in order to lock the Flash control register. Then it is impossible to operate the main memory block area (i.e. it is locked).

Write the keywords 0x4567 0123 and 0xCDEF 89AB successively to FMC_KEY register. When the system detects unlocking sequence, LOCK bit of FMC_CTRL register will be cleared to zero, and the Flash control register and main memory block can then be unlocked.

3.5.2.4 Cache

If the write operation of Flash involves some data in D-cache, the data in Flash and D-cache will be modified.

If the erase operation of Flash involves the data in D-cache or I-cache, the data shall be written to the cache before it.

3.5.2.5 Interrupt

An interrupt will occur in any of the following events:

- End of operation: End of erase/write operation
- Write protection error: Perform erase/write operation for the write protection area
- Programming error: An error occurs during erase/write/read

When OPCINTEN bit or ERRINTEN bit in FMC_CTRL register is set to 1 and the corresponding interrupt event occurs, an interrupt will be generated.

3.5.3 Option byte

The address and composition of the option byte are shown in the following table, and the specific meaning description can be seen in the corresponding bit of FMC_OPTCTRL register.

Table 11 Instructions for Option Bytes

Address	Field	Option byte	Functional Description
0x1FFF C000	1:0	-	-
	3:2	BORLVL	Brownout reset level
	4	-	-
	5	WDTSEL	Select the watchdog
	6	RSTSTOP	Reset occurs when entering the stop mode
	7	RSTSTDB	Reset occurs when entering the standby mode
	15:8	RPROT	Read protection
0x1FFF C008	7:0	NWPROT	No write protection
	14:8	-	-
	15	SELRMOD	Select write protection mode

3.5.3.1 **Erase/write option byte**

The option byte must be unlocked before erase/write.

The programming sequence of option byte is:

(1) Confirm the operation currently not performed on the Flash through FMC_STS[BUSY]

(2) Write the programming value to FMC_OPTCTRL

(3) Set FMC_OPTCTRL[OPTSTART] to 1

(4) Operation is completed, waiting for BUSY bit to be cleared to zero

If page erase/write operation is performed on the main memory block Flash immediately after the option byte write operation is completed, the following steps need to be taken after the option byte write operation is completed:

Unlock main memory block Flash
Write data 0x08 to the address 0x40023C30
Lock main memory block Flash

Perform the page erase/write operation on the main memory block Flash after the above three steps are completed.

3.5.3.2 **Lock/unlock**

FMC_OPTCTRL[OPTLOCK] can only be set to 1, so as to lock the option byte area.

Write the keywords 0x0819 2A3B and 0x4C5D 6E7F successively to the FMC_OPTKEY register, and when the system detects unlocking sequence, OPTLOCK bit of FMC_OPTCTRL register will be cleared to zero and the option byte will be unlocked.

3.5.4 Write protection

In order to prevent accidental rewriting of Flash due to program disorder, in default state, the Flash supports write protection function of up to 7 user sectors; when the corresponding bit of the FMC_OPTCTRL[NWPROT] field is at low level, the corresponding sector will be write-protected, and this sector cannot be erased/written.

3.5.4.1 Write protection error

FMC_STS[WPROTERR] is a write protection error bit, and it will be set to 1 when any of the following events occurs:

- Perform erase/write operation for the write protection area
- Execute page erase/mass erase for invalid sector
- Meanwhile, select page erase and mass erase
- Flash is under read protection but detects erase/write request
- Perform write operation for user configuration area
- Perform write operation for the locked OTP area

3.5.5 Read protection

In order to prevent untrusted code from reading Flash data, you can choose to use the read protection function for the Flash and the read protection level can be selected by configuring the value of the FMC_OPTCTRL[RPROT] bit field. The read protection has three levels, namely, Level 0, Level 1 and Level 2.

The access restriction at different read protection levels is shown in the following table.

Table 12 Restriction at Different Read Levels

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Memory area</th><th rowspan="2">Level</th><th colspan="3">Bootstrap from Flash</th><th colspan="3">Debugging function, bootstrap from RAM or system memory</th></tr>
<tr><th>Read</th><th>Write</th><th>Erase</th><th>Read</th><th>Write</th><th>Erase</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">OTP</td><td>Level 1</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">✔</td><td rowspan="2">-</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">✘</td><td rowspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Level 2</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Option byte</td><td>Level 1</td><td colspan="6">✔</td></tr>
<tr><td>Level 2</td><td colspan="6">✘</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Memory area</th><th rowspan="2">Level</th><th colspan="3">Bootstrap from Flash</th><th colspan="3">Debugging function, bootstrap from RAM or system memory</th></tr>
<tr><th>Read</th><th>Write</th><th>Erase</th><th>Read</th><th>Write</th><th>Erase</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Main memory block</td><td>Level 1</td><td colspan="3" rowspan="2">✔</td><td colspan="2">✘</td><td>✘ (1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Level 2</td><td colspan="3">✘</td></tr>
</table>

Note:

（1） means that only when Level 1 changes to Level 0, can the data of main memory block be erased.

（2） "✔" means the operation is allowed, "✘" means the operation is not allowed, and "-" means undefined.

3.5.5.1 **Level 0**

When FMC_OPTCTRL[RPROT]=0xAA, the read protection function is not used for Flash.

3.5.5.2 **Level 1**

When FMC_OPTCTRL[RPROT]=any value (except 0xAA and 0xCC), the read protection level is 1. At this time, if the level is adjusted back to Level 0, mass erase operation will be performed to erase all data of main memory block. Mass erase only affects user code area, and write-protected other option bytes and OTP will not be affected.

3.5.5.3 **Level 2**

When FMC_OPTCTRL[RPROT]=0xCC, the read protection level is 2. Then:

- Reserve the read protection function of Level 1
- It is not allowed to bootstrap from RAM or system memory
- JTAG, SWV, ETM and boundary scan are disabled
- The option byte is locked

Note: When the read protection level is set to 2, it cannot be degraded any more.

3.5.6 Proprietary code readout protection (PCROP)

7 user sectors of the main memory block can prevent D-bus read access by using PCROP. When PCROPEN bit of FLASH_OPTCTRL register is set to 1, select PCROP protection.

3.5.7 OTP

The following table shows OTP structure.

Table 13 OTP Structure

Address	[31:0]	[63:32]	[95:64]	[128:96]	Block
0x1FFF 7800	OTP0	OTP0	OTP0	OTP0	Data block 0
0x1FFF 7810	OTP0	OTP0	OTP0	OTP0	
0x1FFF 7820	OTP1	OTP1	OTP1	OTP1	Data block 1
0x1FFF 7830	OTP1	OTP1	OTP1	OTP1	
0x1FFF 7840	OTP2	OTP2	OTP2	OTP2	Data block 2
0x1FFF 7850	OTP2	OTP2	OTP2	OTP2	
……	……				……
0x1FFF 79E0	OTP15	OTP15	OTP15	OTP15	Data block 15
0x1FFF 79F0	OTP15	OTP15	OTP15	OTP15	
0x1FFF 7A00	LOCKB0 … LOCKB3	LOCKB4 … LOCKB7	LOCKB8 … LOCKB11	LOCKB12 … LOCKB15	Lock block

OTP consists of 16 32-byte data blocks and 1 16-byte lock block. The lock block n is used to lock the data block n (n=0…15), and the data block of each OTP is programmable unless the corresponding lock block has a value of 0x00. The value of the lock block can only be 0x00 or 0xFF; otherwise, the OTP byte cannot be used normally.

Note that neither data block nor lock block of OTP can be erased.

3.6 Register address mapping

Table 14 FMC Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
FMC_ACCTRL	Flash access control register	0x00
FMC_KEY	Flash key register	0x04
FMC_OPTKEY	Flash option key register	0x08
FMC_STS	Flash state register	0x0C
FMC_CTRL	Flash control register	0x10
FMC_OPTCTRL	Flash option control register	0x14

3.7 Register functional description

3.7.1 Flash access control register (FMC_ACCTRL)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	WAITP	R/W	Wait Period This bit means the number of wait cycles. 0000: 0 0001: 1 0010: 2 0011: 3 …… 1110: 14 1111: 15
7:4	Reserved		
8	PREFEN	R/W	Prefetch Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	ICACHEEN	R/W	Instruction Cache Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
10	DCACHEEN	R/W	Data Cache Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	ICACHERST	R/W	Instruction Cache Reset 0: Invalid 1: Reset
12	DCACHERST	R/W	Data Cache Reset 0: Invalid 1: Reset
31:13	Reserved		

3.7.2 Flash key register (FMC_KEY)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	KEY	W	Key When unlocking, this key needs to be input into this register.

3.7.3 Flash option key register (FMC_OPTKEY)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	OPTKEY	W	Option Key When unlocking, this key needs to be input into this register.

3.7.4 Flash state register (FMC_STS)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	OPRCMP	RC_W1	Operation Complete This bit will be set to 1 when the operation for Flash is completed.
1	OPRERR	RC_W1	Operation Error This bit will be set to 1 when an error occurs in operation process.
3:2	Reserved		
4	WPROTERR	RC_W1	Write Protection Error This bit will be set to 1 when erase/write operation is performed for Flash write protection area.
5	PGALGERR	RC_W1	Programming Alignment Error This bit will be set to 1 when a programming alignment error occurs.
6	PGPRLERR	RC_W1	Programming Parallelism Error This bit will be set to 1 when a programming parallelism error occurs.
7	PGSEQERR	RC_W1	Programming Sequence Error This bit will be set to 1 when a programming sequence error occurs.
8	RPROERR	R/W	Read Protection Error This bit will be set to 1 when read operation is performed for Flash read protection area.
15:9	Reserved		
16	BUSY	R	Busy This bit will be set to 1 when operation is performed for Flash.
31:17	Reserved		

3.7.5 Flash control register (FMC_CTRL)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x8000 0000

This register can be accessed only when there is no Flash operation ongoing.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	PG	R/W	Programming When this bit is set to 1, Flash programming can be enabled.
1	SERS	R/W	Sector Erase When this bit is set to 1, sector erase can be enabled.
2	MERS	R/W	Mass Erase When this bit is set to 1, mass erase can be enabled.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:3	SNUM	R/W	Sector Number This bit is used for the specified erase sector. 0000: Sector 0 0001: Sector 1 …… 0101: Sector 5 0110: Sector 6 0111: Sector 7 1000: Reserved …… 1011: Reserved 1100: Specific sector of user 1101: Sector configured by user Others: Reserved
7	Reserved		
9:8	PGSIZE	R/W	Program Size This bit is used to select the number of parallel bits. 00：8-bit 01：16-bit 10：32-bit 11：64-bit
15:10	Reserved		
16	START	R/S	Start When this bit is set to 1, the erase operation can be started. This bit will be cleared to zero when BUSY bit is cleared to zero.
23:17	Reserved		
24	OPCINTEN	R/W	Operation Complete Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
25	ERRINTEN	R/W	Error interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
30:26	Reserved		
31	LOCK	R/S	Lock When this bit is set to 1, it means that this register is locked; when the unlocking sequence is detected, it will be cleared to zero by hardware.

3.7.6 Flash option control register (FMC_OPTCTRL)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0FFF AAED

This register can be accessed only when there is no Flash operation ongoing.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	OPTLOCK	R/S	Option Lock When this bit is set to 1, it means that this register is locked; when the unlocking sequence is detected, it will be cleared to zero by hardware.
1	OPTSTART	R/S	Option Start After this bit is set to 1 by software, the option byte can be operated and it can be cleared to zero when the BUSY bit is cleared to zero.
3:2	BORLVL	R/W	Brownout Reset Level When the power supply voltage is less than the threshold of the brownout reset level, a reset will be generated. 00: Level 3, voltage range: 2.7V-3.6V 01: Level 2, voltage range: 2.4V-2.7V 10: Level 1, voltage range: 2.1V-2.4V 11: Disable; voltage range: 1.8V-2.1V
4	Reserved		
5	WDTSEL	R/W	Watchdog Select 0: Hardware watchdog 1: Software watchdog Note: When the WDTSEL mode is switched from hardware to software or from software to hardware, a system reset is required for the change to take effect.
6	RSTSTOP	R/W	nReset in STOP Mode 0: Reset occurs when entering the Stop mode 1: Reset does not occur when entering the Stop mode
7	RSTSTDB	R/W	nReset in STANDBY Mode 0: Reset occurs when entering the Standby mode 1: Reset does not occur when entering the Standby mode
15:8	RPROT	R/W	Read Protect This bit is used to select the read protection level. 0xAA: Level 0 0xCC: Level 2 Others: Level 1
23:16	NWPROT	R/W	Not Write Protect 0: Write protection is enabled 1: Write protection is disabled When PCROPEN is reset: 0: Write protection is enabled for Sector i 1: Write protection is disabled for Sector i When PCROPEN is set: 0: PCROP protection is disabled for Sector i 1: PCROP protection is enabled for Sector i
30:24	Reserved		
31	PCROPEN	R/W	PCROP Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

4 Static Memory Controller (SMC)

4.1 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Table 15 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Static Random Access Memory	SRAM
Read Only Memory	ROM
Pseudo Static Random Access Memory	PSRAM
Random Access Memory	RAM
Multiplex	MUX
Width	WID
Flash Memory	FM
Access	ACC
Wait	W
Signal	S
Polarity	POL
Asynchronous	ASYN
Burst	BURST
Timing	TIM
Setup	SET
Hold	HLD
Empty	E

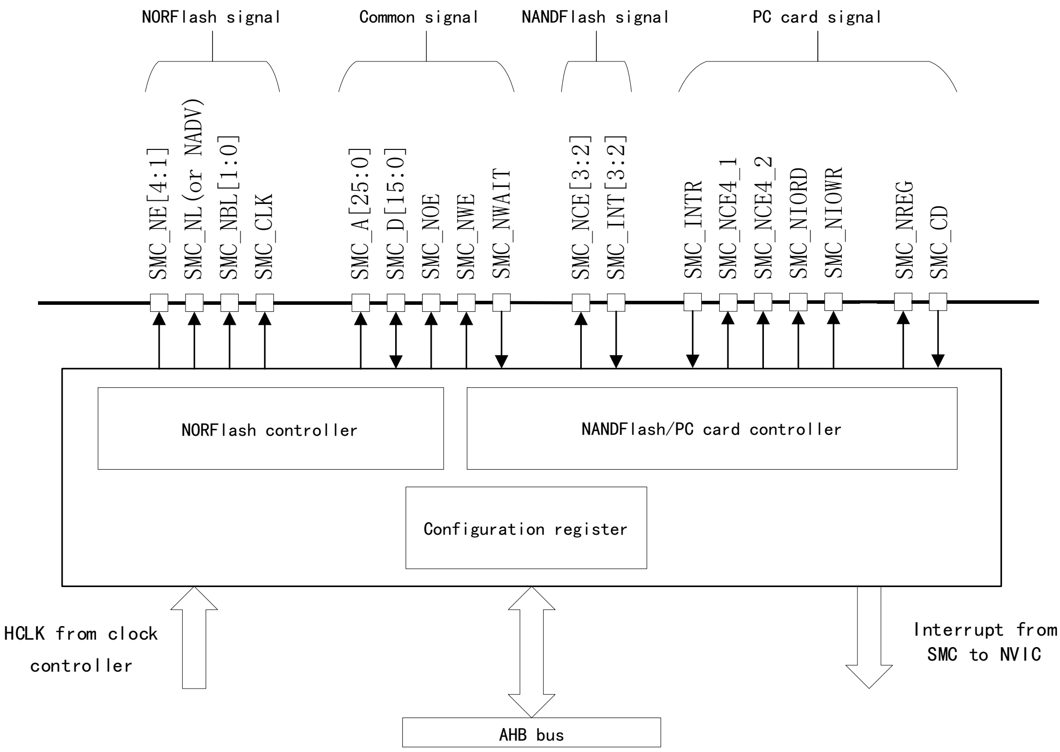
4.2 SMC Introduction

SMC is used to manage the peripherals of extended static memory; it can convert AHB transmission signals to the appropriate external devices; there are four internal memory blocks, each of which controls different types of memory and is distinguished by chip selection signal; only one external device can be accessed at any moment; each memory block can be configured separately, and the timing can be programmed for external devices.

4.3 SMC Structure Block Diagram

SMC consists of five parts: AHB bus interface, configuration register, NORFlash controller, NANDFlash/PC card controller and external device interface, specifically as shown in the figure below:

Figure 2 SMC Block Diagram



4.4 SMC Functional Description

4.4.1 SMC access rules

SMC is an interface for internal CPU to access external static memory through AHB bus. On AHB bus, the operation of 32-bit data will be converted into continuous 16 or 8-bit operation. In order to ensure the consistency of data transmission, SMC needs to comply with the following rules in external read-write operation:

(5) When the width of external data accessed by AHB is equal to the memory data width, it can transmit normally without any problem.

(6) When the width of external data accessed by AHB is larger than the memory data width, the access operation will be automatically cut to be consistent with the width of external data for transmission.

(7) When the width of external data accessed by AHB is less than the memory data width, if the external memory has the function of byte selection, it can transmit data normally through byte channel; if it does not have such function, write operation is not allowed, and only read operation is allowed.

4.4.2 External device address mapping

SMC divides external devices into multiple memory blocks, and different memory blocks control different external devices. The specific classification is shown in the table below:

Table 16 External Device Address Mapping Table

Start address	End address	Memory block	Memory type supported
0x60000000	0x6FFFFFFF	Memory block 1 (4*64MB)	NOR/PSRAM
0x70000000	0x7FFFFFFF	Memory block 2 (4*64MB)	NAND
0x80000000	0x8FFFFFFF	Memory block 3 (4*64MB)	NAND
0x90000000	0x9FFFFFFF	Memory block 4 (4*64MB)	PC card

4.4.3 NOR flash memory and PSRAM

4.4.3.1 Address mapping

Memory block 1 is used to control NOR/PSRAM memory, and is divided into four 64MB areas of the same size. The selection of each area depends on the value of HADDR[27:26], and the specific information is as follows:

Table 17 Address Mapping of Memory Block 1

HADDR[27:26]	Start address	End address	Area block
00	0x60000000	0x63FFFFFF	Area block 1
01	0x64000000	0x67FFFFFF	Area block 2
10	0x68000000	0x6BFFFFFF	Area block 3
11	0x6C000000	0x6FFFFFFF	Area block 4

HADDR is the internal AHB address line that needs to be converted to the external memory. It is a byte address. However, some external memories are not accessed by byte, so the address may be inconsistent. In order to avoid the error caused by this situation, SMC will be adjusted according to the following rules:

- When the width of external memory data is 8 bits, HADDR[25:0] is connected to SMC_ A [25:0], while SMC_A[25:0] is connected to the external memory address line.
- When the width of external memory data is 16 bits, HADDR[25:1] is connected to SMC_ A [24:0], while SMC_A[24:0] is connected to the external memory address line.

4.4.3.2 Interface signal and controller

The memory block 1 supports NOR Flash, PSRAM, SRAM and ROM external memory. There are corresponding chip selection signals NE[x] (x=1..4) in the four areas of the memory block 1. All other signals are shared. The specific interface signals and functions are as follows:

Table 18 NOR Flash Interface Signal

SMC signal name	Signal direction	Function
CLK	Output	Synchronous clock signal
NE[x]	Output	Chip selection signal, x=1..4
NOE	Output	Read enable signal
NWE	Output	Write enable signal
NWAIT	Input	Signal that NOR flash memory requires SMC to wait
A[25:0]	Output	Non-multiplexing: A[25:0] all are address bus
	Output	Multiplexing: A[25:16] is address bus
AD[15:0]	Input/Output	Non-multiplexing: Bidirectional data bus
	Input/Output	Multiplexing: Bidirectional address/Data bus
NL（=NADV）	Output	Effective address signal

Table 19PSRAM Interface Signal

SMC signal name	Signal direction	Function
CLK	Output	Synchronous clock signal
NE[x]	Output	Chip selection signal, x=1..4
NOE	Output	Read enable signal
NWE	Output	Write enable signal
NWAIT	Input	Signal that PSRAM requires SMC to wait
A[25:0]	Output	Address bus
D[15:0]	Input/Output	Bidirectional data bus
NL（=NADV）	Output	Effective address signal
NBL[1]	Output	High byte enable
NBL[0]	Output	Low byte enable

Note: The output signal of the controller changes at the rising edge of the internal clock; in the synchronous write mode, the output data changes at the falling edge of the memory clock.

NOR Flash/PSRAM controller provides programmable timing parameters for external memory, including the parameters in the following table:

Table 20 Programmable NOR/PSRAM Timing Parameters

Parameter	Function	Access methods	Unit	Minimum	Maximum
Data generation time	The number of clocks required to generate the first data in burst mode	Synchronize	Memory clock cycle (CLK)	2	17
Clock division factor	The ratio of memory access clock cycle (CLK) to AHB clock cycle	Synchronize	AHB clock cycle (HCLK)	2	16
Bus recovery time	Duration of bus recovery phase	Asynchronous or synchronous read		0	15
Data setup time	Duration of data setup phase	Asynchronous		1	256
Address hold time	Duration of address hold phase	Asynchronous, multiplexing IO		1	15
Address setup time	Duration of address setup phase	Asynchronous		0	15

4.4.4 NAND flash memory and PC card

4.4.4.1 Address mapping

Memory blocks 2, 3 and 4 are used to access NAND flash and PC card. Each memory block is also divided into different areas, the effect of different areas is different, and the specific distribution is as follows:

Table 21 Address Mapping of Memory Blocks 2, 3 and 4

SMC memory block	Storage space	Start address	End address
Memory block 2-NAND flash memory	Universal	0x70000000	0x73FFFFFF
	Attributes	0x78000000	0x7BFFFFFF
Memory block 3-NAND flash memory	Universal	0x80000000	0x83FFFFFF
	Attributes	0x88000000	0x8BFFFFFF
Memory block 4-PC card	Universal	0x90000000	0x93FFFFFF
	Attributes	0x98000000	0x9BFFFFFF
	I/O	0x9C000000	0x9FFFFFFF

NAND flash memory block is divided into three blocks in part of the low-byte area, and different blocks can be accessed through HADDR[17:16]. The specific division and selection of these three blocks are shown in the table below:

Table 22 NAND Memory Block Division

HADDR[17:16]	Address range	Block name
00	0x000000-0x00FFFF	Data block
01	0x010000-0x01FFFF	Command block
1X	0x020000-0x03FFFF	Address block

In order to read and write NAND memory normally, the following steps are needed:

- Transmit command to the memory
- Transmit the address for reading and writing to the memory
- Read/Write data

The operation address of the corresponding three-step operation corresponds to the three blocks in the memory block. To transmit a command to the memory is to write the corresponding command value to the command block; to transmit an address to the memory is to transmit the corresponding address value to the address block; to read and write data is to read and write in the data block; finally write or read out the internal unit of NAND, and the address of the corresponding unit is the address written in the address block.

4.4.4.2 Interface signal and controller

NAND/PC card controller can control three memory blocks. The memory blocks 2 and 3 support NAND Flash, and the memory block 4 supports PC card devices. These three memory blocks have their own chip selection signals, and the specific interfaces and functions are as follows:

Table 23 NAND Flash Interface Signal

SMC signal name	Signal direction	Function
NCE[x]	Output	Chip selection signal, x=2, 3
NOE（=NRE）	Output	Read enable signal
NWE	Output	Write enable signal
NWAIT/INT[3:2]	Input	NAND Flash ready/busy input signal
A[17]	Output	NAND Flash address latch signal (ALE)
A[16]	Output	NAND Flash command latch signal (CLE)
D[15:0]	Input/Output	8-bit multiplexing: D[7:0] bidirectional address/data bus
	Input/Output	16-bit multiplexing: D[15:0] bidirectional address/data bus

Table 24 PC Card Interface Signal

SMC signal name	Signal direction	Function
NCE4_1	Output	Chip selection signal 1
NCE4_2	Output	Chip selection signal 2 (select 16-bit or 8-bit operation)
NOE	Output	Read enable signal
NWE	Output	Write enable signal
NWAIT	Input	PC card wait signal
INTR	Input	PC card interrupt signal
CD	Input	PC card detection signal
A[10:0]	Output	Address bus
NIOS16	Input	Data transmission width of 16-bit transmission I/O space (must be grounded)
NIORD	Output	I/O space output enable
NIOWR	Output	I/O space write enable
NREG	Output	Selection of common space or attribute space access
D[15:0]	Output/Input	Bidirectional data bus

NAND Flash/PC card controller provides programmable timing parameters for external memory, including the parameters in the following table:

Table 25 Programmable NAND/PC Card Timing Parameters

Parameter	Function	Operation mode	Unit	Minimum	Maximum
Memory data bus high-impedance time	The time of holding the data bus in high-impedance state after starting write operation	Write	AHB clock cycle (HCLK)	0	255
Memory hold time	The number of clocks holding the address after transmitting the command, also the hold time of data during write operation	Read/Write		1	254
Memory waiting time	Minimum transmission duration			2	256
Memory setup time	The number of clocks that set up the address before issuing the command			1	255

4.5 SMC register address mapping

Table 26 SMC Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
SMC_CSCTRL1…4	SRAM/NOR flash memory chip selection control register 1…4	8*(x-1),x=1…4
SMC_CSTIM1…4	SRAM/NOR flash memory chip selection timing register 1…4	0x04 + 8*(x-1),x=1…4
SMC_WRTTIM1…4	SRAM/NOR flash memory write timing register 1…4	0x104 + 8*(x-1),x=1…4
SMC_CTRL2…4	PC card/NAND flash memory control register 2…4	0x40 + 0x20 * (x-1),x=2…4
SMC_STSINT2…4	FIFO state and interrupt register 2…4	0x44 + 0x20 * (x-1),x=2…4
SMC_CMSTIM2…4	Common memory space timing register 2...4	0x48 + 0x20 * (x-1),x=2…4
SMC_AMSTIM2…4	Attribute memory space timing register 2...4	0x4C + 0x20 * (x-1),x=2…4
SMC_IOSTIM4	I/O space timing register 4	0XB0
SMC_ECCRS2/3	ECC result register 2/3	0x54 + 0x20 * (x-1), x=2 or 3

4.6 SMC register functional description

4.6.1 NOR flash memory and PSRAM control register

4.6.1.1 **SRAM/NOR flash memory chip selection control register 1…4 (SMC_CSCTRL1…4)**

Offset address: 8*(x-1), x=1…4

Reset value: 0x0000 30DX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	MBKEN	R/W	Enable the Corresponding Memory Bank 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	ADMUXEN	R/W	Address/Data Multiplexing Enable This bit is effective only for NORFlash and PSRAM. 0: Disable 1: Address low 16-bit and data sharing data bus
3:2	MTYPECFG	R/W	Memory Type Configure 00: SRAM, ROM (default value of Bank2~Bank4 after reset) 01：PSRAM 10: NORFlash (default value after Bank1 reset) Others: Reserved

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:4	MDBWIDCFG	R/W	Memory Data Bus Width Configure 00: 8 bits 01: 16 bits Others: Reserved
6	NORFMACCEN	R/W	NORFlash Memory Access Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	Reserved		
8	BURSTEN	R/W	Burst Mode Enable In synchronous mode, use the burst mode to access the memory. 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	WSPOLCFG	R/W	Wait Signal Polarity Configure This bit is effective only in burst mode. 0: Active low 1: Active high
10	WRAPBEN	R/W	Wrapped Burst Mode Enable This bit is effective only in burst mode. 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	WTIMCFG	R/W	Wait Timing Configure This bit is used to configure whether the memory generates NWAIT signal in the period before the waiting state or during the waiting period; this bit is effective only in burst mode. 0: NWAIT signal is effective in the data period before waiting 1: NWAIT signal is effective in the waiting period
12	WREN	R/W	Write Memory Enable This bit is used to enable write operation of SMC for the memory. 0: Disable write; otherwise, an AHB error will be generated 1: Allow write
13	WAITEN	R/W	Wait Enable This bit is used to enable NWAIT signal to insert the wait state; this bit is effective only in burst mode. 0: Disable 1: Enable
14	EXTMODEEN	R/W	Extended Mode Enable In extended mode, SMC_WRTTIM register can be used to realize read and write using different timing function. 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15	WSASYNCEN	R/W	Wait Signal During Asynchronous Transfers Enable This bit is used to enable SMC to use NWAIT signal during asynchronous protocol period. 0: Disable 1: Enable
18:16	CRAMPSIZECFG	R/W	CRAM Page Size Configure 000: There is no burst split when crossing the page boundary 001: 128 bytes 010: 256 bytes 011: 512 bytes 100: 1024 bytes Others: Reserved
19	WRBURSTEN	R/W	Write PSRAM Burst Enable This bit is used to enable the synchronous burst transmission protocol for write operation. 0: Write operation is asynchronous mode 1: Write operation is synchronous mode
31:20	Reserved		

4.6.1.2 **SRAM/NOR flash memory chip selection timing register 1…4 (SMC_CSTIM1…4)**

Offset address: 0x04 + 8*(x-1), x=1…4

Reset value: 0x0FFF FFFF

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	ADDRSETCFG	R/W	Address Setup Time Configure Only apply to NOR flash memory operation in SRAM, ROM and asynchronous bus multiplexing mode. 0000: 1 HCLK clock cycle 0001: 2 HCLK clock cycles …… 1111: 16 HCLK clock cycles Note: In synchronous operation, this parameter is meaningless and is always 1 memory clock cycle
7:4	ADDRHLDCFG	R/W	Address-Hold Time Configure Only apply to NOR flash memory operation in SRAM, ROM and asynchronous bus multiplexing mode. 0000: Reserved 0001: 2 HCLK clock cycles …… 1111: 16 HCLK clock cycles Note: In synchronous operation, this parameter is meaningless and is always 1 memory clock cycle

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:8	DATASETCFG	R/W	Data Setup Time Configure Only apply to NOR flash memory operation in SRAM, ROM and asynchronous bus multiplexing mode. 0000 0000: Reserved 0000 0001: 2 HCLK clock cycles 0000 0010: 3 HCLK clock cycles …… 1111 1111: 256 HCLK clock cycles
19:16	BUSTURNCFG	R/W	Bus Turnaround Phase Duration Configure These bits are used to configure the delay time on the bus after a read operation. They are only applicable to NOR flash memory operation in bus multiplexing mode. 0000: 1 HCLK clock cycle 0001: 2 HCLK clock cycles …… 1111: 16 HCLK clock cycles
23:20	CLKDIVCFG	R/W	Clock Divide Factor Configure CLK comes from HCLK frequency division. These bits are used to configure the frequency of CLK clock output signal. They are only applicable to synchronous mode. 0000: Reserved 0001: 2 divided frequency 0010: 3 divided frequency …… 1111: 16 divided frequency Note: This parameter is ineffective when accessing asynchronous NOR flash memory, SRAM or ROM.
27:24	DATALATCFG	R/W	Data Latency Configure These bits are used to configure the number of memory cycles for waiting before reading the first data. They are only applicable to NOR flash memory operation in synchronous burst mode. 0000: 2 CLK clock cycles 0001: 3 CLK clock cycles …… 1111: 17 CLK clock cycles Note: When accessing asynchronous NOR flash memory, SRAM or ROM, this parameter is invalid. When operating CRAM, this parameter is 0.
29:28	ASYNCACCCFG	R/W	Asynchronous Access Mode Configure Valid only when EXTMODEEN bit of SMC_CSCTRLX register is 1. 00: Access mode A 01: Access mode B 10: Access mode C 11: Access mode D
31:30	Reserved		

4.6.1.3 **SRAM/NOR flash memory write timing register 1…4 (SMC_WRTTIM1…4)**

Offset address: 0x104 + 8*(x-1), x=1…4

Reset value: 0x0FFF FFFF

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	ADDRSETCFG	R/W	Address Setup Time Configure Only apply to NOR flash memory operation in SRAM, ROM and asynchronous bus multiplexing mode. 0000: 1 HCLK clock cycle 0001: 2 HCLK clock cycles …… 1111: 16 HCLK clock cycles Note: In synchronous operation, this parameter is meaningless and is always 1 memory clock cycle
7:4	ADDRHLDCFG	R/W	Address-Hold Time Configure Only apply to NOR flash memory operation in SRAM, ROM and asynchronous bus multiplexing mode. 0000: Reserved 0001: 2 HCLK clock cycles …… 1111: 16 HCLK clock cycles Note: In synchronous operation, this parameter is meaningless and is always 1 memory clock cycle
15:8	DATASETCFG	R/W	Data-Setup Time Configure Only apply to NOR flash memory operation in SRAM, ROM and asynchronous bus multiplexing mode. 0000 0000: Reserved 0000 0001: 2 HCLK clock cycles 0000 0010: 3 HCLK clock cycles …… 1111 1111: 256 HCLK clock cycles
19:16	BUSTURNCFG	R/W	Bus Turnaround Phase Duration Configure These bits are used to configure the delay time on the bus after a read operation. They are only applicable to NOR flash memory operation in bus multiplexing mode. 0000: 1 HCLK clock cycle 0001: 2 HCLK clock cycles …… 1111: 16 HCLK clock cycles
27:20	Reserved		
29:28	ASYNCACCCFG	R/W	Asynchronous Access Mode Configure These bits are used to configure asynchronous access mode, and are valid only when EXTMODEEN bit of SMC_CSCTRLX register is 1. 00: Access mode A 01: Access mode B 10: Access mode C 11: Access mode D
31:30	Reserved		

4.6.2 NAND flash memory and PC card control register

4.6.2.1 **PC card/NAND flash control register 2…4 (SMC_CTRL2…4)**

Offset address: 0x40 + 0x20 * (x-1), x=2…4

Reset value: 0x0000 0018

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	Reserved		
1	WAITFEN	R/W	PC Card/NAND Flash Wait Feature Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	MBKEN	R/W	PC Card/NAND Flash Memory Bank Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	MTYPECFG	R/W	Memory Type Configure 0: PC card, CF card, CF+ card or PCMCIA 1: NAND flash memory
5:4	DBWIDCFG	R/W	Databus Width Configure 16 bits must be used for PC Card. 00: 8 bits 01: 16 bits Others are reserved
6	ECCEN	R/W	ECC Computation Logic Enable 0: Disable and reset ECC 1: Enable
8:7	Reserved		
12:9	C2RDCFG	R/W	CLE To RE Delay Configure Configure the duration from "CLE becomes low level" to "RE becomes low level". 0000: 1 HCLK cycle 0000: 2 HCLK cycles …… 1111: 16 HCLK cycles
16:13	A2RDCFG	R/W	ALE To RE Delay Configure Configure the duration from "ALE becomes low level" to "RE becomes low level" 0000: 1 HCLK cycle 0000: 2 HCLK cycles …… 1111: 16 HCLK cycles
19:17	ECCPSCFG	R/W	ECC Page Size Configure 000: 256 bytes 001: 512 bytes 010: 1024 bytes 011: 2048 bytes 100: 4096 bytes 101: 8192 bytes

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:20	Reserved		

4.6.2.2 FIFO state and interrupt register 2…4 (SMC_STSINT2…4)

Offset address: 0x44 + 0x20 * (x-1), x=2…4

Reset value: 0x0000 0040

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	IREFLG	R/W	Interrupt Rising Edge Generate Flag This bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software. 0: Not generate 1: Generate
1	IHLFLG	R/W	Interrupt High-Level Generate Flag This bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software. 0: Not generate 1: Generate
2	IFEFLG	R/W	Interrupt Falling Edge Generate Flag This bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software. 0: Not generate 1: Generate
3	IREDEN	R/W	Interrupt Rising Edge Detection Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	IHLDEN	R/W	Interrupt High-Level Detection Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	IFEDEN	R/W	Interrupt Falling Edge Detection Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	FEFLG	R	FIFO Empty Flag 0: Not empty 1: Empty
31:7	Reserved		

4.6.2.3 Common memory space timing register 2…4 (SMC_CMSTIM2…4)

Offset address: 0x48 + 0x20 * (x-1), x=2…4

Reset value: 0xFCFC FCFC

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	SETx	R/W	Common Memory x Setup Time Configure This bit takes CLK as the clock cycle, and defines the time of setting up the address before transmitting the command. 0000 0000: 1 HCLK cycle 0000 0001: 2 HCLK cycles …… 1111 1111: 255 HCLK cycles 1111 1111: Reserved

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:8	WAITx	R/W	Common Memory x Wait Time Configure This bit takes HCLK as the clock cycle and defines the minimum hold time of the command. After the defined time, if the waiting signal is active low, the hold time of the command will become longer. 0000 0000: Reserved 0000 0001: 2 HCLK cycles (+ wait cycles introduced by NWAIT signal becoming low) 0000 0010: 3 HCLK cycles …… 1111 1110: 255 HCLK cycles (+ wait cycles introduced by NWAIT signal becoming low) 1111 1111: Reserved
23:16	HLDx	R/W	Common Memory x Hold Time Configure This bit takes CLK as the clock cycle, and defines the hold time of address signal after transmitting the command. 0000 0000: Reserved 0000 0001: 1 HCLK cycle of write access, 3 HCLK cycles of read access …… 1111 1110: 254 HCLK cycles of write access, 256 HCLK cycles of read access 1111 1111: Reserved
31:24	HIZx	R/W	Common Memory x Databus Hiz Time Configure This bit takes HCLK as the clock cycle and defines the time of high-impedance state of data bus, which is only effective for write operation. 0000 0000: 1 HCLK cycle 0000 0001: 2 HCLK cycles …… 1111 1111: 255 HCLK cycles 1111 1111: Reserved

4.6.2.4 **Attribute memory space timing register 2…4 (SMC_AMSTIM2…4)**

Offset address: 0x4C + 0x20 * (x-1), x=2…4

Reset value: 0xFCFC FCFC

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	SETx	R/W	Attribute Memory x Setup Time Configure This bit takes CLK as the clock cycle, and defines the time of setting up the address signal before transmitting the command. 0000 0000: 1 HCLK cycle 0000 0001: 2 HCLK cycles …… 1111 1111: 255 HCLK cycles 1111 1111: Reserved
15:8	WAITx	R/W	Attribute Memory x Wait Time Configure This bit takes HCLK as the clock cycle and defines the minimum hold time of the command. After the defined time, if the waiting signal is active low, the hold time of the command will become longer. 0000 0000: Reserved 0000 0001: 2 HCLK cycles (+ wait cycles introduced by NWAIT signal becoming low) 0000 0010: 3 HCLK cycles …… 1111 1110: 255 HCLK cycles (+ wait cycles introduced by NWAIT signal becoming low) 1111 1111: Reserved
23:16	HLDx	R/W	Attribute Memory x Hold Time Configure This bit takes CLK as the clock cycle, and defines the hold time of address signal after transmitting the command. 0000 0000: Reserved 0000 0001: 1 HCLK cycle of write access, 3 HCLK cycles of read access …… 1111 1110: 254 HCLK cycles of write access, 256 HCLK cycles of read access 1111 1111: Reserved
31:24	HIZx	R/W	Attribute Memory x Databus Hiz Time Configure This bit takes HCLK as the clock cycle and defines the time of high-impedance state of data bus, which is only effective for write operation. 0000 0000: 0 HCLK cycle 0000 0001: 1 HCLK cycle …… 1111 1111: 255 HCLK cycles

4.6.2.5 **I/O space timing register 4 (SMC_IOSTIM4)**

Offset address: 0xB0

Reset value: 0xFCFC FCFC

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	SET	R/W	I/O x Setup Time Configure This bit takes CLK as the clock cycle, and defines the time of setting up the address signal before transmitting the command. 0000 0000: 1 HCLK cycle 0000 0001: 2 HCLK cycles …… 1111 1111: 256 HCLK cycles
15:8	WAIT	R/W	I/O x Wait Time Configure This bit takes HCLK as the clock cycle and defines the minimum hold time of the command. After the defined time, if the waiting signal is active low, the hold time of the command will become longer. 0000 0000: Reserved 0000 0001: 2 HCLK cycles (+ wait cycles introduced by NWAIT signal becoming low) 0000 0010: 3 HCLK cycles …… 1111 1111: 256 HCLK cycles (+ wait cycles introduced by card NWAIT signal becoming low)
23:16	HLD	R/W	I/O x Hold Time Configure This bit takes CLK as the clock cycle, and defines the hold time of address signal after transmitting the command. 0000 0000: Reserved 0000 0001: 1 HCLK cycle 0000 0010: 2 HCLK cycles …… 1111 1111: 255 HCLK cycles
31:24	HIZ	R/W	I/O x Databus Hiz Time Configure This bit takes HCLK as the clock cycle and defines the time of high-impedance state of data bus, which is only effective for write operation. 0000 0000: 0 HCLK cycle 0000 0001: 1 HCLK cycle …… 1111 1111: 255 HCLK cycles

4.6.2.6 **ECC result register 2/3 (SMC_ECCRS2/3)**

Offset address: 0x54 + 0x20 * (x-1), x=2 or 3

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	ECCRS	R	ECC Result

5 System configuration controller (SYSCFG)

5.1 Main characteristics

(1) Remap configuration memory

(2) Configure external interrupt of GPIO

(3) Control I/O compensation cell

5.2 I/O compensation cell

When the I/O output buffer speed is configured as 50MHz or 100MHz, the I/O port noise will affect the power supply voltage. Therefore, at this time (when the power supply voltage is 2.4~3.6V), the compensation cell can be enabled to control the $t_{f(IO)out}/t_{r(IO)out}$ slope to reduce the impact on the power supply.

5.3 Register address mapping

Table 27 SYSCFG Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
SYSCFG_MMSEL	Memory mapping selection register	0x00
SYSCFG_PMCFG	Peripheral mode configuration register	0x04
SYSCFG_EINTCFG1	External interrupt register 1	0x08
SYSCFG_EINTCFG2	External interrupt register 2	0x0C
SYSCFG_EINTCFG3	External interrupt register 3	0x10
SYSCFG_EINTCFG4	External interrupt register 4	0x14
SYSCFG_CCCTRL	Compensation cell control register	0x20

5.4 Register functional description

5.4.1 Memory mapping selection register (SYSCFG_MMSEL)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 000X (after reset, the value of X is the same as the setting of BOOT pin)

This register is used to configure in the memory area accessed at the address 0x0000 0000 through the software so as to bypass BOOT pin.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	MMSEL	R/W	Memory Mapping Select Control the memory mapping address 0x0000 0000. After reset, the parameters of these bits are determined by actual BOOT. 00: Main flash mapping address: 0x0000 0000 01: System flash mapping address: 0x0000 0000 10: SMC Bank1 (NOR/PSRAM1 and 2) mapping address: 0x0000 0000 11: Embedded SRAM mapping address: 0x0000 0000
31:2	Reserved		

5.4.2 Peripheral mode configuration register (SYSCFG_PMCFG)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	Reserved		
16	ADCxO2EN	R/W	ADCx Option 2 Enable The value of x is 1-3 0: Disable 1: Enable These bits can be set only when the following conditions are met: ADC clock is greater than or equal to 30MHz; when ADC conversion is not started at the same time and the sampling time is different, only one ADCO2EN bit can be selected; PMU_CTRL[ADCO1EN]=0.
31:17	Reserved		

5.4.3 External interrupt register 1 (SYSCFG_EINTCFG1)

The selected external interrupt sources represented by values of the EINTx [3:0] of the following several SYSCFG external interrupt registers are shown in the table below.

Table 28 External Interrupt Sources Selected for Different Values

EINTx [3:0]	External interrupt source
0000	PA[x] pin
0001	PB[x] pin
0010	PC[x] pin
0011	PD[x] pin
0100	PE[x] pin
0101	Reserved
0110	Reserved
0111	PH[x] pin
Others	Reserved

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINTx(x=0…3).

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	EINT0	R/W	EINT0 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT0.
7:4	EINT1	R/W	EINT1 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT1.
11:8	EINT2	R/W	EINT2 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT2.
15:12	EINT3	R/W	EINT3 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT3.
31:16	Reserved		

5.4.4 External interrupt register 2 (SYSCFG_EINTCFG2)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINTx(x=4…7).

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	EINT4	R/W	EINT4 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT4.
7:4	EINT5	R/W	EINT5 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT5.
11:8	EINT6	R/W	EINT6 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT6.
15:12	EINT7	R/W	EINT7 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT7.
31:16	Reserved		

5.4.5 External interrupt register 3 (SYSCFG_EINTCFG3)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINTx(x=8…11).

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	EINT8	R/W	EINT8 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT8.
7:4	EINT9	R/W	EINT9 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT9.
11:8	EINT10	R/W	EINT10 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT10.
15:12	EINT11	R/W	EINT11 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT11.
31:16	Reserved		

5.4.6 External interrupt register 4 (SYSCFG_EINTCFG4)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINTx(x=12…15).

Note that when the value of each bit of the register is 0x1000, this bit is reserved bit, namely, PI[15:12] is unused.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	EINT12	R/W	EINT12 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT12.
7:4	EINT13	R/W	EINT13 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT13.
11:8	EINT14	R/W	EINT14 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT14.
15:12	EINT15	R/W	EINT15 Configure These bits are controlled by software to be rewritten to select the external interrupt source of EINT15.
31:16	Reserved		

5.4.7 Compensation cell control register (SYSCFG_CCCTRL)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CCPD	R/W	Compensation Cell Power-down 0: I/O compensation cell enters power-down mode 1: I/O compensation cell is enabled
7:1	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
8	RDYFLG	R	Compensation Cell Ready Flag 0: Not ready 1: Ready
31:9	Reserved		

6 Reset and clock (RCM)

6.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 29 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Reset and Clock Management	RCM
Reset	RST
Power-On Reset	POR
Power-Down Reset	PDR
High Speed External Clock	HSECLK
Low Speed External Clock	LSECLK
High Speed Internal Clock	HSICLK
Low Speed Internal Clock	LSICLK
Phase Locked Loop	PLL
Main clock output	MCO
Calibrate	CAL
Trim	TRM
Clock Security System	CSS
Non Maskable Interrupt	NMI

6.2 Reset management unit (RMU)

The reset is divided into three forms, namely, system reset, power reset and backup area reset.

6.2.1 System reset

6.2.1.1 "System reset" reset source

The reset source is divided into external reset source and internal reset source.

External reset source:

- Low level on NRST pin.

Internal reset source:

- Window watchdog termination count (WWDT reset)
- Independent watchdog termination count (IWDT reset)
- Software reset (SW reset)
- Power reset
- Low-power management reset

A system reset will occur when any of the above events occurs. Besides, the reset event source can be identified by viewing the reset flag bit in RCM_CSTS (control/status register).

When the system is reset, all registers except the registers in RCM_CSTS (control/state register) reset flag bit and backup area will be reset to the reset state.

Software Reset

Software can be reset by setting SYSRESETREQ in Arm® Cortex®-M4F interrupt application and reset control register with FPU to "1".

Low-power management reset

Low-power management may reset in two cases, one is when entering the standby mode, and the other is when entering the stop mode. In these two cases, if RSTSTDB (in standby mode) or RSTSTOP (in stop mode) in user selection byte is set to "0", the system will be reset rather than enter the standby or stop mode.

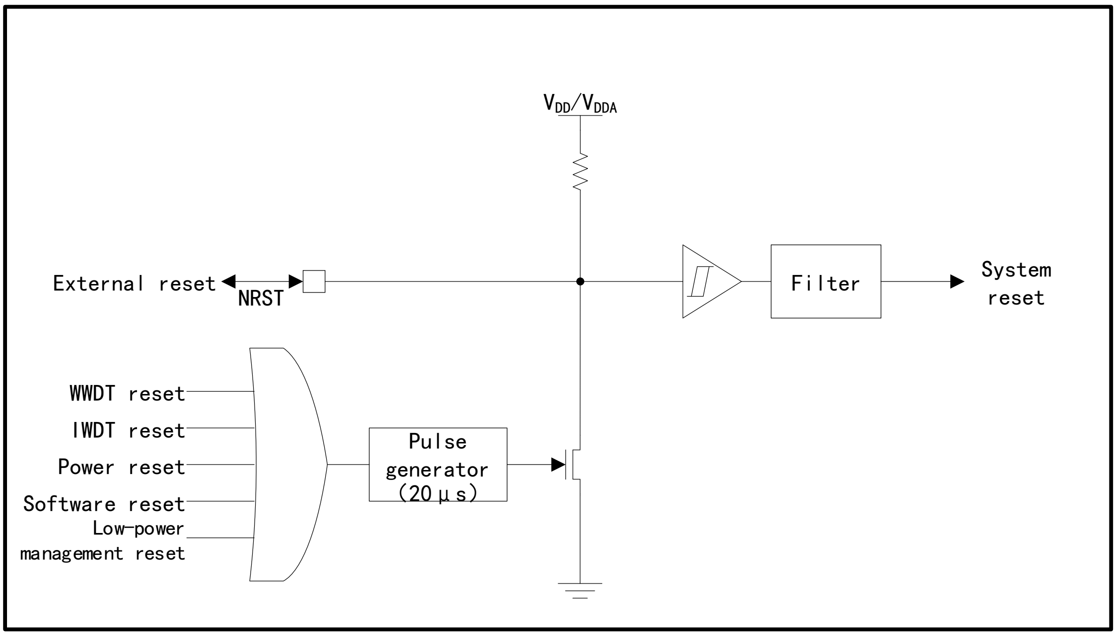
6.2.1.2 "System reset" reset circuit

The reset source is used in the NRST pin, which remains low in reset process.

The internal reset source generates a delay of at least 20μs pulse on the NRST pin through the pulse generator, which causes the NRST to maintain the level to generate reset; the external reset source directly pulls down the NRST pin level to generate reset.

The "system reset" reset circuit is shown in the figure below.

Figure 3 "System Reset" Reset Circuit



6.2.2 Power reset

"Power reset" reset source

"Power reset" reset source is as follows:

- Power-on reset (POR)
- Power-down reset (PDR)
- Brown-out reset (BOR)
- Exit (Wake up) from standby mode

A power reset will occur when any of the above events occurs.

Power reset will reset all registers except that in backup area.

6.2.3 Backup domain reset

"Backup domain reset" reset source

"Backup domain reset" reset source is as follows:

- Software resets and sets the BDRST bit in RCM_BDCTRL (backup domain control register)
- V_{DD} or V_{BAT} is powered on again when V_{DD} and V_{BAT} is powered down

A backup domain reset will occur in case of any of the above events.

The backup area reset has two special resets, which only affect backup area.

6.3 Clock Management Unit (CMU)

The clock sources of the whole system are: HSECLK, LSECLK, HSICLK, LSICLK, PLL1 and PLL2. For the characteristics of the clock source, please refer to the relevant chapter of "Electrical Characteristics" in the Datasheet.

6.3.1 External clock source

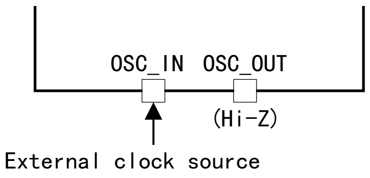
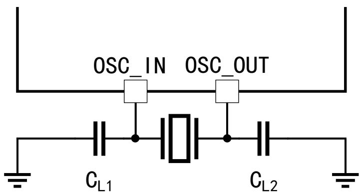
The external clock signal includes HSECLK (high-speed external clock signal) and LSECLK (low-speed external clock signal).

There are two kinds of external clock sources:

- External crystal/ceramic resonator
- External clock of user

The hardware configuration of the two kinds of clock sources is shown in the figure below.

Figure 4 HSECLK/LSECLK Clock Source Hardware Configuration

<table>
<tr><th>Clock source</th><th>Hardware configuration</th></tr>
<tr><td>External clock</td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Crystal/ceramic resonator</td><td>
</td></tr>
</table>

In order to reduce the distortion of clock output and shorten the startup stabilization time, the crystal/ceramic resonator and load capacitor must be as close to the oscillator pin as possible. The value of load capacitance (C_{L1}, C_{L2}) must be adjusted according to the selected oscillator.

6.3.1.1 **HSECLK high-speed external clock signal**

HSECLK clock signal is generated by HSECLK external crystal/ceramic resonator and HSECLK external clock two kinds of clock sources.

Table 30 Clock Source Generating HSECLK

Name	Description
External clock source (HSECLK bypass)	Provide clock to the MCU through OSC_IN pin. The signal can be generated by ordinary function signal transmitter (in debugging), crystal oscillator and other signal generators; the waveform can be square wave, sine wave or triangle wave with 50% duty cycle, and the maximum frequency is up to 50MHz. For hardware connection, it must be connected to OSC_IN pin, ensuring OSC_OUT pin is suspended (in high-impedance state); for MCU configuration, the user can select this mode by setting HSEBCFG and HSEEN bits in RCM_CTRL (clock control register).
External crystal/ceramic resonator (HSECLK crystal)	The clock is provided to MCU by the resonator, and the resonator includes crystal resonator and ceramic resonator. The frequency range is 4-26MHz. When OSC_IN and OSC_OUT need to connect to the resonator, it can be enabled and disabled by setting the HSEEN bit in clock control register RCM_CTRL (clock control register). HSERDYFLG bit in the clock control register RCM_CTRL (clock control register) is used to indicate whether the high-speed external oscillator is stable. After it is enabled, the clock is not released until this bit is set to "1" by hardware. If interrupt is allowed in RCM_INT (clock interrupt register), corresponding interrupt will be generated.

6.3.1.2 **LSECLK low-speed external clock signal**

LSECLK clock signal is generated by LSECLK external crystal/ceramic resonator and LSECLK external clock two kinds of clock sources.

Table 31 Clock Source Generating LSECLK

Name	Description
External clock source (LSECLK bypass)	The clock is provided to MCU by OSC32_IN pin. The signal can be generated by ordinary function signal transmitter (in debugging), crystal oscillator and other signal generators; the waveform can be square wave, sine wave or triangle wave with 50% duty cycle, and the signal frequency needs to be 32.768kHz. For hardware connection, it must be connected to OSC32_IN pin, ensuring OSC32_OUT pin is suspended; for MCU configuration, the user can select this mode by setting LSEBCFG and LSEEN bits in RCM_BDCTRL (backup domain control register).

Name	Description
External crystal/ceramic resonator (LSECLK crystal)	The clock is provided to MCU by the resonator, and the resonator includes crystal resonator and ceramic resonator. The frequency is 32.768kHz. OSC32_IN and OSC32_OUT need to be connected to the oscillator which can be enabled and disabled through LSEEN bit in RCM_BDCTRL (clock backup domain control register). LSERDYFLG in RCM_BDCTRL indicates whether LSECLK crystal oscillator is stable. At startup stage, LSECLK clock signal is not released until this bit is set to "1" by hardware. If it is allowed in the clock interrupt register, an interrupt request can be generated.

6.3.2 Internal clock source

The internal clock includes HSICLK (high-speed internal clock signal) and LSICLK (low-speed internal clock signal).

6.3.2.1 **HSICLK high-speed internal clock signal**

HSICLK clock signal is generated by internal 16MHz RC oscillator.

The RC oscillator frequency of different chips is different, and the frequency of the same chip may also be different with the change of temperature and voltage; the HSICLK clock frequency of each chip has been calibrated to 1% (25℃, V_{DD}=V_{DDA}=3.3V) by the manufacturer before leaving the factory. When the system is reset, the value calibrated by the manufacturer will be loaded to RCM_CTRL register; in addition, users can further adjust the frequency by setting HSITRM bit in RCM_CTRL register according to the application environment (temperature and voltage) of the site.

HSIRDYFLG bit can be used to indicate whether HSICLK RC oscillator is stable. In the clock startup process, HSICLK RC output clock is not released until the HSIRDYFLG bit is set to 1 by hardware. HSICLK RC can be enabled or disabled by HSIEN bit in RCM_CTRL.

Compared with HSECLK crystal oscillator, RC oscillator can provide system clock without any external device; the start time of RC oscillator is shorter than that of HSECLK crystal oscillator; even after calibration, its clock frequency accuracy is still inferior to that of HSECLK crystal oscillator.

6.3.2.2 **LSICLK low-speed internal clock signal**

Main characteristics of LSICLK

LSICLK is generated by RC oscillator, within the range of 32kHz . The frequency may change along with the change of temperature and voltage. It can keep running in stop and standby mode and provide clock for independent watchdog and automatic wakeup unit.

LSICLK can be enabled or disabled by LSIEN bit in RCM_CSTS register. LSIRDYFLG bit in RCM_CSTS indicates whether the low-speed internal oscillator is stable. At startup stage, the clock is not released until this bit is set to "1" by hardware. If it is allowed in RCM_INT register, LSICLK ready interrupt request signal will be generated.

6.3.3 PLL (phase locked loop)

This series of products have two PLL, which usually take HSICLK or HSECLK oscillator as their clock source. These two PLL will be disabled by hardware in either of the following situations:

- Enter the stop or standby state
- The system clock directly or indirectly selects HSECLK as the clock source, and a fault occurs to HSECLK

When configuring PLL related coefficient, ensure that it is not enabled.

6.3.3.1 **PLL1**

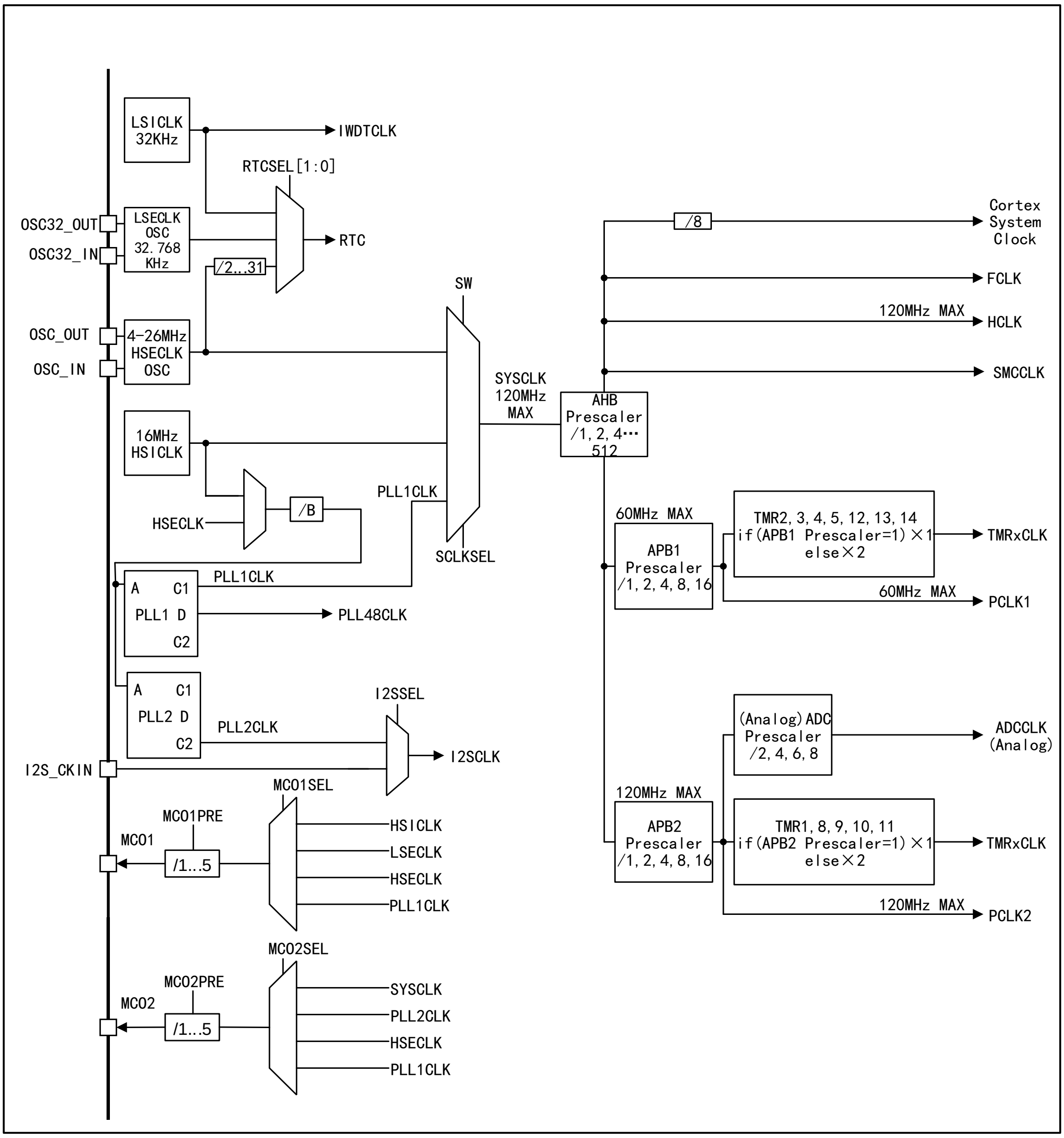
PLL1 is the main phase-locked loop, which mainly generates the clock signal with maximum frequency of 120MHz for the system clock. The clock output frequency of PLL1 is configured by RCM_PLL1CFG register, the clock frequency is adjusted by setting the multiplication/division factor in the formula, and PLL1 shall be disabled during configuration.

6.3.3.2 **PLL2**

PLL2 is dedicated to providing clock signals to I2S, and the clock frequency is jointly determined by the related bits in RCM_PLL1CFG and RCM_PLL2CFG registers (see the register function description for details).

6.3.4 Clock tree

Figure 5 APM32F411xCxE Clock Tree



Note:

(1) HCLK means AHB clock signal.

(2) PLCK1 and PLCK2 are clock signal connected to APB1 and APB2 respectively.

(3) FCLK is free running clock of Arm® Cortex®-M4F with FPU.

(4) The frequency of AHB, APB2 (high-speed APB) and APB1 (low-speed APB) domains can be configured through multiple prescalers. Besides, the maximum frequency of AHB domain is 120MHz, the maximum frequency of APB2 domain is 120MHz, and the maximum allowable frequency of APB1 is 60MHz.

(5) The maximum frequency obtained by the system clock is 120MHz.

(6) The clock source of OTG_FS is PLL1CLK with frequency of 48MHz, and the clock source of the clock with frequency of 48MHz is from PLL48CLK.

(7) Only when the corresponding enable bits are set, can the peripheral obtain the clock signal.

(8) ADC clock can be divided into analog circuit clock and digital circuit clock. The clock management unit provides a prescaler for the analog circuit clock of ADC, so that the ADC can work at the clock frequency of PCLK2 after 2/4/6/8 frequency division, and at this time the clock can be used by all ADC; the clock frequency of digital circuit of ADC is equal to PCLK2, and ADC1/2 clocks can be enabled respectively through the corresponding bits of RCM_APB2CLKEN register.

(9) SysTick (system timer) can be provided by the clock signal after frequency division of HCLK8. Different clock sources can be selected by setting SysTick control and status registers.

(10) Frequency assignment of all TMRxCLK (timer clocks) is automatically set by hardware according to the following two situations:

- If the corresponding APB prescaler factor is 1, the clock frequency of the timer is the same as the frequency of the APB bus.
- Otherwise, the clock frequency of the timer will be set to twice the frequency of the APB bus connected to it.

(11) The maximum output frequency of MCO1/2 is 120MHz

(12) For the structure of PLL1 and PLL2, please see the chapter of PLL and PLLx Configuration Register.

6.3.5 Clock source selection of RTC

By setting RTCSRCSEL bit in RCM_BDCTRL (backup domain control register), you can select to divide the frequency of HSECLK into 1MHz clock signal, and use LSECLK or LSICLK as the clock source of RTC. The selection of clock source can be changed only when the backup domain is reset.

Because LSECLK is in the backup domain, and HSECLK and LSICLK are not in the backup domain, different clocks will be selected as the clock source of RTC, the working condition of RTC is different, and details can be seen in the following table:

Table 32 Working Condition of RTC When Different Clock Sources are Selected

Clock Source	Working Condition
LSECLK is selected as RTC clock	As long as V_{BAT} maintains power supply, RTC will continue to work even if V_{DD} is powered off
LSICLK is selected as automatic wake-up unit clock	If V_{DD} is powered off, the automatic wake-up unit state cannot be guaranteed.
HSECLK is used as RTC clock after frequency division	If the V_{DD} is powered off or the internal voltage regulator is disabled (the power supply of 1.2V domain is cut off), the RTC state is uncertain, so the BPWEN bit (cancel the write protection of backup area) of PMU_CTRL (power control register) must be set to "1".

6.3.6 Clock source selection of IWDT

When IWDT (independent watchdog) is enabled, LSICLK oscillator will be enabled by force, and when it is stable, it will provide the clock signal to IWDT.

After LSICLK is enabled by force, it will always be enabled and cannot be disabled.

6.3.7 Clock source selection of MCO

There are two MCU clock output pins, i.e. MCO1 (PA8) and MCO2 (PC9). When the corresponding GPIO ports of ports (PA8 and PC9) are configured as the corresponding multiplexing function, the clock signal can be selected to be output to MCO pin by configuring MCOxSEL bit and MCOxPSC bit in RCM_CFG (clock configuration register). See the clock tree or register functional description for specific clock signal.

6.3.8 Clock source selection of SYSCLK

After system reset, HSICLK oscillator will (directly or indirectly) be selected as the system clock, and cannot be stopped. If you want to switch the SYSCLK clock source, you must wait until the target clock source is ready (i.e. the target clock source is stable). The target clock source can be HSICLK, HSECLK and PLL1CLK.

The state bit of RCM_CTRL and RCM_CFG registers can indicate the ready clock and selected SYSCLK clock source.

6.3.9 CSS clock security system

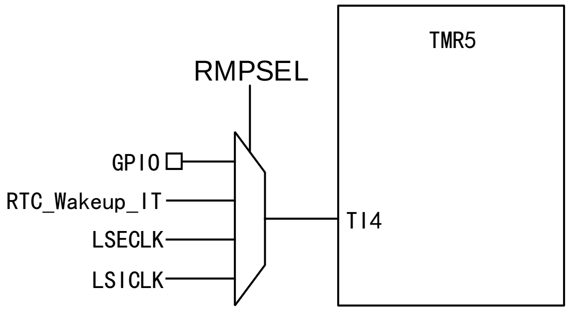
In order to prevent MCU from failing to to run normally due to short circuit of external crystal oscillator, MCU can activate CSS clock security system by software. After the security system is activated, if the HSECLK oscillator is used as the system clock directly or indirectly (used as the PLL input clock and PLL is used as the system clock), the external HSECLK oscillator will be disabled when the HSECLK fails, and the system clock will automatically switch to HSICLK. At this time, the PLLCLK which selects HSECLK as the clock input and is used as the system clock input source will also be disabled.

Note: When CSS is activated by software and HSECLK fails, CSS interrupt and NMI (non-maskable interrupt) will be generated. Since NMI is executed continuously before CSS interrupt is cleared, CSSCLR bit in RCM_INT register needs to be set to clear the interrupt.

6.3.10 TMR5-based internal/external clock measurement

Through the input capture function of TMR5 Channel 4, the frequency of certain clock source generators can be indirectly measured. The circuit diagram is as follows:

Figure 6 TMR5 Measurement Clock Frequency Circuit Diagram

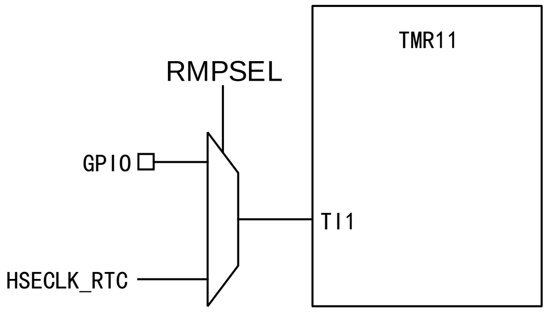


TMR5 Channel 4 can connect a GPIO port or a MCU internal clock by configuring RMPSEL bit of TMR5_OPT register

6.3.11 TMR11-based internal/external clock measurement

The external oscillator frequency can be tested through TMR11 when HSICLK is used as the system clock source. As shown in the figure below, the user can select to trigger TI1 by I/O port or internal clock by configuring the RMPSEL bit of TMR11_OPT register.

Figure 7 TMR11 Measurement Clock Frequency Circuit Diagram



6.4 Register address mapping

Table 33 RCM Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
RCM_CTRL	Clock control register	0x00
RCM_PLL1CFG	PLL1 configuration register	0x04
RCM_CFG	Clock configuration register	0x08
RCM_INT	Clock interrupt register	0x0C
RCM_AHB1RST	AHB1 peripheral reset register	0x10
RCM_AHB2RST	AHB2 peripheral reset register	0x14
Reserved	-	0x18
RCM_APB1RST	APB1 peripheral reset register	0x20

Register name	Description	Offset Address
RCM_APB2RST	APB2 peripheral reset register	0x24
RCM_AHB1CLKEN	AHB1 peripheral clock enable register	0x30
RCM_AHB2CLKEN	AHB2 peripheral clock enable register	0x34
Reserved	-	0x38
RCM_APB1CLKEN	APB1 peripheral clock enable register	0x40
RCM_APB2CLKEN	APB2 peripheral clock enable register	0x44
RCM_LPAHB1CLKEN	AHB1 peripheral clock enable register in low-power mode	0x50
RCM_LPAHB2CLKEN	AHB2 peripheral clock enable register in low-power mode	0x54
Reserved	-	0x58
RCM_LPAPB1CLKEN	APB1 peripheral clock enable register in low-power mode	0x60
RCM_LPAPB2CLKEN	APB2 peripheral clock enable register in low-power mode	0x64
RCM_BDCTRL	Backup domain control register	0x70
RCM_CSTS	Clock control/state register	0x74
RCM_SSCCFG	Spread spectrum clock configuration register	0x80
RCM_PLL2CFG	PLL2 configuration register	0x84

6.5 Register functional description

6.5.1 Clock control register (RCM_CTRL)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 XX81; X means undefined

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	HSIEN	R/W	High Speed Internal Clock Enable Set 1 or clear 0 by software. HSICLK is an RC oscillator. When one of the following conditions occurs, it will be set to 1 by hardware: power-on start, software reset, wake-up from standby mode, wake-up from stop mode, failure of external high-speed clock source (as system clock or providing system clock through PLL). When HSICLK is used as system clock or provides system clock through PLL, this bit cannot be cleared to 0. 0: HSICLK RC oscillator is disabled 1: HSICLK RC oscillator is enabled
1	HSIRDYFLG	R	High Speed Internal Clock Ready Flag 0: HSICLK RC oscillator is not stable 1: HSICLK RC oscillator is stable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2	Reserved		
7:3	HSITRM	R/W	High Speed Internal Clock Trim HSICLK has been calibrated to 16MHz±1% when the product leaves the factory. However, it changes with the temperature and voltage, but the frequency of HSICLK RC oscillator can be adjusted by this bit.
15:8	HSICAL	R	High Speed Internal Clock Calibrate HSICLK has been calibrated to 16MHz±1% when the product leaves the factory. When the system is started up, the calibration parameters will be automatically written to the register.
16	HSEEN	R/W	High Speed External Clock Enable When entering the standby or stop mode, this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware and HSECLK is disabled; when HSECLK is used as system clock source or the system clock is provided through PLL, this bit cannot be cleared to 0. 0: Disable 1: Enable
17	HSERDYFLG	R	High Speed External Clock Ready Flag When HSECLK is stable, this bit will be set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software. 0: HSECLK is not stable 1: HSECLK is stable
18	HSEBCFG	R/W	High Speed External Clock Bypass Configure Bypass mode refers to the mode in which external clock is used as the HSECLK clock source; otherwise, the resonator is used as the HSECLK clock source. 0: Non-bypass mode 1: Bypass mode
19	CSSEN	R/W	Clock Security System Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable Note: This bit can be set to 1 only when HSECLK resonator is stable.
23:20	Reserved		
24	PLL1EN	R/W	PLL1 Enable When entering the standby and stop mode, this bit is cleared to 0 by the hardware; when PLL1CLK has been configured as the clock source of the system clock (or in the process of configuration), this bit cannot be cleared to 0; in other cases, it can be set to 1 or cleared to 0 by software. 0: PLL1 is disabled 1: PLL1 is enabled
25	PLL1RDYFLG	R	PLL1 Clock Ready Flag It is set to 1 by hardware after PLL1 is locked. 0: PLL1 is unlocked 1: PLL1 is locked

Field	Name	R/W	Description
26	PLL2EN	R/W	PLL2 Enable When entering the standby and stop mode, this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware. 0: PLL2 is disabled 1: PLL2 is enabled
27	PLL2RDYFLG	R	PLL2 Clock Ready Flag It is set to 1 by hardware after PLL2 is locked. 0: PLL2 is unlocked 1: PLL2 is locked
31:28	Reserved		

6.5.2 PLL1 configuration register (RCM_PLL1CFG)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x2400 3010

Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

The register is used to configure various parameters so as to output different clock signals.

$f_{(VCO\ clock)}=f_{(PLL1\ clock\ input)}\times(PLL1A/PLLB)$

$f_{(PLL1\ clock\ output)}=f_{(VCO\ clock)}/PLL1C$

$f_{(OTG\_FS\ ,SDIO,RNG\ clock\ output)}=f_{(VCO\ clock)}/PLLD$

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:0	PLLB	R/W	Division Factor B It is used to calculate the clock frequency of VCO. These bits can be written only when PLL and PLLI2S are disabled. 000000: PLLB=0 (error) 000001: PLLB=1 (error) 000010：PLLB=2 000011：PLLB=3 …… 111110：PLLB=62 111111：PLLB=63
14:6	PLL1A	R/W	PLL Multiplication Factor A It is used to calculate VCO frequency. The calculation formula is $f_{(VCO\ output)}= f_{(VCO\ input)}\times PLL1A$, and the formula is established only when PLL1A is 50~432. 000000000: PLLA=0 (error) 000000001: PLLA=1 (error) …… 000110010：PLLA=50 …… 110110000：PLLA=432 110110001: PLLA=433 (error) …… 111111111: PLLA=511 (error)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
17:16	PLL1C	R/W	Division Factor C It is used to calculate the output clock frequency of PLL1. 00：PLL1C=2 01：PLL1C=4 10：PLL1C=6 11：PLL1C=8 Note: This bit can be written only when PLL1 is disabled.
21:18	Reserved		
22	PLLCLKS	R/W	PLL Clock Source This bit can be set or cleared by software and be used to select the clock source of PLL1 and PLL2. 0: HSICLK is used as clock source 1: HSECLK is used as clock source Note: This bit can be written only when PLL1 and PLL2 are disabled.
23	Reserved		
27:24	PLLD	R/W	Division Factor It is used to calculate the clock frequency of OTG_FS, RNG and SDIO. 0000: PLLD=0 (error) 0001: PLLD=1 (error) 0010：PLLD=2 0011：PLLD=3 0100：PLLD=4 …… 1111：PLLD=15
31:28	Reserved		

6.5.3 Clock configuration register (RCM_CFG)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

All bits of this register are set or cleared to 0 by software.

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, with 0 to 2 wait cycles. 1 or 2 wait cycles are inserted only when the access occurs during clock switching.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	SCLKSEL	R/W	System Clock Source Select When returning from stop or standby mode or the HSECLK directly or indirectly used as system clock fails, the hardware selects HSICLK as system clock by force (if the clock security system has been started) 00: HSICLK is used as system clock 01: HSECLK is used as system clock 10: PLL1CLK is used as system clock 11: Reserved

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:2	SCLKSELSTS	R	System Clock Selection Status Indicate which clock source is used as system clock; set to 1 or clear to 0 by hardware. 00: HSICLK is used as system clock 01: HSECLK is used as system clock 10: PLL1CLK output is used as system clock 11: No application
7:4	AHBPSC	R/W	AHB Clock Prescaler Factor Configure Control the prescaler factor of AHB clock. 0xxx: No frequency division for SYSCLK 1000: SYSCLK two-divided frequency 1001: SYSCLK four-divided frequency 1010: SYSCLK eight-divided frequency 1011: SYSCLK 16-divided frequency 1100: SYSCLK 64-divided frequency 1101: SYSCLK 128-divided frequency 1110: SYSCLK 256-divided frequency 1111: SYSCLK 512-divided frequency Note: Only after 1 to 16 AHB clock cycles after this bit is written, can the frequency of the clock signal be divided according to the new division factor.
9:8	Reserved		
12:10	APB1PSC	R/W	APB1 Clock Prescaler Factor Configure Prescaler factor used to control low-speed APB1 clock (PCLK1). 0xx: No frequency division for HCLK 100: HCLK 2-divided frequency 101: HCLK 4-divided frequency 110: HCLK 8-divided frequency 111: HCLK 16-divided frequency Note: PCLK1 shall not be greater than 60MHz.
15:13	APB2PSC	R/W	APB2 Clock Prescaler Factor Configure Prescaler factor used to control low-speed APB2 clock (PCLK2). 0xx: No frequency division for HCLK 100: HCLK 2-divided frequency 101: HCLK 4-divided frequency 110: HCLK 8-divided frequency 111: HCLK 16-divided frequency Note: PCLK2 shall not be greater than 120MHz.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
20:16	RTCPSC	R/W	RTC Clock Prescaler Factor Configure Control the prescaler factor, to make HSECLK frequency division generate a 1MHz clock signal to provide it to RTC. 0000X: No clock 00010: HSECLK2 frequency division 00011: HSECLK3 frequency division 00100: HSECLK4 frequency division …… 11110: HSECLK30 frequency division 11111: HSECLK31 frequency division Note: This bit must be configured before RTC selects HSECLK as the clock source.
22:21	MCO1SEL	R/W	Main Clock Output1 Select Set or clear 0 by software. 00: HSICLK is output as a clock 01: LSECLK is output as a clock 10: HSECLK is output as a clock 11: PLL1CLK is output as a clock
23	I2SSEL	R/W	I2S Clock Source Select Set this bit after reset and before enabling I2S, and this bit can be used to select the clock source of I2S. 0：PLL2CLK 1: External clock projected to I2S_CKIN pin
26:24	MCO1PSC	R/W	MCO Clock Output1 Prescaler Factor Configure 0XX: No frequency division 100: 2 divided frequency 101: 3 divided frequency 110: 4 divided frequency 111: 5 divided frequency
29:27	MCO2PSC	R/W	MCO Clock Output2 Prescaler Factor Configure 0XX: No frequency division 100: 2 divided frequency 101: 3 divided frequency 110: 4 divided frequency 111: 5 divided frequency
31:30	MCO2SEL	R/W	Main Clock Output2 Select 00: SYSCLK is output as a clock 01: PLL2CLK is output as a clock 10: HSECLK is output as a clock 11: PLL1CLK is output as a clock

6.5.4 Clock interrupt register (RCM_INT)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	LSIRDYFLG	R	LSICLK Ready Interrupt Flag When LSICLK is stable and LSIRDYEN bit is set to 1, set 1 by hardware; set 1 by software and clear 0 by LSIRDYCLR. 0: No LSICLK ready interrupt 1: LSICLK ready interrupt occurred
1	LSERDYFLG	R	LSECLK Ready Interrupt Flag When LSECLK is stable and LSERDYEN bit is set to 1, set 1 by hardware; set 1 by software and clear 0 by LSERDYCLR. 0: No LSECLK ready interrupt 1: LSECLK ready interrupt occurred
2	HSIRDYFLG	R	HSICLK Ready Interrupt Flag When HSICLK is stable and HSIRDYEN bit is set to 1, set 1 by hardware; set 1 by software and clear 0 by HSIRDYCLR. 0: No HSICLK ready interrupt 1: HSICLK ready interrupt occurred
3	HSERDYFLG	R	HSECLK Ready Interrupt Flag When HSECLK is stable and HSERDYEN bit is set to 1, set 1 by hardware; set 1 by software and clear 0 by HSERDYCLR. 0: No HSECLK ready interrupt 1: HSECLK ready interrupt occurred
4	PLL1RDYFLG	R	PLL1 Ready Interrupt Flag When PLL1 is stable and PLL1RDYEN bit is set to 1, this bit will be set to 1 by hardware; when PLL1RDYCLR is set to 1 by software, this bit will be cleared. 0: PLL1 clock ready interrupt does not occur 1: PLL1 clock ready interrupt occurred
5	PLL2RDYFLG	R	PLL2 Ready Interrupt Flag When PLL2 is stable and PLL2RDYEN bit is set to 1, this bit will be set to 1 by hardware; when PLL2RDYCLR is set to 1 by software, this bit will be cleared to 0. 0: PLL2 clock ready interrupt does not occur 1: PLL2 clock ready interrupt occurred
6	Reserved		
7	CSSFLG	R	Clock Security System Interrupt Flag When the external high-speed oscillator clock fails, it is set to 1 by hardware. When CSSCLR is set to 1 by software, this bit will be cleared to 0. 0: No security system interrupt caused by HSE clock failure 1: Clock security system interrupt is caused by HSE clock failure
8	LSIRDYEN	R/W	LSICLK Ready Interrupt Enable Enable or disable internal 28KHz RC oscillator ready interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	LSERDYEN	R/W	LSECLK Ready Interrupt Enable Enable external 32kHz RC oscillator ready interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
10	HSIRDYEN	R/W	HSICLK Ready Interrupt Enable Enable internal 8MHz RC oscillator ready interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	HSERDYEN	R/W	HSCLKE Ready Interrupt Enable Enable external 4-16MHz oscillator ready interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
12	PLL1RDYEN	R/W	PLL1 Ready Interrupt Enable Enable PLL1 ready interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
13	PLL2RDYEN	R/W	PLL2 Ready Interrupt Enable Enable PLL2 ready interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
15:14	Reserved		
16	LSIRDYCLR	W	LSICLK Ready Interrupt Clear Clear LSI ready interrupt flag bit LSIRDYFLG. 0: No effect 1: Clear
17	LSERDYCLR	W	Ready Interrupt Clear Clear LSE ready interrupt flag bit LSERDYFLG. 0: No effect 1: Clear
18	HSIRDYCLR	W	HSICLK Ready Interrupt Clear Clear HSI ready interrupt flag bit HSIRDYFLG. 0: No effect 1: Clear
19	HSERDYCLR	W	HSECLK Ready Interrupt Clear Clear HSE ready interrupt flag bit HSERDYFLG. 0: No effect 1: Clear
20	PLL1RDYCLR	W	PLL1 Ready Interrupt Clear Clear PLL1 ready interrupt flag bit PLL1RDYFLG. 0: No effect 1: Clear
21	PLL2RDYCLR	W	PLL2 Ready Interrupt Clear Clear PLL2 ready interrupt flag bit PLL2RDYFLG. 0: No effect 1: Clear
22	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
23	CSSCLR	W	Clock Security System Interrupt Clear Clear the security system interrupt flag bit CSSFLG. 0: No effect 1: Clear
31:24	Reserved		

6.5.5 AHB1 peripheral reset register (RCM_AHB1RST)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	PARST	R/W	GPIOA Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
1	PBRST	R/W	GPIOB Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
2	PCRST	R/W	GPIOC Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
3	PDRST	R/W	GPIOD Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
4	PERST	R/W	GPIOE Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
6:5	Reserved		
7	PHRST	R/W	GPIOH Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
11:8	Reserved		
12	CRCRST	R/W	CRC Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
20:13	Reserved		
21	DMA1RST	R/W	DMA1 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
22	DMA2RST	R/W	DMA2 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
31:23	Reserved		

6.5.6 AHB2 peripheral reset register (RCM_AHB2RST)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	Reserved		
1	SMCRST	R/W	SMC Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
2	QSPIRST	R/W	QSPI Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
5:3	Reserved		
6	RNGRST	R/W	RNG Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
7	OTGFSRST	R/W	OTG_FS Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
31:8	Reserved		

6.5.7 APB1 peripheral reset register (RCM_APB1RST)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

All bits can be set or cleared to 0 by software.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TMR2RST	R/W	TMR2 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
1	TMR3RST	R/W	TMR3 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
2	TMR4RST	R/W	TMR4 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
3	TMR5RST	R/W	TMR5 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
5:4	Reserved		
6	TMR12RST	R/W	TMR12 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7	TMR13RST	R/W	TMR13 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
8	TMR14RST	R/W	TMR14 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
10:9	Reserved		
11	WWDTRST	R/W	WWDT Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
13:12	Reserved		
14	SPI2RST	R/W	SPI2 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
15	SPI3RST	R/W	SPI3 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
16	Reserved		
17	USART2RST	R/W	USART2 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
18	USART3RST	R/W	USART3 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
19	UART4RST	R/W	UART4 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
20	UART5RST	R/W	UART5 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
21	I2C1RST	R/W	I2C1 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
22	I2C2RST	R/W	I2C2 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
23	I2C3RST	R/W	I2C3 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
24	Reserved		
25	CAN1RST	R/W	CAN1 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset

Field	Name	R/W	Description
26	CAN2RST	R/W	CAN2 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
27	Reserved		
28	PWRRST	R/W	Power Interface Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
31:29	Reserved		

6.5.8 APB2 peripheral reset register (RCM_APB2RST)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

All bits can be set or cleared to 0 by software.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TMR1RST	R/W	TMR1 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
1	TMR8RST	R/W	TMR8 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
3:2	Reserved		
4	USART1RST	R/W	USART1 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
5	USART6RST	R/W	USART6 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
7:6	Reserved		
8	ADC1RST	R/W	ADC1 Interface Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
9	ADC2RST	R/W	ADC2 Interface Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
10	Reserved		
11	SDIORST	R/W	SDIO Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
12	SPI1RST	R/W	SPI1 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset

Field	Name	R/W	Description
13	SPI4RST	R/W	SPI4 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
14	SYSCFGRST	R/W	SYSCFG Module Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
15	Reserved		
16	TMR9RST	R/W	TMR9 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
17	TMR10RST	R/W	TMR10 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
18	TMR11RST	R/W	TMR11 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
19	Reserved		
20	SPI5RST	R/W	SPI5 Reset 0: No effect 1: Reset
31:21	Reserved		

6.5.9 AHB1 peripheral clock enable register (RCM_AHB1CLKEN)

Offset address: 0x30

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	PAEN	R/W	GPIOA Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	PBEN	R/W	GPIOB Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	PCEN	R/W	GPIOC Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	PDEN	R/W	GPIOD Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	PEEN	R/W	GPIOE Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
6:5	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7	PHEN	R/W	GPIOH Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
11:8	Reserved		
12	CRCEN	R/W	CRC Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
20:13	Reserved		
21	DMA1EN	R/W	DMA1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
22	DMA2EN	R/W	DMA2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:23	Reserved		

6.5.10 AHB2 peripheral clock enable register (RCM_AHB2CLKEN)

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	Reserved		
1	SMCEN	R/W	SMC Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	QSPIEN	R/W	QSPI Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5:3	Reserved		
6	RNGEN	R/W	RNG Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	OTGFSEN	R/W	OTG_FS Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:8	Reserved		

6.5.11 APB1 peripheral clock enable register (RCM_APB1CLKEN)

Offset address: 0x40

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

All bits can be set or cleared to 0 by software.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TMR2EN	R/W	TMR2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	TMR3EN	R/W	TMR3 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	TMR4EN	R/W	TMR4 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	TMR5EN	R/W	TMR5 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5:4	Reserved		
6	TMR12EN	R/W	TMR12 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	TMR13EN	R/W	TMR13 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
8	TMR14EN	R/W	TMR14 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
10:9	Reserved		
11	WWDTEN	R/W	WWDT Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
13:12	Reserved		
14	SPI2EN	R/W	SPI2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15	SPI3EN	R/W	SPI3 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
16	Reserved		
17	USART2EN	R/W	USART2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
18	USART3EN	R/W	USART3 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
19	UART4EN	R/W	UART4 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
20	UART5EN	R/W	UART5 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
21	I2C1EN	R/W	I2C1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
22	I2C2EN	R/W	I2C2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
23	I2C3EN	R/W	I2C3 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
24	Reserved		
25	CAN1EN	R/W	CAN1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
26	CAN2EN	R/W	CAN2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
27	Reserved		
28	PMUEN	R/W	PMU Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:29	Reserved		

6.5.12 APB2 peripheral clock enable register (RCM_APB2CLKEN)

Offset address: 0x44

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

All bits can be set or cleared to 0 by software.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TMR1EN	R/W	TMR1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	TMR8EN	R/W	TMR8 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3:2	Reserved		
4	USART1EN	R/W	USART1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5	USART6EN	R/W	USART6 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7:6	Reserved		
8	ADC1EN	R/W	ADC1 Interface Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	ADC2EN	R/W	ADC2 Interface Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
10	Reserved		
11	SDIOEN	R/W	SDIO Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
12	SPI1EN	R/W	SPI1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
13	SPI4EN	R/W	SPI4 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
14	SYSCFGEN	R/W	SYSCFG Module Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15	Reserved		
16	TMR9EN	R/W	TMR9 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
17	TMR10EN	R/W	TMR10 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
18	TMR11EN	R/W	TMR11 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
19	Reserved		
20	SPI5EN	R/W	SPI5 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:21	Reserved		

6.5.13 AHB1 peripheral clock enable register in low-power mode (RCM_LPAHB1CLKEN)

Offset address: 0x50

Reset value: 0x0061 900F

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

The function of this register is to enable the peripheral clock of AHB1 in low-power (sleep) mode.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	PAEN	R/W	GPIOA Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	PBEN	R/W	GPIOB Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	PCEN	R/W	GPIOC Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	PDEN	R/W	GPIOD Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	PEEN	R/W	GPIOE Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
6:5	Reserved		
7	PHEN	R/W	GPIOH Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
11:8	Reserved		
12	CRCEN	R/W	CRC Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
14:13	Reserved		
15	FMCEN	R/W	FMC Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
16	SRAM1EN	R/W	SRAM1Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
20:17	Reserved		
21	DMA1EN	R/W	DMA1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
22	DMA2EN	R/W	DMA2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:23	Reserved		

6.5.14 AHB2 peripheral clock enable register in low-power mode (RCM_LPAHB2CLKEN)

Offset address: 0x54

Reset value: 0x0000 0080

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

The function of this register is to enable the peripheral clock of AHB2 in low-power (sleep) mode.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	Reserved		
1	SMCEN	R/W	SMC Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	QSPIEN	R/W	QSPI Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5:3	Reserved		
6	RNGEN	R/W	RNG Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	OTGFSEN	R/W	OTG_FS Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:8	Reserved		

6.5.15 APB1 peripheral clock enable register in low-power mode (RCM_LPAPB1CLKEN)

Offset address: 0x60

Reset value: 0x10E2 C80F

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

All bits can be set or cleared to 0 by software.

The function of this register is to enable the peripheral clock of APB1 in low-power (sleep) mode.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TMR2EN	R/W	TMR2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	TMR3EN	R/W	TMR3 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	TMR4EN	R/W	TMR4 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3	TMR5EN	R/W	TMR5 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5:4	Reserved		
6	TMR12EN	R/W	TMR12 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	TMR13EN	R/W	TMR13 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
8	TMR14EN	R/W	TMR14 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
10:9	Reserved		
11	WWDTEN	R/W	WWDT Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
13:12	Reserved		
14	SPI2EN	R/W	SPI2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15	SPI3EN	R/W	SPI3 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
16	Reserved		
17	USART2EN	R/W	USART2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
18	USART3EN	R/W	USART3 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
19	UART4EN	R/W	UART4 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
20	UART5EN	R/W	UART5 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
21	I2C1EN	R/W	I2C1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
22	I2C2EN	R/W	I2C2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
23	I2C3EN	R/W	I2C3 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
24	Reserved		
25	CAN1EN	R/W	CAN1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
26	CAN2EN	R/W	CAN2 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
27	Reserved		
28	PMUEN	R/W	PMU Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:29	Reserved		

6.5.16 APB2 peripheral clock enable register in low-power mode (RCM_LPAPB2CLKEN)

Offset address: 0x64

Reset value: 0x0007 7930

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

All bits can be set or cleared to 0 by software.

The function of this register is to enable the peripheral clock of AHB2 in low-power (sleep) mode.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TMR1EN	R/W	TMR1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	TMR8EN	R/W	TMR8 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3:2	Reserved		
4	USART1EN	R/W	USART1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	USART6EN	R/W	USART6 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7:6	Reserved		
8	ADC1EN	R/W	ADC1 Interface Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9	ADC2EN	R/W	ADC2 Interface Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
10	Reserved		
11	SDIOEN	R/W	SDIO Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
12	SPI1EN	R/W	SPI1 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
13	SPI4EN	R/W	SPI4 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
14	SYSCFGEN	R/W	SYSCFG Module Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15	Reserved		
16	TMR9EN	R/W	TMR9 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
17	TMR10EN	R/W	TMR10 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
18	TMR11EN	R/W	TMR11 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
19	Reserved		
20	SPI5EN	R/W	SPI5 Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:21	Reserved		

6.5.17 Backup domain control register (RCM_BDCTRL)

Offset address: 0x70

Reset value: 0x0000 0000, which can be reset effectively only by RTC domain

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, with 0 to 3 wait cycles

When the register is accessed continuously, the waiting state will be inserted.

Note: Only when BPWEN bit in PMU_CTRL is set to 1, can LSEEN, LSEBCFG, RTCSRCSEL and RTCCLKEN be changed.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	LSEEN	R/W	Low-Speed External Oscillator Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	LSERDYFLG	R	Low-Speed External Clock Ready Flag Set 1 by hardware when LSECLK is stable, and clear 0 by hardware when it is unstable. 0: Not ready 1. Ready
2	LSEBCFG	R/W	Low-Speed External Clock Bypass Mode Configure Bypass mode refers to the mode in which external clock is used as the LSECLK clock source; otherwise, the resonator is used as the LSECLK clock source. 0: Non-bypass mode 1: Bypass mode
7:3	Reserved		
9:8	RTCSRCSEL	R/W	RTC Clock Source Select First set the RTCRST bit to reset the RTC domain, and then select the RTC clock source. It is impossible to directly configure the register to modify. 00: No clock 01: LSECLK is used as RTC clock 10: LSICLK is used as RTC clock 11: HSECLK is used as RTC clock after frequency division (the frequency division factor is determined by RTCPSC bit of RCM_CFG register)
14:10	Reserved		
15	RTCCLKEN	R/W	RTC Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
16	BDRST	R/W	Backup Domain Software Reset Set 1 or clear o by software 0: Reset is not activated 1: Reset the backup domain (only affect LSECLK oscillator, RTC real-time clock and register RCM_BDCTRL)
31:17	Reserved		

6.5.18 Clock control/state register (RCM_CSTS)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0E00 0000; except reset flag, all are cleared by system reset, and reset flag can only be cleared by power reset.

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, with 0 to 3 wait cycles. When the register is accessed continuously, the waiting state will be inserted.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	LSIEN	R/W	Low-Speed Internal Oscillator Enable Set 1 or clear 0 by software. 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	LSIRDYFLG	R	Low-Speed Internal Oscillator Ready Flag Set 1 by hardware when LSICLK is stable, and clear 0 by hardware when it is unstable. 0: Not ready 1. Ready
23:2	Reserved		
24	RSTFLGCLR	RT_W	Reset Flag Clear Set or clear reset flag by software, including RSTFLGCLR. 0: Disable 1: Clear reset flag
25	BORRSTFLG	R	BOR Flag It is set by hardware when brownout reset occurs; otherwise it is cleared by setting RSTFLGCLR bit. 0: Reset did not occur 1: Reset occurred
26	PINRSTFLG	R	PIN Reset Flag Set by hardware when pin reset occurs; otherwise, clear by setting RSTFLGCLR. 0: Reset did not occur 1: Reset occurred
27	PODRSTFLG	R	POR/PDR Reset Flag Set 1 by hardware; and clear by software by writing RSTFLGCLR bit. 0: No power-on/power-down reset occurs 1: Power-on/power-down reset occurs
28	SWRSTFLG	R	Software Reset Flag Set 1 by hardware; and clear by software by writing RSTFLGCLR bit. 0: Reset did not occur 1: Reset occurred
29	IWDTRSTFLG	R	Independent Watchdog Reset Flag Set 1 by hardware when independent watchdog reset occurs in V_{DD} area; clear by software by writing RSTFLGCLR bit. 0: Reset did not occur 1: Reset occurred
30	WWDTRSTFLG	R	Window Watchdog Reset Flag Set 1 by hardware when window watchdog is reset; clear by software by writing RSTFLGCLR bit. 0: Reset did not occur 1: Reset occurred
31	LPWRRSTFLG	R	Low Power Reset Flag Set 1 by hardware when low-power management is reset; clear by software by writing RSTFLGCLR bit. 0: Reset did not occur 1: Reset occurred

6.5.19 Spread spectrum clock configuration register (RCM_SSCCFG)

Offset address: 0x80

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, with 0 to 3 wait cycles.

Because the spread spectrum clock only acts on PLL1, this register can be written only when PLL1 is not enabled to configure the spread spectrum clock.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
12:0	MODPCFG	R/W	Modulation Period Configure Set 1 or clear 0 by software. Configure the input of modulation period.
27:13	STEP	R/W	Incrementation Step Set 1 or clear 0 by software. Configure the input of modulation amplitude.
29:28	Reserved		
30	SSSEL	R/W	Spread Spectrum Select It is set or cleared by software. 0: Center spread 1: Downward spread
31	SSEN	R/W	Spread Spectrum Enable Set 1 or clear 0 by software. 0: Disable 1: Enable

6.5.20 PLL2 configuration register (RCM_PLL2CFG)

Offset address: 0x84

Reset value: 0x2400 3000

Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

The register is used to configure various parameters so as to output different clock signals.

$f_{(VCO\ clock)}=f_{(PLL2\ clock\ input)}\times(PLL2A/PLLB)$

$f_{(PLL2\ clock\ output)}=f_{(VCO\ clock)}/PLL2C$

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:0	Reserved		
5:0	PLL2B	R/W	Division Factor B It is used to calculate the clock frequency of VCO. These bits can be written only when PLL and PLLI2S are disabled. 000000: PLLB=0 (error) 000001: PLLB=1 (error) 000010:PLLB=2 000011:PLLB=3 …… 111110:PLLB=62 111111:PLLB=63

Field	Name	R/W	Description
14:6	PLL2A	R/W	PLL Multiplication Factor It is used to calculate VCO frequency. The calculation formula is $f_{(VCO\ output)} = f_{(VCO\ input)} \times PLL2A$, and the formula is established only when PLL2A is 50~432. 000000000: PLL2A=0 (error) 000000001: PLL2A=1 (error) …… 000110010: PLL2A=50 …… 001100011: PLL2A=99 001100100: PLL2A=100 …… 110110000: PLL2A=432 110110001: PLL2A=433 (error) …… 111111111: PLL2A=511 (error)
27:15	Reserved		
30:28	PLL2C	R/W	Division Factor This bit can be set or cleared by software, and this variable can be controlled to change the clock frequency provided to I2S. This bit can be set only when PLL2 is disabled. Since I2S can only work at a frequency not greater than 192MHz, the range of PLL2C value shall be 2~7. 000: PLL2C=0 (wrong configuration) 001: PLL2C=1 (wrong configuration) 010: PLL2C=2 …… 111: PLL2C=7
31	Reserved		

6.5.21 Selecting Clock Configuration Registers（RCM_CFGSEL）

Offset address: 0x8C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Access: Access in the form of word, half word and byte, without wait cycle.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
23:0	Reserved		
24	CLKPSEL	R/W	Clock Prescaler Select 0:If APB1PSC and APB2PSC are configured for 1 division, then TMRxCLK=HCLK. Otherwise, TMRxCLK=HCLK*2. 1:If APB1PSC and APB2PSC are configured as 1 division or 2 division, then TMRxCLK=HCLK. Otherwise, TMRxCLK=HCLK*4.
31:25	Reserved		

7 Power management unit (PMU)

7.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 34 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

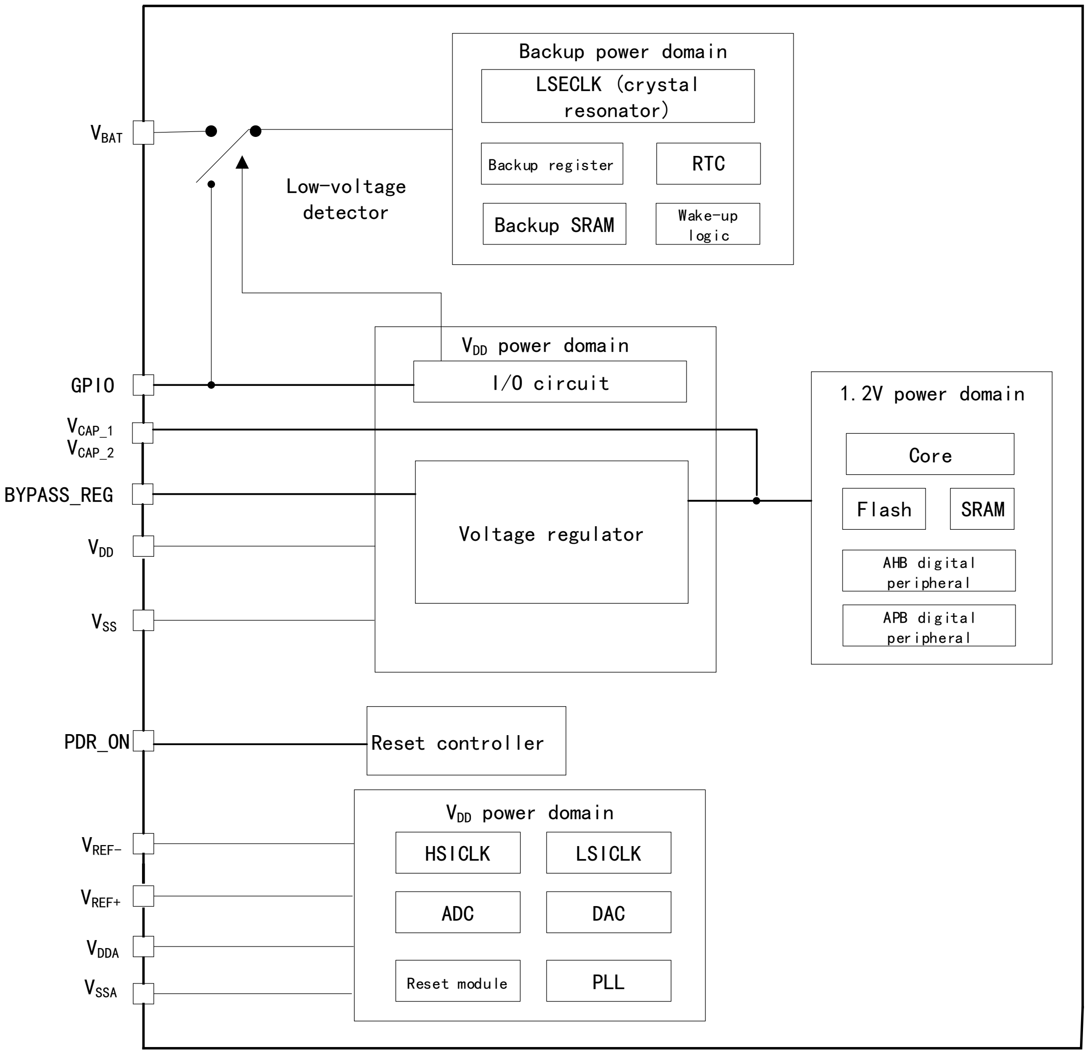
Full name in English	English abbreviation
Power Management Unit	PMU
Power On Reset	POR
Power Down Reset	PDR
Brown-out Reset	BOR
Power Voltage Detector	PVD

7.2 Introduction

The power supply is the basis for stable operation of a system. The working voltage is 1.8~3.6V. It can provide 1.2V power supply through the built-in voltage regulator. If the main power V_{DD} is powered down, it can supply power to the backup power supply area through V_{BAT}.

7.3 Structure block diagram

Figure 8 Power Supply Structure Block Diagram



7.4 Functional Description

7.4.1 Power domain

The power domain of the product includes: V_{DD} power domain, V_{DDA} power domain, 1.2V power domain, and backup power domain.

7.4.1.1 V_{DD} power domain

Supply power through V_{DD}/V_{SS} pin to the voltage regulator and I/O.

Voltage regulator

Power can be supplied to 1.2V power domain in the following operating modes:

- Normal mode: In this mode, 1.2V power supply area operates at full power, and the level of the output voltage can be selected through VOSSEL bit of the register PMU_CTRL.
- Stop mode: In this mode, 1.2V power supply area works in low-power state, all clocks are disabled, peripherals stop working, and the set voltage output level remains unchanged.
- Standby mode: In this mode, 1.2V power supply area stops power supply, and except for the standby circuit, the content of register and SRAM will be lost

7.4.1.2 V_{DDA} power domain

Power supply is provided through V_{DDA}/V_{SSA} and V_{REF+}/V_{REF-} pins to power the ADC, HSICLK, LSICLK, PLL and reset module.

Independent ADC power supply and reference voltage

Independent ADC power supply can improve conversion accuracy, and the specific power pins are as follows:

- V_{DDA}: Power pin of ADC
- V_{SSA}: Independent power ground pin
- V_{REF+}/V_{REF-}: Reference voltage pin of ADC

7.4.1.3 1.2V power domain

The core, Flash, SRAM and digital peripherals are powered by voltage regulator.

7.4.1.4 Backup power domain

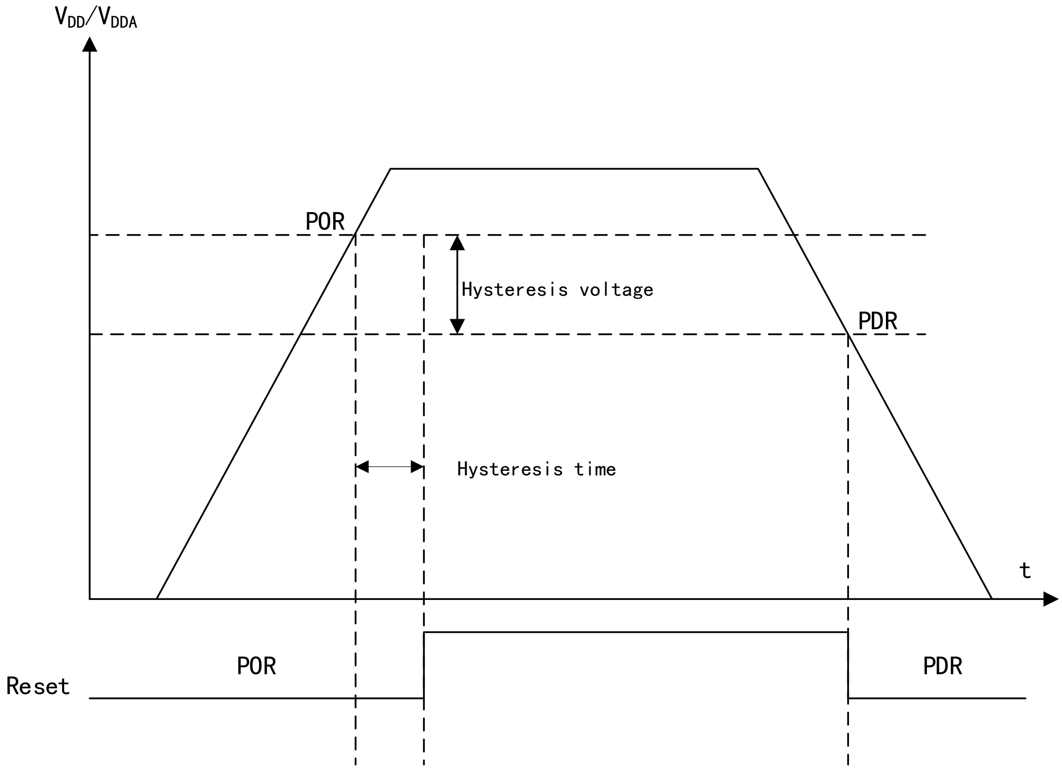
When V_{DD} exists, the backup power supply area is powered by V_{DD}. When V_{DD} is powered down, the backup power supply area is powered by V_{BAT}, which is used to save the content of backup register and maintain RTC function. Power the LSECLK crystal oscillator, RTC, PC13, PC14, PC15 and wake-up logics.

7.4.2 Power Management

7.4.2.1 Power-on/power-down reset (POR and PDR)

When the V_{DD}/V_{DDA} is lower than the threshold voltage V_{POR} and V_{PDR}, the chip will automatically remain in the reset state. The waveform diagrams of power-on reset and power-down reset are as follows. For POR, PDR, hysteresis voltage and hysteresis time, please refer to the *Datasheet*.

Figure 9 Power-on Reset and Power-down Reset Oscillogram

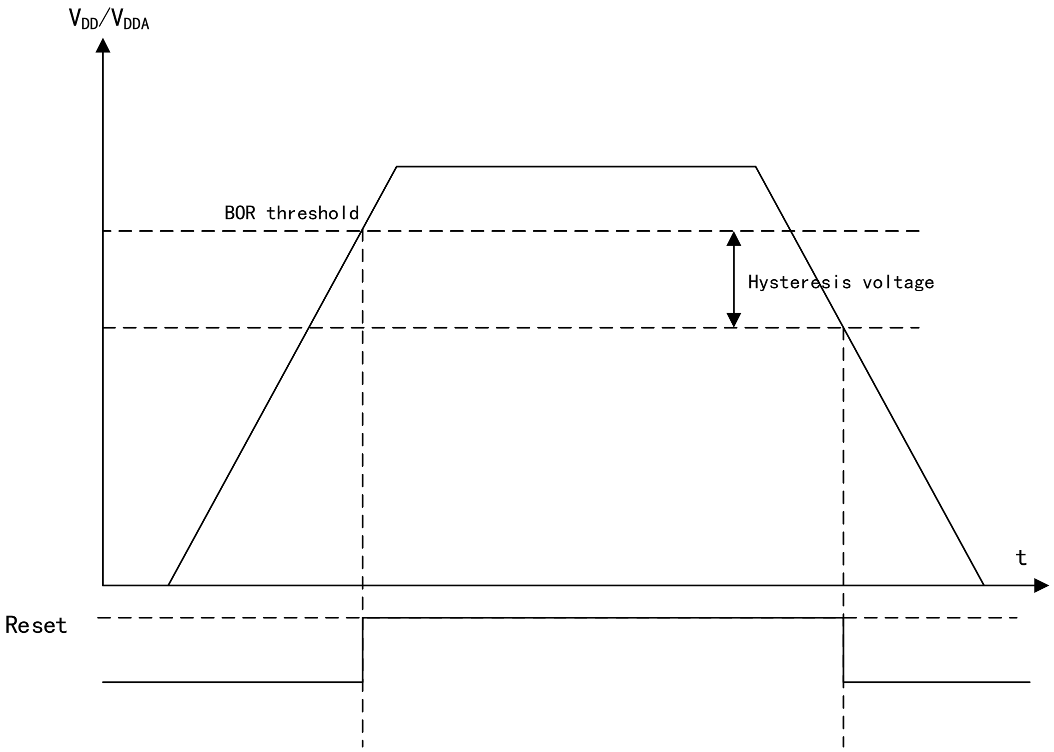


7.4.2.2 **Brown-out reset (BOR)**

When it is detected that V_{DD}/V_{DDA} is lower than the threshold voltage V_{BOR}, the chip will automatically remain in reset state, and V_{BOR} can be configured through option byte. The followings are 4 thresholds of V_{BOR}:

- V_{BOR0}: BOR is disabled, and the voltage range is 1.80~2.10V
- V_{BOR1}: BOR level is 1, and the voltage range is 2.10~2.40V
- V_{BOR2}: BOR level is 2, and the voltage range is 2.40~2.70V
- V_{BOR3}: BOR level is 3, and the voltage range is 2.70~3.60V

Figure 10 BOR Threshold Oscillogram



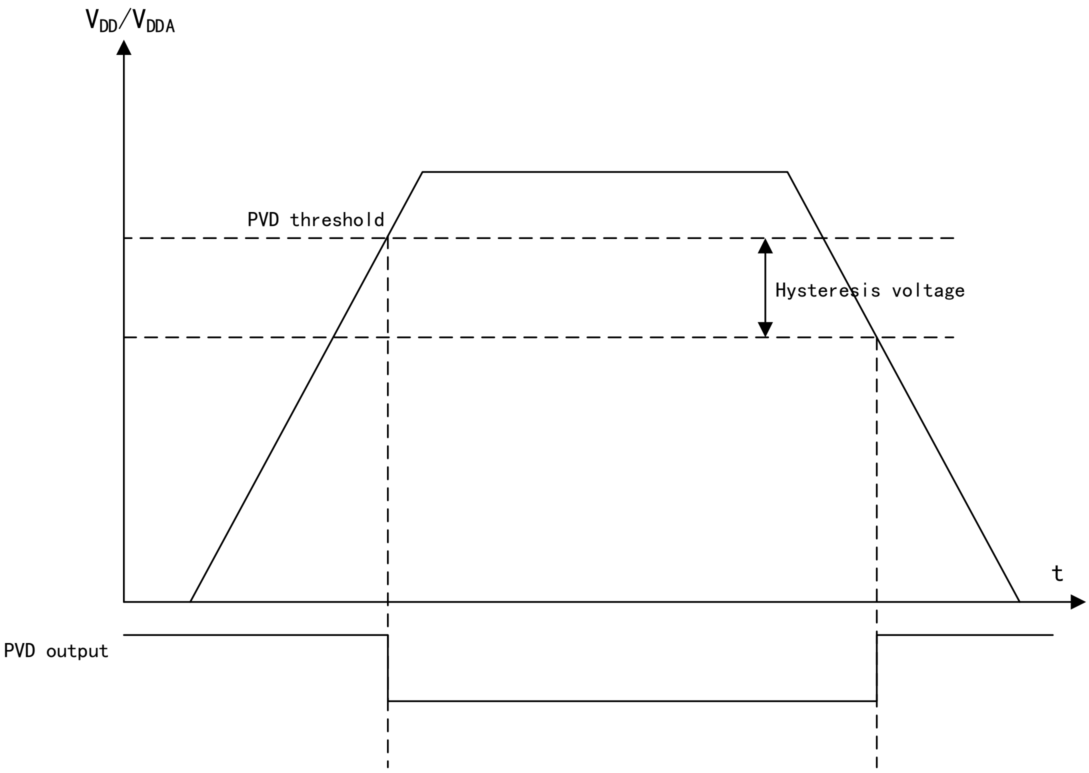
7.4.2.3 **Power voltage detector (PVD)**

A threshold can be set for PVD to monitor whether V_{DD}/V_{DDA} is higher or lower than the threshold. If the interrupt is enabled, the interrupt can be triggered to process the V_{DD}/V_{DDA} exceeding the threshold in advance. The usage of PVD is as follows:

(1) Set the PVDEN bit of the configuration register PMU_CTRL to 1 to enable PVD
(2) Select the voltage threshold of PVD through the PLSEL[2:0] bit of the configuration register PMU_CTRL
(3) The PVDOFLG bit of the configuration register PMU_CSTS indicates whether the value of V_{DD} is higher or lower than the threshold of PVD
(4) When it is detected that V_{DD}/V_{DDA} is lower or higher than the threshold of PVD, PVD interrupt will be generated

The threshold waveform of PVD is shown below. Please see "Datasheet" for PVD threshold and hysteresis voltage.

Figure 11 PVD Threshold Oscillogram



7.4.3 Power control

7.4.3.1 Reduce the power in low-power mode

There are three low-power modes: sleep mode, stop mode and standby mode. The power is reduced by disabling the core and clock source and setting the voltage regulator.

The power consumption, wake-up start time, wake-up mode and data storage after wake-up of each low-power mode are different; the lower the power consumption is, the longer the wake-up time is, the less the wake-up mode is, the less the data saved are after wake-up; users can choose the most appropriate low-power mode according to their needs. The following table shows the difference among three low-power modes.

Table 35 Difference among "Sleep Mode, Stop Mode and Standby Mode"

Mode	Description	Entry method	Wake-up mode	Voltage regulator	Effect on 1.2V area clock	Effect on V_{DD} area clock
Sleep	Arm® Cortex®-M4F core	Call WFI instruction	Any interrupt	On	Only the core clock	N/A

<table>
<tr><th>Mode</th><th>Description</th><th>Entry method</th><th>Wake-up mode</th><th>Voltage regulator</th><th>Effect on 1.2V area clock</th><th>Effect on V_{DD} area clock</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>stops, and all peripherals including the core peripheral are still working</td><td>Call WFE instruction</td><td>Wakeup event</td><td>On</td><td>is disabled and it has no effect on other clocks and ADC clocks</td><td>N/A</td></tr>
<tr><td>Stop</td><td>All clocks have stopped</td><td>PDDSCFG and LPDSCFG bits +SLEEPDEEP bit +WFI or WFE</td><td>Any external interrupt</td><td>Enable or be in low-power mode</td><td rowspan="2">Disable all clocks of 1.2V area</td><td rowspan="2">HSICLK and HSECLK oscillators are disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>Standby</td><td>1.2V power is off</td><td>PDDSCFG bit +SLEEPDEEP bit +WFI or WFE</td><td>Rising edge of WKUP pin, RTC alarm event, RTC wake-up event, RTC timestamp event, RTC tamper event, external reset on NRST pin, and IWDT reset</td><td>OFF</td></tr>
</table>

Sleep mode

The characteristics of sleep mode are shown in the table below

Table 36 Characteristics of Sleep Mode

Characteristics	Description
Enter	Enter the sleep mode immediately by executing WFI or WFE instructions; When SLEEPONEINT is set to 0 and WFI or WFE instruction is executed, the system will enter the sleep mode immediately; when SLEEPONEINT is set to 1, the system will exit the interrupt program and then enter the sleep mode immediately.
Wake-up	If WFI instruction is executed to enter the sleep mode, wake up by any interrupt; if WFE instruction is executed to enter the sleep mode, wake up by an event.
When entering sleep mode	The core stops working, all peripherals are still running, and the data in the core registers and memory before sleep are saved.
Wakeup delay	N/A

Characteristics	Description
After wake-up	If the system wakes up by an interrupt, it will first enter the interrupt, then exit the interrupt, and then execute the program after WFI instruction. If the system wakes up by an event, it will directly execute the program after WFE instruction.

Stop mode

The characteristics of stop mode are shown in the table below:

Table 37 Characteristics of Stop Mode

Characteristics	Description
Enter	SLEEPDEEP bit of the core register is set to 1, PDDSCFG bit of the register PMU_CTRL is set to 0, and when executing WFI or WFE instruction, enter the stop mode immediately; When LPDSCFG bit of the register PMU_CTRL is set to 0, the voltage regulator is working in normal mode; when LPDSCFG bit of the register PMU_CTRL is set to 1, the voltage regulator is working in low-power mode.
Wake-up	If WFI instruction is executed to enter the stop mode, wake up by any interrupt; if WFE instruction is executed to enter the stop mode, wake up by an event.
When stopping	The core and the peripheral will stop working, and the data in the core register and memory before stop will be saved.
Wakeup delay	Wake-up time of HSICLK oscillator + wake-up time of voltage regulator from low-power mode.
After wake-up	If the system wakes up by an interrupt, it will first enter the interrupt, then exit the interrupt, and then execute the program after WFI instruction. If the system wakes up by an event, it will directly execute the program after WFE instruction.

Standby mode

The characteristics of standby mode are shown in the table below:

Table 38 Standby Mode

Characteristics	Description
Enter	SLEEPDEEP bit of the core register is set to 1, PDDSCFG bit of the register PMU_CTRL is set to 1, WUEFLG bit is set to 0 and when WFI or WFE instruction is executed, it will enter the standby mode immediately.
Wake-up	Wake up by rising edge of WKUP pin, RTC alarm, wake-up, tamper event or NRST pin external reset and IWDT reset.
In standby state	The core and the peripheral will stop working, and the data in the core register and memory will be lost.
Wakeup delay	Chip reset time.
After wake-up	The program starts executing from the beginning.

7.4.3.2 Reduce the power in run mode

In the run mode, the power in run mode can be reduced by reducing the system clock, enabling or disabling the peripheral clock on the APB/AHB bus.

7.4.3.3 RTC multiplexing function is awakened from low-power mode

RTC multiplexing functions include RTC alarm, RTC wake-up event, RTC tamper event and RTC timestamp event. These functions can wake up MCU from stop mode or standby mode, and RTC provides programmable time base in order to wake up the devices regularly from stop or standby mode.

7.5 Register address mapping

Table 39 PMU Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
PMU_CTRL	Power control register	0x00
PMU_CSTS	Power control/status register	0x04

7.6 Register functional description

7.6.1 Power control register (PMU_CTRL)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 8000 (cleared when waking up from standby mode)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	LPDSCFG	R/W	Low Power Deepsleep Configure Configure the working state of the voltage regulator in stop mode. 0: Enable 1: Low-power mode
1	PDDSCFG	R/W	Power Down Deep Sleep Configure When the CPU enters deep sleep, configure the voltage regulator state in standby or stop mode. 0: The voltage regulator is controlled by LPDSCFG bit when entering the stop mode 1: Enter standby mode
2	WUFLGCLR	RC_W1	Wakeup Flag Clear 0: Invalid 1: Clear the wake-up flag after 2 system clock cycles by writing 1
3	SBFLGCLR	RC_W1	Standby Flag Clear 0: Invalid 1: Write 1 to clear the standby flag
4	PVDEN	R/W	Power Voltage Detector Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:5	PLSEL	R/W	PVD Level Select 000：2.2V 001：2.3V 010：2.4V 011：2.5V 100：2.6V 101：2.7V 110：2.8V 111：2.9V Note: See "Datasheet" for detailed instructions
8	BPWEN	R/W	Backup Domain Write Access Enable Backup area refers to RTC and backup register; write access is disabled after reset, and is allowed after writing 1. 0: Write is disabled 1: Write is enabled
9	FPDSM	R/W	Flash power-down in Stop Mode 0: Flash does not power down when entering the stop mode 1: Flash powers down when entering the stop mode
10	LPRLV	R/W	Low Power Regulator Low Voltage in Stop Mode 0: When entering the stop mode, the low-power regulator is enabled 1: When entering the stop mode, the low-power regulator is in low-voltage mode and Flash is in deep sleep mode
11	MRLV	R/W	Main Regulator Low Voltage in Stop Mode 0: Voltage of main regulator when entering the stop mode 1: When entering the stop mode, the main regulator is in low-voltage mode and Flash is in deep sleep mode
12	Reserved		
13	ADCO1EN	R/W	ADC Option 1 Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable These bits can be set only when the following conditions are met: Prefetch disable: V_{DD}=2.7V~3.6V; SYSCFG_PMCFG[ADCO2EN]=0.
15:14	VOSSEL	R/W	Regulator Voltage Scaling Output Selection 00: Reserved 01: Level 3 mode 10: Level 2 mode 11: Level 1 mode
19:16	Reserved		
20	FSMODE	R/W	Force Flash Sleep Mode 0: Standard mode 1: Stop mode or deep sleep mode
21	FLASHEN	R/W	Flash Interface Enable 0: Enable 1: Disable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:22	Reserved		

7.6.2 Power control/status register (PMU_CSTS)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000 (not cleared when waking up from standby mode)

Compared with the standard APB read, it requires extra APB cycle to read this register

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	WUEFLG	R	Wakeup Event Flag This bit is set by hardware, indicating whether wake-up event or RTC alarm wake-up event, RTC tamper event, RTC timestamp or RTC wake-up event occurs on WKUP pin. 0: Not occur 1: Occurred Note: Enable the WKUP pin, and an event will be detected when the WKUP pin is at high level.
1	SBFLG	R	Standby Flag This bit is set to 1 by hardware, and can only be cleared by POR/PDR (power-on/power-down reset) or by setting the SBFLGCLR bit of the power control register (PMU_CTRL). 0: Not enter the standby mode 1: Have entered the standby mode
2	PVDOFLG	R	PVD Output Flag Indicate whether V_{DD}/V_{DDA} is higher than the PVD threshold selected by PLSEL[2:0] This bit is valid only when PVD is enabled by PVDEN bit. 0: V_{DD}/V_{DDA} is higher than PVD threshold 1: V_{DD}/V_{DDA} is lower than PVD threshold Note: This bit is 0 after reset or when entering the standby mode (PVD stops work).
3	BKPRFLG	R	Backup regulator ready Flag This bit is set to 1 by hardware, indicating whether the backup regulator is ready. 0: Not ready 1. Ready
7:4	Reserved		
8	WKUPCFG	R/W	WKUP Pin Configure When WKUP is used as a normal I/O, the event on WKUP pin cannot wake up the CPU in standby mode; it can wake up CPU only when it is not used as a normal I/O. 0: Configure normal I/O 1: Can wake up MCU Note: Clear this bit during system reset
9	BKPREN	R/W	Backup Regulator Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
13:10	Reserved		
14	VOSRFLG	R	Regulator Voltage Scaling Output Selection Ready Flag 0: Not ready 1. Ready
31:15	Reserved		

8 Nested Vector Interrupt Controller (NVIC)

8.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table40 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Non Maskable Interrupt	NMI

8.2 Introduction

The Cortex-M4F core in the product integrates nested vectored interrupt controller (NVIC), which is closely coupled with the core, and can handle exceptions and interrupts and power management control efficiently with low delay. Please see *Cortex-M4F Technical Reference Manual* for more instructions about NVIC.

8.3 Main characteristics

(1) 75 maskable interrupt channels (excluding 16 Arm® Cortex®-M4F interrupt lines)

(2) 16 programmable priority levels (use 4-bit interrupt priority level)

(3) Low-delay exception and interrupt processing

(4) Power management control

(5) Realization of system control register

8.4 Interrupt and exception vector table

Table 41 APM32F411xCxE Interrupt and Exception Vector Table

Exception type	Vector No.	Priority	Vector address	Description
-	-	-	0x0000_0000	Reserved
Reset	-	-3	0x0000_0004	Reset
NMI	-	-2	0x0000_0008	Non-maskable interrupt
HardFault	-	-1	0x0000_000C	Various hardware faults
MemManage	-	Can set	0x0000_0010	Memory management
BusFault	-	Can set	0x0000_0014	-
UsageFault	-	Can set	0x0000_0018	-

Exception type	Vector No.	Priority	Vector address	Description
-	-	-	0x0000_001C-0x0000_002B	Reserved
SVCall	-	Can set	0x0000_002C	SWI instruction realizes system service call
Debug Monitor	-	Can set	0x0000_0030	Debug monitor
-	-	-	0x0000_0034	Reserved
PendSV	-	Can set	0x0000_0038	Pending system service request
SysTick	-	Can set	0x0000_003C	System tick timer
WWDT	0	Can set	0x0000_0040	Window watchdog interrupt
EXTI16/PVD	1	Can set	0x0000_0044	EINT line 16 interrupt/power supply voltage detection interrupt through EINT line
EXTI21/TAMP_STAMP	2	Can set	0x0000_0048	EINT line 21 interrupt/tamper and timestamp interrupt through EINT line
EXTI22/RTC_WKUP	3	Can set	0x0000_004C	EINT line 22 interrupt/RTC wake-up interrupt through EINT line
FLASH	4	Can set	0x0000_0050	Flash memory global interrupt
RCM	5	Can set	0x0000_0054	RCM interrupt
EINT0	6	Can set	0x0000_0058	EINT Line 0 interrupt
EINT1	7	Can set	0x0000_005C	EINT Line 1 interrupt
EINT2	8	Can set	0x0000_0060	EINT Line 2 interrupt
EINT3	9	Can set	0x0000_0064	EINT Line 3 interrupt
EINT4	10	Can set	0x0000_0068	EINT Line 4 interrupt
DMA1_STR0	11	Can set	0x0000_006C	DMA1 data stream 0 global interrupt
DMA1_STR1	12	Can set	0x0000_0070	DMA1 data stream 1 global interrupt
DMA1_STR2	13	Can set	0x0000_0074	DMA1 data stream 2 global interrupt
DMA1_STR3	14	Can set	0x0000_0078	DMA1 data stream 3 global interrupt
DMA1_STR4	15	Can set	0x0000_007C	DMA1 data stream 4 global interrupt
DMA1_STR5	16	Can set	0x0000_0080	DMA1 data stream 5 global interrupt
DMA1_STR6	17	Can set	0x0000_0084	DMA1 data stream 6 global interrupt

Exception type	Vector No.	Priority	Vector address	Description
ADC	18	Can set	0x0000_0088	ADC1 and ADC2 global interrupt
CAN1_TX	19	Can set	0x0000_008C	CAN1 transmit interrupt
CAN1_RX0	20	Can set	0x0000_0090	CAN1 receiving 0 interrupt
CAN1_RX1	21	Can set	0x0000_0094	CAN1 receiving 1 interrupt
CAN1_SCE	22	Can set	0x0000_0098	CAN1 SCE interrupt
EINT9_5	23	Can set	0x0000_009C	EINT line [9:5] interrupt
TMR1_BRK_TMR9	24	Can set	0x0000_00A0	TMR1 braking interrupt/TMR9 global interrupt
TMR1_UP_TMR10	25	Can set	0x0000_00A4	TMR1 update interrupt/TMR10 global interrupt
TMR1_TRG_COM_TMR11	26	Can set	0x0000_00A8	TMR1 trigger and communication interrupt/TMR11 global interrupt
TMR1_CC	27	Can set	0x0000_00AC	TMR1 capture/compare interrupt
TMR2	28	Can set	0x0000_00B0	TMR2 interrupt
TMR3	29	Can set	0x0000_00B4	TMR3 interrupt
TMR4	30	Can set	0x0000_00B8	TMR4 interrupt
I2C1_EV	31	Can set	0x0000_00BC	I2C1 event interrupt
I2C1_ER	32	Can set	0x0000_00C0	I2C1 error interrupt
I2C2_EV	33	Can set	0x0000_00C4	I2C2 event interrupt
I2C2_ER	34	Can set	0x0000_00C8	I2C2 error interrupt
SPI1	35	Can set	0x0000_00CC	SPI1 interrupt
SPI2	36	Can set	0x0000_00D0	SPI2 interrupt
USART1	37	Can set	0x0000_00D4	USART1 interrupt
USART2	38	Can set	0x0000_00D8	USART2 interrupt
USART3	39	Can set	0x0000_00DC	USART3 interrupt
EINT15_10	40	Can set	0x0000_00E0	EINT line [15:10] interrupt
EXTI17/RTC_Alarm	41	Can set	0x0000_00E4	EINT line 17 interrupt/RTC alarm interrupt
EINT18/OTG_FS WKUP	42	Can set	0x0000_00E8	EINT line 18 interrupt/OTG_FS wake-up interrupt through EINT line
TMR8_BRK_TMR12	43	Can set	0x0000_00EC	TMR8 braking interrupt/TMR12 global interrupt
TMR8_UP_TMR13	44	Can set	0x0000_00F0	TMR8 update interrupt/TMR13 global interrupt

Exception type	Vector No.	Priority	Vector address	Description
TMR8_TRG_COM_TMR14	45	Can set	0x0000_00F4	TMR8 trigger and communication interrupt/TMR14 global interrupt
TMR8_CC	46	Can set	0x0000_00F8	TMR8 capture compare interrupt
DMA1_STR7	47	Can set	0x0000_00FC	DMA1 data stream 7 global interrupt
SMC	48	Can set	0x0000_0100	SMC interrupt
SDIO	49	Can set	0x0000_0104	SDIO interrupt
TMR5	50	Can set	0x0000_0108	TMR5 interrupt
SPI3	51	Can set	0x0000_010C	SPI3 interrupt
UART4	52	Can set	0x0000_0110	UART4 interrupt
UART5	53	Can set	0x0000_0114	UART5 interrupt
-	54	-	0x0000_0118	Reserved
-	55	-	0x0000_011C	Reserved
DMA2_STR0	56	Can set	0x0000_0120	DMA2 data stream 0 interrupt
DMA2_STR1	57	Can set	0x0000_0124	DMA2 data stream 1 interrupt
DMA2_STR2	58	Can set	0x0000_0128	DMA2 data stream 2 interrupt
DMA2_STR3	59	Can set	0x0000_012C	DMA2 data stream 3 interrupt
DMA2_STR4	60	Can set	0x0000_0130	DMA2 data stream 4 interrupt
-	61	-	0x0000_0134	Reserved
-	62	-	0x0000_0138	Reserved
CAN2_TX	63	Can set	0x0000_013C	CAN2 transmit interrupt
CAN2_RX0	64	Can set	0x0000_0140	CAN2 receiving 0 interrupt
CAN2_RX1	65	Can set	0x0000_0144	CAN2 receiving 1 interrupt
CAN2_SCE	66	Can set	0x0000_0148	CAN2 SCE interrupt
OTG_FS	67	Can set	0x0000_014C	OTG_FS global interrupt
DMA2_STR5	68	Can set	0x0000_0150	DMA2 data stream 5 interrupt
DMA2_STR6	69	Can set	0x0000_0154	DMA2 data stream 6 interrupt
DMA2_STR7	70	Can set	0x0000_0158	DMA2 data stream 7 interrupt
USART6	71	Can set	0x0000_015C	USART6 global interrupt
I2C3_EV	72	Can set	0x0000_0160	I2C3 event interrupt
I2C3_ER	73	Can set	0x0000_0164	I2C3 error interrupt
-	74	-	0x0000_0168	Reserved
-	75	-	0x0000_016C	Reserved

Exception type	Vector No.	Priority	Vector address	Description
-	76	-	0x0000_0170	Reserved
-	77	-	0x0000_0174	Reserved
-	78	-	0x0000_0178	Reserved
-	79	-	0x0000_017C	Reserved
RNG	80	Can set	0x0000_0180	RNG global interrupt
FPU	81	Can set	0x0000_0184	FPU global interrupt
-	82	-	0x0000_0188	Reserved
QSPI	83	Can set	0x0000_018C	QSPI interrupt
SPI4	84	Can set	0x0000_0190	SPI4 interrupt
SPI5	85	Can set	0x0000_0194	SPI5 interrupt

9 External interrupt/event controller (EINT)

9.1 Introduction

The interrupts/events contain internal interrupts/events and external interrupts/events. In this manual, the external interrupt refers to the interrupt/event caused by I/O pin input signal, which is EINTx in interrupt vector table; other interrupts mean internal interrupts/events.

The events can be divided into hardware events and software events. Hardware events are generated by external/core hardware signals, while software events are generated by instructions.

Interrupts need to go through the interrupt handler function to implement the work to be processed, while events do not need to go through interrupt handler function, and the preset work can be triggered by hardware. The external events output pulse through events such as GPIO, while the internal events trigger another TMR to work, for example, through update event of a TMR.

9.2 Main characteristics

(1) Support 21 event/interrupt requests

(2) Each event/interrupt line can be masked independently

(3) Each external event/interrupt line can be triggered independently

(4) Each external interrupt line has dedicated status bit

(5) Detect external signals with pulse width lower than APB2 clock width

9.3 Functional Description

9.3.1 Classification and difference of "external interrupt and event"

"External interrupt and event" can be classified into external hardware interrupt, external hardware event, external software event and external software interrupt according to trigger source, configuration and execution process. The differences are shown in the table below:

Table 42 Classification and Differences of "External Interrupts and Events"

Name	Trigger source	Configuration and execution process
External hardware interrupt	External signal	(1) Set the trigger mode, allow the interrupt request, and enable corresponding peripheral interrupt line (enable in NVIC); (2) When an edge consistent with the configuration is generated on the external interrupt line, an interrupt request will be generated, and the corresponding pending bit will be set to 1; write 1 to the corresponding bit of the pending register and the interrupt request will be cleared.
External hardware event	External signal	(1) Set the trigger mode and enable the event line; (2) When an edge consistent with the configuration is generated on the external event line, an event request pulse will be generated, and the corresponding pending bit will not be set to 1.
External software event	Software interrupt register/transmit event (SEV) instruction	(1) Enable the event line; (2) Write 1 to the software interrupt event register of the corresponding event line to generate an event request pulse, and the corresponding pending bit will not be set to 1.
External software interrupt	Software interrupt register	(1) Allow interrupt request, and enable the corresponding peripheral interrupt line (enable in NVIC); (2) Write 1 to the software interrupt event register of the corresponding interrupt line to generate an interrupt request, the corresponding pending bit will be set to 1; write 1 to the corresponding bit of the pending register and the interrupt request will be cleared.

9.3.2 Core wake-up

Using WFI and WFE instructions can make stop the core. When WFI instruction is used, any interrupt can wake up the core; when WFE instruction is used, the core can be waken up by an event.

When interrupt is used for wake-up, the interrupt handler function will be triggered, and normal interrupt configuration can wake up the core. When an event is used to wake up the core, the interrupt handler function will not be triggered, which will reduce the wake-up time, and the configuration method is:

(1) Trigger an internal interrupt (internal hardware event) but do not trigger the interrupt handler function for wake-up

- Enable an internal interrupt in the peripheral, but do not enable the corresponding interrupt in NVIC to avoid triggering the interrupt handler function

- Enable SEVONPEND bit in the system controller of the core, and execute WFE instruction to make the core enter sleep mode
- Generate an interrupt to wake up the core; when the core recovers from WFE, it is required to clear the pending bit of corresponding peripheral interrupt and the pending bit of peripheral NVIC interrupt channel (clear the pending register in the NVIC interrupt)

(2) Wake up by EINT line events (external hardware event)

- Configure EINT line as the event mode
- Execute WFE instruction to make the core enter the sleep mode
- Generate an interrupt to wake up the core; after the CPU recovers from WFE, since the pending bit of corresponding event line is not set, it is unnecessary to clear the interrupt pending bit of corresponding peripheral or the pending bit NVIC interrupt channel

9.3.2.1 **Event wake-up**

Trigger an internal interrupt (internal hardware event) but do not trigger the interrupt handler function for wake-up

(1) Enable an internal interrupt in the peripheral, but do not enable the corresponding interrupt in NVIC to avoid triggering the interrupt handler function;

(2) Enable SEVONPEND bit in the system controller of the core, and execute WFE instruction to make the core enter sleep mode;

(3) Generate an interrupt to wake up the core; when the core recovers from WFE, it is required to clear the interrupt pending bit of corresponding peripheral and the pending bit of peripheral NVIC interrupt channel (clear the pending register in the NVIC interrupt).

Wake up by EINT line events (external hardware event)

(1) Configure EINT line as the event mode;

(2) Execute WFE instruction to make the core enter the sleep mode;

(3) Generate an interrupt to wake up the core; when the CPU recovers from WFE, since the pending bit of corresponding event line is not set, it is unnecessary to clear the interrupt pending bit of corresponding peripheral or the pending bit of the NVIC interrupt channel.

9.3.3 External interrupt and event line mapping

Table 43 External Interrupt and Event Line Mapping

External Interrupt and Event Channel Name	External Interrupt and Event Line No.
PA0/PB0/PC0/PD0/PE0/PH0	EINT 0
PA1/PB1/PC1/PD1/PE1/PH1	EINT 1

External Interrupt and Event Channel Name	External Interrupt and Event Line No.
…	…
PA15/PB15/PC15/PD15/PE15	EINT 15
PVD output	EINT 16
RTC Alarm event	EINT 17
OTG_FS wake-up event	EINT 18
Reserved	EINT 19
Reserved	EINT 20
RTC tamper and timestamp event	EINT 21
RTC wake-up event	EINT 22
Reserved	EINT 23
Reserved	EINT 24
Reserved	EINT 25
Reserved	EINT 26
Reserved	EINT 27
Reserved	EINT 28
Reserved	EINT 29
Reserved	EINT 30
Reserved	EINT 31

9.4 Register address mapping

Table 44 EINT Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
EINT_IMASK	Interrupt mask register	0x00
EINT_EMASK	Event mask register	0x04
EINT_RTEN	Enable the rising edge to trigger the register	0x08
EINT_FTEN	Enable the falling edge to trigger the register	0x0C
EINT_SWINTE	Software interrupt event register	0x10
EINT_IPEND	Interrupt pending register	0x14

9.5 Register functional description

9.5.1 Interrupt mask register (EINT_IMASK)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	IMASKx	R/W	Interrupt Request Mask on Line x (x=0~18) 0: Mask 1: Open
20:19	Reserved		
22:21	IMASKx	R/W	Interrupt Request Mask on Line x (x=21~22) 0: Mask 1: Open
31:23	Reserved		

9.5.2 Event mask register (EINT_EMASK)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	EMASKx	R/W	Event Request Mask on Line x (x=0~18) 0: Mask 1: Open
20:19	Reserved		
22:21	EMASKx	R/W	Event Request Mask on Line x (x=21~22) 0: Mask 1: Open
31:23	Reserved		

9.5.3 Enable the rising edge to trigger the register (EINT_RTEN)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	RTENx	R/W	Rising Trigger Event and Interrupt Enable of Line x (x=0~18) 0: Disable 1: Enable
20:19	Reserved		
22:21	RTENx	R/W	Rising Trigger Event and Interrupt Enable of Line x (x=21~22) 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:23	Reserved		

Note: Since the external wake-up lines are edge-triggered, there should be no glitch signal on these lines; when writing EINT_RTEN register, if the rising edge signal is on the external interrupt line, it will not be recognized and the pending bit will not be set; on the same interrupt line, the rising edge trigger and falling edge trigger can be set at the same time.

9.5.4 Enable the falling edge to trigger the register (EINT_FTEN)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	FTENx	R/W	Falling Trigger Event and Interrupt Enable of Line x (x=0~18) 0: Disable 1: Enable
20:19	Reserved		
22:21	FTENx	R/W	Falling Trigger Event and Interrupt Enable of Line x (x=21~22) 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:23	Reserved		

Note: Since the external wake-up lines are edge-triggered, there should be no glitch signal on these lines; when writing EINT_FTEN register, if the rising edge signal is on the external interrupt line, it will not be recognized and the pending bit will not be set; on the same interrupt line, the rising edge trigger and falling edge trigger can be set at the same time.

9.5.5 Software interrupt event register (EINT_SWINTE)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	SWINTEx	R/W	Software Interrupt Event on Line x (x=0~18) Set 1 by software, write 1 or clear 0 for the corresponding bit of EINT_IPEND. When this bit is 0, the pending bit of EINT_IPEND can be set by writing 1. If EINT_IMASK (EINT_EMASK) is set to open the interrupt (event) request, an interrupt (event) will be generated. 0: No effect 1: Software generates an interrupt (event)
20:19	Reserved		
22:21	SWINTEx	R/W	Software Interrupt Event on Line x (x=21~22) Set 1 by software, write 1 or clear 0 for the corresponding bit of EINT_IPEND. When this bit is 0, the pending bit of EINT_IPEND can be set by writing 1. If EINT_IMASK (EINT_EMASK) is set to open the interrupt (event) request, an interrupt (event) will be generated. 0: No effect 1: Software generates an interrupt (event)
31:23	Reserved		

9.5.6 Interrupt pending register (EINT_IPEND)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	IPENDx	RC_W1	Interrupt Pending Occur of Line x Flag (x=0~18) When a request is triggered by the corresponding edge of EINT_RTEN/EINT_FTEN on the external interrupt line, set 1 by hardware; clear 0 by changing the polarity of the edge detection or clear 0 by writing 1 to this bit.
20:19	Reserved		
22:21	IPENDx	RC_W1	Interrupt Pending Occur of Line x Flag (x=21~22) When a request is triggered by the corresponding edge of EINT_RTEN/EINT_FTEN on the external interrupt line, set 1 by hardware; clear 0 by changing the polarity of the edge detection or clear 0 by writing 1 to this bit.
31:23	Reserved		

10 Direct memory access (DMA)

10.1 Introduction

DMA (Direct Memory Access) can realize high-speed data transmission between peripheral devices and memory or between memory and memory without CPU intervention, thus saving CPU resources for other operations.

The product has two DMA controllers, with 16 data streams. Each data stream corresponds to 8 channels, but only 1 channel can be used for each data stream at the same time. Each data stream can set priority, and the arbiter can coordinate the priority of corresponding DMA requests of each data stream according to the priority of the data stream.

10.2 Main characteristics

(1) Two DMA; each DMA has 8 data streams, and each data stream has 8 channels

(2) Dual AHB main interfaces; one is memory interface, and the other is peripheral interface

(3) There are three data transmission modes: peripheral to memory, memory to peripheral, and memory to memory

(4) Each data stream has a special hardware DMA request for connection

(5) Support software priority and hardware priority when multiple requests occur at the same time

(6) Each data stream has 5 event flags and independent interrupts

(7) Support circular transmission mode

(8) The number of data for transmission is programmable, up to 65535

(9) The configurable source and target transmission width is byte, half word or word

(10) Support source and target incremental modes

(11) The configurable burst increment size is single time, 4, 8 or 16 ticks

10.3 Functional Description

10.3.1 DMA request

If the peripheral or memory needs to transmit data using DMA, it is required to first transmit DMA request and after it is approved by DMA, data transmission can be started.

Two DMA have 16 data streams in total. Each data stream is connected with different peripheral channels, and each data stream has five event flags (DMA half transmission, DMA transmission completion, DMA transmission error, DMA FIFO error, and direct mode error). The logic of the five event flags may become a separate interrupt request, and they all support software trigger.

When multiple peripherals request the same data stream, it is required to configure the corresponding register to turn on or off the request of each peripheral, so as to ensure that one data stream can only turn on one peripheral request.

Table 45 DMA1 Request Mapping Table

Peripheral request	Data stream 0	Data stream 1	Data stream 2	Data stream 3	Data stream 4	Data stream 5	Data stream 6	Data stream 7
Channel 0	SPI3_RX	I2C1_TX	SPI3_RX	SPI2_RX	SPI2_TX	SPI3_TX	-	SPI3_TX
Channel 1	I2C1_RX	I2C3_RX	-	-	-	I2C1_RX	I2C1_TX	I2C1_TX
Channel 2	TMR4_CH1	-	I2S3_EXT_RX	TMR4_CH2	I2S2_EXT_TX	I2S3_EXT_TX	TMR4_UP	TMR4_CH3
Channel 3	I2S3_EXT_RX	TMR2_UP TMR2_CH3	I2C3_RX	I2S2_EXT_RX	I2C3_TX	TMR2_CH1	TMR2_CH2 TMR2_CH4	TMR2_UP TMR2_CH4
Channel 4	UART5_RX	USART3_RX	UART4_RX	USART3_TX	UART4_TX	USART2_RX	USART2_TX	UART5_TX
Channel 5	-	-	TMR3_CH4 TMR3_UP	-	TMR3_CH1 TMR3_TRIG	TMR3_CH2	-	TMR3_CH3
Channel 6	TMR5_CH3 TMR5_UP	TMR5_CH4 TMR5_TRIG	TMR5_CH1	TMR5_CH4 TMR5_TRIG	TMR5_CH2	I2C3_TX	TMR5_UP	USART2_RX
Channel 7	-	-	I2C2_RX	I2C2_RX		-	-	I2C2_TX

Table 46 DMA2 Request Mapping Table

Peripheral request	Data stream 0	Data stream 1	Data stream 2	Data stream 3	Data stream 4	Data stream 5	Data stream 6	Data stream 7
Channel 0	ADC1	-	TMR8_CH1 TMR8_CH2 TMR8_CH3	-	ADC1	-	TMR1_CH1 TMR1_CH2 TMR1_CH3	-
Channel 1	-	-	ADC2	ADC2	-	-	-	
Channel 2			SPI1_TX	SPI5_RX	SPI5_TX	-	-	
Channel 3	SPI1_RX	-	SPI1_RX	SPI1_TX	QSPI_RX	SPI1_TX	-	QSPI_TX
Channel 4	SPI4_RX	SPI4_TX	USART1_RX	SDIO	SPI4_RX	USART1_RX	SDIO	USART1_TX
Channel 5	-	USART6_RX	USART6_RX	SPI4_RX	SPI4_TX	SPI5_TX	USART6_TX	USART6_TX
Channel 6	TMR1_TRIG	TMR1_CH1	TMR1_CH2	TMR1_CH1	TMR1_CH4 TMR1_TRIG TMR1_COM	TMR1_UP	TMR1_CH3	-
Channel 7	-	TMR8_UP	TMR8_CH1	TMR8_CH2	TMR8_CH3	SPI5_RX	SPI5_TX	TMR8_CH4 TMR8_TRIG TMR8_COM

10.3.2 Arbiter

When multiple DMA channel requests occur, an arbiter is needed to manage the response sequence. Management is divided into two stages: the first stage is software stage, which is divided into the highest, high, medium and low priority; the second stage is hardware stage, and under the condition of the same software priority, the lower the data stream number is, the higher the priority is.

10.3.3 FIFO

FIFO is used to temporarily store data before the source data is transmitted to the destination address. Each data stream has an independent 4-word FIFO, and the FIFO threshold can be controlled by software to be 1/4, 1/2, 3/4 or full.

There are two DMA transmission modes. The first is direct mode, in which a single transmission will be started to the memory immediately after each peripheral request. If DMA is configured to transmit data from the memory to the peripheral, DMA will store a data in FIFO, and once the peripheral triggers the DMA request, it will transmit the data. The direct mode requires the same data width configuration for the source and destination addresses, and does not support burst mode or memory-to-memory transmission mode. The second is FIFO mode, in which, FIFO threshold is configured first, and when the data storage reaches the threshold, FIFO content will be transmitted to the destination address; FIFO mode is applicable when the data width of source address and destination address is different, and it supports burst mode; FIFO can store the data first and output them as required.

10.3.4 Port

DMA controller transmits data between the memory and the peripherals through the memory port and the peripheral port. The memory port and peripheral port of DMA2 are connected to AHB matrix bus, and the memory and peripheral of DMA2 can access the internal Flash, internal SRAM, AHB1 peripheral, APB1 peripheral, APB2 peripheral, AHB2 peripheral and external memory; the memory port of DMA1 does not have the access right for AHB2 peripheral compared with DMA2, the peripheral port of DMA1 is only connected to APB1 peripheral, so DMA1 cannot realize memory-to-memory transmission.

10.3.5 DMA initialization parameter configuration

10.3.5.1 Transmission mode

DMA2 supports three transmission modes: peripheral-to-memory mode, memory-to-peripheral mode and memory-to-memory mode. DMA1 supports two transmission modes: from peripheral to memory and from memory to peripheral.

The transmission mode can be controlled through DIRCFG bit of DMA_SCFG register.

10.3.5.2 **Increment mode**

The increment mode of peripheral and memory is controlled through PERIM and MEMIM bits of DMA_SCFG register. When both bits are set to 1, it is configured as the increment mode and the increment is the value of PERSIZECFG and MENSIZECFG bits of DMA_SCFG register. The PERSIZECFG and MENSIZECFG bits are used to set the data size of peripheral and memory to byte, half word or word.

10.3.5.3 **Single transmission and burst mode**

Burst transmission refers to the high-speed transmission that increases the data volume transmitted each time at the transmission stage so as to improve the transmission speed. In the process of burst transmission, AHB bus will be occupied.

Single and burst transmissions can be controlled through the PBCFG and MBCFG bits of DMA_SCFG register, and they can be configured as single transmission, incremental burst transmission of 4 ticks, incremental burst transmission of 8 ticks and incremental burst transmission of 16 ticks. This increment is determined by the value of PERSIZECFG and MENSIZECFG bits. The burst mode can be enabled only when the increment mode is supported.

The burst mode shall be used in combination with FIFO, and the selected FIFO threshold shall be suitable for the burst size of memory, as shown in the table below.

Table 47 FIFO Threshold Configuration

<table>
<tr><th>MENSIZECFG</th><th>FIFO threshold</th><th>MBCFG=01</th><th>MBCFG=10</th><th>MBCFG=11</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Byte</td><td>1/4</td><td>One-time burst of 4 ticks</td><td>Disable</td><td rowspan="3">Disable</td></tr>
<tr><td>1/2</td><td>Two-time burst of 4 ticks</td><td>One-time burst of 8 ticks</td></tr>
<tr><td>3/4</td><td>Three-time burst of 4 ticks</td><td>Disable</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>Four-time burst of 4 ticks</td><td>Two-time burst of 8 ticks</td><td>One-time burst of 16 ticks</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Half word</td><td>1/4</td><td>Disable</td><td rowspan="3">Disable</td><td rowspan="5">Disable</td></tr>
<tr><td>1/2</td><td>One-time burst of 4 ticks</td></tr>
<tr><td>3/4</td><td>Disable</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>Two-time burst of 4 ticks</td><td>One-time burst of 8 ticks</td></tr>
<tr><td>Word</td><td>1/4</td><td>Disable</td><td>Disable</td></tr>
</table>

MENSIZECFG	FIFO threshold	MBCFG=01	MBCFG=10	MBCFG=11
	1/2			
	3/4			
	Full	One-time burst of 4 ticks		

10.3.5.4 **Circular mode**

The circular mode is used to process the circular buffer area and continuous data stream. The circular mode will automatically configure the number of data items as the initial value after the transmission ends, and continue the data transmission.

The circular mode can be controlled through CIRCMEN bit of DMA_SCFG register.

10.3.5.5 **Double-buffer mode**

Set DBM of DMA_SCFG register to 1 to enable the double- buffer mode and automatically activate the circular mode. In the double-buffer mode, the DMA_M1ADDR register is activated, and when the corresponding memory area of the address pointer of DMA_M0ADDR register finishes transmission, it will switch to the corresponding memory area of the address pointer of DMA_M1ADDR register to continue to transmit and be called circularly. When DMA accesses the DMA_M1ADDR, CTARG bit of DMA_SCFG register will be set to 1 and data can be written or read to DMA_M0ADDR register.

This mode does not support memory-to-memory transmission.

10.3.5.6 **Stream controller**

The stream controller can be configured as DMA or peripheral through PERFC bit of DMA_SCFG register.

When DMA is used as the stream controller, configure DMA_NDATA register before enabling data stream, and set the number of data items to be transmitted.

When the peripheral is used as the stream controller, the number of transmitted data items is unknown, and the hardware will force the value of DMA_NDATA register to be set to 0xFFFF for execution. After the transmission is completed, the peripheral will transmit instructions to DMA through hardware, and then read the value of the register. The number of transmitted data=0xFFFF-DMA_NDATA.

When the peripheral is used as the stream controller, the circular mode is disabled. When the memory-to-memory mode is selected, the PERFC bit will be forced to be cleared to zero by the hardware, and only DMA can be selected as the stream controller.

10.3.6 Interrupt

Each data stream has five types of interrupt events: half transmission, transmission completion, transmission error, FIFO error and direct mode error.

Table 48 DMA Interrupt Request

Interrupt event	Event flag bit	Enable interrupt bit
Half transmission	HTXIFLGx	HTXIEN
Transmission completed	TXCIFLGx	TXCIEN
Transmission error	TXEIFLGx	TXEIEN
FIFO error	FEIFLGx	FEIEN
Direct mode error	DMEIFLGx	DMEIEN

10.4 DMA register address mapping

Table 49 DMA Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
DMA_LINTSTS	DMA low interrupt state register	0x00
DMA_HINTSTS	DMA high interrupt state register	0x04
DMA_LIFCLR	DMA low interrupt flag clear register	0x08
DMA_HIFCLR	DMA high interrupt flag clear register	0x0C
DMA_SCFG	DMA data stream x configuration register	0x10+0x18× (data stream number)
DMA_NDATA	DMA data stream x data item number register	0x14+0x18× (data stream number)
DMA_PADDR	DMA data stream x peripheral address register	0x18+0x18× (data stream number)
DMA_M0ADDR	DMA data stream x memory 0 address register	0x1C+0x18× (data stream number)
DMA_M1ADDR	DMA data stream x memory 1 address register	0x20+0x18× (data stream number)
DMA_FCTRL	DMA data stream x FIFO control register	0x24+0x18× (data stream number)

10.5 Register functional description

10.5.1 DMA low interrupt state register (DMA_LINTSTS)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
22, 16, 6, 0	FEIFLGx	R	Stream x FIFO Error Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_LIFCLR register. 0: No FIFO error event 1: FIFO error event occurs
23, 17, 7, 1	Reserved		
24, 18, 8, 2	DMEIFLGx	R	Stream x Direct Mode Error Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_LIFCLR register. 0: No direct mode error 1: Direct mode error occurs
25, 19, 9, 3	TXEIFLGx	R	Stream x Transfer Error Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_LIFCLR register. 0: No transmission error 1: Transmission error occurs
26, 20, 10, 4	HTXIFLGx	R	Stream x Half Transfer Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_LIFCLR register. 0: No half-transmission event 1: Half-transmission event occurs
27, 21, 11, 5	TXCIFLGx	R	Stream x Transfer Complete Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_LIFCLR register. 0: No transmission completion event 1: Transmission completion event occurs
31:28, 15:12	Reserved		

10.5.2 DMA high interrupt state register (DMA_HINTSTS)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
22, 16, 6, 0	FEIFLGx	R	Stream x FIFO Error Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_HIFCLR register. 0: No FIFO error event 1: FIFO error event occurs
23, 17, 7, 1	Reserved		
24, 18, 8, 2	DMEIFLGx	R	Stream x Direct Mode Error Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_HIFCLR register. 0: No direct mode error 1: Direct mode error occurs

Field	Name	R/W	Description
25, 19, 9, 3	TXEIFLGx	R	Stream x Transfer Error Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_HIFCLR register. 0: No transmission error 1: Transmission error occurs
26, 20, 10, 4	HTXIFLGx	R	Stream x Half Transfer Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_HIFCLR register. 0: No half-transmission event 1: Half-transmission event occurs
27, 21, 11, 5	TXCIFLGx	R	Stream x Transfer Complete Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) These bits are set to 1 by hardware; write 1 and clear to 0 by software on the corresponding bit of DMA_HIFCLR register. 0: No transmission completion event 1: Transmission completion event occurs
31:28, 15:12	Reserved		

10.5.3 DMA low interrupt flag clear register (DMA_LIFCLR)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
22, 16, 6, 0	CFEIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear FIFO Error Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding FEIFLGx flag in DMA_LINTSTS register is cleared to 0
23, 17, 7, 1	Reserved		
24, 18, 8, 2	CDMEIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear Direct Mode Error Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding DMEIFLGx flag in DMA_LINTSTS register is cleared to 0
25, 19, 9, 3	CTXEIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear Transfer Error Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding TXEIFLGx flag in DMA_LINTSTS register is cleared to 0
26, 20, 10, 4	CHTXIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear Half Transfer Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding HTXIFLGx flag in DMA_LINTSTS register is cleared to 0
27, 21, 11, 5	CTXCIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear Transfer Complete Interrupt Flag (x=0…3) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding TXCIFLGx flag in DMA_LINTSTS register is cleared to 0
31:28, 15:12	Reserved		

10.5.4 DMA high interrupt flag clear register (DMA_HIFCLR)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
22, 16, 6, 0	CFEIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear FIFO Error Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding FEIFLGx flag in DMA_HINTSTS register is cleared to 0
23, 17, 7, 1	Reserved		
24, 18, 8, 2	CDMEIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear Direct Mode Error Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding DMEIFLGx flag in DMA_HINTSTS register is cleared to 0
25, 19, 9, 3	CTXEIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear Transfer Error Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding TXEIFLGx flag in DMA_HINTSTS register is cleared to 0
26, 20, 10, 4	CHTXIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear Half Transfer Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding HTXIFLGx flag in DMA_HINTSTS register is cleared to 0
27, 21, 11, 5	CTXCIFLGx	W	Stream x Clear Transfer Complete Interrupt Flag (x=4…7) 0: Invalid 1: The corresponding TXCIFLGx flag in DMA_HINTSTS register is cleared to 0
31:28, 15:12	Reserved		

10.5.5 DMA data stream x configuration register (DMA_SCFG) (x=0…7)

Offset address: 0x10+0x18× (data stream number)

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	EN	R/W	Stream Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit shall be cleared to 0 by hardware in any of the following situations: 1. When DMA transmission ends 2. When transmission error occurs to AHB main bus 3. When the FIFO threshold on the memory AHB port is incompatible with the burst size
1	DMEIEN	R/W	Direct Mode Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	TXEIEN	R/W	Transfer Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3	HTXIEN	R/W	Half Transfer Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	TXCIEN	R/W	Transfer Complete Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	PERFC	R/W	Peripheral Flow Controller 0: DMA is stream controller 1: The peripheral is stream controller This bit can be written only when the EN bit is 0; when the memory-to-memory mode is selected, this bit will be automatically forced to zero by the hardware.
7:6	DIRCFG	R/W	Data Transfer Direction Configure 00: From peripheral to memory 01: From memory to peripheral 10: From memory to memory 11: Reserved These bits can be written only when EN bit is 0.
8	CIRCMEN	R/W	Circular Mode Enable This bit can be set to 1 or cleared to 0 by software, or be cleared to 0 by hardware. 0: Disable 1: Enable If the peripheral is set as the stream controller and the data stream is enabled, this bit will be automatically forced to 0 by hardware. If DMA transmission is ended, switch the target memory area, enable the data stream, and this bit will be automatically forced to 1 by the hardware.
9	PERIM	R/W	Peripheral Increment Mode 0: The peripheral address pointer is fixed 1: After each data transmission, the peripheral address pointer will increase This bit can be written only when EN bit is 0.
10	MEMIM	R/W	Memory Increment Mode 0: The memory address pointer is fixed 1: After each data transmission, the memory address pointer will increase This bit can be written only when EN bit is 0.
12:11	PERSIZECFG	R/W	Peripheral Data Size Configure 00: Byte (8 bits) 01: Half word (16 bits) 10: Word (32 bits) 11: Reserved These bits can be written only when EN bit is 0.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
14:13	MEMSIZECFG	R/W	Memory Data Size Configure 00: Byte (8 bits) 01: Half word (16 bits) 10: Word (32 bits) 11: Reserved These bits can be written only when EN bit is 0. In direct mode, when EN bit is 1, MEMSIZECFG bit will be forced to be of the same value as that of PERSIZECFG bit.
15	PERIOSIZE	R/W	Peripheral increment offset size 0: The offset used to calculate the peripheral address is related to PERSIZECFG 1: The offset used to calculate the peripheral address is fixed to be 4 If PERIM bit is 0, this bit is meaningless, and it can be written only when EN bit is 0. If the direct mode is selected or the PBCFG bit is not configured to 00, and the data stream is enabled, this bit will be forced to low level by hardware.
17:16	PRILCFG	R/W	Priority Level Configure 00: Low 01: Medium 10: High 11: Very high These bits can be written only when EN bit is 0.
18	DBM	R/W	Double Buffer Mode 0: Do not switch the buffer when the transmission ends 1: Switch the target memory when DMA transmission ends This bit can be written only when EN bit is 0.
19	CTARG	R/W	Current Target (only in double buffer mode) This bit can be set to 1 or cleared to 0 by hardware, or be written by software. 0: The current target memory is Memory 0 1: The current target memory is Memory 1
20	Reserved		
22:21	PBCFG	R/W	Peripheral Burst Transfer Configure 00: Single transmission 01: INCR4 (4-tick increment burst transmission) 10: INCR8 (8-tick increment burst transmission) 11: INCR16 (16-tick increment burst transmission) This bit can be written only when EN bit is 0. In direct mode, these bits will be forced to 0.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
24:23	MBCFG	R/W	Memory Burst Transfer Configure 00: Single transmission 01: INCR4 (4-tick increment burst transmission) 10: INCR8 (8-tick increment burst transmission) 11: INCR16 (16-tick increment burst transmission) This bit can be written only when EN bit is 0. In direct mode, these bits will be forced to 0.
27:25	CHSEL	R/W	Channel Selection 000: Select Channel 0 001: Select Channel 1 010: Select Channel 2 011: Select Channel 3 100: Select Channel 4 101: Select Channel 5 110: Select Channel 6 111: Select Channel 7
31:28	Reserved		

10.5.6 DMA data stream x data item number register (DMA_NDATA) (x=0…7)

Offset address: 0x14+0x18× (data stream number)

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	NDATA	R/W	Number Of Data Items To Transfer The number of data items to be transmitted is 0-65535. This register can be operated only when the data stream is disabled. After the data stream is enabled, this register is read-only to indicate the number of remaining data items to be transmitted. After each DMA transmission, this register will decrease. This register is 0 after completion of transmission, and the initial value will be automatically reloaded in any of the following circumstances: 1. Configure the data stream in circular mode 2. Re-enable the data stream
31:16	Reserved		

10.5.7 DMA data stream x peripheral address register (DMA_PADDR) (x=0…7)

Offset address: 0x18+0x18× (data stream number)

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	PADDR	R/W	Peripheral Address Base address of peripheral data register of read/write data. This bit can be written only when EN bit is 0.

10.5.8 DMA data stream x memory 0 address register (DMA_M0ADDR) (x=0…7)

Offset address: 0x1C+0x18× (data stream number)

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	M0ADDR	R/W	Memory 0 Address Base address of memory 0 of read/write data. These bits are write-protected, and can be written only in any of the following circumstances: ● Disable data stream ● Enable the data stream and set CTARG bit of DMA_SCFG register to 1

10.5.9 DMA data stream x memory 1 address register (DMA_M1ADDR) (x=0…7)

Offset address: 0x20+0x18× (data stream number)

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	M1ADDR	R/W	Memory 1 Address Base address of memory 1 of read/write data. This register is only applicable to double-buffer mode. These bits are write-protected, and can be written only in any of the following circumstances: ● Disable data stream ● Enable the data stream and clear CTARG bit of DMA_SCFG register to 0

10.5.10 DMA data stream x FIFO control register (DMA_FCTRL) (x=0…7)

Offset address: 0x24+0x18× (data stream number)

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	FTHSEL	R/W	FIFO Threshold Select 00: 1/4 of FIFO capacity 01: 1/2 of FIFO capacity 10: 3/4 of FIFO capacity 11: Full FIFO capacity In direct mode, these bits are invalid, and they can be written only when EN bit is 1.
2	DMDEN	R/W	Direct Mode Disable 0: Enable direct mode 1: Disable direct mode This bit can be written only when the EN bit is 0; when the memory-to-memory mode is selected and EN bit is 1, this bit will be set to 1 by hardware.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:3	FSTS	R	FIFO Status 000：0<fifo_level<1/4 001：1/4<fifo_level<1/2 010：1/2<fifo_level<3/4 011: 3/4<fifo_level<full 100: FIFO is empty 101: FIFO is full Others: Meaningless These bits are invalid in direct mode.
6	Reserved		
7	FEIEN	R/W	FIFO Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:8	Reserved		

11 Debug MCU (DBGMCU)

11.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 50 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Frame Clock	FCLK
Serial Wire/JTAG Debug Port	SWJ-DP

11.2 Introduction

APM32F411xCxE MCU series uses Arm® Cortex®-M4F core, and Arm® Cortex®-M4F core includes hardware debug module and supports complex debugging operation. During debugging, the module can make the running core stop at breakpoint, and achieve the effect of querying the internal state of the core and the external state of the system, and after the query is completed, the core and peripheral operation can be restored to continue to execute the program.

Two debugging interfaces are supported:

- Serial interfaces
- JTAG debugging interface

Note: The hardware debugging module included in Arm® Cortex®-M4F core is a subset of Arm CoreSight development tool set. Please refer to *Cortex®-M4F (Version r1p1) Technical Reference Manual* (TRM) and *CoreSight Development Tool Set (Version r1p0) TRM* for more information about debug function of Arm® Cortex®-M4F core.

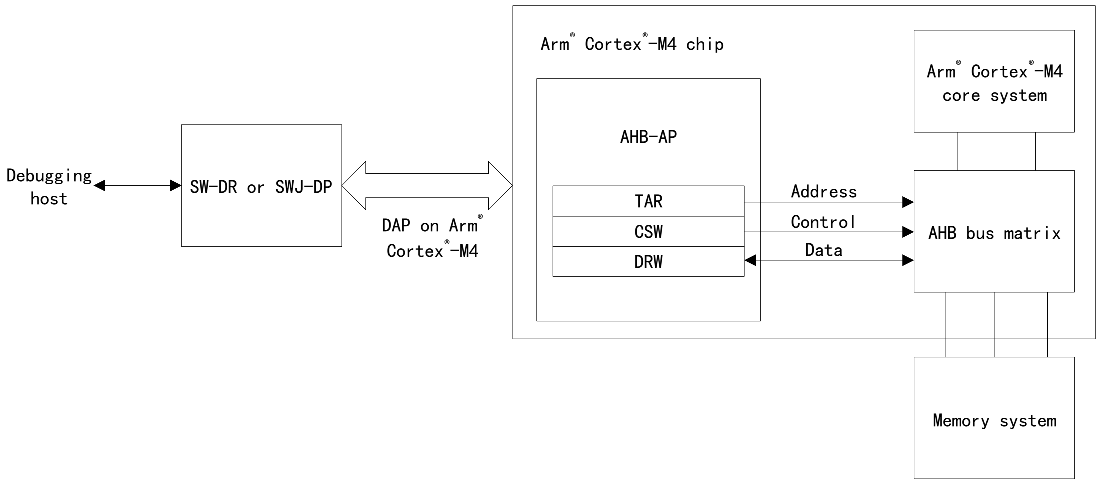
11.3 Main characteristics

(1) Able to replace the core to access AHB bus matrix

(2) Flexible debug pin assignment

(3) MCU debug box (support low-power mode, control peripheral clock, etc.)

Figure 12 APM32F411xCxE Level and Arm® Cortex -M4F Level Debugging Block Diagram



11.4 Functional Description

11.4.1 Debug pin function configuration

(1) Realize the on-line programming and debugging of the chip

(2) Using KEIL/IAR and other software to implement on-line debugging, downloading and programming

(3) Flexible implementation of production of bus-off programmer

Table 51 Pin Function Configuration

Configured as dedicated pin for debugging	I/O port assignment of SWJ interface				
	PA13/ JTMS/ SWDIO	PA14/ JTCK/ SWCLK	PA15/ JTDI	PB3/ JTDO	PB4/ JNTRST
Both JTAG-DP interface and SW-DP interface disabled	Release				
JTAG-DP interface disabled, SW-DP interface enabled	Special	Special	Release		
All SWJ pins (JTAG-DP+SW-DP) Except JNTRST pin	Special	Special	Special	Special	Release
All SWJ pins (JTAG-DP+SW-DP) Reset state	Special	Special	Special	Special	Special

Note: The items that cannot be tested in run mode can be observed and tested in detail.

11.4.2 ID code

11.4.2.1 MCU device ID code

APM32F411xCxE MCU series includes a MCU ID code. It can be accessed with JTAG or SW debugging interface or user code.

11.4.2.2 Boundary scan TAP

JTAG ID code

The boundary scan TAP of APM32F411xCxE MCU series integrates JTAG ID code. For APM32F411xCxE series products, its JTAG ID code is 0x0A431B47.

11.4.2.3 Arm® Cortex®-M4F TAP

Arm® Cortex®-M4 TAP has a JTAG ID code, which is 0x4BA00477.

11.4.2.4 Arm® Cortex®-M4F JEDEC-106 ID code

Arm® Cortex -M4F has a JEDEC-106 ID code. It is located in 4KB ROM table in which the internal PPB bus address is 0xE0042000.

11.5 Register address mapping

Table 52 Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Address
DBGMCU_IDCODE	Device ID register	0xE004 2000
DBGMCU_CFG	Debug MCU configuration register	0xE004 2004
DBGMCU_APB1F	Debug MCU APB1 freeze register	0xE004 2008
DBGMCU_APB2F	Debug MCU APB2 freeze register	0xE004 200C

11.6 Register functional description

11.6.1 Device ID register (DBGMCU_IDCODE)

Address: 0xE004 2000

Only support 32-bit access

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX, X=undefined bit

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:0	EQR	R	Equipment Recognition APM32F411xCxE series products: 0x431 or 0x433; The debugger/programming tool identifies chips by QR (11:0).
15:12	Reserved		
31:16	WVR	R	Wafer Version Recognition This domain identifies wafer information APM32F411xCxE series products version A: 0x0015

11.6.2 Debug MCU configuration register (DBGMCU_CFG)

This register can configure MCU in debug mode. It includes the counter supporting timer and watchdog, low-power mode, CAN communication and assignment tracking pin.

Address: 0xE004 2004

Only support 32-bit access

Reset value: 0x0000 0000 (not affected by system reset, only for power-on reset)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	SLEEP_CLK_STS	R/W	Configure clock status when MCU is debugged in sleep mode 0: FCLK ON, HCLK OFF 1: FCLK ON, HCLK ON, provided by system clock
1	STOP_CLK_STS	R/W	Configure clock status when MCU is debugged in stop mode 0: FCLK OFF, HCLK OFF 1: FCLK ON, HCLK ON, provided by HSICLK
2	STANDBY_CLK_STS	R/W	Configure clock status when MCU is debugged in standby mode 0: FCLK OFF, HCLK OFF 1: FCLK ON, HCLK ON, provided by HSICLK
4:3	Reserved		
5	TRACE_IOEN	R/W	Trace Debug Pin Enable 0: Tracking debug pin disabled 1: Tracking debug pin enabled
7:6	TRACE_MODE	R/W	Trace Debug Pin Mode Configure Tracking debug pin mode can be configured only when TRACE_IOEN=1: 00: Asynchronous mode 01: Synchronous mode, the data length is 1 10: Synchronous mode, the data length is 2 11: Synchronous mode, the data length is 4
31:8	Reserved		

11.6.3 Debug MCU APB1 freeze register (DBGMCU_APB1F)

This register is used to configure MCU during debugging.

Involve some APB peripherals:

- Freeze the timer counter
- Freeze I2C SMBus timeout
- Freeze supporting system window regulators and independent watchdog counter

This register is reset asynchronously by POR (not reset by system) and can be written by the debugger through system reset.

Only support 32-bit access

Address: 0xE004 2008

Reset value: 0x0000 (unaffected by system reset)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TMR2_STS	R/W	Configure TMR2 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR2 counter continues to work when the core stops work 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
1	TMR3_STS	R/W	Configure Timer3 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR3 counter continues to work when the core stops work 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
2	TMR4_STS	R/W	ConfigureTimer4 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR4 counter continues to work when the core is halted 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
3	TMR5_STS	R/W	ConfigureTimer5 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR5 counter continues to work when the core is halted 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
5:4	Reserved		
6	TMR12_STS	R/W	ConfigureTimer12 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR12 counter continues to work when the core is halted 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
7	TMR13_STS	R/W	ConfigureTimer13 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR13 counter continues to work when the core is halted 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
8	TMR14_STS	R/W	Configure Timer14 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR14 counter continues to work when the core stops work 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
9	Reserved		
10	RTC_STS	R/W	Configure RTC Work Status When Core Is in Halted Whether RTC counter continues to work when the core stops work 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11	WWDT_STS	R/W	Configure Window Watchdog Work Status When Core Is in Halted Whether WWDT continues to work when the core stops 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
12	IWDT_STS	R/W	Configure Independent Watchdog Work Status When Core Is in Halted Whether IWDT continues to work when the core stops 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
20:13	Reserved		
21	I2C1_SMBUS_TIMEOUT_STS	R/W	Configure I2C1_SMBUS_TIMEOUT Work Status When Core Is in Halted Whether I2C1_SMBUS_TIMEOUT continues to work when the core stops 0: Work normally 1: Freeze the timeout mode of SMBUS
22	I2C2_SMBUS_TIMEOUT_STS	R/W	Configure I2C2_SMBUS_TIMEOUT Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether I2C2_SMBUS_TIMEOUT continues to work when the core is halted 0: Work normally 1: Freeze the timeout mode of SMBUS
23	I2C3_SMBUS_TIMEOUT_STS	R/W	Configure I2C3_SMBUS_TIMEOUT Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether I2C3_SMBUS_TIMEOUT continues to work when the core stops 0: Work normally 1: Freeze the timeout mode of SMBUS
24	Reserved		
25	CAN1_STS	R/W	Configure Controller Area Network 1 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether CAN1 continues to work when the core is halted 0: Work normally 1: Freeze CAN1 receive register
26	CAN2_STS	R/W	Configure Controller Area Network 2 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether CAN2 continues to work when the core is halted 0: Work normally 1: Freeze CAN2 receive register
31:27	Reserved		

11.6.4 Debug MCU APB2 freeze register (DBGMCU_APB2F)

This register is used to configure MCU during debugging.

Involve some APB peripherals:

- Freeze the timer counter

This register is reset asynchronously by POR (not reset by system) and can be written by the debugger through system reset.

Only support 32-bit access

Address: 0xE004 200C

Reset value: 0x0000 (unaffected by system reset)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TMR1_STS	R/W	Configure Timer1 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR1 counter continues to work when the core stops 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
1	TMR8_STS	R/W	ConfigureTimer8 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR8 counter continues to work when the core is halted 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
15:2	Reserved		
16	TMR9_STS	R/W	ConfigureTimer9 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR9 counter continues to work when the core is halted 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
17	TMR10_STS	R/W	ConfigureTimer10 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR10 counter continues to work when the core is halted 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
18	TMR11_STS	R/W	ConfigureTimer11 Work Status When Core is in Halted Whether TMR11 counter continues to work when the core is halted 0; Continue to work 1: Stop working
31:19	Reserved		

12 General-Purpose Input/Output Pin (GPIO)

12.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 53 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
P-channel Metal Oxide Semiconductor	P-MOS
N-channel Metal Oxide Semiconductor	N-MOS

12.2 Main characteristics

GPIO port can configure the following functions through 32-bit configuration register (GPIOx_CFGLOW/GPIOx_CFGHIG) and two 32-bit data registers GPIOx_IDATA/GPIOx_ODATA):

(1) Input mode

- Analog input
- Floating input
- Pull-up input
- Pull-down input

(2) Output mode

- Push-pull output
- Open-drain output
- Configurable maximum output rate

(3) Multiplexing mode

- Push-pull multiplexing function
- Open-drain multiplexing function

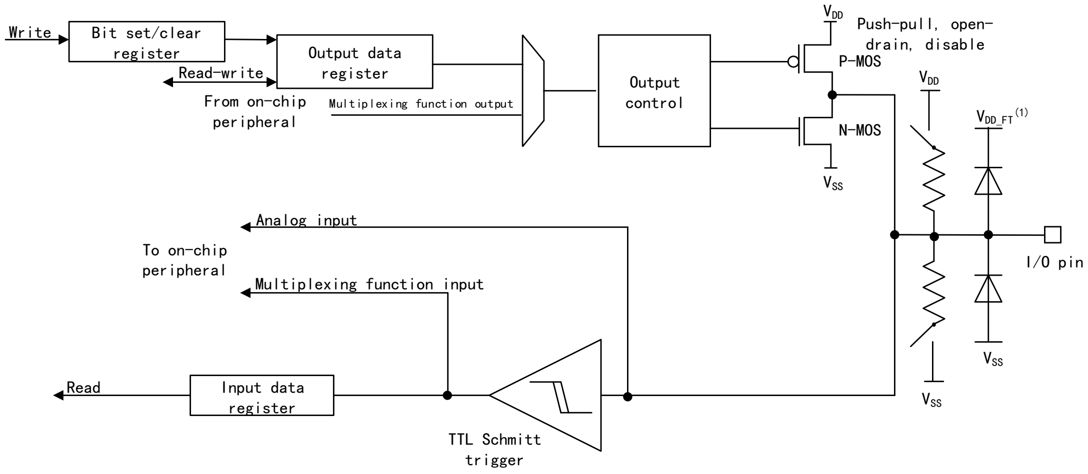
(4) Analog function

(5) GPIO can be used as external interrupt/wakeup line

(6) Support locking I/O configuration function

12.3 Structure block diagram

Figure 13 5V-compatible GPIO Structure Block Diagram



(1) V_{DD_FT} is different from V_{DD}, and V_{DD_FT} is special for FT GPIO pin.

12.4 Functional Description

Each pin of GPIO can be configured as pull-up, pull-down, floating and analog input, or push-pull/open-drain output and input mode and multiplexing function by software. All GPIO interfaces have external interrupt capability.

12.4.1 IO status during reset and just after reset

If the multiplexing function is not enabled during and just after GPIO reset, the I/O port will be configured as floating input mode, and in such case the pull-up/pull-down resistor is disabled in input mode. After reset, the JTAG pin is put in the input pull-up or pull-down mode, and the specific configuration is as follows:

- PA15: JTDI in pull-up mode
- PA14: JTCK in pull-down mode
- PA13: JTMS in pull-up mode
- PB4: JNTRST in pull-up mode
- PB3: JTDO is put in floating mode

12.4.2 Input mode

In the input mode, it can be set as pull-up, pull-down, floating and analog input.

When GPIO is configured as input mode, all GPIO pins have an internal weak pull-up and pull-down resistor, which can be activated or broken.

Pull-up, pull-down, and floating modes

In (pull-up, pull-down, floating) input mode

- Schmitt trigger is enabled
- Disable output buffer
- Connect weak pull-up and pull-down resistors according to different input configurations
- The input data register GPIOx_IDATA captures the data on I/O pin in each AHB1 clock cycle
- Read I/O state by the input data register GPIOx_IDATA

The initial level state of the floating input mode is uncertain and is easy to be disturbed by the outside; when connecting the equipment, it is determined by the external input level (except for the very high impedance).

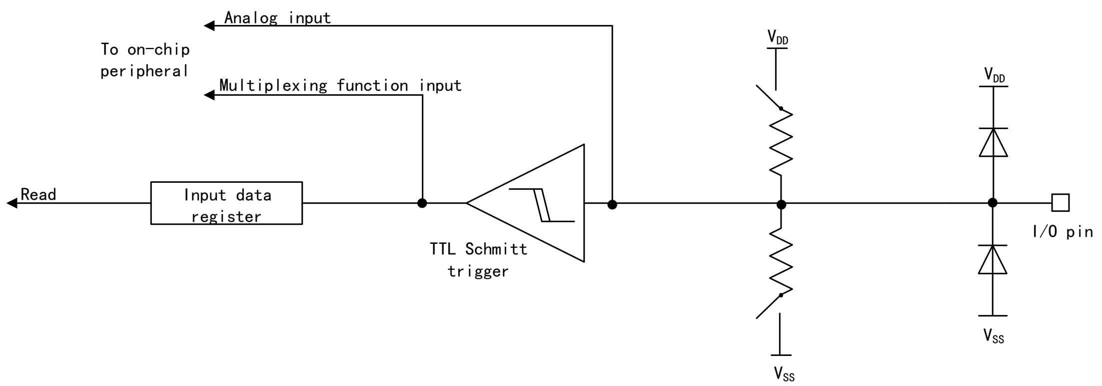
The initial level state of pull-up/pull-down input mode is high if pull-up, and low if pull-down; when connecting the equipment, it is determined by the external input level and load impedance.

Analog input mode

In analog input mode

- Disable output buffer
- The input of Schmitt trigger is disabled, and the output value of Schmitt trigger is forced to be 0
- Weak pull-up and pull-down resistors are disabled
- The value of port input state register is 0

Figure 14 Input Mode Structure



12.4.3 Output mode

In the output mode, it can be set as push-pull output and open-drain output.

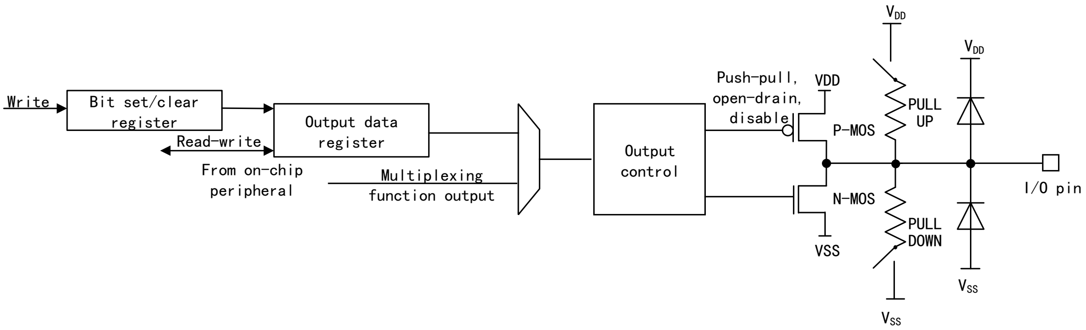
When GPIO is configured as the output pin, the output speed of the port can be configured and the output drive mode (push-pull/open-drain) can be selected.

In output mode

- Schmitt trigger is enabled
- Activate output buffer
- Weak pull-up and pull-down resistors are disabled

- Push-pull mode:
  - Double MOS transistor works by turns and the output data register can control the high and low level of I/O output
  - Read the finally written value through the output data register GPIOx_ODATA
- Open-drain mode:
  - Only N-MOS works, and the output data register can control I/O output high-resistance state or low level
  - Read the actual I/O state through the input data register GPIOx_IDATA

Figure 15 Output Mode I/O Structure



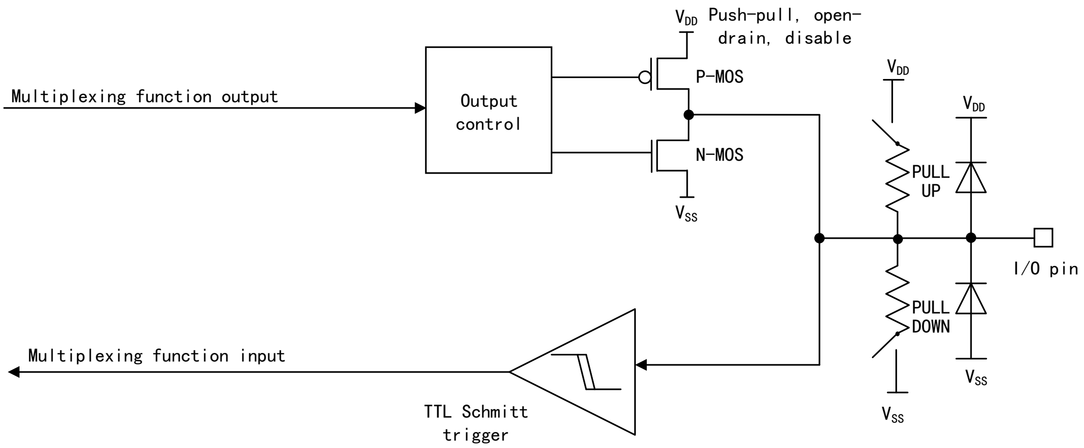
12.4.4 Multiplexing mode

In multiplexing mode, it can be set as push-pull multiplexing and open-drain multiplexing

In push-pull/open-drain multiplexing mode

- Enable the output buffer
- Output buffer is driven by peripheral
- Activate Schmitt trigger input
- Weak pull-up and pull-down resistors are disabled
- The data on the I/O pin is sampled in each AHB1 clock cycle and stored in the port input state register
- In open-drain mode, the actual state of I/O can be read through input data register GPIOx_IDATA
- In push-pull mode, the last written value is read through output data register GPIOx_ODATA

Figure 16 Multiplexing Mode I/O Structure



12.4.5 External interrupt/wake-up line

All GPIO ports have external interrupt function. If you want to use external interrupt line, the port must be configured as input mode.

12.4.6 Bit set and bit clear

Software does not need to disable interrupt when programming some bits of GPIOx_IDATA. By setting the bit to be changed in GPIOx_BSC and BSC registers to 1, the function of changing one or more bits in AHB1 write operation can be served.

12.4.7 GPIO locking function

Locking function can be used in power driver module. The locking mechanism of GPIO can protect the configuration of I/O port. I/O configuration can be locked by configuring the lock register (GPIOx_LOCK). When a port bit executes the locking program, the configuration of port bit cannot be modified before the next reset.

12.4.8 OSC32_IN/OSC32_OUT pin

Only when LSECLK oscillator is disabled, can OSC32_IN and OSC32_OUT pins be used as general-purpose PC14 I/O and PC15 I/O. It is controlled by RCC_BDCTRL[LSEEN] bit. The priority of LSECLK is higher than GPIO function.

12.4.9 OSC_IN/OSC_OUT pin

Only when HSECLK oscillator is disabled, can OSC_IN and OSC_OUT pins be used as general-purpose PH0 I/O and PH1 I/O. It is controlled by RCC_BDCTRL[HSEEN] bit. The priority of HSECLK is higher than GPIO function.

12.5 Register address mapping

Table 54 GPIO Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
GPIOx_MODE	Port mode register	0x00
GPIOx_OMODE	Port output mode register	0x04
GPIOx_OSSEL	Port output speed register	0x08
GPIOx_PUPD	Port pull-up/pull-down register	0x0C
GPIOx_IDATA	Port bit input data register	0x10
GPIOx_ODATA	Port bit output clear register	0x14
GPIOx_BSC	Port set/reset register	0x18
GPIOx_LOCK	Port lock register	0x1C
GPIOx_ALFL	Port multiplexing function low-bit register	0x20
GPIOx_ALFH	Port multiplexing function high-bit register	0x24

12.6 Register functional description

These peripheral registers must be operated by word (32 bits).

12.6.1 Port mode register (GPIOx_MODE) (x=A…E, H)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0xA800 0000 (Port A)

0x0000 0280 (Port B)

0x0000 000 (for other ports)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2y+1:2y	MODEy[1:0]	R/W	PortxPin y Mode Configure (y=0…15) 00: Input mode (state after reset) 01: General output mode 10: Multiplexing function mode 11: Analog mode

12.6.2 Port output mode register (GPIOx_OMODE) (x=A…E, H)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	OMODEy	R/W	PortxPin y Output Mode Configure (y=0…15) 0: Push-pull output (reset state) 1: Open-drain output
31:16	Reserved		

12.6.3 Port output speed register (GPIOx_OSSEL) (x=A…E, H)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0C00 0000 (Port A)

0x0000 00C0 (Port B)

0x0000 000 (for other ports)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2y+1:2y	OSSELy[1:0]	R/W	PortxPin y Output Speed Select (y=0…15) 00: Low speed 01: Medium speed 10: Fast speed 11: High speed The speed of I/O port is written by software

12.6.4 GPIO port pull-up/pull-down register (GPIOx_PUPD) (x=A…E, H)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x6400 0000 (Port A)

0x0000 0100 (Port B)

0x0000 000 (for other ports)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2y+1:2y	PUPDy[1:0]	R/W	PortxPin y Pull-up/Pull-down Configure (y=0…15) These bits are written by software to configure pull-up/pull-down of the port bit 00: Pull-up/Pull-down is disabled 01: Pull up 10: Pull down 11: Reserved

12.6.5 GPIO port input data register (GPIOx_IDATA) (x=A...E, H)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000 XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	IDATAy	R	PortxPin y Input Data (y=0…15) These bits can only be read to store the input values of the corresponding I/O ports
31:16	Reserved		

12.6.6 GPIO port output data register (GPIOx_ODATA) (x=A…E, H)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	ODATAy	R/W	PortxPin y Output Data (y=0…15) Read and write operation can be performed by software For atomic bit setting/clearing, the ODATAy bit can be set separately by writing to GPIOx_BSC register
31:16	Reserved		

12.6.7 GPIO port set/reset register (GPIOx_BSC) (x=A…E, H)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	Bsy	W	PortxPin y Set Bit (y=0…15) These bits can only be written, and the value of 0x0000 is returned when reading these bits. These bits are used to affect the corresponding ODATAy bits 0: No effect 1: Set the corresponding ODATAy bit
31:16	Bcy	W	PortxPin y Reset Bit (y=0…15) These bits can only be written, and the value of 0x0000 is returned when reading these bits. These bits are used to affect the corresponding ODATAy bits 0: No effect 1: Clear corresponding ODATAy bit to 0 If Bsy bit and Bcy bit are set at the same time, Bsy has the priority

12.6.8 GPIO port lock register (GPIOx_LOCK) (x=A…E, H)

This register protects the configuration of GPIO from being modified by mistake during the running of the program. If the GPIO configuration needs to be modified again, it can be modified only after the system is reset. When configuring GPIO locking function, it is necessary to execute the specified sequence to the register to enable the GPIO locking function.

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	LOCKy	R/W	PortxLock bit y Configure (y=0…15) 0: The configuration of Port x Pin y is not locked 1: The configuration of Port x Pin y is locked These bits can be read and written, but can only be written when LOCKKEY=0.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
16	LOCKKEY	R/W	Lock Key This bit determines whether the port configuration lock key bit is activated 0: Not activated 1: Activate; GPIOx_LOCK register is locked until the next MUC reset is generated. Lock key write sequence: Write LOCK[16]=1+LOCK[15:0] Write LOCK[16]=0+LOCK[15:0] Write LOCK[16]=1+LOCK[15:0] Read LOCK Read LOCK[16]=1 (this read operation can be selected to confirm whether to activate the lock key) Note: The value of LOCKy cannot be changed in the write sequence of operation lock key. Any error in the write sequence of operation lock key will abort the lock. After the first lock sequence on any bit of the port, any read access on the LOCKKEY bit will return "1" until the next MCU is reset or the peripheral is reset.
31:17	Reserved		

12.6.9 GPIO multiplexing function low 8-bit register (GPIOx_ALFL) (x=A…E, H)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	ALFSELy	R/W	Port x Pin y Alernate Function Select (y=0….7) These bits can be read by software to configure the multiplexing function of the port. ALFSELy selection: 0000:AF0 0001:AF1 0010:AF2 0011:AF3 0100:AF4 0101:AF5 0110:AF6 0111:AF7 1000:AF8 1001:AF9 1010:AF10 1011:AF11 1100:AF12 1101:AF13 1111:AF14 1110:AF15

12.6.10 GPIO multiplexing function high 8-bit register (GPIOx_ALFH) (x=A…E, H)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	ALFSELy	R/W	Port x Pin y Alernate Function Select (y=8….15) These bits can be read by software to configure the multiplexing function of the port. ALFSELy selection: 0000:AF0 0001:AF1 0010:AF2 0011:AF3 0100:AF4 0101:AF5 0110:AF6 0111:AF7 1000:AF8 1001:AF9 1010:AF10 1011:AF11 1100:AF12 1101:AF13 1110:AF14 1111:AF15

13 Timer overview

13.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 55 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Timer	TMR
Update	U
Request	R
Event	EV
Compare	C
Compare	C
Length	LEN

13.2 Timer category and main difference

This series of products contains two types of timers: advanced timer and general-purpose timer (watchdog timer is described in other chapter).

The advanced timer includes the functions of general-purpose timer and basic timer. The advanced timer has four capture/compare channels, supports timing function, input capture and output compare function, braking and complementary output function, and is a 16-bit timer that can count up/down.

The function of general-purpose timer is simpler than that of advanced timer. The main differences are the total number of channels, the number of complementary output channel groups and the braking function.

The main differences of timers included in the products are shown in the table below:

Table 56 Main Differences among Timers Included in the Products

<table>
<tr><th>Item</th><th>Specific content/Category</th><th colspan="2">Advanced timer</th><th colspan="2">General-purpose timer</th><th colspan="4">General-purpose timer</th></tr>
<tr><td>Name</td><td>—</td><td>TMR1</td><td>TMR8</td><td>TMR3/4</td><td>TMR2/5</td><td>TMR13/14</td><td>TMR10/11</td><td>TMR12</td><td>TMR9</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Timebase unit</td><td>Counter</td><td colspan="2">16 bits</td><td>16 bits</td><td>32 bits</td><td colspan="2">16 bits</td><td colspan="2">16 bits</td></tr>
<tr><td>Prescaler</td><td colspan="2">16 bits</td><td colspan="2">16 bits</td><td colspan="2">16 bits</td><td colspan="2">16 bits</td></tr>
<tr><td>Counting mode</td><td colspan="2">UP
Down
Center-aligned</td><td colspan="2">UP
Down
Center-aligned</td><td colspan="4">UP</td></tr>
<tr><td>Channel</td><td>Input channel</td><td colspan="2">4</td><td colspan="2">4</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">2</td></tr>
</table>

Item	Specific content/Category	Advanced timer	General-purpose timer	General-purpose timer	
	Capture/Compare channel	4	4	1	2
	Output channel	7	4	1	2
	Complementary output channel	3	0	0	0
Function	Generate DMA request	Can	Can	No	
	PWM mode	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Single-pulse mode	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Forced output mode	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Dead zone insertion	Yes	N/A	N/A	N/A

Timer term

Table 57 Definitions and Terms of Pins

Name	Description
TMRx_ETR	External trigger signal of Timer x
TMRx_CH1, TMRx_CH2, TMRx_CH3, TMRx_CH4	Channel 1/2/3/4 of Timer x
TMRx_ChyN	Complementary output channel y of Timer x
TMRx_BKIN	Braking signal of Timer x

Table 58 Definitions and Terms of Internal Signals

Name	Description
ETR	TMRx_ETR external trigger signal
ETRF	External trigger filter
ETRP	External trigger prescaler
-	
ITR，ITR0，ITR1	Internal trigger
TRGI	Clock/Trigger/Slave mode controller trigger input
TIF_ED	Timer input filter edge detection
-	
CK_PSC	Prescaler clock
CK_CNT	Counter clock
PSC	Prescaler

Name	Description
CNT	Counter
AUTORLD	Autoload register
-	
Tix，TI1	Timer input
TixF，TI1F，	Timer input filter
TI1_ED	Timer input edge detection
TixFPx，TI1FP1	Timer input filter polarity
Icx，IC1	Input capture
IcxPS，IC1PS	Input capture prescaler
TRC	Trigger capture
BRK	Braking signal
-	
Ocx，OC1	Timer output compare channel
OCxREF，OC1REF	Output compare reference signal
-	
TGI	Trigger interrupt
BI	Braking interrupt
CcxI，CC1I	Capture/Compare interrupt
UEV	Update event
UIFLG	Update interrupt flag

14 Advanced Timers (TMR1/8)

14.1 Introduction

The advanced timer takes the time base unit as the core, and has the functions of input capture, output compare and braking input, including a 16-bit automatic loading counter. Compared with other timers, the advanced timer supports complementary output, repeat count and programmable dead zone insertion function, and is more suitable for motor control.

14.2 Main characteristics

(1) Timebase unit

- Counter: 16-bit counter, count-up, count-down and center-aligned count
- Prescaler: 16-bit programmable prescaler
- Repeat counter: 16-bit repeat counter
- Autoreload function

(2) Clock source selection

- Internal clock
- External input
- External trigger
- Internal trigger

(3) Input capture function

- Counting function
- PWM input mode (measurement of pulse width, frequency and duty cycle)
- Encoder interface mode

(4) Output compare function

- PWM output mode
- Forced output mode
- Single-pulse mode
- Complementary output and dead zone insertion

(5) Timing function

(6) Braking function

(7) Master/Slave mode controller of timer

- Timers can be synchronized and cascaded
- Support multiple slave modes and synchronization signals

(8) Interrupt output and DMA request event

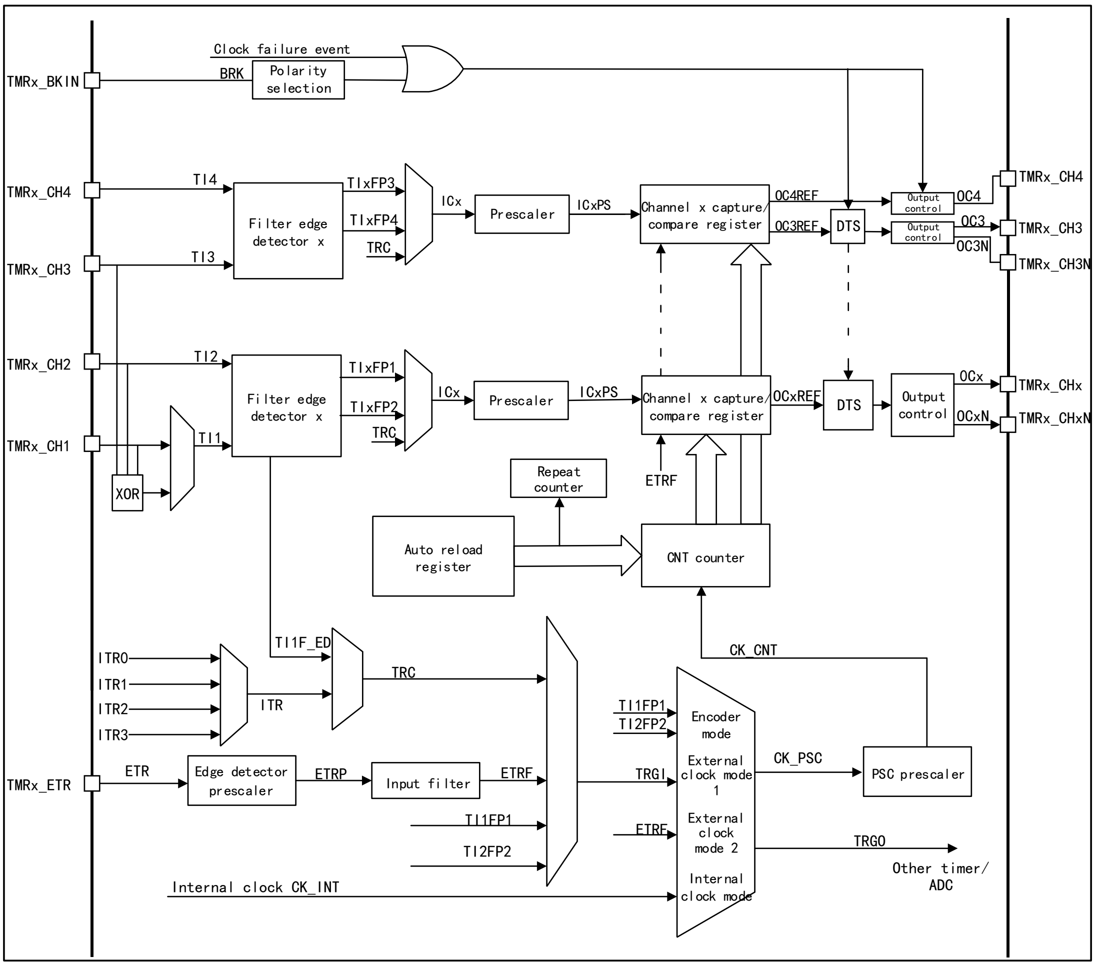
- Update event (counter overrun/underrun, counter initialization)

- Trigger event (counter start, stop, internal/external trigger)
- Capture/Compare event
- Braking signal input event

(9) Support incremental (quadrature) encoder and Hall sensor circuits for positioning

14.3 Structure block diagram

Figure 17 Advanced Timer Structure Block Diagram



14.4 Functional Description

14.4.1 Clock source selection

The advanced timer has four clock sources.

Internal clock

It is TMRx_CLK from RCM, namely the driving clock of the timer; when the slave mode controller is disabled, the clock source CK_PSC of the prescaler is driven by the internal clock CK_INT.

External clock mode 1

The trigger signal generated from the input channel TI1/2/3/4 of the timer after polarity selection and filtering is connected to the slave mode controller to control the work of the counter. Besides, the pulse signal generated by the input of Channel 1 after double-edge detection of the rising edge and the falling edge is logically equal or the future signal is TI1F_ED signal, namely double-edge signal of TIF_ED. Especially the PWM input can only be input by TI1/2.

External clock mode 2

After polarity selection, frequency division and filtering, the signal from external trigger interface (ETR) is connected to the slave mode controller through trigger input selector to control the work of the counter.

Internal trigger input

The timer is set to work in slave mode, and the clock source is the output signal of other timers. At this time, the clock source has no filtering, and the synchronization or cascading between timers can be realized. The master mode timer can reset, start, stop or provide clock for the slave mode timer.

14.4.2 Timebase unit

The timebase unit in the advanced timer contains four registers

- 16-bit counter register (CNT)
- 16-bit auto reload register (AUTORLD)
- 16-bit prescaler register (PSC)
- 8-bit repetition count register (REPCNT)

Repetition register is unique to advanced timer.

Counter CNT

There are three count modes for the counter in the advanced timer

- Count-up mode
- Count-down mode
- Center-aligned mode

Count-up mode

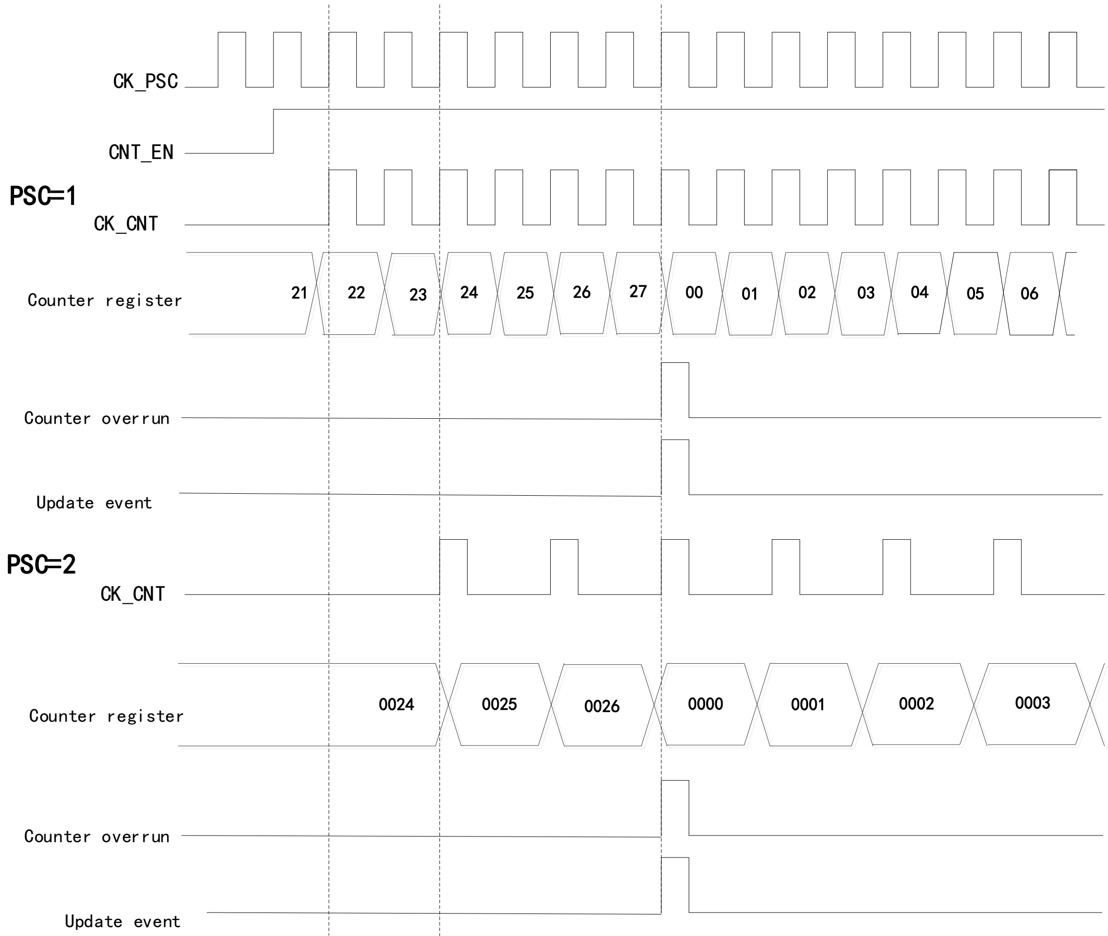
Set to the count-up mode by configuring CNTDIR bit of control register (TMRx_CTRL1).

When the counter is in count-up mode, the counter will count up from 0; every time a pulse is generated, the counter will increase by 1 and when the value of the counter (TMRx_CNT) is equal to the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD), the counter will start to count from 0 again, a count-up overrun event will be generated, and the value of the auto reload

(TMRx_AUTORLD) is written in advance. If a repeat counter is used, an update event will be generated when the number of count-up repetitions reaches the number in the repeat counter register plus one time (TMRx_REPCNT+1). Otherwise, an update event will be generated every time the counter overruns. At this time, the repeat count shadow register, the auto reload shadow register and the prescaler buffer will be updated. The update event can be disabled by configuring UD bit of control register TMRx_CTRL1.

The figure below is the timing diagram of count-up mode when the division factor is 1 or 2

Figure 18 Timing Diagram of Count-up Mode when Division Factor is 1 or 2

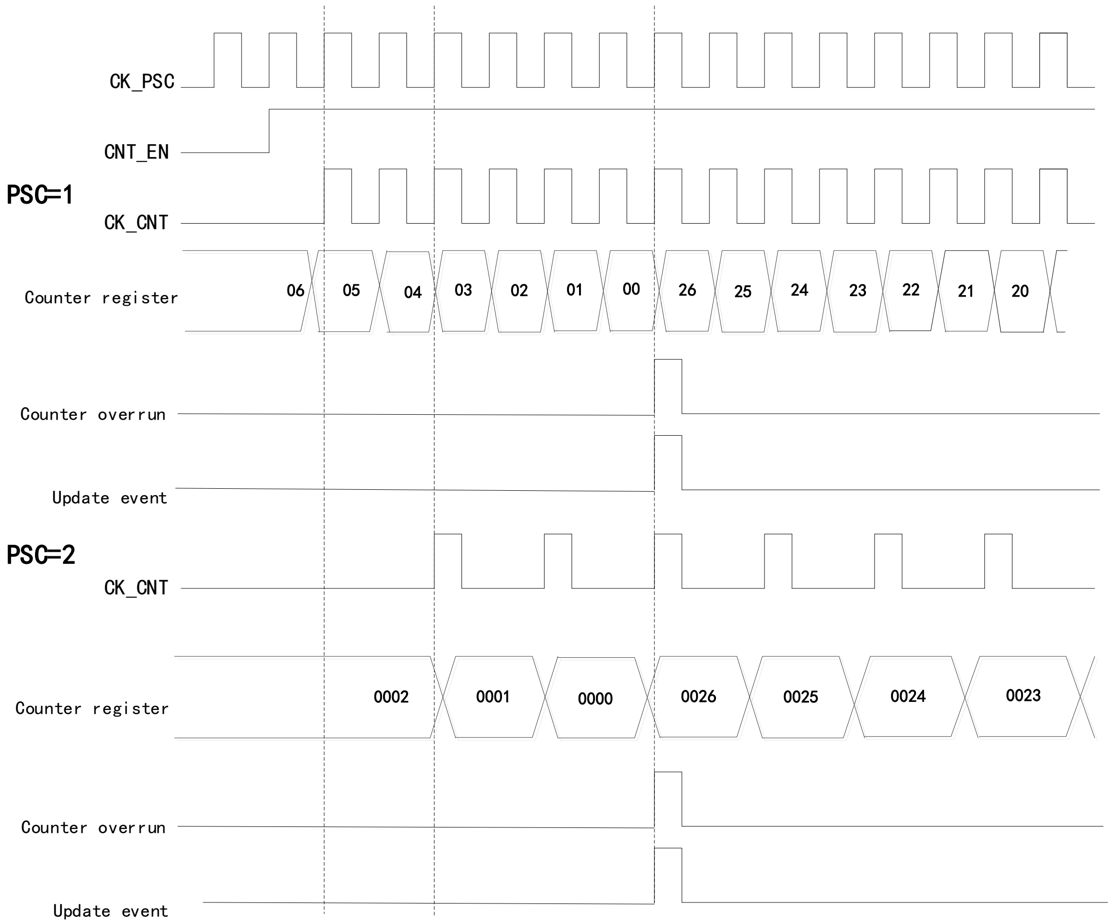


Count-down mode

Set to the count-down mode by configuring CNTDIR bit of control register (TMRx_CTRL1).

When the counter is in count-down mode, it will start to count down from the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD); every time a pulse is generated, the counter will decrease by 1 and when it becomes 0, the counter will start to count again from (TMRx_AUTORLD), meanwhile, a count-down overrun event will be generated, and the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD) is written in advance. If a repeat counter is used, an update event will be generated when the number of count-down repetitions reaches the number in the repeat counter register plus one time (TMRx_REPCNT+1). Otherwise, an update event will be generated every time the counter underruns. At this time, the repeat count shadow register, the auto reload shadow register and the prescaler buffer will be updated. The update event can be disabled by configuring the UD bit of the TMRx_CTRL1 register.

Figure 19 Timing Diagram of Count-down Mode when Division Factor is 1 or 2

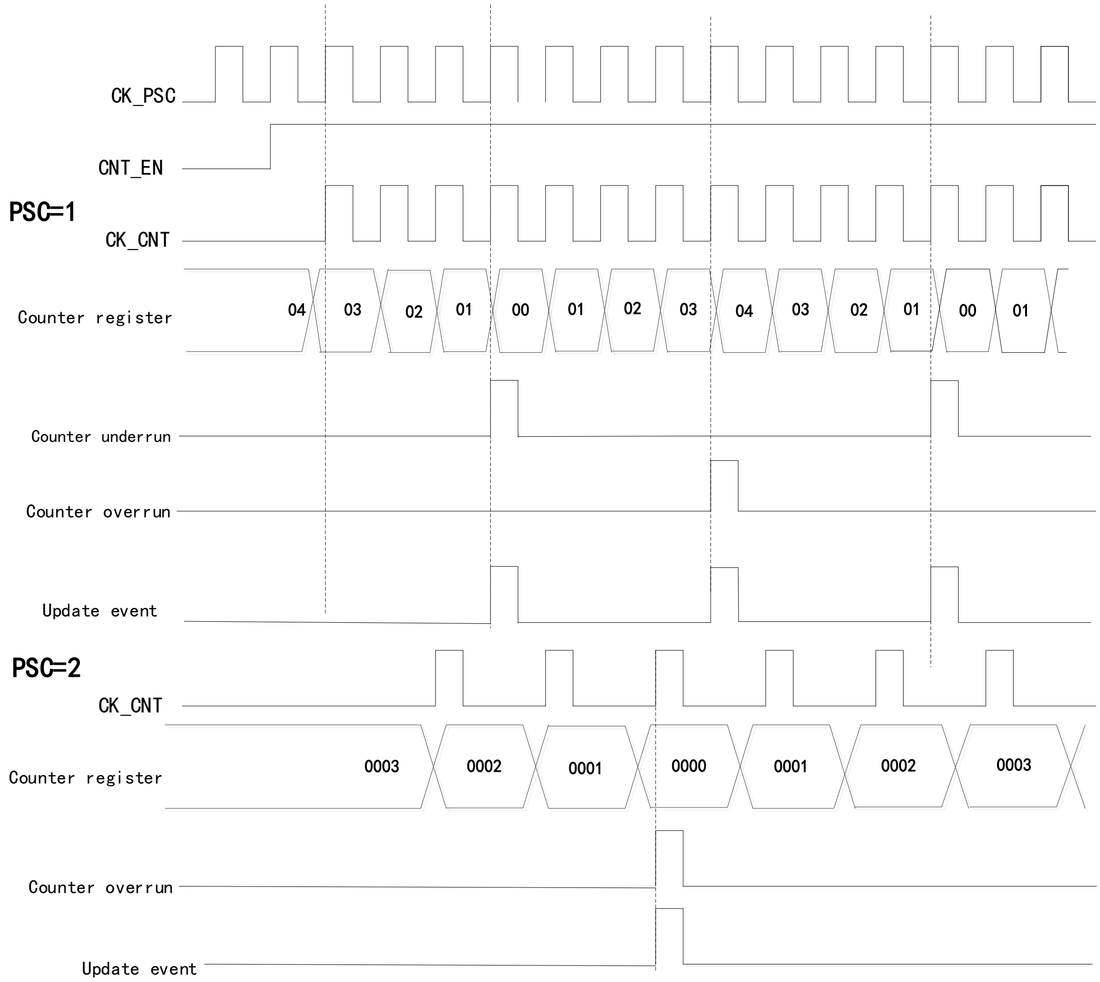


Center-aligned mode

Set to center-aligned mode by configuring CAMSEL bit of control register (TMRx_CTRL1).

When the counter is in center-aligned mode, the counter counts up from 0 and when it reaches the value of auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD), it counts down to 0 from the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD), which will repeat; in counting up, when the counter value is (AUTORLD-1), a counter overrun event will be generated; in counting down, when the counter value is 1, a counter underrun event will be generated.

Figure 20 Timing Diagram of Center-aligned Mode when Division Factor is 1 or 2



Repeat counter REPCNT

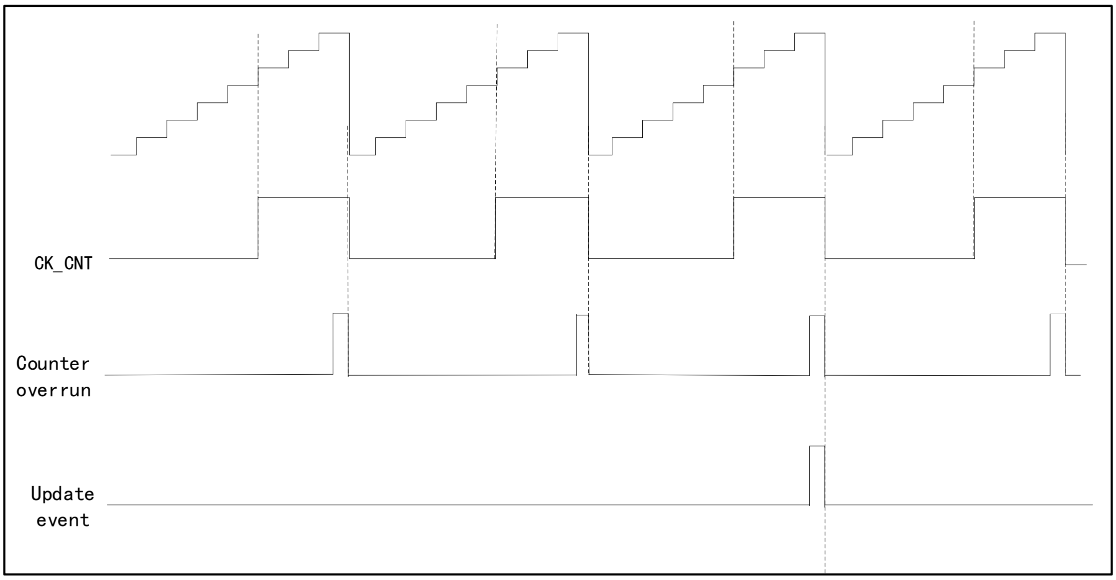
There is no repeat counter REPCNT in the general-purpose timer, which means that when an overrun event or underrun event occurs in the general-purpose timer, an update event will be generated directly; while in the advanced timer, because of the existence of the repeat counter, when an overrun/unerrrun event occurs to the advanced timer, the update event will be generated only when the value of the repeat counter is 0.

For example, if the advanced timer needs to generate an update event when an overrun/underrun event occurs, the value of the repeat counter should be set to 0.

If the repeat counter function is used in the count-up mode, every time the counter counts up to AUTORLD, an overrun event will occur. At this time, the value of the repeat counter will decrease by 1, and an update event will be generated when the value of the repeat counter is 0.

That is, when N+1 (N is the value of repeat counter) overrun/underrun events occur, an update event will be generated.

Figure 21 Timing Diagram of Count-up Mode when Setting REPCNT=2



Prescaler PSC

The prescaler is 16 bits and programmable, and it can divide the clock frequency of the counter to any value within 1~65536 (controlled by TMRx_PSC register), and after frequency division, the clock will drive the counter CNT to count. The prescaler has a buffer, which can be changed during running.

14.4.3 Input capture

Input capture channel

The advanced timer has four independent capture/compare channels, each of which is surrounded by a capture/compare register.

In the input capture, the measured signal will enter from the external pin T1/2/3/4 of the timer, first pass through the edge detector and input filter, and then enter the capture channels. Each capture channel has a corresponding capture register. When the capture occurs, the value of the counter CNT will be latched in the capture register CCx. Before entering the capture register, the signal will pass through the prescaler to set how many events to capture at a time.

Input capture application

Input capture is used to capture external events, and can give the time flag to indicate the occurrence time of the event and measure the pulse jump edge events (measure the frequency or pulse width), for example, if the selected edge appears on the input pin, the TMRx_CCx register will capture the current value of the counter and the CCxIFLG bit of the status register TMRx_STS will be set to 1; if CCxIEN=1, an interrupt will be generated.

In capture mode, the timing, frequency, cycle and duty cycle of a waveform can be measured. In the input capture mode, the edge selection is set to rising edge detection. When the rising edge appears on the capture channel, the first capture occurs, at this time, the value of the counter CNT will be latched in the capture register CCx; at the same time, it will enter the capture interrupt, a capture will be recorded in the interrupt service program and the value will be recorded. When the next rising edge is detected, the second capture occurs, the value of counter CNT will be latched in capture register CCx again, at this time, it will enter the capture interrupt again; read the value of capture register and the cycle of this pulse signal will be obtained by capture.

14.4.4 Output compare

There are eight modes of output compare: freeze, channel x is valid level when matching, channel x is invalid level when matching, flip, force is invalid, force is valid, PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2, which are configured by OCxMOD bit in TMRx_CCMx register and can control the waveform of output signal in output compare mode.

Output compare application

In the output compare mode, the position, polarity, frequency and time of the pulse generated by the timer can be controlled.

When the value of the counter is equal to that of the capture/compare register, the channel output can be set as high level, low level or flip by configuring the OCxMOD bit in TMRx_CCMx register and the CCxPOL bit in the output polarity TMRx_CCEN register.

When CCxIFLG=1 in TMRx_STS register, if CCxIEN=1 in TMRx_DIEN register, an interrupt will be generated; if CCDSEL=1 in TMRx_CTRL2 register, a DMA request will be generated.

14.4.5 PWM output mode

PWM mode is pulse signal that can be adjusted by external output of the timer. The pulse width of the signal is determined by the value of the compare register CCx, and the cycle is determined by the value of the auto reload AUTORLD.

PWM output mode contains PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2; PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2 are divided into count-up, count-down and center alignment counting; in PWM mode 1, if the value of the counter CNT is less than the value of the compare register CCx, the output level will be valid; otherwise, it will be invalid.

Set the timing diagram of PWM mode 1 when CCx=5, AUTORLD=7

Figure 22 Timing Diagram of PWM1 Count-up Mode

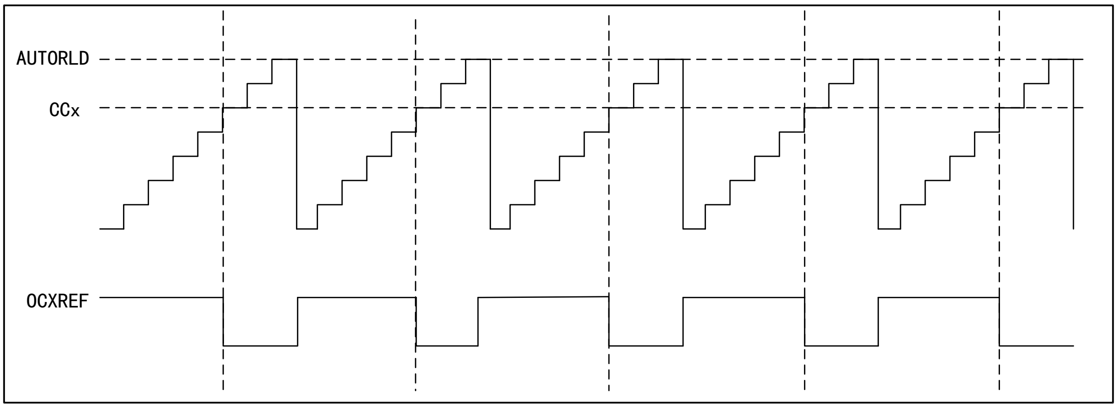


Figure 23 Timing Diagram of PWM1 Count-down Mode

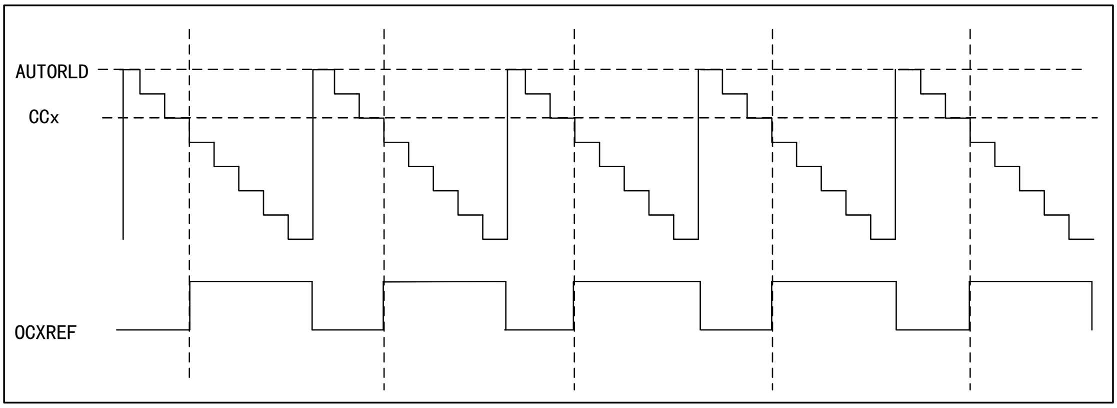
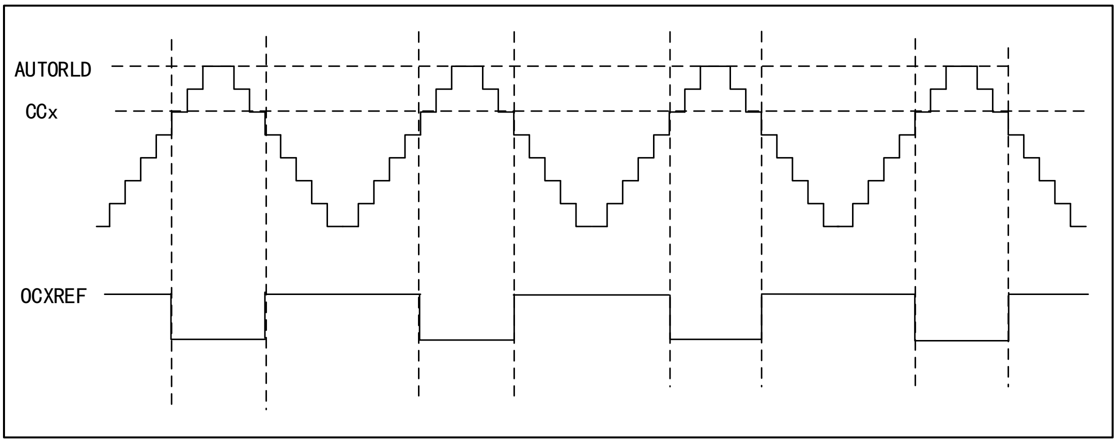


Figure 24 Timing Diagram of PWM1 Center-aligned Mode



In PWM mode 2, if the value of the counter CNT is less than that of the compare register CCx, the output level will be invalid; otherwise, it will be valid.

Set the timing diagram of PWM mode 2 when CCx=5, AUTORLD=7

Figure 25 Timing Diagram of PWM2 Count-up Mode

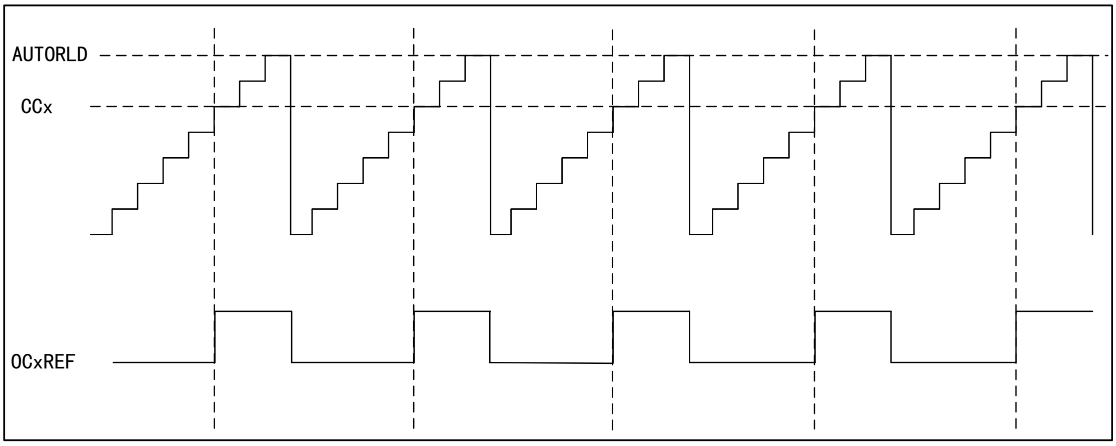


Figure 26 Timing Diagram of PWM2 Count-down Mode

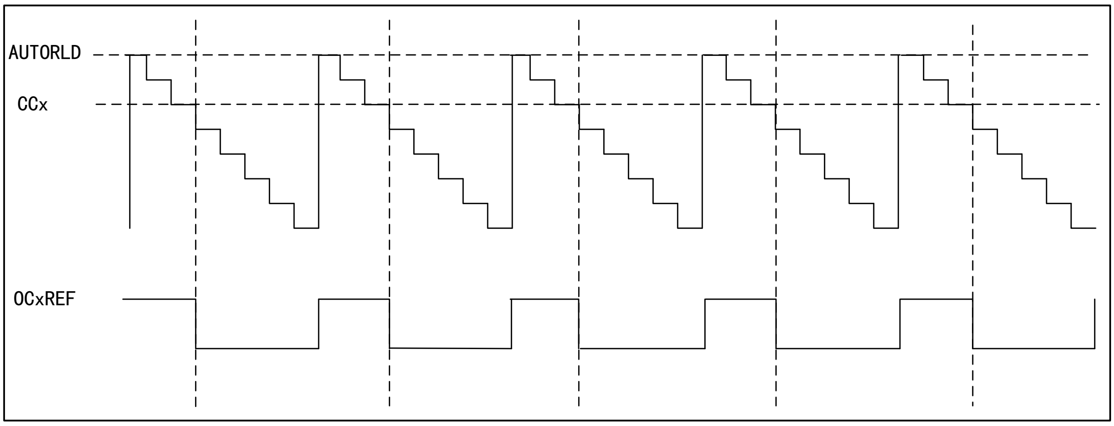
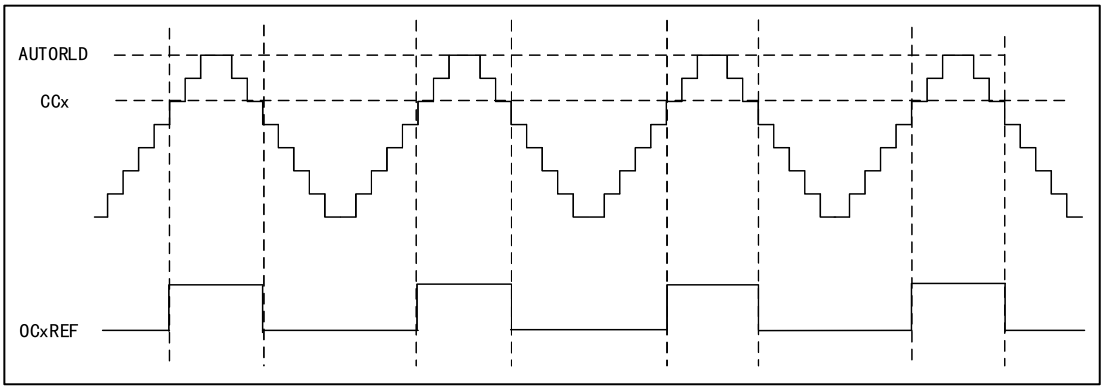


Figure 27 Timing Diagram of PWM2 Center-aligned Mode



14.4.6 PWM input mode

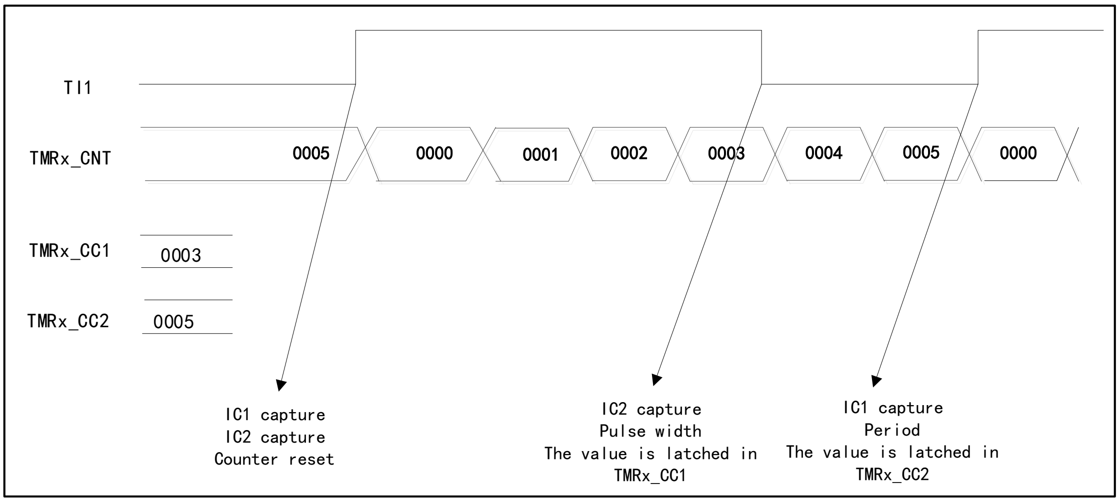
PWM input mode is a particular case of input capture.

In PWM input mode, as only TI1FP1 and TI1FP2 are connected to the slave mode controller, input can be performed only through the channels TMRx_CH1 and TMRx_CH2, which need to occupy the capture registers of CH1 and CH2.

In the PWM input mode, the PWM signal enters from TMRx_CH1, and the signal will be divided into two channels, one can measure the cycle and the other can measure the duty cycle. In the configuration, it is only required to set the polarity of one channel, and the other will be automatically configured with the opposite polarity.

In this mode, the slave mode controller should be configured as the reset mode (SMFSEL bit of TMRx_SMCTRL register)

Figure 28 Timing Diagram in PWM Input Mode



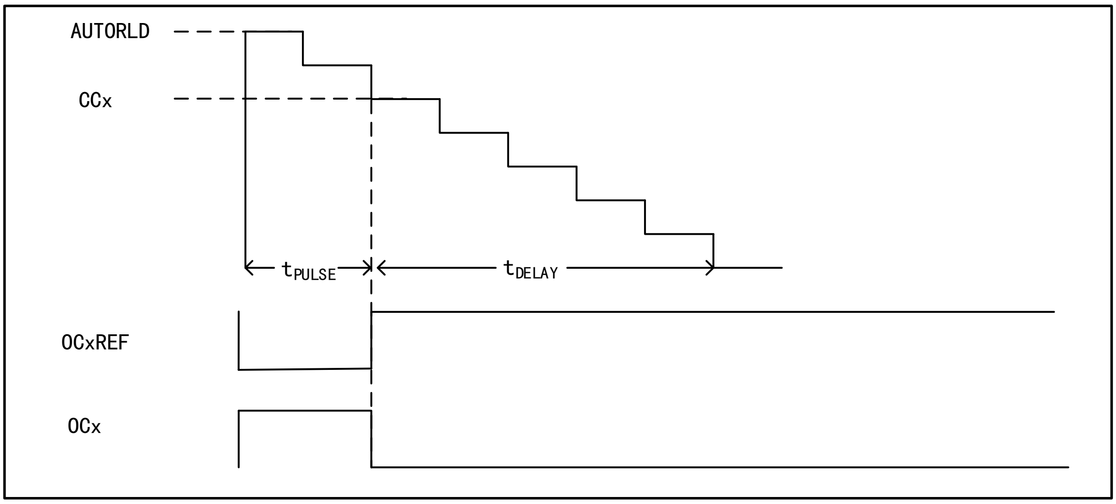
14.4.7 Single-pulse mode

The single-pulse mode is a special case of timer compare output, and is also a special case of PWM output mode.

Set SPMEN bit of TMRx_CTRL1 register, and select the single-pulse mode. After the counter is started, a certain number of pulses will be output before the update event occurs. When an update event occurs, the counter will stop counting, and the subsequent PWM waveform output will no longer be changed.

After a certain controllable delay, a pulse with controllable pulse width is generated in single-pulse mode through the program. The delay time is defined by the value of TMRx_CCx register; in the count-up mode, the delay time is CCx and the pulse width is AUTORLD-CCx; in the count-down mode, the delay time is AUTORLD-CCx and the pulse width is CCx.

Figure 29 Timing Diagram of Single-pulse Mode



14.4.8 Impact of the register on output waveform

The following registers will affect the level of the timer output waveform. For details, please refer to "Register Functional Description".

(1) CcxEN and CCxNEN bits in TMRx_CCEN register

- CCxNEN=0 and CCxEN=0: The output is disabled (output disabled, invalid)
- CCxNEN=1 and CCxEN=1: The output is enabled (output enabled, normal output)

(2) MOEN bit in TMRx_BDT register

- MOEN=0: Idle mode
- MOEN=1: Run mode

(3) OCxOIS and OCxNOIS bits in TMRx_CTRL2 register

- OCxOIS=0 and OCxNOIS=0: When idle (MOEN=0), the output level after the dead zone is 0
- OCxOIS=1 and OCxNOIS=1: When idle (MOEN=0), the output level after the dead zone is 1

(4) RMOS bit in TMRx_BDT register

- Application environment of RMOS: In run mode of corresponding complementary channel and timer (MOEN=1), the timer is not working (CCxEN=0, CCxNEN=0) or is working (CCxEN=1, CCxNEN=1)

(5) IMOS bit in TMRx_BDT register

- Application environment of IMOS: In idle mode of corresponding complementary channel and timer (MOEN=0), the timer is not working (CCxEN=0, CCxNEN=0) or is working (CCxEN=1, CCxNEN=1)

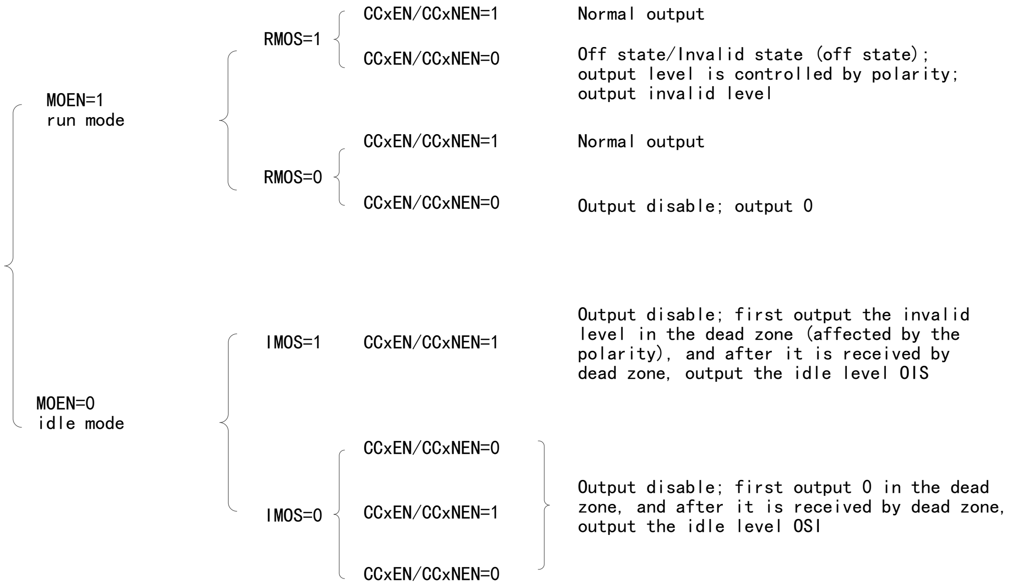
(6) CCxPOL and CCxNPOL bits of TMRx_CCEN register

- CCxPOL=0 and CCxNPOL=0: Output polarity, valid at high level

CCxPOL=1 and CCxNPOL=1: Output polarity, valid at low level

The following figure lists the register structural relationships that affect the output waveform

Figure 30 Register Structural Relationship Affecting Output Waveform



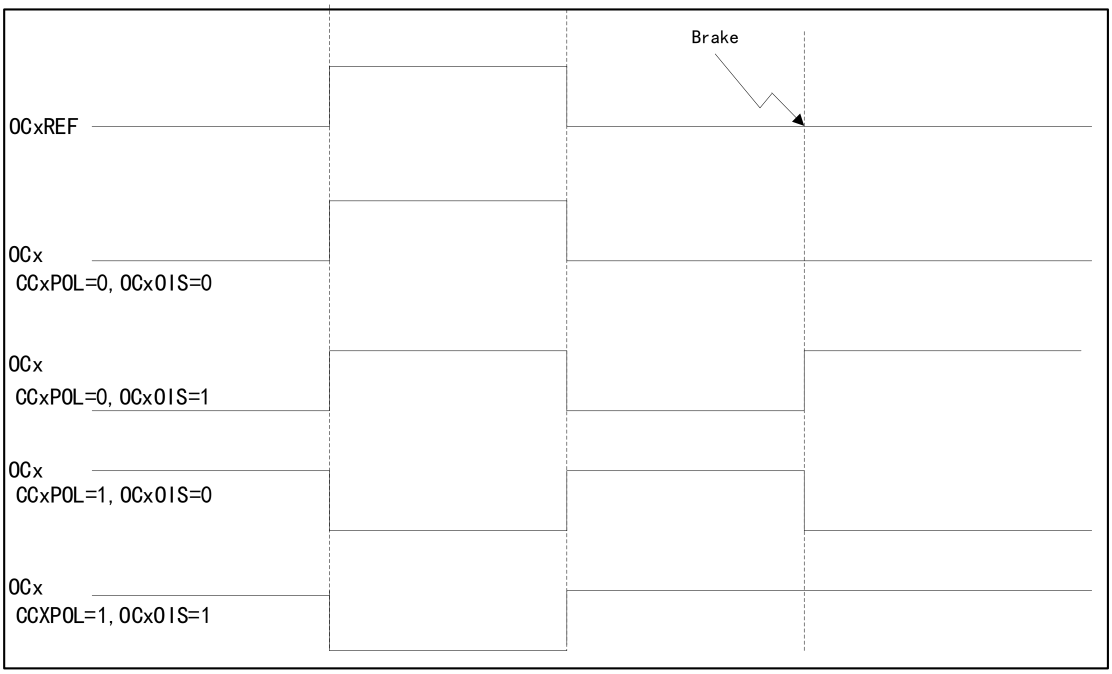
14.4.9 Braking function

The signal source of braking is clock fault event and external input interface.

Besides, the BRKEN bit in TMRx_BDT register can enable the braking function, and the BRKPOL bit can configure the polarity of braking input signal.

When a braking event occurs, the output pulse signal level can be modified according to the state of the relevant control bit.

Figure 31 Braking Event Timing Diagram

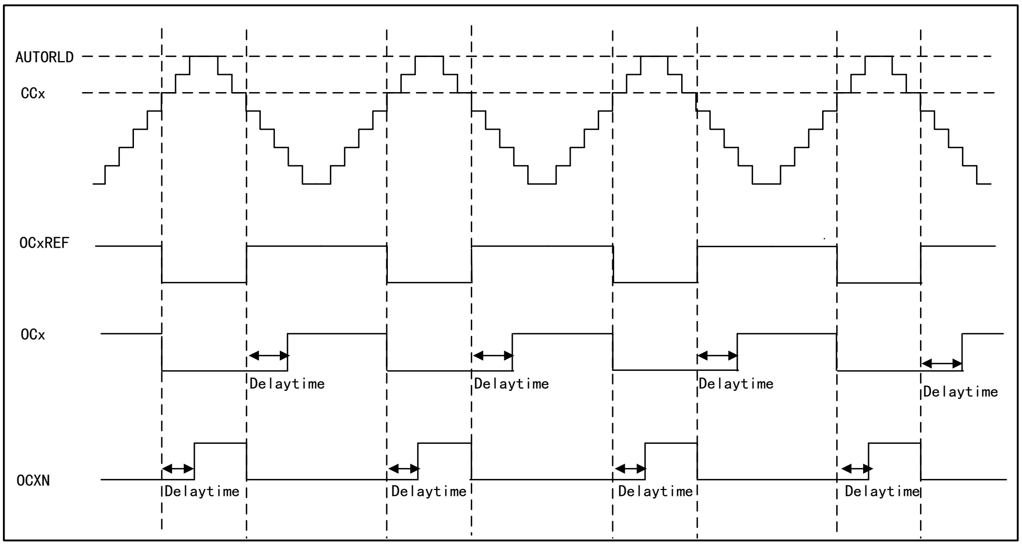


14.4.10 Complementary output and dead zone insertion

Complementary output is particular output of advanced timer, and the advanced timer has three groups of complementary output channels. The insertion dead time is used to generate complementary output signals to ensure that the two-way complementary signals of channels will not be valid at the same time. The dead time is set according to the output device connected to the timer and its characteristics

The duration of the dead zone can be controlled by configuring DTS bit of TMRx_BDT register

Figure 32 Complementary Output with Dead Zone Insertion



14.4.11 Forced output mode

In the forced output mode, the comparison result is ignored, and the corresponding level is directly output according to the configuration instruction.

- CCxSEL=00 for TMRx_CCMx register, set CCx channel as output
- OCxMOD=100/101 for TMRx_CCMx register, set to force OCxREF signal to invalid/valid

In this mode, the corresponding interrupt and DMA request will still be generated.

14.4.12 Encoder interface mode

The encoder interface mode is equivalent to an external clock with direction selection. In the encoder interface mode, the content of the timer can always indicate the position of the encoder.

The method of selecting encoder interface is as follows:

- By setting SMFSEL bit of TMRx_SMCTRL register, set the counter to count on the edge of TI1 channel /TI2 channel, or count on the edge of TI1 and TI2 at the same time.
- Select the polarity of TI1 and TI2 by setting the CC1POL and CC2POL bits of TMRx_CCEN register.
- Select to filter or not by setting the IC1F and IC2F bits of TMRx_CCM1 register.

The two input TI1 and TI2 can be used as the interface of incremental encoder. The counter is driven by the effective jump of the signals TI1FP1 and TI2FP2 after filtering and edge selection in TI1 and TI2.
The count pulse and direction signal are generated according to the input signals of TI1 and TI2

- The counter will count up/down according to the jumping sequence of the input signal.
- Set CNTDIR of control register TMRx_CTRL1 to be read-only (CNTDIR will be re-calculated due to jumping of any input end).

The change mechanism of counter count direction is shown in the figure below

Table 59 Relationship between Count Direction and Encoder

Effective edge		**Count only in TI1**		**Count only in TI2**		**Count in both TI1 and TI2**	
Level of relative signal		High	Low	High	Low	High	Low
TI1FP1	Rising edge	—		Count down	Count up	Count down	Count up
	Falling edge			Count up	Count down	Count up	Count down
TI2FP2	Rising edge	Count up	Count down	—		Count up	Count down

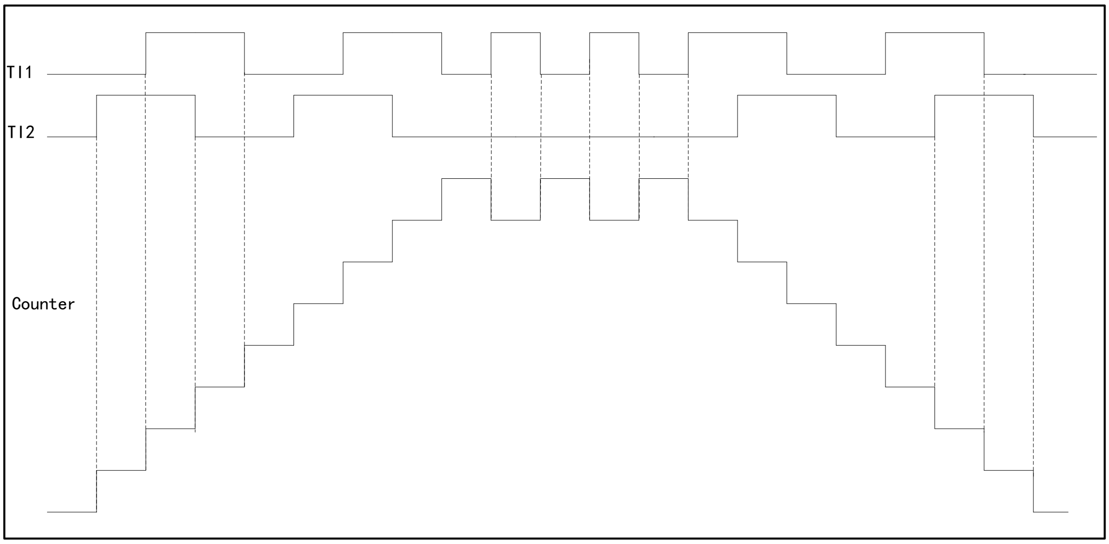
Effective edge		Count only in TI1		Count only in TI2		Count in both TI1 and TI2	
	Falling edge	Count down	Count up			Count down	Count up

The external incremental encoder can be directly connected with MCU, not needing external interface logic, so the comparator is used to convert the differential output of the encoder to digital signal to increase the immunity to noise interference.

Among the following examples:

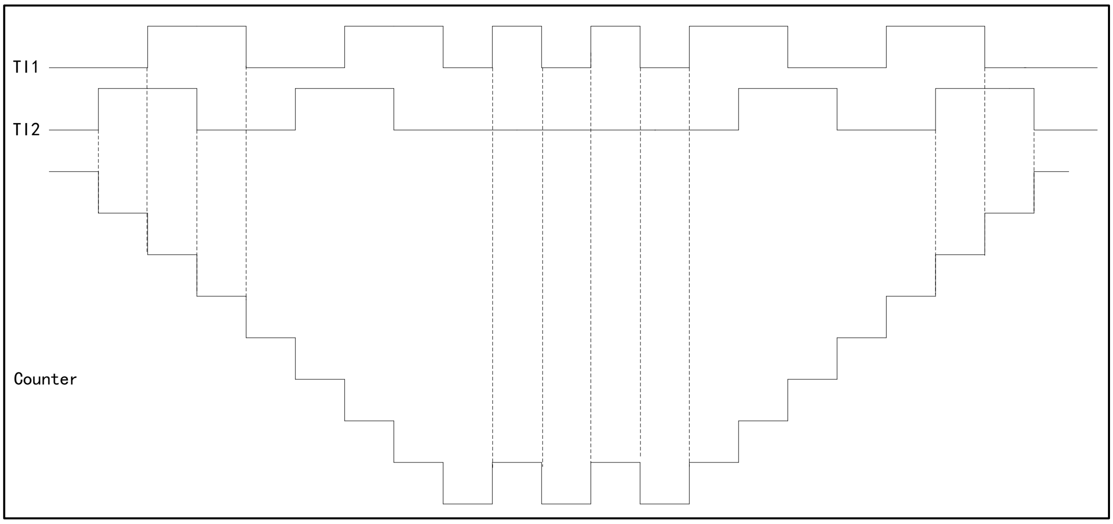
- IC1FP1 is mapped to TI1
- IC2FP2 is mapped to TI2
- Neither IC1FP1 nor IC2FP2 is phase-inverting
- The input signal is valid at the rising edge and falling edge
- Enable the counter

Figure 33 Counter Operation Example in Encoder Mode



For example, when TI1 is at low level, and TI2 is in rising edge state, the counter will count up.

Figure 34 Example of Encoder Interface Mode of IC1FP1 Reversed Phase



For example, when TI1 is at low level, and the rising edge of TI2 jumps, the counter will count down.

14.4.13 Slave Mode

TMRx timer can synchronize external trigger

- Reset mode
- Gated mode
- Trigger mode

SMFSEL bit in TMRx_SMCTRL register can be set to select the mode.

SMFSEL=100 set the reset mode, SMFSEL=101 set the gated mode, and SMFSEL=110 set the trigger mode.

In the reset mode, when a trigger input event occurs, the counter and prescaler will be initialized, and the rising edge of the selected trigger input (TRGI) will reinitialize the counter and generate a signal to update the register.

In the gated mode, the enable of the counter depends on the high level of the selected input end. When the trigger input is high, the clock of the counter will be enabled. Once the trigger input becomes low, the counter will stop (but not be reset). The start and stop of the counter are controlled.

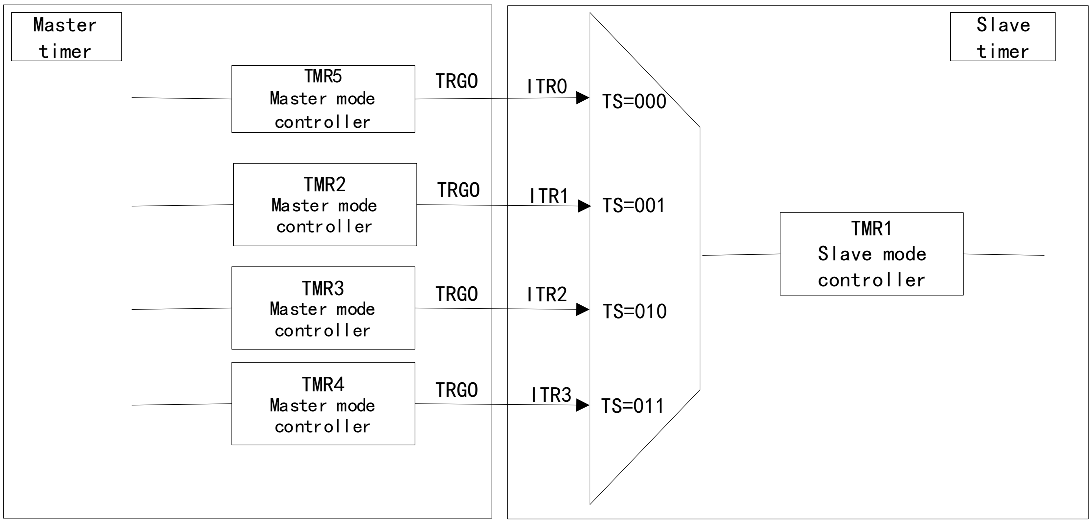
In the trigger mode, the enable of the counter depends on the event on the selected input, the counter will be enabled at the rising edge of the trigger input (but not be reset), and only the start of the counter is controlled.

14.4.14 Timer interconnection

Each timer of TMRx can be connected with each other to realize synchronization or cascading between timers. It is required to configure one timer in master mode and the other timer in slave mode.

When the timer is in master mode, it can reset, start, stop and provide clock source for the counter of the slave mode timer.

Figure 35 Timer 1 Master/Slave Mode Example



When the timers are interconnected:

- A timer can be used as the prescaler of other register
- Start the other register by the enable signal of a timer
- Start the other register by the update event of a timer
- Select the other register by the enable of a timer
- Two timers can be synchronized by an external trigger

14.4.15 Interrupt and DMA request

The timer can generate an interrupt when an event occurs during operation

- Update event (counter overrun/underrun, counter initialization)
- Trigger event (counter start, stop, internal/external trigger)
- Capture/Compare event
- Braking signal input event

Some internal interrupt events can generate DMA requests, and special interfaces can enable or disable trigger DMA requests.

14.4.16 Debug mode

The TMR1/8 can be configured in debug mode and choose to stop or continue to work. It depends on the TMRx_STS bit of DBGMCU_APB2F register in DBGMCU module.

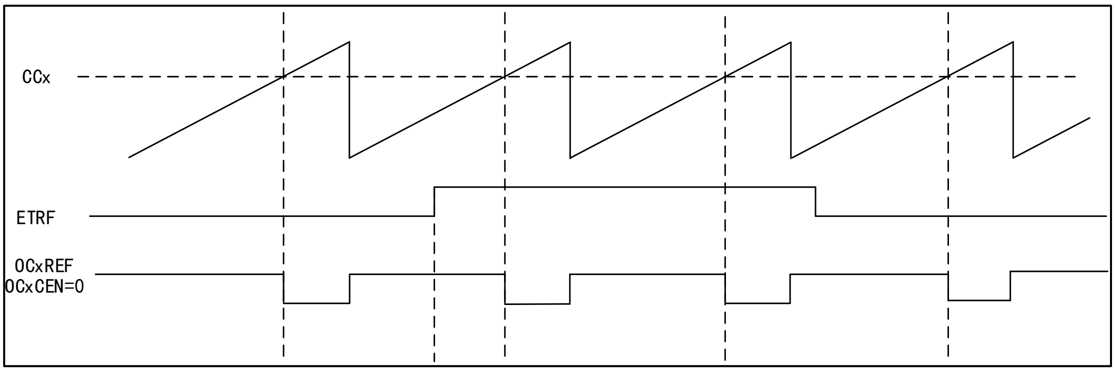
14.4.17 Clear OCxREF signal when an external event occurs

This function is used for output compare and PWM mode.

In one channel, the high level of ETRF input port will reduce the signal of OCxREF to low level, and the OCxCEN bit in capture/compare register TMRx_CCMx is set to 1, and OCxREF signal will remain low until the next update event occurs.

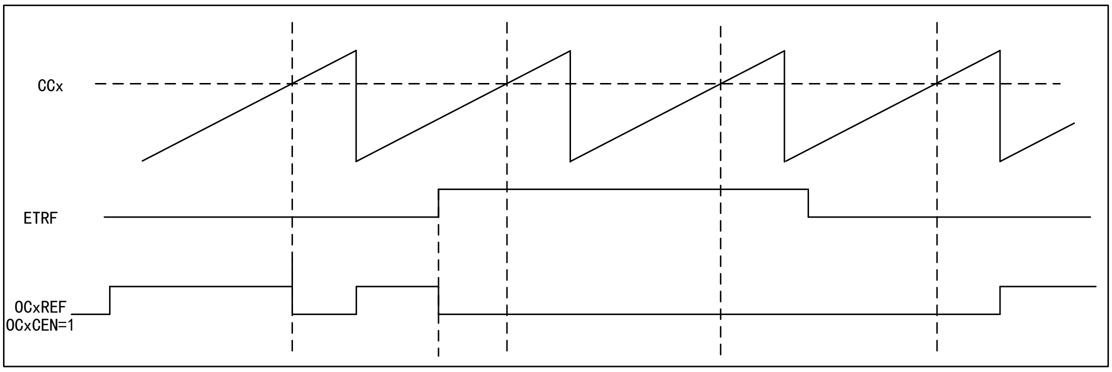
Set TMRx to PWM mode, disable the external trigger prescaler, and disable the external trigger mode 2; when ETRF input is high, set OCxCEN=0, and the output OCxREF signal is shown in the figure below.

Figure 36 OCxREF Timing Diagram



Set TMRx to PWM mode, disable the external trigger prescaler, and disable the external trigger mode 2; when ETRF input is high, set OCxCEN=1, and the output OCxREF signal is shown in the figure below.

Figure 37 OCxREF Timing Diagram



14.5 Register address mapping

In the following table, all registers of the advanced timer are mapped to a 16-bit addressable (addressing) space.

Table 60 Advanced Timer Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
TMRx_CTRL1	Control register 1	0x00
TMRx_CTRL2	Control register 2	0x04
TMRx_SMCTRL	Slave mode control register	0x08
TMRx_DIEN	DMA/Interrupt enable register	0x0C
TMRx_STS	Status register	0x10
TMRx_CEG	Control event generation register	0x14

Register name	Description	Offset Address
TMRx_CCM1	Capture/Compare mode register 1	0x18
TMRx_CCM2	Capture/Compare mode register 2	0x1C
TMRx_CCEN	Capture/Compare enable register	0x20
TMRx_CNT	Counter register	0x24
TMRx_PSC	Prescaler register	0x28
TMRx_AUTORLD	Auto reload register	0x2C
TMRx_REPCNT	Repeat count register	0x30
TMRx_CC1	Channel 1 capture/compare register	0x34
TMRx_CC2	Channel 2 capture/compare register	0x38
TMRx_CC3	Channel 3 capture/compare register	0x3C
TMRx_CC4	Channel 4 capture/compare register	0x40
TMRx_BDT	Braking and dead zone register	0x44
TMRx_DCTRL	DMA control register	0x48
TMRx_DMADDR	DMA address register of continuous mode	0x4C

14.6 Register functional description

14.6.1 Control register 1 (TMRx_CTRL1)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CNTEN	R/W	Counter Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable When the timer is configured as external clock, gated mode and encoder mode, it is required to write 1 to the bit by software to start regular work; when it is configured as the trigger mode, it can write 1 by hardware.
1	UD	R/W	Update Disable Update event can cause AUTORLD, PSC and CCx to generate the value of update setting. 0: Enable update event (UEV) An update event can occur in any of the following situations: The counter overruns/underruns; Set UEG bit; Update generated by slave mode controller. 1: Disable update event

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2	URSSEL	R/W	Update Request Source Select If interrupt or DMA is enabled, the update event can generate update interrupt or DMA request. Different update request sources can be selected by this bit. 0: The counter overruns or underruns Set UEG bit; Update generated by slave mode controller. 1: The counter overruns or underruns
3	SPMEN	R/W	Single Pulse Mode Enable When an update event is generated, the output level of the channel can be changed; in this mode, the CNTEN bit will be cleared, the counter will stop, and the subsequent output level of the channel will no long be changed. 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	CNTDIR	R/W	Counter Direction This bit is read-only when the counter is configured as center-aligned mode or encoder mode. 0: Count up 1: Count down
6:5	CAMSEL	R/W	Center Aligned Mode Select In the center-aligned mode, the counter counts up and down alternately; otherwise, it will only count up or down. Different center-aligned modes affect the timing of setting the output compare interrupt flag bit of the output channel to 1; when the counter is disabled (CNTEN=0), select the center-aligned mode. 00: Edge-aligned mode 01: Center-aligned mode 1 (the output compare interrupt flag bit of output channel is set to 1 when counting down) 10: Center-aligned mode 2 (the output compare interrupt flag bit of output channel is set to 1 when counting up) 11: Center-aligned mode 3 (the output compare interrupt flag bit of output channel is set to 1 when counting up/down)
7	ARPEN	R/W	Auto-reload Preload Enable When the buffer is disabled, modification of TMRx_AUTORLD by program will immediately lead to modification of the values loaded to the counter; when the buffer is enabled, modification of TMRx_AUTORLD by program will lead to modification of the values loaded to the counter at the next update event. 0: Disable 1: Enable
9:8	CLKDIV	R/W	Clock Division For the configuration of dead zone and digital filter, CK_INT provides the clock, and the dead time and the clock of the digital filter can be adjusted by this bit. 00: $t_{DTS}=t_{CK\_INT}$ 01: $t_{DTS}=2\times t_{CK\_INT}$ 10: $t_{DTS}=4\times t_{CK\_INT}$ 11: Reserved

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:10	Reserved		

14.6.2 Control register 2 (TMRx_CTRL2)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CCPEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Preloaded Enable This bit affects the change of CcxEN, CCxNEN and OCxMOD values. When preloading is disabled, the program modification will immediately affect the timer setting; when preloading is enabled, it is only updated after COMG is set, so as to affect the setting of the timer; this bit only works on channels with complementary output. 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	Reserved		
2	CCUSEL	R/W	Capture/compare Control Update Select It works only when the capture/compare preload is enabled (CCPEN=1), and it works only for complementary output channel. 0: It can only be updated by setting COMG bit 1: It can be updated by setting COMG bit or rising edge on TRGI
3	CCDSEL	R/W	Capture/Compare DMA Select 0: Transmit DMA request of CCx when CCx event occurs 1: Transmit DMA request of CCx when an update event occurs
6:4	MMSEL	R/W	Master Mode Signal Select The signals of timers working in master mode can be used for TRGO, so as to affect the work of timers in slave mode and cascaded with the master timer, and the specific impact is related to the configuration of slave mode timer. 000: Reset; the reset signal of master mode timer is used for TRGO 001: Enable; the counter enable signal of master mode timer is used for TRGO 010: Update; the update event of master mode timer is used for TRGO 011: Compare pulses; when the master mode timer captures/compares successfully (CCxIFLG=1), a pulse signal is output for TRGO 100: Compare mode 1; OC1REF is used to trigger TRGO 101: Compare mode 2; OC2REF is used to trigger TRGO 110: Compare mode 3; OC3REF is used to trigger TRGO 111: Compare mode 4; OC4REF is used to trigger TRGO
7	TI1SEL	R/W	Timer Input 1 Selection 0: TMRx_CH1 pin is connected to TI1 input 1: TMRx_CH1, TMRx_CH2 and TMRx_CH3 pins are connected to TI1 input after exclusive

Field	Name	R/W	Description
8	OC1OIS	R/W	OC1 Output Idel State Configure Only the level state after the dead time of OC1 is affected when MOEN=0 and OC1N is realized. 0:OC1=0 1:OC1=1 Note: When LOCKCFG bit in TMRx_BDT register is at the Level 1, 2 or 3, this bit cannot be modified.
9	OC1NOIS	R/W	OC1N Output Idle State Configure Only the level state after the dead time of OC1 is affected when MOEN=0 and OC1N is realized. 0:OC1N=0 1:OC1N=1 Note: When PLOCKCFG bit in TMRx_BDT register is at the Level 1, 2 or 3, this bit cannot be modified.
10	OC2OIS	R/W	Configure OC2 output idle state. Refer to OC1OIS bit
11	OC2NOIS	R/W	Configure OC2N output idle state. Refer to OC1NOIS bit
12	OC3OIS	R/W	Configure OC3 output idle state. Refer to OC1OIS bit
13	OC3NOIS	R/W	Configure OC3N output idle state. Refer to OC1NOIS bit
14	OC4OIS	R/W	Configure OC4 output idle state. Refer to OC1OIS bit
15	Reserved		

14.6.3 Slave mode control register (TMRx_SMCTRL)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	SMFSEL	R/W	Slave Mode Function Select 000: Disable the slave mode, the timer can be used as master mode timer to affect the work of slave mode timer; if CTRL1_CNTEN=1, the prescaler is directly driven by the internal clock. 001: Encoder mode 1; according to the level of TI1FP1, the counter counts at the edge of TI2FP2. 010: Encoder mode 2; according to the level of TI2FP2, the counter counts at the edge of TI1FP1. 011: Encoder mode 3; according to the input level of the other signal, the counter counts at the edge of TI1FP1 and TI2FP2. 100: Reset mode; the slave mode timer resets the counter after receiving the rising edge signal of TRGI and generates the signal to update the register. 101: Gated mode; when the slave mode timer receives the TRGI high level signal, the counter will start to work; when it receives TRGI low level signal, the counter will stop working; when it receives TRGI high level signal again, the timer will continue to work; the counter is not reset during the whole period. 110: Trigger mode; the slave mode timer drives the counter to work after receiving the rising edge signal of TRGI. 111: External clock mode 1; select the rising edge signal of TRGI as the clock source to drive the counter to work.
3	Reserved		
6:4	TRGSEL	R/W	Trigger Input Signal Select In order to avoid generating false edge detection when changing the value of this bit, it must be changed when SMFSEL=0. 000: Internal trigger ITR0 001: Internal trigger ITR1 010: Internal trigger ITR2 011: Internal trigger ITR3 100: Channel 1 input edge detector TIF_ED 101: Channel 1 post-filtering timer input TI1FP1 110: Channel 2 post-filtering timer input TI2FP2 111: External trigger input (ETRF)
7	MSMEN	R/W	Master/slave Mode Enable 0: Invalid 1: Enable the master/slave mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:8	ETFCFG	R/W	External Trigger Filter Configure 0000: Disable filter, sampled by f_{DTS} 0001:DIV=1，N=2 0010:DIV=1，N=4 0011:DIV=1，N=8 0100:DIV=2，N=6 0101:DIV=2，N=8 0110:DIV=4，N=6 0111:DIV=4，N=8 1000:DIV=8，N=6 1001:DIV=8，N=8 1010:DIV=16，N=5 1011:DIV=16，N=6 1100:DIV=16，N=8 1101:DIV=32，N=5 1110:DIV=32，N=6 1111:DIV=32，N=8 Sampling frequency=timer clock frequency/DIV; the filter length=N, and a jump is generated by every N events.
13:12	ETPCFG	R/W	External Trigger Prescaler Configure The ETR (external trigger input) signal becomes ETRP after frequency division. The signal frequency of ETRP is at most 1/4 of TMRxCLK frequency; when ETR frequency is too high, the ETRP frequency must be reduced through frequency division. 00: Disable the prescaler; 01: ETR signal 2 divided frequency 10: ETR signal 4 divided frequency 11: ETR signal 8 divided frequency
14	ECEN	R/W	External Clock Enable Mode2 0: Disable 1: Enable Setting ECEN bit has the same function as selecting external clock mode 1 to connect TRGI to ETRF; slave mode (reset, gating, trigger) can be used at the same time with external clock mode 2, but TRGI cannot be connected to ETRF in such case; when external clock mode 1 and external clock mode 2 are enabled at the same time, the input of external clock is ETRF.
15	ETPOL	R/W	External Trigger Polarity Configure This bit decides whether the external trigger ETR is phase-inverting. 0: The external trigger ETR is not phase-inverting, and the high level or rising edge is valid 1: The external trigger ETR is phase-inverting, and the low level or falling edge is valid

Table 61 TMRx Internal Trigger Connection

Slave timer	ITR1（TS=000）	ITR1（TS=001）	ITR2（TS=010）	ITR3（TS=011）
TMR1	TMR5	TMR2	TMR3	TMR4

TMR8	TMR1	TMR2	TMR4	TMR5

14.6.4 DMA/Interrupt enable register (TMRx_DIEN)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UIEN	R/W	Update Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	CC1IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	CC2IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	CC3IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	CC4IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	COMIEN	R/W	COM Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	TRGIEN	R/W	Trigger Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	BRKIEN	R/W	Break Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
8	UDIEN	R/W	Update DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	CC1DEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
10	CC2DEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	CC3DEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
12	CC4DEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
13	COMDEN	R/W	COM DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
14	TRGDEN	R/W	Trigger DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15	Reserved		

14.6.5 Status register (TMRx_STS)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UIFLG	RC_W0	Update Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No update event interrupt occurs 1: Update event interrupt occurred When the counter value is reloaded or reinitialized, an update event will be generated. The bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software; update events are generated in the following situations: (1) UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, and when the value of the repeat counter overruns/underruns, an update event will be generated; (2) URSSEL=0 and UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, configure UEG=1 on TMRx_CEG register to generate an update event, and the counter needs to be initialized by software; (3) URSSEL=0 and UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, and an update event will be generated when the counter is initialized by trigger event.
1	CC1IFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel1 Interrupt Flag **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output:** 0: No matching occurs 1: The value of TMRx_CNT matches the value of TMRx_CC1 **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input:** 0: No input capture occurs 1: Input capture occurs When a capture event occurs, it is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by software or cleared to 0 when reading TMRx_CC1 register.
2	CC2IFLG	RC_W0	Capture/Compare Channel2 Interrupt Flag Refer to STS_CC1IFLG
3	CC3IFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel3 Interrupt Flag Refer to STS_CC1IFLG
4	CC4IFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel4 Interrupt Flag Refer to STS_CC1IFLG

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5	COMIFLG	RC_W0	COM Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No COM event occurs 1: COM interrupt waits for response After COM event is generated, this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software.
6	TRGIFLG	RC_W0	Trigger Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No trigger event interrupt occurs 1: Trigger event interrupt occurs When a trigger event is generated, this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software.
7	BRKIFLG	RC_W0	Brake Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No brake event occurs 1: Brake event occurs When brake input is valid, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; when brake input is invalid, this bit can be cleared to 0 by software.
8	Reserved		
9	CC1RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel1 Repetition Capture Flag 0: Repeated capture does not occur 1: Repeated capture occurs The value of the counter is captured to TMRx_CC1 register, and CC1IFLG=1; this bit can be set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software only when the channel is configured as input capture.
10	CC2RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel2 Repetition Capture Flag Refer to STS_CC1RCFLG
11	CC3RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/compare Channel3 Repetition Capture Flag Refer to STS_CC1RCFLG
12	CC4RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel4 Repetition Capture Flag Refer to STS_CC1RCFLG
15:13	Reserved		

14.6.6 Control event generation register (TMRx_CEG)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UEG	W	Update Event Generate 0: Invalid 1: Initialize the counter and generate an update event This bit is set to 1 by software, and cleared to 0 by hardware. Note: When an update event is generated, the counter of the prescaler will be cleared to 0, but the prescaler factor remains unchanged. In the count-down mode, the counter will read the value of TMRx_AUTORLD; in center-aligned mode or count-up mode, the counter will be cleared to 0.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	CC1EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Event Generation 0: Invalid 1: Generate capture/compare event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware. If Channel 1 is in output mode, When CC1IFLG=1, if CC1IEN and CC1DEN bits are set, the corresponding interrupt and DMA request will be generated. If Channel 1 is in input mode The value of the capture counter is stored in TMRx_CC1 register; configure CC1IFLG=1, and if CC1IEN and CC1DEN bits are also set, the corresponding interrupt and DMA request will be generated; at this time, if CC1IFLG=1, it is required to configure CC1RCFLG=1.
2	CC2EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Event Generation Refer to CC1EG description
3	CC3EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Event Generation Refer to CC1EG description
4	CC4EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Event Generation Refer to CC1EG description
5	COMG	W	Capture/Compare Control Update Event Generate 0: Invalid 1: Generate capture/Compare update event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware. Note: COMG bit is valid only in complementary output channel.
6	TEG	W	Trigger Event Generate 0: Invalid 1: Generate trigger event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware.
7	BEG	W	Generate brake event (Brake Event Generate) 0: Invalid 1: Generate brake event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware.
15:8	Reserved		

14.6.7 Capture/Compare mode register 1 (TMRx_CCM1)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000

The timer can be configured as input (capture mode) or output (compare mode) by CCxSEL bit. The functions of other bits of the register are different in input and output modes, and the functions of the same bit are different in output mode and input mode. The OCX in the register describes the function of the channel in the output mode, and the Icx in the register describes the function of the channel in the input mode.

Output compare mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC1SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Selection This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC1 channel is output 01: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI1 10: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI2 11: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC1EN=0).
2	OC1FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Fast Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit is used to improve the response of the capture/compare output to the trigger input event.
3	OC1PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Preload Enable 0: Disable preloading function; write the value of TMRx_CC1 register through the program and it will work immediately. 1: Enable preloading function; write the value of TMRx_CC1 register through the program and it will work after an update event is generated. Note: When the protection level is 3 and the channel is configured as output, this bit cannot be modified. When the preload register is uncertain, PWM mode can be used only in single-pulse mode (SPMEN=1); otherwise, the following output compare result is uncertain.
6:4	OC1MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Mode Configure 000: Freeze The output compare has no effect on OC1REF 001: The output value is high when matching. When the value of counter CNT matches the value CCx of capture compare register, OC1REF will be forced to be at high level 010: The output value is low when matching. When the value of the counter matches the value of the capture/compare register, OC1REF will be forced to be low 011: Output flaps when matching. When the value of the counter matches the value of the capture compare register, flap the level of OC1REF 100: The output is forced to be low. Force OC1REF to be low 101: The output is forced to be high. Force OC1REF to be high 110: PWM mode 1 (set to high when the counter value<output compare value; otherwise, set to low) 111: PWM mode 2 (set to high when the counter value>output compare value; otherwise, set to low) Note: When the protection level is 3 and the channel is configured as output, this bit cannot be modified. In PWM modes 1 and 2, the OC1REF level changes when the comparison result changes or when the output compare mode changes from freeze mode to PWM mode.
7	OC1CEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Clear Enable 0: OC1REF is unaffected by ETRF input. 1: When high level of ETRF input is detected, OC1REF=0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:8	CC2SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Select This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC2 channel is output 01: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI2 10: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI1 11: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC2EN=0).
10	OC2FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Preload Enable
11	OC2PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Buffer Enable
14:12	OC2MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Mode
15	OC2CEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Clear Enable

Input capture mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC1SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Select 00: CC1 channel is output 01: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI1 10: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI2 11: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN bit CC1EN=0).
3:2	IC1PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel1 Perscaler Configure 00:PSC=1 01:PSC=2 10:PSC=4 11:PSC=8 PSC is prescaler factor; capture is triggered once by every PSC events.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:4	IC1F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 1 Filter Configuration 0000: Disable filter, sampled by f_{DTS} 0001：DIV=1，N=2 0010：DIV=1，N=4 0011：DIV=1，N=8 0100：DIV=2，N=6 0101：DIV=2，N=8 0110：DIV=4，N=6 0111：DIV=4，N=8 1000：DIV=8，N=6 1001：DIV=8，N=8 1010：DIV=16，N=5 1011：DIV=16，N=6 1100：DIV=16，N=8 1101：DIV=32，N=5 1110：DIV=32，N=6 1111：DIV=32，N=8 Sampling frequency=timer clock frequency/DIV; the filter length=N, indicating that a jump is generated by every N events.
9:8	CC2SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 2 Select 00: CC2 channel is output 01: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI2 10: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI1 11: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC2EN=0).
11:10	IC2PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel2 Perscaler Configuration
15:12	IC2F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 2 Filter Configuration

14.6.8 Capture/Compare mode register 2 （TMRx_CCM2）

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value: 0x0000

Refer to the description of the above CCM1 register.

Output compare mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC3SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 3 Selection This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC3 channel is output 01: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TI3 10: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TI4 11: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC3EN=0).

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2	OC3FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel3 Fast Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit is used to improve the response of the capture/compare output to the trigger input event.
3	OC3PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel3 Preload Enable
6:4	OC3MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel3 Mode Configure)
7	OC3CEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel3 Clear Enable 0: OC3REF is unaffected by ETRF input. 1: When high level of ETRF input is detected, OC1REF=0
9:8	CC4SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 4 Selection This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC4 channel is output 01: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TI4 10: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TI3 11: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC4EN=0).
10	OC4FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel4 Preload Enable
11	OC4PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel4 Buffer Enable
14:12	OC4MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel4 Mode Configure
15	OC4CEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel4 Clear Enable

Input capture mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC3SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 3 Select 00: CC3 channel is output 01: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TI3 10: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TI4 11: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC3EN=0).
3:2	IC3PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel 3 Perscaler Configuration 00：PSC=1 01：PSC=2 10：PSC=4 11：PSC=8 PSC is prescaler factor; capture is triggered once by every PSC events.
7:4	IC3F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 3 Filter Configuration

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:8	CC4SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 4 Select 00: CC4 channel is output 01: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TI4 10: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TI3 11: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC4EN=0).
11:10	IC4PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel4 Perscaler Configuration
15:12	IC4F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 4 Filter Configuration

14.6.9 Capture/Compare enable register (TMRx_CCEN)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CC1EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Enable **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output:** 0: Disable output 1: Enable output **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input:** This bit determines whether the value CNT of the counter can be captured and enter TMRx_CC1 register 0: Disable capture 1: Enable capture
1	CC1POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Polarity Configure **When CC1 channel is configured as output:** 0: OC1 is active high 1: OC1 is active low **When CC1 channel is configured as input:** 0: Phase not reversed: capture at the rising edge of IC1; phase not reversed when IC1 is used as external trigger. 1: Phase reversed, capture at the falling edge of ICC1; phase reversed when IC1 is used as external trigger. Note: When the protection level is 2 or 3, this bit cannot be modified
2	CC1NEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Complementary Output Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	CC1NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Complementary Output Polarity 0: OC1N is active high 1: OC1N is active low Note: When the protection level is 2 or 3, this bit cannot be modified
4	CC2EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1EN
5	CC2POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1POL

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6	CC2NEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Complementary Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1NEN
7	CC2NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Complementary Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1NPOL
8	CC3EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1EN
9	CC3POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1POL
10	CC3NEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Complementary Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1NEN
11	CC3NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Complementary Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1NPOL
12	CC4EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1EN
13	CC4POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1POL
15:14	Reserved		

14.6.10 Counter register (TMRx_CNT)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CNT	R/W	Counter Value

14.6.11 Prescaler register (TMRx_PSC)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	PSC	R/W	Prescaler Value Clock frequency of counter (CK_CNT)＝f_{CK_PSC}/(PSC+1)

14.6.12 Auto reload register (TMRx_AUTORLD)

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value: 0xFFFF FFFF

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	AUTORLD	R/W	Auto Reload Value When the value of auto reload is empty, the counter will not count.

14.6.13 Repeat count register (TMRx_REPCNT)

Offset address: 0x30

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	REPCNT	R/W	Repetition Counter Value When the count value of the repeat counter is reduced to 0, an update event will be generated, and the counter will start counting again from the REPCNT value; the new value newly written to this register is valid only when an update event occurs in next cycle.
15:8	Reserved		

14.6.14 Channel 1 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC1)

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC1	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Value **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input mode:** CC1 contains the counter value transmitted by the last input capture channel 1 event. **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output mode:** CC1 contains the value currently loaded in the capture/compare register Compare the value CC1 of the capture and compare channel 1 with the value CNT of the counter to generate the output signal on OC1. When the output compare preload is disabled (OC1PEN=0 for TMRx_CCM1 register), the written value will immediately affect the output comparison results; If the output compare preload is enabled (OC1PEN=1 for TMRx_CCM1 register), the written value will affect the output compare result when an update event is generated.

14.6.15 Channel 2 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC2)

Offset address: 0x38

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC2	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Value Refer to TMRx_CC1

14.6.16 Channel 3 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC3)

Offset address: 0x3C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC3	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 3 Value Refer to TMRx_CC1

14.6.17 Channel 4 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC4)

Offset address: 0x40

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC4	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 4 Value Refer to TMRx_CC1

14.6.18 Brake and dead zone register (TMRx_BDT)

Offset address: 0x44

Reset value: 0x0000

Note: According to the lock setting, AOEN, BRKPOL, BRKEN, IMOS, RMOS and DTS[7:0] bits all can be write-protected, and it is necessary to configure them when writing to TMRx_BDT register for the first time.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	DTS	R/W	Dead Time Setup DT is the dead zone duration, and the relationship between DT and register DTS is as follows: DTS[7:5]=0xx=>DT=DTS[7:0]× T_{DTS}， T_{DTS}=TDTS； DTS[7:5]=10x=>DT=（64+DTS[5:0]）× T_{DTS}， T_{DTS}=2× T_{DTS}； DTS[7:5]=110=>DT=（32+DTS[4:0]）× T_{DTS}， T_{DTS}=8× T_{DTS}； DTS[7:5]=111=>DT=（32+DTS[4:0]）× T_{DTS}， T_{DTS}=16× T_{DTS}； For example: assuming T_{DTS} =125ns (8MHZ), the dead time setting is as follows: If the step time is 125ns, the dead time can be set from 0 to 15875ns; If the step time is 250ns, the dead time can be set from 16us to 31750ns; If the step time is 1us, the dead time can be set from 32us to 63us; If the step time is 2us, the dead time can be set from 64us to 126us. Note: Once LOCK level (LOCKCFG bit in TMRx_BDT register) is set to 1, 2 or 3, these bits cannot be modified.
9:8	LOCKCFG	R/W	Lock Write Protection Mode Configuration 00: No Lock write protection; it cannot be written to the register directly 01: Lock write protection level 1 It cannot be written to DTS, BRKEN, BRKPOL and AOEN bits of TMRx_BDT, and OCxOIS and OCxNOIS bits of TMRx_CTRL2 register. 10: Lock write protection level 2 It cannot be written to all bits of protection level 1, CCxPOL and OCxNPOL bits in TMRx_CCEN register, and RMOS and IMOS bits in TMRx_BDT register. 11: Lock write protection level 3 It cannot be written to all bits of protection level 2, and OCxMOD and OCxPEN bits of TMRx_CCMx register. Note: After system reset, the lock write protect bit can only be written once.
10	IMOS	R/W	Idle Mode Off-state Configure Idle mode means MOEN=0; disable means CcxEN=0; this bit describes the impact of different values for this bit on the output waveform when MOEN=0 and CcxEN changes from 0 to 1. 0: Disable Ocx/OcxN output 1: If CCxEN=1, the invalid level is output during the dead time (the specific level value is affected by the polarity configuration), and the idle level is output after the dead time

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11	RMOS	R/W	Run Mode Off-state Configure Run mode means MOEN=1; disable means CcxEN=0; this bit describes the impact of different values for this bit on the output waveform when MOEN=1 and CcxEN changes from 0 to 1. 0: Disable Ocx/OcxN output 1: Ocx/OcxN first outputs invalid level (the specific level value is affected by the polarity configuration)
12	BRKEN	R/W	Brake Function Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable Note: When the protection level is 1, this bit cannot be modified.
13	BRKPOL	R/W	Brake Polarity Configure 0: The brake input BRK is valid at low level 1: The brake input BRK is valid at high level Note: When the protection level is 1, this bit cannot be modified. Writing to this bit requires an APB clock delay before use.
14	AOEN	R/W	Automatic Output Enable 0: MOEN can only be set to 1 by software 1: MOEN can be set to 1 by software or be automatically set to 1 at the next update event (braking input is invalid) Note: When the protection level is 1, this bit cannot be modified.
15	MOEN	R/W	PWM Main Output Enable 0: Disable the output of OCx and OCxN or force the output of idle state 1: When CcxEN and CCxNEN bits of the TMRx_CCEN register are set, enable Ocx and OcxN output When the brake input is valid, it is cleared to 0 by hardware asynchronously. Note: Setting 1 by software or setting 1 automatically depends on AOEN bit of the TMRx_BDT register.

14.6.19 DMA control register (TMRx_DCTRL)

Offset address: 0x48

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	DBADDR	R/W	DMA Base Address Setup These bits define the base address of DMA in continuous mode (when reading or writing TMRx_DMADDR register), and DBADDR is defined as the offset from the address of TMRx_CTRL1 register: 00000：TMRx_CTRL1 00001：TMRx_CTRL2 00010：TMRx_SMCTRL …….
7:5	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
12:8	DBLEN	R/W	DMA Burst Transfer Length Setup These bits define the transmission length and transmission times of DMA in continuous mode. The data transmitted can be 16 bits and 8 bits. When reading/writing TMRx_DMADDR register, the timer will conduct a continuous transmission; 00000: Transmission once 00001: Transmission twice 00010: Transmission for three times …… 10001: Transmission for 18 times The transmission address formula is as follows: Transmission address=TMRx_CTRL1 address (slave address) +DBADDR+DMA index; DMA index=DBLEN For example: DBLEN=7, DBADDR=TMR2_CTRL1 (slave address) means the address of the data to be transmitted, while the address +DBADDR+7 of TMRx_CTRL1 means the address of the data to be written/read, Data transmission will occur to: TMRx_CTRL1 address + seven registers starting from DBADDR. The data transmission will change according to different DMA data length: (1) When the transmission data is set to 16 bits, the data will be transmitted to seven registers (2) When the transmission data is set to 8 bits, the data of the first register is the MSB bit of the first data, the data of the second register is the LSB bit of the first data, and the data will still be transmitted to seven registers.
15:13	Reserved		

14.6.20 DMA address register of continuous mode (TMRx_DMADDR)

Offset address: 0x4C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	DMADDR	R/W	DMA Register for Burst Transfer Read or write operation access of TMRx_DMADDR register may lead to access to the register in the following address: TMRx_CTRL1 address + (DBADDR+DMA index) ×4 Where: "TMRx_CTRL1 address" is the address of control register 1 (TMRx_CTRL1); "DBADDR" is the base address defined in TMRx_DCTRL register; "DMA index" is the offset automatically controlled by DMA, and it depends on DBLEN defined in TMRx_DCTRL register.

15 General-purpose timer (TMR2/3/4/5)

15.1 Introduction

The general-purpose timer takes the time base unit as the core, and has the functions of input capture and output compare, and can be used to measure the pulse width, frequency and duty cycle, and generate the output waveform. It includes a 16-bit or 32-bit auto reload counter (realize count-up, count-down and center-aligned count).

The timers are independent of each other, and they can achieve synchronization and cascading.

15.2 Main characteristics

(1) Timebase unit
- Counter: 16-bit or 32-bit counter, supporting count-up, count-down and center-aligned count.
- Prescaler: 16-bit programmable prescaler
- Autoreload function

(2) Clock source selection
- Internal clock
- External input
- External trigger
- Internal trigger

(3) Input capture function
- Counting function
- PWM input
- Encoder interface mode

(4) Output compare function
- PWM output mode
- Forced output mode
- Single-pulse mode

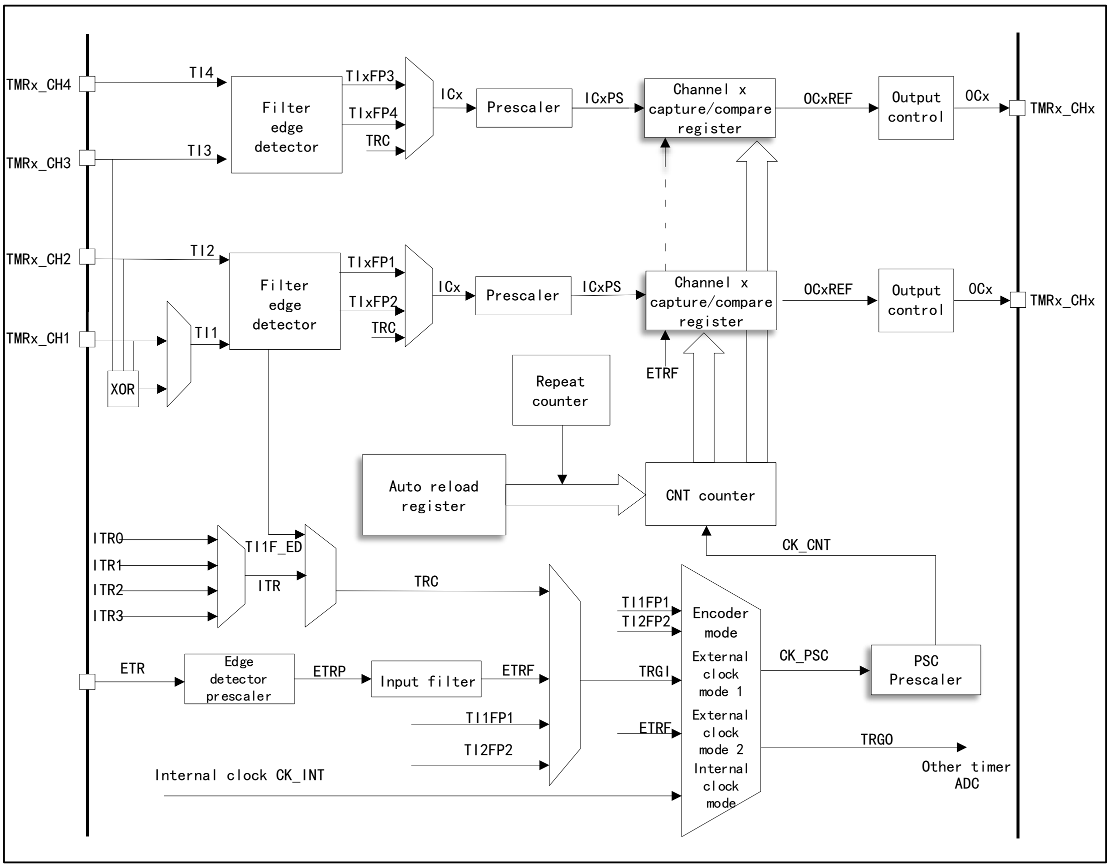
(5) Master/Slave mode controller of timer
- Timers can be synchronized and cascaded
- Support multiple slave modes and synchronization signals

(6) Interrupt and DMA request event
- Update event (counter overrun/underrun, counter initialization)
- Trigger event (counter start, stop, internal/external trigger)
- Input capture
- Output compare

(7) Support incremental (quadrature) encoder and Hall sensor circuits for positioning

15.3 Structure block diagram

Figure 38 General-purpose Timer Structure Block Diagram



15.4 Functional Description

15.4.1 Clock source selection

The general-purpose timer has four clock sources.

Internal clock

It is TMRx_CLK from RCM, namely the driving clock of the timer; when the slave mode controller is disabled, the clock source CK_PSC of the prescaler is driven by the internal clock CK_INT.

External clock mode 1

The trigger signal generated from the input channel TI1/2/3/4 of the timer after polarity selection and filtering is connected to the slave mode controller to control the work of the counter. Besides, the pulse signal generated by the input of Channel 1 after double-edge detection of the rising edge and the falling edge is logically equal or the future signal is TI1F_ED signal, namely double-edge signal of TIF_ED. Especially the PWM input can only be input by TI1/2.

External clock mode 2

After polarity selection, frequency division and filtering, the signal from external trigger interface (ETR) is connected to the slave mode controller through trigger input selector to control the work of the counter.

Internal trigger input

The timer is set to work in slave mode, and the clock source is the output signal of other timers. At this time, the clock source has no filtering, and the synchronization or cascading between timers can be realized. The master mode timer can reset, start, stop or provide clock for the slave mode timer.

15.4.2 Timebase unit

The time base unit in the general-purpose timer contains three registers

- 16-bit counter register (CNT)
- 16-bit auto reload register (AUTORLD)
- 16-bit prescaler register (PSC)

Counter CNT

There are three counting modes for the counter in the general-purpose timer

- Count-up mode
- Count-down mode
- Center-aligned mode

Count-up mode

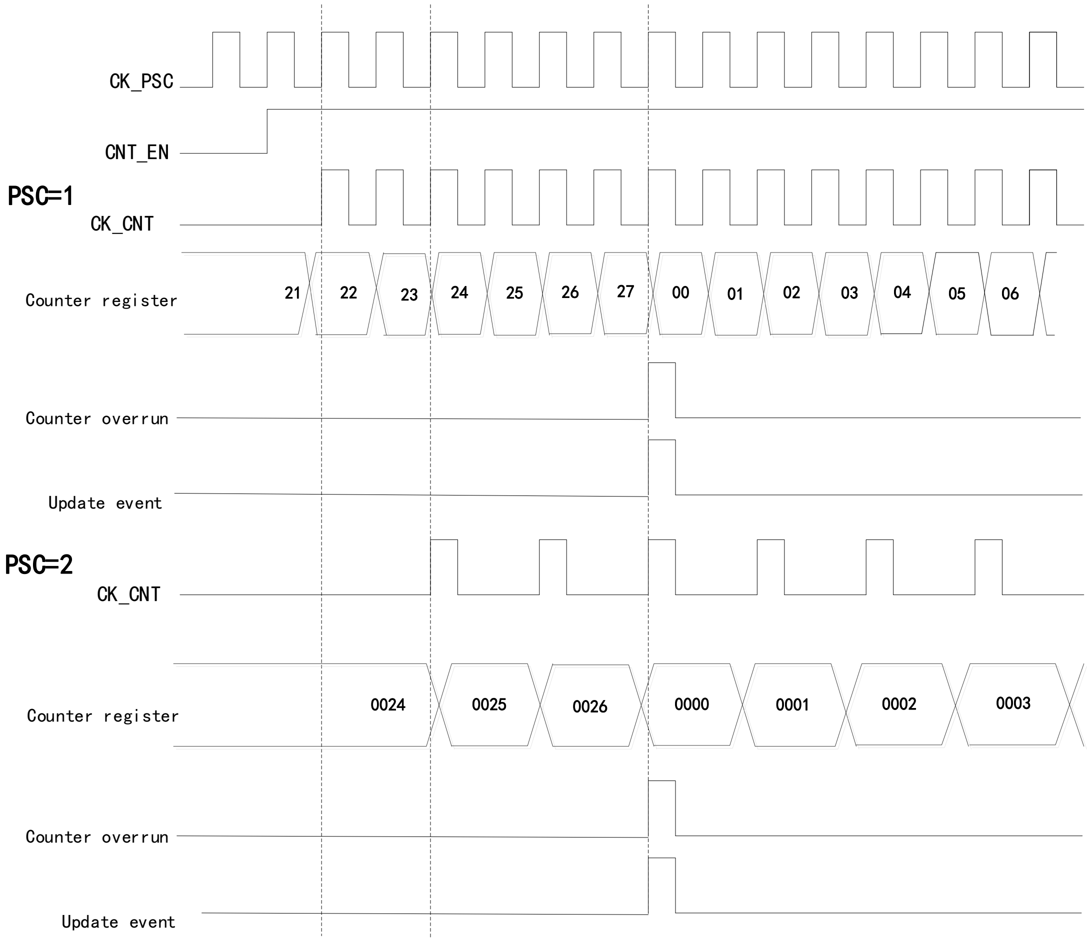
Set to the count-up mode by configuring CNTDIR bit of control register (TMRx_CTRL1).

When the counter is in count-up mode, the counter will count up from 0; every time a pulse is generated, the counter will increase by 1 and when the value of the counter (TMRx_CNT) is equal to the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD), the counter will start to count from 0 again, a count-up overrun event will be generated, and the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD) is written in advance.

When the counter overruns, an update event will be generated. At this time, the auto reload shadow register and the prescaler buffer will be updated. The update event can be disabled by configuring UD bit of control register TMRx_CTRL1.

The figure below is the timing diagram of count-up mode when the division factor is 1 or 2

Figure 39 Timing Diagram of Count-up Mode when Division Factor is 1 or 2



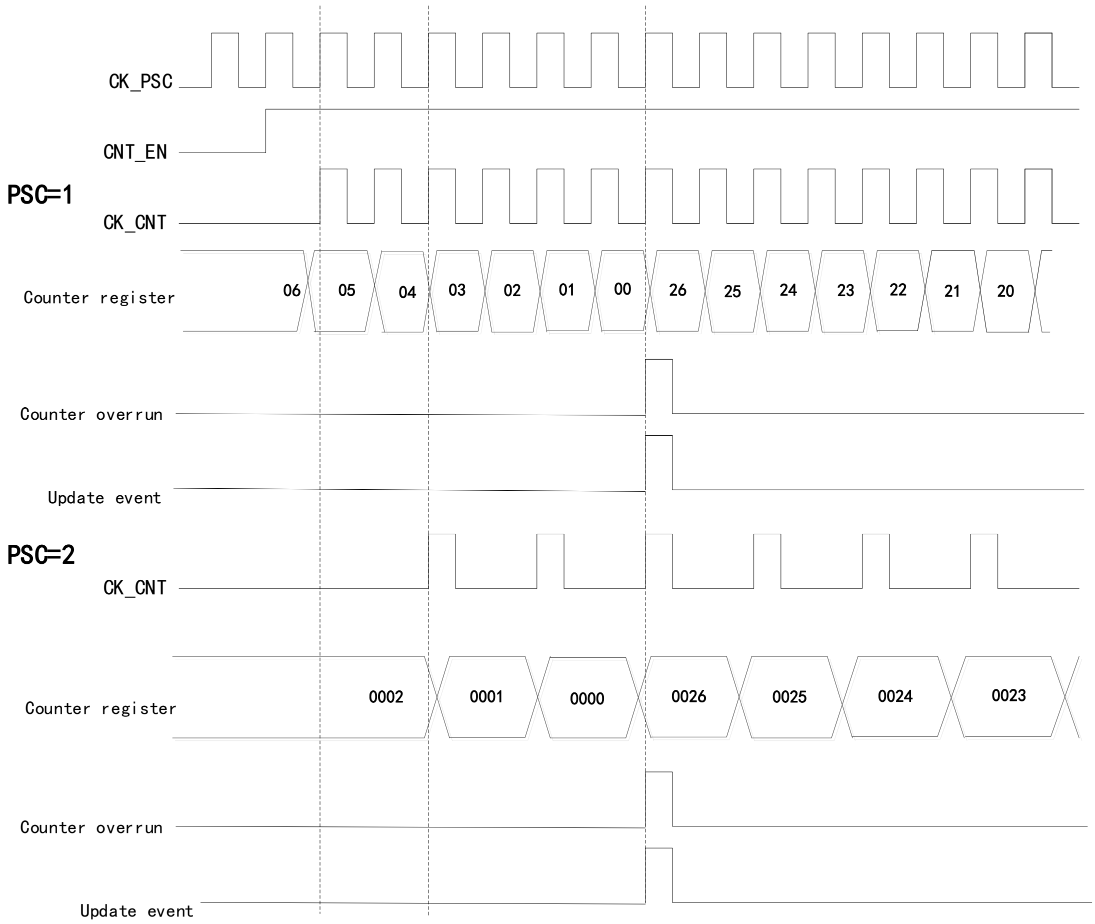
Count-down mode

Set to the count-down mode by configuring CNTDIR bit of control register (TMRx_CTRL1).

When the counter is in count-down mode, it will start to count down from the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD); every time a pulse is generated, the counter will decrease by 1 and when it becomes 0, the counter will start to count again from (TMRx_AUTORLD), meanwhile, a count-down overrun event will be generated, and the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD) is written in advance.

When the counter overruns, an update event will be generated. At this time, the auto reload shadow register and the prescaler buffer will be updated. The update event can be disabled by configuring the UD bit of the TMRx_CTRL1 register.

Figure 40 Timing Diagram of Count-down Mode when Division Factor is 1 or 2

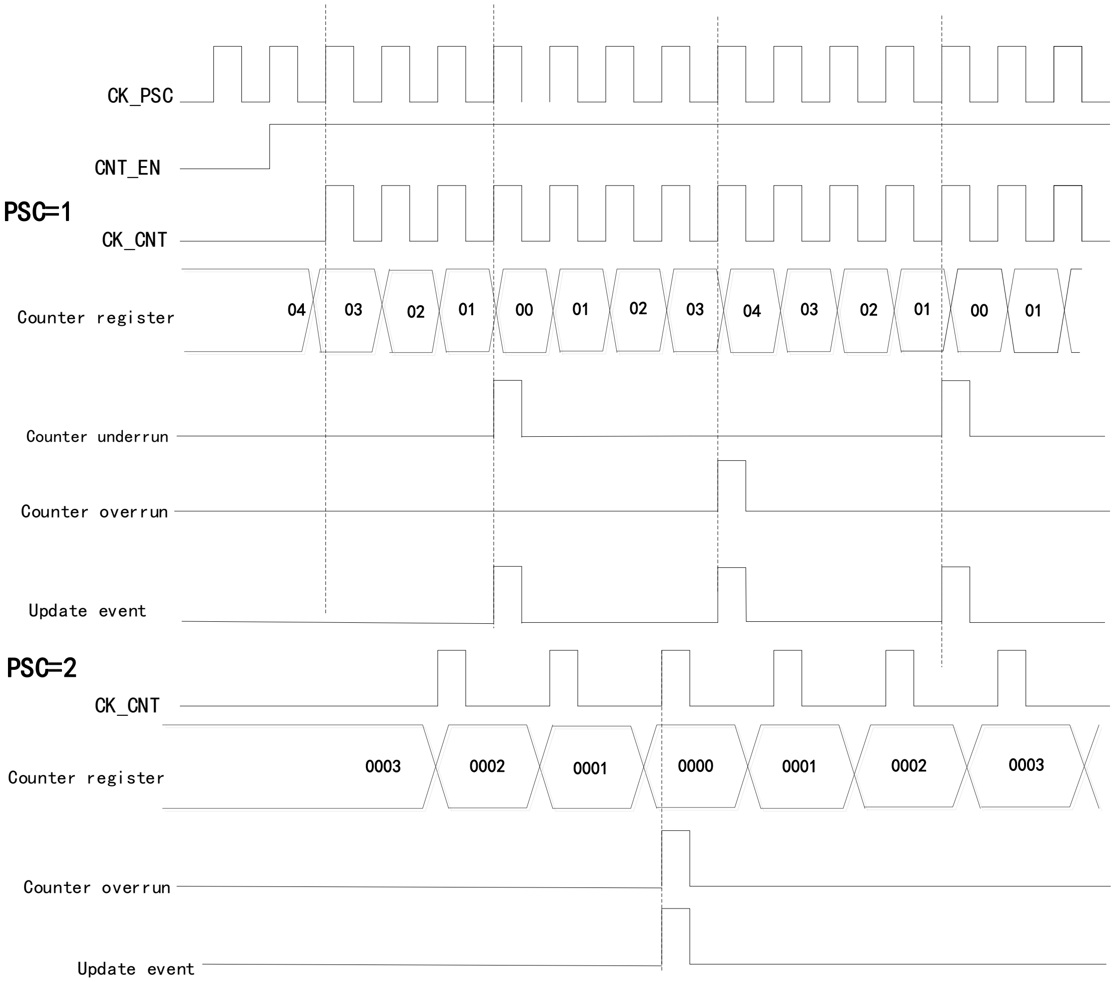


Center-aligned mode

Set to the center-aligned mode by configuring CNTDIR bit of control register (TMRx_CTRL1).

When the counter is in center-aligned mode, the counter counts up from 0 and when it reaches the value of auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD), it counts down to 0 from the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD), which will repeat; in counting up, when the counter value is (AUTORLD-1), a counter overrun event will be generated; in counting down, when the counter value is 1, a counter underrun event will be generated.

Figure 41 Timing Diagram of Center-aligned Mode when Division Factor is 1 or 2



Prescaler PSC

The prescaler is 16 bits and programmable, and it can divide the clock frequency of the counter to any value within 1~65536 (controlled by TMRx_PSC register), and after frequency division, the clock will drive the counter CNT to count. The prescaler has a buffer, which can be changed during running.

15.4.3 Input capture

Input capture channel

The general-purpose timer has four independent capture/compare channels, each of which is surrounded by a capture/compare register.

In the input capture, the measured signal will enter from the external pin T1/2/3/4 of the timer, first pass through the edge detector and input filter, and then enter the capture channels. Each capture channel has a corresponding capture register. When the capture occurs, the value of the counter CNT will be latched in the capture register CCx. Before entering the capture register, the signal will pass through the prescaler to set how many events to capture at a time.

Input capture application

Input capture is used to capture external events, and can give the time flag to indicate the occurrence time of the event and measure the pulse jump edge events (measure the frequency or pulse width), for example, if the selected edge appears on the input pin, the TMRx_CCx register will capture the current value of the counter and the CCxIFLG bit of the status register TMRx_STS will be set to 1; if CCxIEN=1, an interrupt will be generated.

In capture mode, the timing, frequency, cycle and duty cycle of a waveform can be measured. In the input capture mode, the edge selection is set to rising edge detection. When the rising edge appears on the capture channel, the first capture occurs, at this time, the value of the counter CNT will be latched in the capture register CCx; at the same time, it will enter the capture interrupt, a capture will be recorded in the interrupt service program and the value will be recorded. When the next rising edge is detected, the second capture occurs, the value of counter CNT will be latched in capture register CCx again, at this time, it will enter the capture interrupt again; read the value of capture register and the cycle of this pulse signal will be obtained by capture.

15.4.4 Output compare

There are eight modes of output compare: freeze, channel x is valid level when matching, channel x is invalid level when matching, flip, force is invalid, force is valid, PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2, which are configured by OCxMOD bit in TMRx_CCMx register and can control the waveform of output signal in output compare mode.

Output compare application

In the output compare mode, the position, polarity, frequency and time of the pulse generated by the timer can be controlled.

When the value of the counter is equal to that of the capture/compare register, the channel output can be set as high level, low level or flip by configuring the OCxMOD bit in TMRx_CCMx register and the CCxPOL bit in the output polarity TMRx_CCEN register.

When CCxIFLG=1 in TMRx_STS register, if CCxIEN=1 in TMRx_DIEN register, an interrupt will be generated; if CCDSEL=1 in TMRx_CTRL2 register, a DMA request will be generated.

15.4.5 PWM output mode

PWM mode is pulse signal that can be adjusted by external output of the timer. The pulse width of the signal is determined by the value of the compare register CCx, and the cycle is determined by the value of the auto reload AUTORLD.

PWM output mode contains PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2; PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2 are divided into count-up, count-down and center alignment counting; in PWM mode 1, if the value of the counter CNT is less than the value of the compare register CCx, the output level will be valid; otherwise, it will be invalid.

Set the timing diagram in PWM mode 1 when CCx=5, AUTORLD=7:

Figure 42 Timing Diagram of PWM1 Count-up Mode

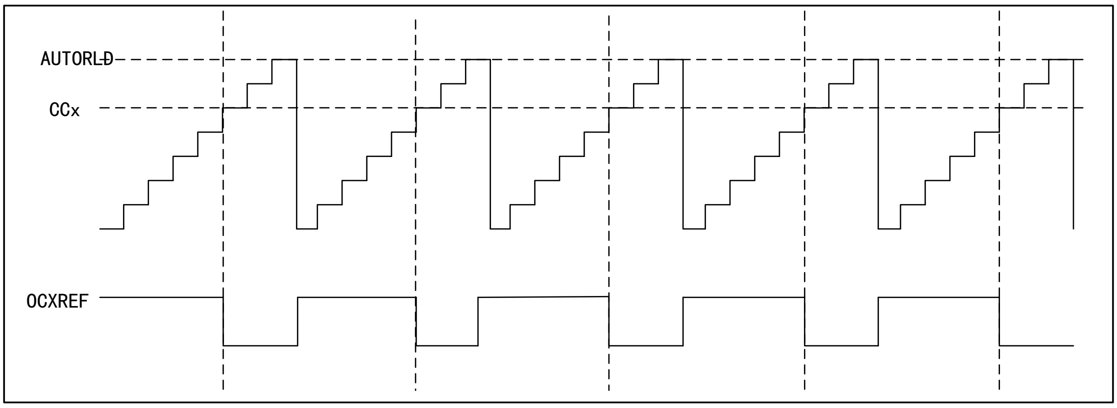


Figure 43 Timing Diagram of PWM1 Count-down Mode

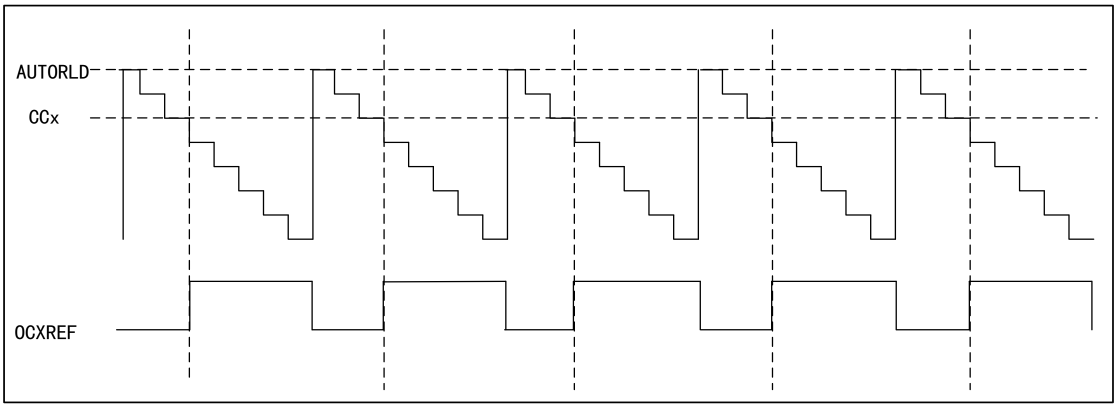
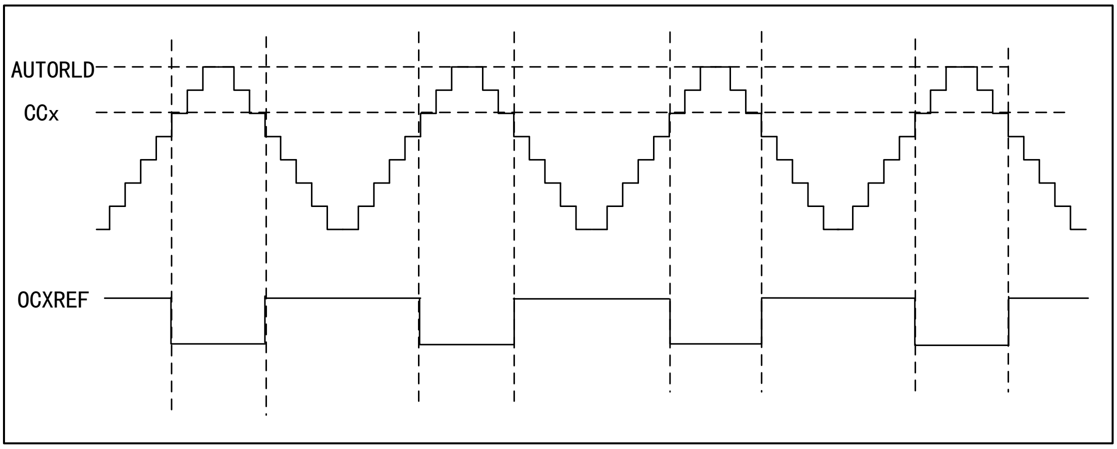


Figure 44 Timing Diagram of PWM1 Center-aligned Mode



In PWM mode 2, if the value of the counter CNT is less than that of the compare register CCx, the output level will be invalid; otherwise, it will be valid.

Set the timing diagram of PWM mode 2 when CCx=5, AUTORLD=7

Figure 45 Timing Diagram of PWM2 Count-up Mode

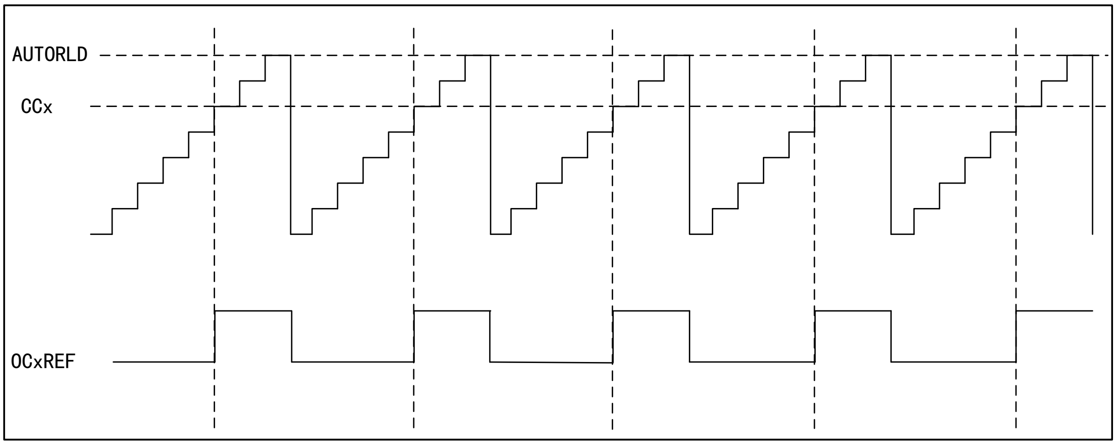


Figure 46 Timing Diagram of PWM2 Count-down Mode

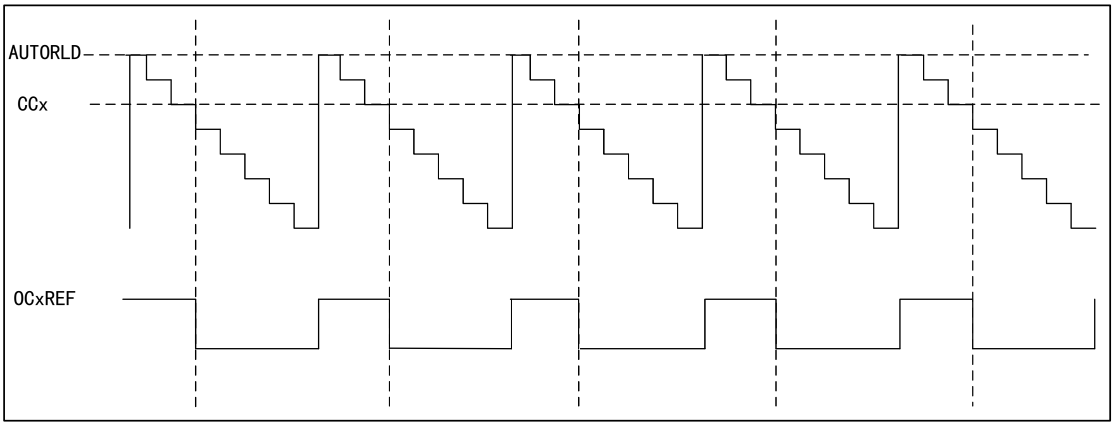
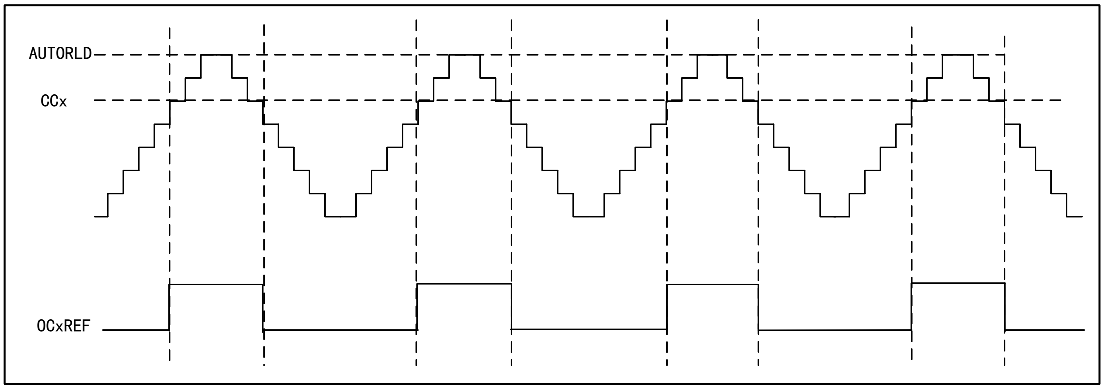


Figure 47 Timing Diagram of PWM2 Center-aligned Mode



15.4.6 PWM input mode

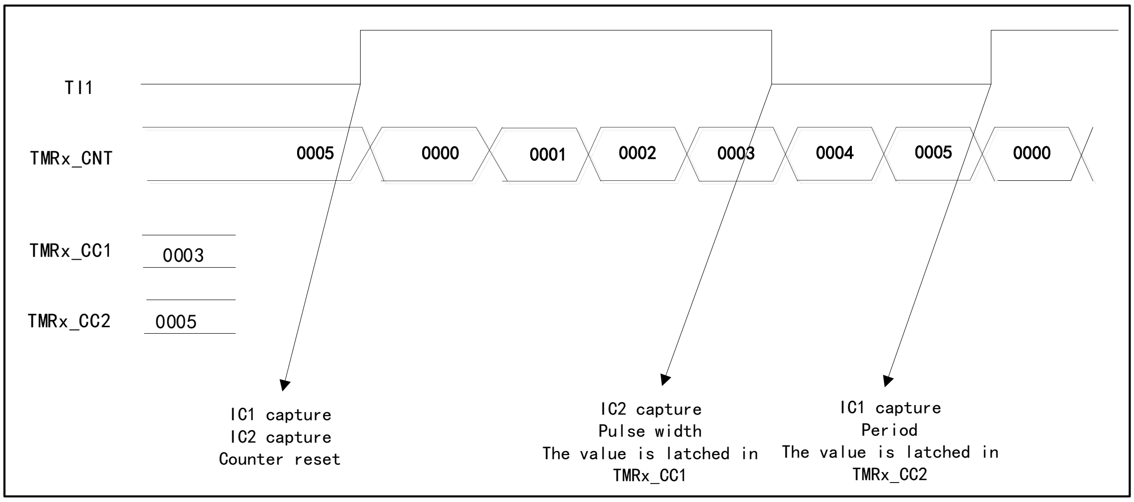
PWM input mode is a particular case of input capture.

In PWM input mode, as only TI1FP1 and TI1FP2 are connected to the slave mode controller, input can be performed only through the channels TMRx_CH1 and TMRx_CH2, which need to occupy the capture registers of CH1 and CH2.

In PWM input mode, the PWM signal enters from TMRx_CH1, and the signal will be divided into two channels, one can measure the period, and the other can measure the duty cycle. In the configuration, it is only required to set the polarity of one channel, and the other will be automatically configured with the opposite polarity.

In this mode, the slave mode controller should be configured as the reset mode (SMFSEL bit of TMRx_SMCTRL register)

Figure 48 Timing Diagram of PWM Input Mode



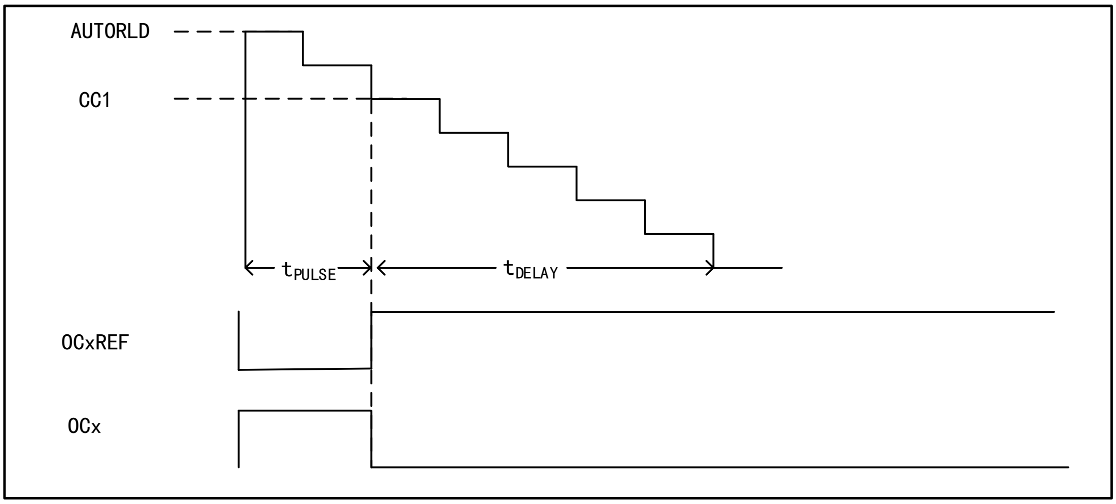
15.4.7 Single-pulse mode

The single-pulse mode is a special case of timer compare output, and is also a special case of PWM output mode.

Set SPMEN bit of TMRx_CTRL1 register, and select the single-pulse mode. After the counter is started, a certain number of pulses will be output before the update event occurs. When an update event occurs, the counter will stop counting, and the subsequent PWM waveform output will no longer be changed.

After a certain controllable delay, a pulse with controllable pulse width is generated in single-pulse mode through the program. The delay time is defined by the value of TMRx_CCx register; in the count-up mode, the delay time is CCx and the pulse width is AUTORLD-CCx; in the count-down mode, the delay time is AUTORLD-CCx and the pulse width is CCx.

Figure 49 Timing Diagram of Single-pulse Mode



15.4.8 Forced output mode

In the forced output mode, the comparison result is ignored, and the corresponding level is directly output according to the configuration instruction.

- CCxSEL=00 for TMRx_CCMx register, set CCx channel as output
- OCxMOD=100/101 for TMRx_CCMx register, set to force OCxREF signal to invalid/valid

In this mode, the corresponding interrupt and DMA request will still be generated.

15.4.9 Encoder interface mode

The encoder interface mode is equivalent to an external clock with direction selection. In the encoder interface mode, the content of the timer can always indicate the position of the encoder.

The method of selecting encoder interface is as follows:

- By setting SMFSEL bit of TMRx_SMCTRL register, set the counter to count on the edge of TI1 channel /TI2 channel, or count on the edge of TI1 and TI2 at the same time.
- Select the polarity of TI1 and TI2 by setting the CC1POL and CC2POL bits of TMRx_CCEN register.
- Select to filter or not by setting the IC1F and IC2F bits of TMRx_CCM1 register.

The two input TI1 and TI2 can be used as the interface of incremental encoder. The counter is driven by the effective jump of the signals TI1FP1 and TI2FP2 after filtering and edge selection in TI1 and TI2.

The count pulse and direction signal are generated according to the input signals of TI1 and TI2

- The counter will count up/down according to the jumping sequence of the input signal

- Set CNTDIR of control register TMRx_CTRL1 to be read-only (CNTDIR will be re-calculated due to jumping of any input end)

The change mechanism of counter count direction is shown in the figure below:

Table 62 Relationship between Count Direction and Encoder

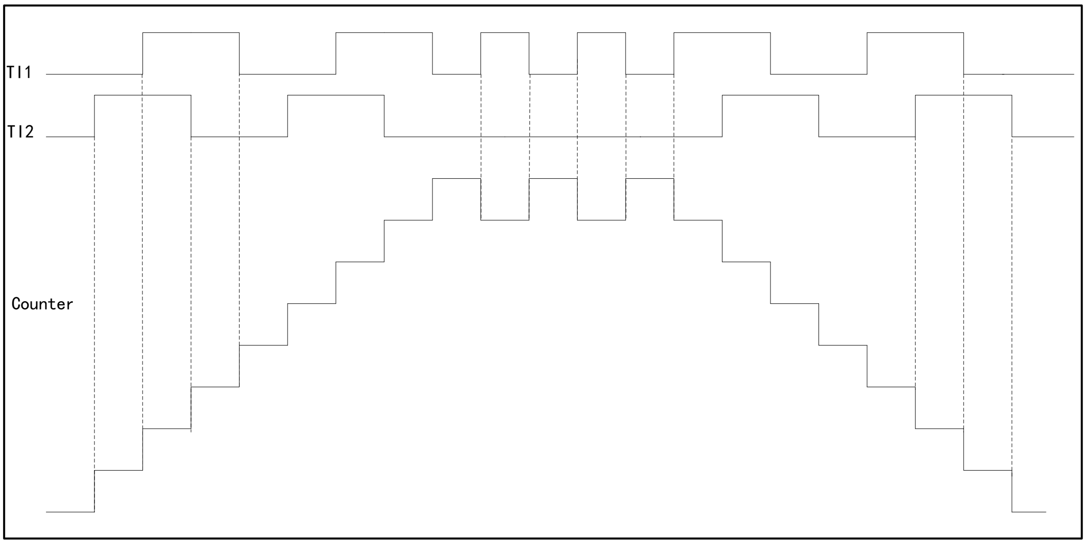
Effective edge		Count only in TI1		Count only in TI2		Count in both TI1 and TI2	
Level of relative signal		High	Low	High	Low	High	Low
TI1FP1	Rising edge	—		Count down	Count up	Count down	Count up
	Falling edge			Count up	Count down	Count up	Count down
TI2FP2	Rising edge	Count up	Count down	—		Count up	Count down
	Falling edge	Count down	Count up			Count down	Count up

The external incremental encoder can be directly connected with MCU, not needing external interface logic, so the comparator is used to convert the differential output of the encoder to digital signal to increase the immunity to noise interference.

Among the following examples:

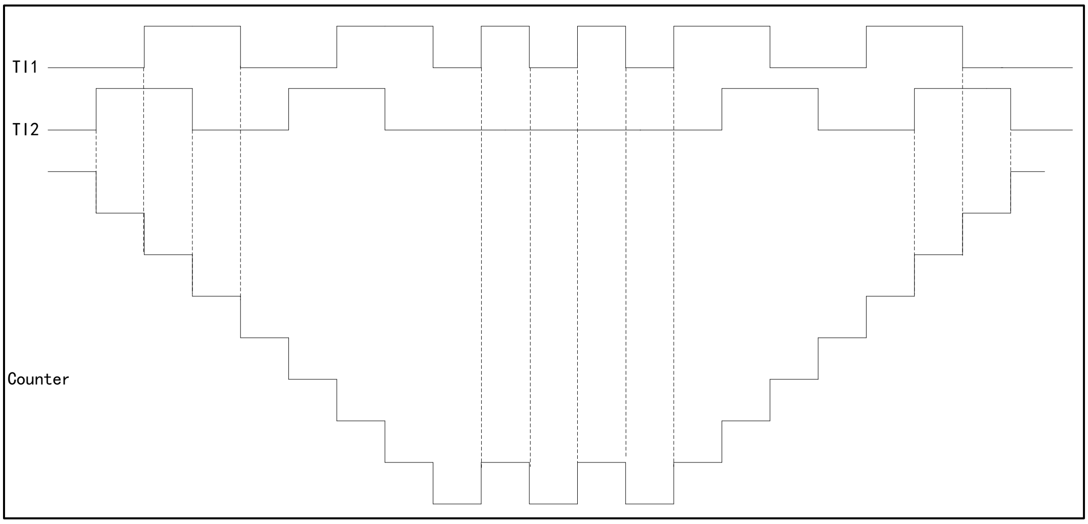
- IC1FP1 is mapped to TI1
- IC2FP2 is mapped to TI2
- Neither IC1FP1 nor IC2FP2 is phase-inverting
- The input signal is valid at the rising edge and falling edge
- Enable the counter

Figure 50 Counter Operation Example in Encoder Mode



For example, when TI1 is at low level, and TI2 is in rising edge state, the counter will count up.

Figure 51 Example of Encoder Interface Mode of IC1FP1 Reversed Phase



For example, when TI1 is at low level, and the rising edge of TI2 jumps, the counter will count down.

15.4.10 Slave Mode

TMRx timer can synchronize external trigger

- Reset mode
- Gated mode
- Trigger mode

SMFSEL bit in TMRx_SMCTRL register can be set to select the mode

SMFSEL=100 set the reset mode, SMFSEL=101 set the gated mode, and SMFSEL=110 set the trigger mode.

In the reset mode, when a trigger input event occurs, the counter and prescaler will be initialized, and the rising edge of the selected trigger input (TRGI) will reinitialize the counter and generate a signal to update the register.

In the gated mode, the enable of the counter depends on the high level of the selected input end. When the trigger input is high, the clock of the counter will be enabled. Once the trigger input becomes low, the counter will stop (but not be reset). The start and stop of the counter are controlled.

In the trigger mode, the enable of the counter depends on the event on the selected input, the counter will be enabled at the rising edge of the trigger input (but not be reset), and only the start of the counter is controlled.

15.4.11 Timer interconnection

See the chapter of "14.4.14 Timer Interconnection" for details.

15.4.12 Interrupt and DMA request

The timer can generate an interrupt when an event occurs during operation

- Update event (counter overrun/underrun, counter initialization)
- Trigger event (counter start, stop, internal/external trigger)
- Capture/Compare event

Some internal interrupt events can generate DMA requests, and special interfaces can enable or disable trigger DMA requests.

15.4.13 Debug mode

The TMR2/3/4/5 can be configured in debug mode and choose to stop or continue to work. It depends on the TMRx_STS bit of DBGMCU_APB1F register in DBGMCU module.

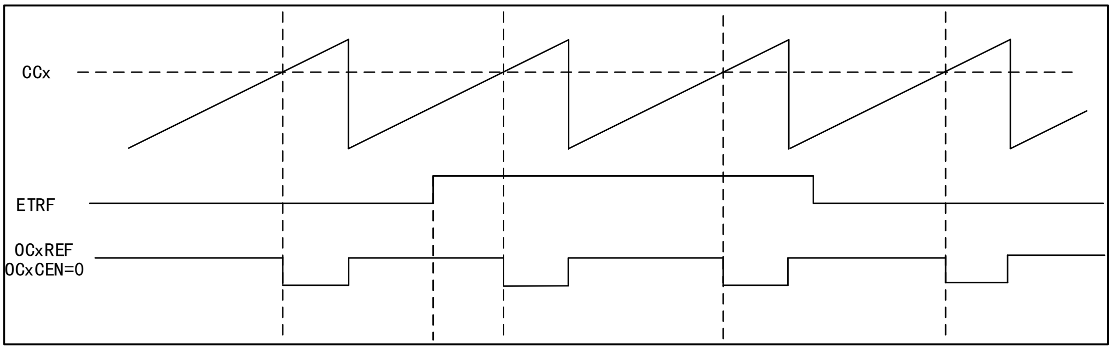
15.4.14 Clear OCxREF signal when an external event occurs

This function is used for output compare and PWM mode.

In one channel, the high level of ETRF input port will reduce the signal of OCxREF to low level, and the OCxCEN bit in capture/compare register TMRx_CCMx is set to 1, and OCxREF signal will remain low until the next update event occurs.

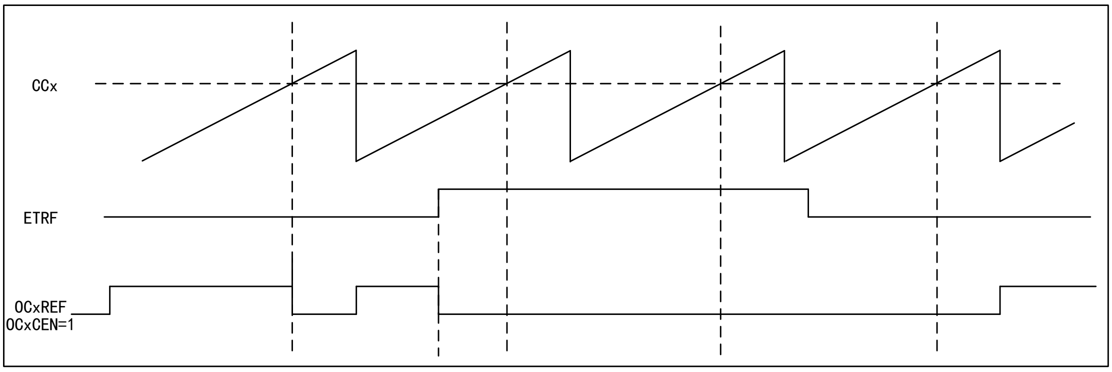
Set TMRx to PWM mode, disable the external trigger prescaler, and disable the external trigger mode 2; when ETRF input is high, set OCxCEN=0, and the output OCxREF signal is shown in the figure below.

Figure 52 OCxREF Timing Diagram



Set TMRx to PWM mode, disable the external trigger prescaler, and disable the external trigger mode 2; when ETRF input is high, set OCxCEN=1, and the output OCxREF signal is shown in the figure below.

Figure 53 OCxREF Timing Diagram



15.5 Register address mapping

In the following table, all registers of the general-purpose timer are mapped to a 16-bit addressable (address) space.

Table 63 General-purpose Timer Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
TMRx_CTRL1	Control register 1	0x00
TMRx_CTRL2	Control register 2	0x04
TMRx_SMCTRL	Slave mode control register	0x08
TMRx_DIEN	DMA/Interrupt enable register	0x0C
TMRx_STS	Status register	0x10
TMRx_CEG	Control event generation register	0x14
TMRx_CCM1	Capture/Compare mode register 1	0x18
TMRx_CCM2	Capture/Compare mode register 2	0x1C
TMRx_CCEN	Enable the capture/compare channel register	0x20
TMRx_CNT	Counter register	0x24
TMRx_PSC	Prescaler register	0x28
TMRx_AUTORLD	Auto reload register	0x2C
TMRx_CC1	Channel 1 capture/compare register	0x34
TMRx_CC2	Channel 2 capture/compare register	0x38
TMRx_CC3	Channel 3 capture/compare register	0x3C
TMRx_CC4	Channel 4 capture/compare register	0x40
TMRx_DCTRL	DMA control register	0x48
TMRx_DMADDR	DMA address register of continuous mode	0x4C
TMR2_OPT	TMR2 option register	0x50

Register name	Description	Offset Address
TMR5_OPT	TMR5 option register	0x50

15.6 Register functional description

15.6.1 Control register 1 (TMRx_CTRL1)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CNTEN	R/W	Counter Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable When the timer is configured as external clock, gated mode and encoder mode, it is required to write 1 to the bit by software to start regular work; when it is configured as the trigger mode, it can write 1 by hardware.
1	UD	R/W	Update Disable Update event can cause AUTORLD, PSC and CCx to generate the value of update setting. 0: Enable update event (UEV) An update event can occur in any of the following situations: The counter overruns/underruns; Set UEG bit; Update generated by slave mode controller. 1: Disable update event
2	URSSEL	R/W	Update Request Source Select If interrupt or DMA is enabled, the update event can generate update interrupt or DMA request. Different update request sources can be selected by this bit. 0: The counter overruns or underruns Set UEG bit Update generated by slave mode controller 1: The counter overruns or underruns
3	SPMEN	R/W	Single Pulse Mode Enable When an update event is generated, the output level of the channel can be changed; in this mode, the CNTEN bit will be cleared, the counter will stop, and the subsequent output level of the channel will no long be changed. 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	CNTDIR	R/W	Counter Direction This bit is read-only when the counter is configured as center-aligned mode or encoder mode. 0: Count up 1: Count down

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:5	CAMSEL	R/W	Center Aligned Mode Select In the center-aligned mode, the counter counts up and down alternately; otherwise, it will only count up or down. Different center-aligned modes affect the timing of setting the output compare interrupt flag bit of the output channel to 1; when the counter is disabled (CNTEN=0), select the center-aligned mode. 00: Edge-aligned mode 01: Center-aligned mode 1 (the output compare interrupt flag bit of output channel is set to 1 when counting down) 10: Center-aligned mode 2 (the output compare interrupt flag bit of output channel is set to 1 when counting up) 11: Center-aligned mode 3 (the output compare interrupt flag bit of output channel is set to 1 when counting up/down)
7	ARPEN	R/W	Auto-reload Preload Enable When the buffer is disabled, modification of TMRx_AUTORLD by program will immediately lead to modification of the values loaded to the counter; when the buffer is enabled, modification of TMRx_AUTORLD by program will lead to modification of the values loaded to the counter at the next update event. 0: Disable 1: Enable
9:8	CLKDIV	R/W	Clock Division For the configuration of digital filter, CK_INT provides the clock, and the clock of the digital filter can be adjusted by this bit. 00： $t_{DTS}=t_{CK\_INT}$ 01： $t_{DTS}=2\times t_{CK\_INT}$ 10： $t_{DTS}=4\times t_{CK\_INT}$ 11: Reserved
15:10	Reserved		

15.6.2 Control register 2 (TMRx_CTRL2)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	Reserved		
3	CCDSEL	R/W	Capture/Compare DMA Select 0: Transmit DMA request of CCx when CCx event occurs 1: Transmit DMA request of CCx when an update event occurs

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:4	MMSEL	R/W	Master Mode Signal Select The signals of timers working in master mode can be used for TRGO, so as to affect the work of timers in slave mode and cascaded with the master timer, and the specific impact is related to the configuration of slave mode timer. 000: Reset; the reset signal of master mode timer is used for TRGO 001: Enable; the counter enable signal of master mode timer is used for TRGO 010: Update; the update event of master mode timer is used for TRGO 011: Compare pulses; when the master mode timer captures/compares successfully (CCxIFLG=1), a pulse signal is output for TRGO 100: Compare mode 1; OC1REF is used to trigger TRGO 101: Compare mode 2; OC2REF is used to trigger TRGO 110: Compare mode 3; OC3REF is used to trigger TRGO 111: Compare mode 4; OC4REF is used to trigger TRGO
7	TI1SEL	R/W	Timer Input 1 Selection 0: TMRx_CH1 pin is connected to TI1 input 1: TMRx_CH1, TMRx_CH2 and TMRx_CH3 pins are connected to TI1 input after exclusive
15:8	Reserved		

15.6.3 Slave mode control register (TMRx_SMCTRL)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	SMFSEL	R/W	Slave Mode Function Select 000: Disable the slave mode, the timer can be used as the master mode timer to affect the work of slave mode timer; if CTRL1_CNTEN=1, the prescaler is directly driven by the internal clock. 001: Encoder mode 1; according to the level of TI1FP1, the counter counts at the edge of TI2FP2. 010: Encoder mode 2; according to the level of TI2FP2, the counter counts at the edge of TI1FP1. 011: Encoder mode 3; according to the input level of the other signal, the counter counts at the edge of TI1FP1 and TI2FP2. 100: Reset mode; the slave mode timer resets the counter after receiving the rising edge signal of TRGI and generates the signal to update the register. 101: Gated mode; when the slave mode timer receives the TRGI high level signal, the counter will start to work; when it receives TRGI low level signal, the counter will stop working; when it receives TRGI high level signal again, the timer will continue to work; the counter is not reset during the whole period. 110: Trigger mode, the slave mode timer starts the counter to work after receiving the rising edge signal of TRGI. 111: External clock mode 1; select the rising edge signal of TRGI as the clock source to drive the counter to work.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3	Reserved		
6:4	TRGSEL	R/W	Trigger Input Signal Select In order to avoid generating false edge detection when changing the value of this bit, it must be changed when SMFSEL=0. 000: Internal trigger ITR0 001: Internal trigger ITR1 010: Internal trigger ITR2 011: Internal trigger ITR3 100: Channel 1 input edge detector TIF_ED 101: Channel 1 post-filtering timer input TI1FP1 110: Channel 2 post-filtering timer input TI2FP2 111: External trigger input (ETRF)
7	MSMEN	R/W	Master/slave Mode Enable 0: Invalid 1: Enable the master/slave mode
11:8	ETFCFG	R/W	External Trigger Filter Configure 0000: Disable filter, sampled by f_{DTS} 0001：DIV=1，N=2 0010：DIV=1，N=4 0011：DIV=1，N=8 0100：DIV=2，N=6 0101：DIV=2，N=8 0110：DIV=4，N=6 0111：DIV=4，N=8 1000：DIV=8，N=6 1001：DIV=8，N=8 1010：DIV=16，N=5 1011：DIV=16，N=6 1100：DIV=16，N=8 1101：DIV=32，N=5 1110：DIV=32，N=6 1111：DIV=32，N=8 Sampling frequency=timer clock frequency/DIV; the filter length=N, and a jump is generated by every N events.
13:12	ETPCFG	R/W	External Trigger Prescaler Configure The ETR (external trigger input) signal becomes ETRP after frequency division. The signal frequency of ETRP is at most 1/4 of TMRxCLK frequency; when ETR frequency is too high, the ETRP frequency must be reduced through frequency division. 00: Disable the prescaler; 01: ETR signal 2 divided frequency 10: ETR signal 4 divided frequency 11: ETR signal 8 divided frequency

Field	Name	R/W	Description
14	ECEN	R/W	External Clock Enable Mode2 0: Disable 1: Enable Setting ECEN bit has the same function as selecting external clock mode 1 to connect TRG1 to ETRF; slave mode (reset, gating, trigger) can be used at the same time with external clock mode 2, but TRGI cannot be connected to ETRF in such case; when external clock mode 1 and external clock mode 2 are enabled at the same time, the input of external clock is ETRF.
15	ETPOL	R/W	External Trigger Polarity Configure This bit decides whether the external trigger ETR is phase-inverting. 0: The external trigger ETR is not phase-inverting, and the high level or rising edge is valid 1: The external trigger ETR is phase-inverting, and the low level or falling edge is valid

Table 64 TMRx Internal Trigger Connection

Slave timer	ITR0（TS=000）	ITR1（TS=001）	ITR2（TS=010）	ITR3（TS=011）
TMR2	TMR1	TMR8	TMR3	TMR4
TMR3	TMR1	TMR2	TMR5	TMR4
TMR4	TMR1	TMR2	TMR3	TMR8
TMR5	TMR2	TMR3	TMR4	TMR8

15.6.4 DMA/Interrupt enable register (TMRx_DIEN)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UIEN	R/W	Update Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	CC1IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	CC2IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	CC3IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	CC4IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6	TRGIEN	R/W	Trigger Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	Reserved		
8	UDIEN	R/W	Update DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	CC1DEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
10	CC2DEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	CC3DEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
12	CC4DEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
13	Reserved		
14	TRGDEN	R/W	Trigger DMA Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15	Reserved		

15.6.5 Status register (TMRx_STS)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UIFLG	RC_W0	Update Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No update event interrupt occurs 1: Update event interrupt occurred When the counter value is reloaded or reinitialized, an update event will be generated. The bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software; update events are generated in the following situations: (1) UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, and when the overruns/underruns, an update event will be generated; (2) URSEL=0 and UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, configure UG = 1 on TMRx_CEG register to generate update event, and the counter needs to be initialized by software; (3) URSEL=0 and UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, generate update event when the counter is initialized by trigger event.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	CC1IFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel1 Interrupt Flag **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output:** 0: No matching occurs 1: The value of TMRx_CNT matches the value of TMRx_CC1 **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input:** 0: No input capture occurs 1: Input capture occurs When a capture event occurs, it is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by software or cleared to 0 when reading TMRx_CC1 register.
2	CC2IFLG	RC_W0	Capture/Compare Channel2 new Interrupt Flag Refer to STS_CC1IFLG
3	CC3IFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel3 Interrupt Flag Refer to STS_CC1IFLG
4	CC4IFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel4 Interrupt Flag Refer to STS_CC1IFLG
5	Reserved		
6	TRGIFLG	RC_W0	Trigger Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No trigger event interrupt occurs 1: Trigger event interrupt occurs When a trigger event is generated, this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software.
8:7	Reserved		
9	CC1RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel1 Repetition Capture Flag 0: Repeated capture does not occur 1: Repeated capture occurs The value of the counter is captured to TMRx_CC1 register, and CC1IFLG=1; this bit can be set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software only when the channel is configured as input capture.
10	CC2RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/compare Channel2 Repetition Capture Flag Refer to STS_CC1RCFLG
11	CC3RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/compare Channel3 Repetition Capture Flag Refer to STS_CC1RCFLG
12	CC4RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/compare Channel4 Repetition Capture Flag Refer to STS_CC1RCFLG
15:13	Reserved		

15.6.6 Control event generation register (TMRx_CEG)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UEG	W	Update Event Generate 0: Invalid 1: Initialize the counter and generate an update event This bit is set to 1 by software, and cleared to 0 by hardware. Note: When an update event is generated, the counter of the prescaler will be cleared to 0, but the prescaler factor remains unchanged. In the count-down mode, the counter will read the value of TMRx_AUTORLD; in center-aligned mode or count-up mode, the counter will be cleared to 0.
1	CC1EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Event Generation 0: Invalid 1: Generate capture/compare event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware. If Channel 1 is in output mode When CC1IFLG=1, if CC1IEN and CC1DEN bits are set, the corresponding interrupt and DMA request will be generated. If Channel 1 is in input mode The value of the capture counter is stored in TMRx_CC1 register; configure CC1IFLG=1, and if CC1IEN and CC1DEN bits are also set, the corresponding interrupt and DMA request will be generated; at this time, if CC1IFLG=1, it is required to configure CC1RCFLG=1.
2	CC2EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Event Generation Refer to CC1EG description
3	CC3EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Event Generation Refer to CC1EG description
4	CC4EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Event Generation Refer to CC1EG description
5	Reserved		
6	TEG	W	Trigger Event Generate 0: Invalid 1: Generate trigger event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware.
15:7	Reserved		

15.6.7 Capture/Compare mode register 1 (TMRx_CCM1)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000

The timer can be configured as input (capture mode) or output (compare mode) by CCxSEL bit. The functions of other bits of the register are different in input and output modes, and the functions of the same bit are different in output mode and input mode. The OCX in the register describes the function of the channel in the output mode, and the Icx in the register describes the function of the channel in the input mode.

Output compare mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC1SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Selection This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC1 channel is output 01: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI1 10: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI2 11: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC1EN=0).
2	OC1FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Fast Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit is used to improve the response of the capture/compare output to the trigger input event.
3	OC1PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Preload Enable 0: Disable preloading function; write the value of TMRx_CC1 register through the program and it will work immediately. 1: Enable preloading function; write the value of TMRx_CC1 register through the program and it will work after an update event is generated. Note: When the protection level is 3 and the channel is configured as output, this bit cannot be modified. When the preload register is uncertain, PWM mode can be used only in single-pulse mode (SPMEN=1); otherwise, the following output compare result is uncertain.
6:4	OC1MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Mode Configure 000: Freeze The output compare has no effect on OC1REF 001: The output value is high when matching. When the value of counter CNT matches the value CCx of capture/compare register, OC1REF will be forced to be high 010: The output value is low when matching. When the value of the counter matches the value of the capture/compare register, OC1REF will be forced to be low 011: Output flaps when matching. When the value of the counter matches the value of the capture/compare register, flap the level of OC1REF 100: The output is forced to be low. Force OC1REF to be low 101: The output is forced to be high. Force OC1REF to be high 110: PWM mode 1 (set to high when the counter value<output compare value; otherwise, set to low) 111: PWM mode 2 (set to high when the counter value>output compare value; otherwise, set to low) Note: When the protection level is 3 and the channel is configured as output, this bit cannot be modified. In PWM modes 1 and 2, the OC1REF level changes when the comparison result changes or when the output compare mode changes from freeze mode to PWM mode.
7	OC1CEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Clear Enable 0: OC1REF is unaffected by ETRF input. 1: When high level of ETRF input is detected, OC1REF=0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:8	CC2SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Select This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC2 channel is output 01: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI2 10: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI1 11: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC2EN=0).
10	OC2FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Preload Enable
11	OC2PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Buffer Enable
14:12	OC2MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Mode
15	OC2CEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Clear Enable

Input capture mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC1SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Select 00: CC1 channel is output 01: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI1 10: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI2 11: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is disabled (TMRx_CCEN register CC1EN=0).
3:2	IC1PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel1 Perscaler Configure 00：PSC=1 01：PSC=2 10：PSC=4 11：PSC=8 PSC is prescaler factor; capture is triggered once by every PSC events.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:4	IC1F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 1 Filter Configuration 0000: Disable filter, sampled by f_{DTS} 0001：DIV=1，N=2 0010：DIV=1，N=4 0011：DIV=1，N=8 0100：DIV=2，N=6 0101：DIV=2，N=8 0110：DIV=4，N=6 0111：DIV=4，N=8 1000：DIV=8，N=6 1001：DIV=8，N=8 1010：DIV=16，N=5 1011：DIV=16，N=6 1100：DIV=16，N=8 1101：DIV=32，N=5 1110：DIV=32，N=6 1111：DIV=32，N=8 Sampling frequency=timer clock frequency/DIV; the filter length=N, indicating that a jump is generated by every N events.
9:8	CC2SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 2 Select 00: CC2 channel is output 01: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI2 10: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI1 11: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC2EN=0).
11:10	IC2PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel2 Perscaler Configuration
15:12	IC2F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 2 Filter Configuration

15.6.8 Capture/Compare mode register 2 （TMRx_CCM2）

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value: 0x0000

Refer to the description of the above CCM1 register.

Output compare mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC3SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 3 Selection This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC3 channel is output 01: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TI3 10: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TI4 11: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC3EN=0).

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2	OC3FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel3 Fast Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit is used to improve the response of the capture/compare output to the trigger input event.
3	OC3PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel3 Preload Enable
6:4	OC3MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel3 Mode Configure)
7	OC3CEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel3 Clear Enable 0: OC3REF is unaffected by ETRF input. 1: When high level of ETRF input is detected, OC1REF=0
9:8	CC4SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 4 Selection This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC4 channel is output 01: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TI4 10: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TI3 11: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC4EN=0).
10	OC4FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel4 Preload Enable
11	OC4PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel4 Buffer Enable
14:12	OC4MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel4 Mode Configure
15	OC4CEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel4 Clear Enable

Input capture mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC3SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 3 Select 00: CC3 channel is output 01: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TI3 10: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TI4 11: CC3 channel is input, and IC3 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC3EN=0).
3:2	IC3PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel 3 Perscaler Configuration 00：PSC=1 01：PSC=2 10：PSC=4 11：PSC=8 PSC is prescaler factor; capture is triggered once by every PSC events.
7:4	IC3F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 3 Filter Configuration

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:8	CC4SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 4 Select 00: CC4 channel is output 01: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TI4 10: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TI3 11: CC4 channel is input, and IC4 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC4EN=0).
11:10	IC4PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel4 Perscaler Configuration
15:12	IC4F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 4 Filter Configuration

15.6.9 Enable capture/compare channel register (TMRx_CCEN)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CC1EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Enable **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output:** 0: Disable output 1: Enable output **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input:** This bit determines whether the value CNT of the counter can be captured and enter TMRx_CC1 register 0: Disable capture 1: Enable capture
1	CC1POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Polarity Configure **When CC1 channel is configured as output:** 0: OC1 is active high 1: OC1 is active low **When CC1 channel is configured as input:** 0: Phase not reversed: capture at the rising edge of IC1; phase not reversed when IC1 is used as external trigger. 1: Phase reversed, capture at the falling edge of ICC1; phase reversed when IC1 is used as external trigger. Note: When the protection level is 2 or 3, this bit cannot be modified
2	Reserved		
3	CC1NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Polarity Configure **When CC1 channel is configured as output:** CC1NPOL remains in cleared state all the time **When CC1 channel is configured as input:** This bit and CC1POL control the polarity of the triggered or captured signals TI1FP1 and TI2FP1 at the same time.
4	CC2EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1EN
5	CC2POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1POL

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6	Reserved		
7	CC2NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1NPOL
8	CC3EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1EN
9	CC3POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1POL
10	Reserved		
11	CC3NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1NPOL
12	CC4EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1EN
13	CC4POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Output Polarity Refer to CCEN_CC1POL
14	Reserved		
15	CC4NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1NPOL

Table 65 Output Control Bit of Standard OCx Channel

CcxEN bit	Ocx output state
0	Disable output (OCx=0, OCx_EN=0)
1	Ocx=OCxREF+ polarity, OCx_EN=1

Note: The state of external I/O pin connected to the standard Ocx channel depends on the state of the Ocx channel and the GPIO and AFIO registers.

15.6.10 Counter register (TMRx_CNT)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CNT	R/W	Counter Value
31:16	CNT	R/W	Counter Value (only for TMR2/TMR5)

15.6.11 Prescaler register (TMRx_PSC)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	PSC	R/W	Prescaler Value Clock frequency of counter (CK_CNT)$=f_{CK\_PSC}/(PSC+1)$

15.6.12 Auto reload register (TMRx_AUTORLD)

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value: 0xFFFF FFFF(TMR2/5)

0x0000 FFFF (TMR3/4)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	AUTORLD	R/W	Auto Reload Value When the value of auto reload is empty, the counter will not count.
31:16	AUTORLD	R/W	Auto Reload Value (only for TMR2/TMR5)

15.6.13 Channel 1 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC1)

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC1	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Value **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input mode:** CC1 contains the counter value transmitted by the last input capture channel 1 event. **When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output mode:** CC1 contains the value currently loaded in the capture/compare register Compare the value CC1 of the capture and compare channel 1 with the value CNT of the counter to generate the output signal on OC1. When the output compare preload is disabled (OC1PEN=0 for TMRx_CCM1 register), the written value will immediately affect the output comparison results; If the output compare preload is enabled (OC1PEN=1 for TMRx_CCM1 register), the written value will affect the output compare result when an update event is generated.
31:16	CC1	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Value (only for TMR2/TMR5)

15.6.14 Channel 2 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC2)

Offset address: 0x38

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC2	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Value Refer to TMRx_CC1
31:16	CC2	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Value (only for TMR2/TMR5) Refer to TMRx_CC1

15.6.15 Channel 3 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC3)

Offset address: 0x3C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC3	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 3 Value Refer to TMRx_CC1
31:16	CC3	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel3 Value (only for TMR2/TMR5) Refer to TMRx_CC1

15.6.16 Channel 4 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC4)

Offset address: 0x40

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC4	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 4 Value Refer to TMRx_CC1
31:16	CC4	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel4 Value (only for TMR2/TMR5) Refer to TMRx_CC1

15.6.17 DMA control register (TMRx_DCTRL)

Offset address: 0x48

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	DBADDR	R/W	DMA Base Address Setup These bits define the base address of DMA in continuous mode (when reading or writing TMRx_DMADDR register), and DBADDR is defined as the offset from the address of TMRx_CTRL1 register: 00000：TMRx_CTRL1 00001：TMRx_CTRL2 00010：TMRx_SMCTRL …….
7:5	Reserved		
12:8	DBLEN	R/W	DMA Burst Transfer Length Setup These bits define the transmission length and transmission times of DMA in continuous mode. The data transmitted can be 16 bits and 8 bits. When reading/writing TMRx_DMADDR register, the timer will conduct a continuous transmission; 00000: Transmission once 00001: Transmission twice 00010: Transmission for three times …… 10001: Transmission for 18 times The transmission address formula is as follows: Transmission address=TMRx_CTRL1 address (slave address) +DBADDR+DMA index; DMA index=DBLEN For example: DBLEN=7, DBADDR=TMR2_CTRL1 (slave address) means the address of the data to be transmitted, while the address +DBADDR+7 of TMRx_CTRL1 means the address of the data to be written/read, Data transmission will occur to: TMRx_CTRL1 address + seven registers starting from DBADDR. The data transmission will change according to different DMA data length: 1) When the transmission data is set to 16 bits, the data will be transmitted to seven registers 2) When the transmission data is set to 8 bits, the data of the first register is the MSB bit of the first data, the data of the second register is the LSB bit of the first data, and the data will still be transmitted to seven registers.
15:13	Reserved		

15.6.18 DMA address register of continuous mode (TMRx_DMADDR)

Offset address: 0x4C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	DMADDR	R/W	DMA Register for Burst Transfer Read or write operation access of TMRx_DMADDR register may lead to access to the register in the following address: TMRx_CTRL1 address + (DBADDR+DMA index) ×4 Where: "TMRx_CTRL1 address" is the address of control register 1 (TMRx_CTRL1); "DBADDR" is the base address defined in TMRx_DCTRL register; "DMA index" is the offset automatically controlled by DMA, and it depends on DBLEN defined in TMRx_DCTRL register.

15.6.19 TMR2 option register (TMR2_OPT)

Offset address: 0x50

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:0	Reserved		
11:10	RMPSEL	R/W	Timer2 Internal Trigger 1 Remap Select 00：TMR8_TRGOUT 01: PTP trigger output is connected to TMR2_ITR1 10: OTG_FS SOF is connected to TMR2_ITR1 input 11: Reserved Note: Clear through software
15:12	Reserved		

15.6.20 TMR5 option register (TMR5_OPT)

Offset address: 0x50

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:0	Reserved		
7:6	RMPSEL	R/W	Timer5 Channel4 Input Remap Select 00: TMR5 Channel 4 is connected to GPIO 01: LSICLK internal clock is connected to TMR5_CH 4 input for calibration 10: LSECLK internal clock is connected to TMR5_CH4 input for calibration 11: RTC wake-up interrupt is connected to TMR5_CH4 input for calibration Note: Clear through software
15:8	Reserved		

16 General-purpose timers (TMR9/10/11/12/13/14)

16.1 Introduction

The general-purpose timer takes the time base unit as the core, and has the functions of input capture and output compare, and can be used to measure the pulse width, frequency and duty cycle, and generate the output waveform. It includes a 16-bit auto reload counter (realize count-up count).

16.2 Main characteristics of TMR9/12

(1) Timebase unit
- Counter: 16-bit counter, which can count up
- Prescaler: 16-bit programmable prescaler
- Autoreload function

(2) Clock Source
- Internal clock
- External input
- Internal trigger

(3) Timer function
- Input capture
- Output compare
- PWM output mode
- Forced output mode
- Single-pulse mode output

(4) Master/Slave mode controller of timer
- Timers can be synchronized and cascaded
- Support multiple slave modes and synchronization signals

(5) Interrupt and DMA request event
- Update event (counter overrun/underrun, counter initialization)
- Trigger event (counter start, stop,internal/external trigger)
- Input capture
- Output compare

16.3 Main characteristics of TMR10/11/13/14

(1) Timebase unit
- Counter: 16-bit counter, which can count up
- Prescaler: 16-bit programmable prescaler
- Autoreload function

(2) Clock Source

- Internal clock

(3) Timer function

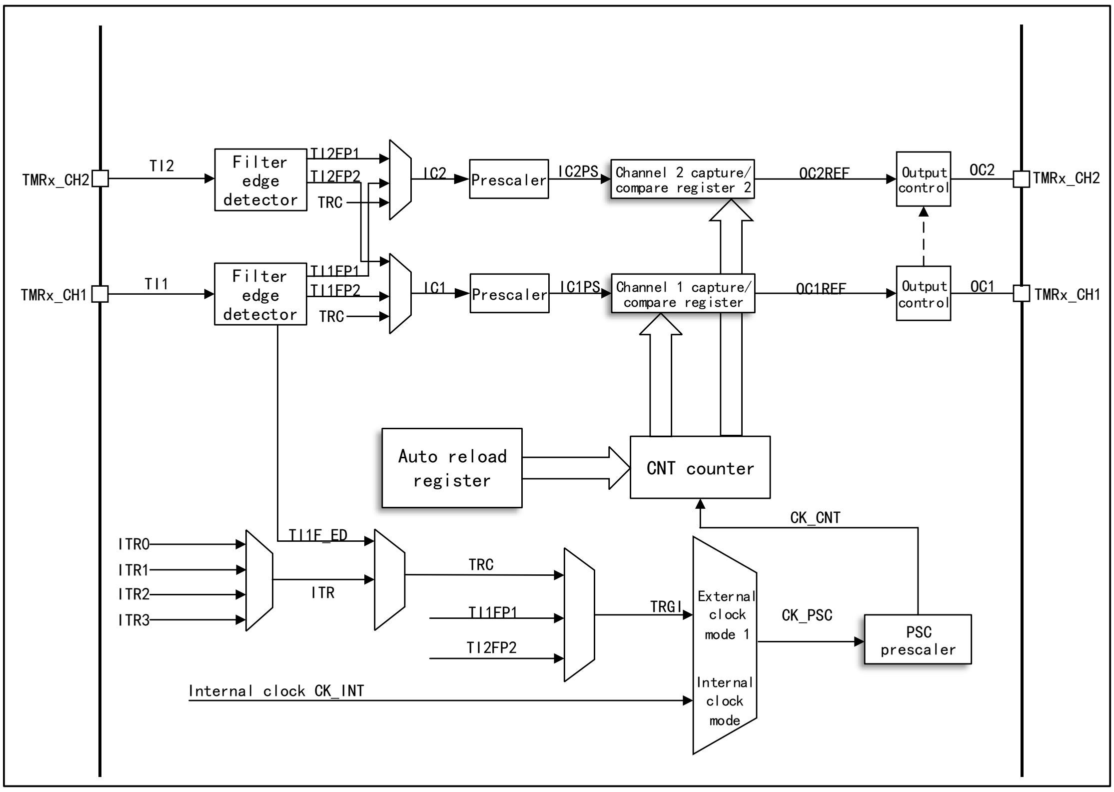
- Input capture
- Output compare
- PWM output mode
- Forced output mode
- Single-pulse mode output

(4) Interrupt event

- Update event (counter overrun, counter initialization)
- Input capture
- Output compare

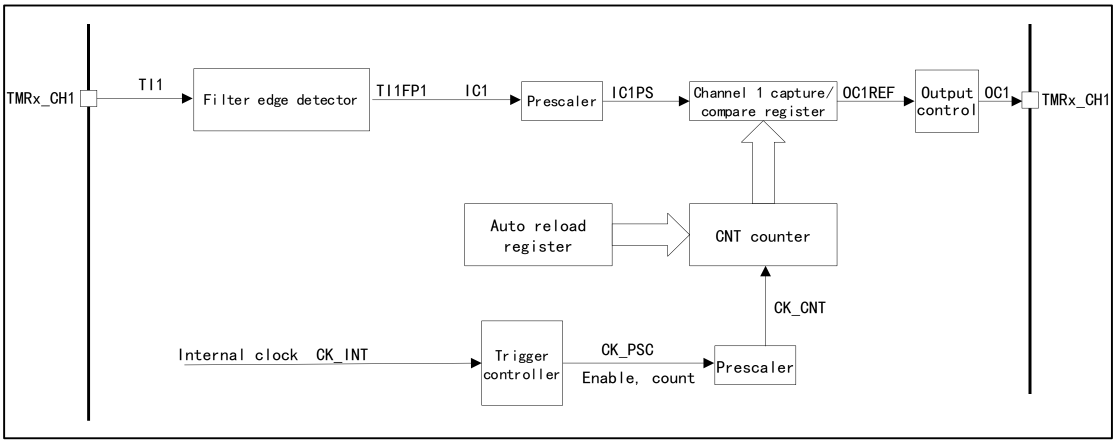
16.4 TMR9/12 structure block diagram

Figure 54 General-purpose Timer TMR9/12 Structure Block Diagram



16.5 TMR10/11/13/14 structure block diagram

Figure 55 General-purpose Timer TMR10/11/13/14 Structure Block Diagram



16.6 Functional Description

16.6.1 Clock Source

The general-purpose timer has three clock sources.

Internal clock

It is TMRx_CLK from RCM, namely the driving clock of the timer; when the slave mode controller is disabled, the clock source CK_PSC of the prescaler is driven by the internal clock CK_INT.

External clock mode 1 (only applicable to TMR9/12)

The trigger signal generated from the input channel TI1/2/3/4 of the timer after polarity selection and filtering is connected to the slave mode controller to control the work of the counter. Besides, the pulse signal generated by the input of Channel 1 after double-edge detection of the rising edge and the falling edge is logically equal or the future signal is TI1F_ED signal, namely double-edge signal of TIF_ED. Especially the PWM input can only be input by TI1/2.

Internal trigger input (only applicable to TMR9/12)

The timer is set to work in slave mode, and the clock source is the output signal of other timers. At this time, the clock source has no filtering, and the synchronization or cascading between timers can be realized. The master mode timer can reset, start, stop or provide clock for the slave mode timer.

16.6.2 Timebase unit

The time base unit in the general-purpose timer contains three registers

- 16-bit counter register (CNT)
- 16-bit auto reload register (AUTORLD)
- 16-bit prescaler register (PSC)

Counter CNT

There is only count-up mode for the counter in the general-purpose timer.

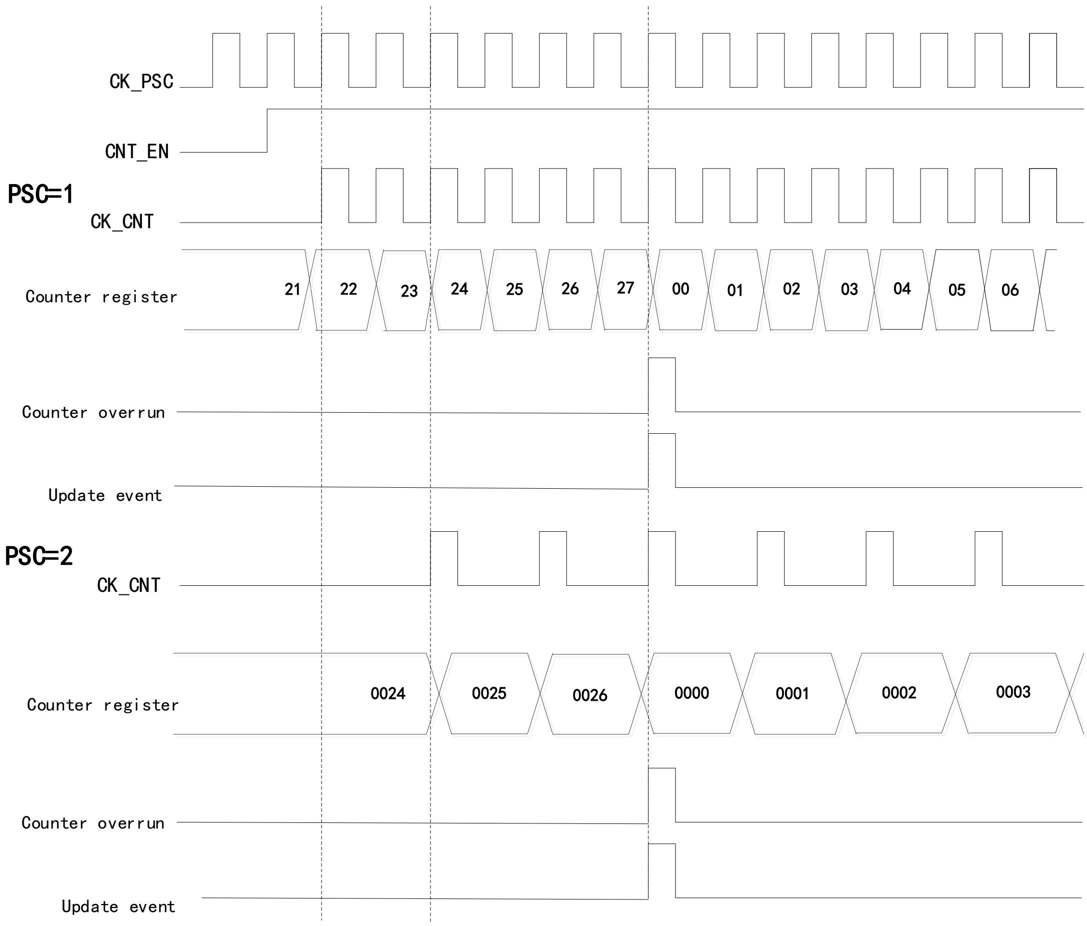
Count-up mode

When the counter is in count-up mode, the counter will count up from 0; every time a pulse is generated, the counter will increase by 1 and when the value of the counter (TMRx_CNT) is equal to the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD), the counter will start to count from 0 again, a count-up overrun event will be generated, and the value of the auto reload (TMRx_AUTORLD) is written in advance.

When the counter overruns, an update event will be generated. At this time, the auto reload register and the prescaler register will be updated. The update event can be disabled by configuring UD bit of control register TMRx_CTRL1.

The figure below is the timing diagram of count-up mode when the division factor is 1 or 2

Figure 56 Timing Diagram of Count-up Mode when Division Factor is 1 or 2



Prescaler PSC

The prescaler is 16 bits and programmable, and it can divide the clock frequency of the counter to any value within 1~65536 (controlled by TMRx_PSC register), and after frequency division, the clock will drive the counter CNT to count. The prescaler has a buffer, which can be changed during running.

16.6.3 Input capture

Input capture channel

The general-purpose timer has two independent capture/compare channels, each of which is surrounded by a capture/compare register.

In the input capture, the measured signal will enter from the external pin T1/2/3/4 of the timer, first pass through the edge detector and input filter, and then enter the capture channels. Each capture channel has a corresponding capture register. When the capture occurs, the value of the counter CNT will be latched in the capture register CCx. Before entering the capture register, the signal will pass through the prescaler to set how many events to capture at a time.

Input capture application

Input capture is used to capture external events, and can give the time flag to indicate the occurrence time of the event and measure the pulse jump edge events (measure the frequency or pulse width), for example, if the selected edge appears on the input pin, the TMRx_CCx register will capture the current value of the counter and the CCxIFLG bit of the status register TMRx_STS will be set to 1; if CCxIEN=1, an interrupt will be generated.

In capture mode, the timing, frequency, cycle and duty cycle of a waveform can be measured. In the input capture mode, the edge selection is set to rising edge detection. When the rising edge appears on the capture channel, the first capture occurs, at this time, the value of the counter CNT will be latched in the capture register CCx; at the same time, it will enter the capture interrupt, a capture will be recorded in the interrupt service program and the value will be recorded. When the next rising edge is detected, the second capture occurs, the value of counter CNT will be latched in capture register CCx again, at this time, it will enter the capture interrupt again; read the value of capture register and the cycle of this pulse signal will be obtained by capture.

16.6.4 Output compare

There are eight modes of output compare: freeze, channel x is valid level when matching, channel x is invalid level when matching, flip, force is invalid, force is valid, PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2, which are configured by OCxMOD bit in TMRx_CCMx register and can control the waveform of output signal in output compare mode.

Output compare application

In the output compare mode, the position, polarity, frequency and time of the pulse generated by the timer can be controlled.

When the value of the counter is equal to that of the capture/compare register, the channel output can be set as high level, low level or flip by configuring the OCxMOD bit in TMRx_CCMx register and the CCxPOL bit in the output polarity TMRx_CCEN register.

When CCxIFLG=1 in TMRx_STS register, if CCxIEN=1 in TMRx_DIEN register, an interrupt will be generated; if CCDSEL=1 in TMRx_CTRL2 register, a DMA request will be generated.

16.6.5 PWM input mode (only applicable to TMR9/12)

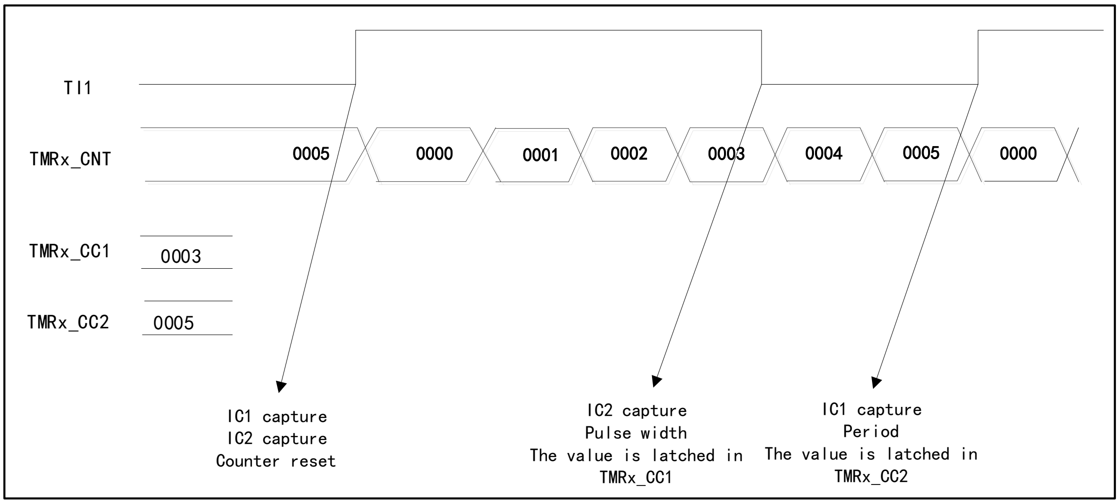
PWM input mode is a particular case of input capture.

In PWM input mode, as only TI1FP1 and TI1FP2 are connected to the slave mode controller, input can be performed only through the channels TMRx_CH1 and TMRx_CH2, which need to occupy the capture registers of CH1 and CH2.

In the PWM input mode, the PWM signal enters from TMRx_CH1, and the signal will be divided into two channels, one can measure the cycle and the other can measure the duty cycle. In the configuration, it is only required to set the polarity of one channel, and the other will be automatically configured with the opposite polarity.

In this mode, the slave mode controller should be configured as the reset mode (SMFSEL bit of TMRx_SMCTRL register).

Figure 57 Timing Diagram of PWM Input Mode



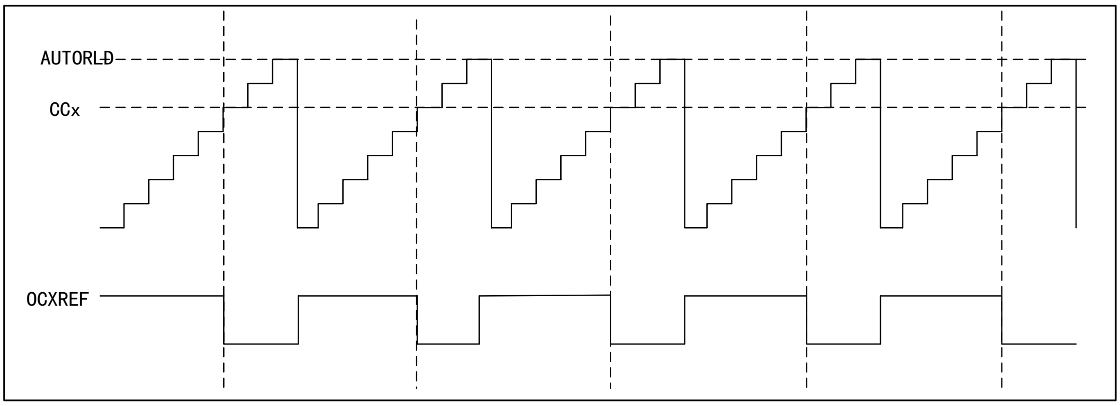
16.6.6 PWM output mode

PWM mode is pulse signal that can be adjusted by external output of the timer. The pulse width of the signal is determined by the value of the compare register CCx, and the cycle is determined by the value of the auto reload AUTORLD.

PWM output mode contains PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2; PWM mode 1 and PWM mode 2 only support count-up; in PWM mode 1, if the value of the counter CNT is less than the value of the compare register CCx, the output level will be valid; otherwise, it will be invalid.

Set the timing diagram in PWM mode 1 when CCx=5, AUTORLD=7.

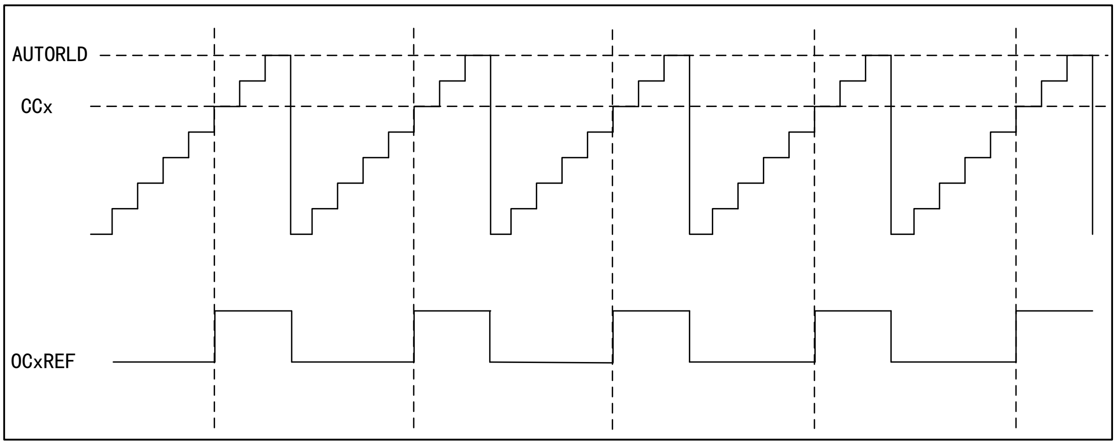
Figure 58 Timing Diagram of PWM1 Count-up Mode



In PWM mode 2, if the value of the counter CNT is less than that of the compare register CCx, the output level will be invalid; otherwise, it will be valid.

Set the timing diagram in PWM mode 2 when CCx=5, AUTORLD=7

Figure 59 PWM2 Count-up Mode Timing Diagram



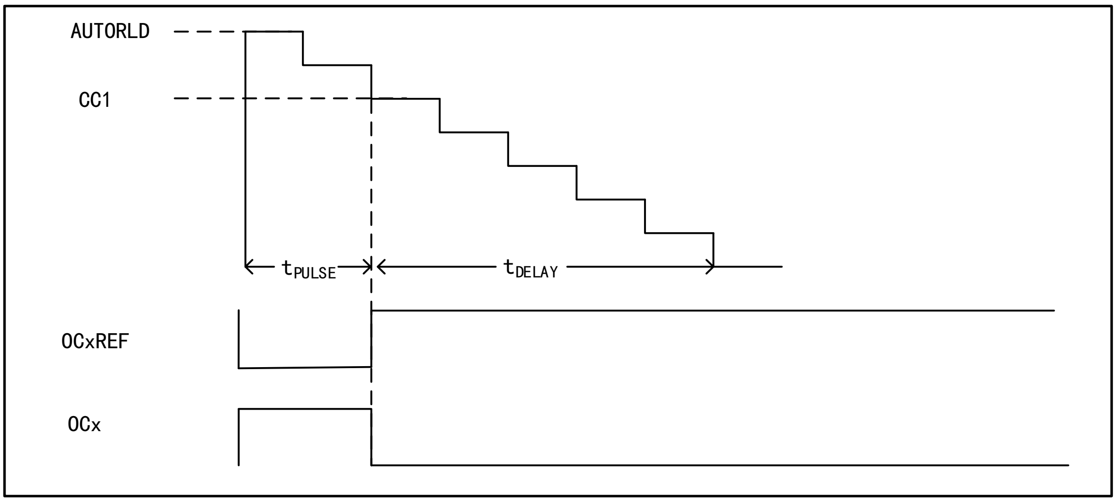
16.6.7 Single-pulse mode

The single-pulse mode is a special case of timer compare output, and is also a special case of PWM output mode.

Set SPMEN bit of TMRx_CTRL1 register, and select the single-pulse mode. After the counter is started, a certain number of pulses will be output before the update event occurs. When an update event occurs, the counter will stop counting, and the subsequent PWM waveform output will no longer be changed.

After a certain controllable delay, a pulse with controllable pulse width is generated in single-pulse mode through the program. The delay time is defined by the value of TMRx_CCx register; in the count-up mode, the delay time is CCx and the pulse width is AUTORLD-CCx; in the count-down mode, the delay time is AUTORLD-CCx and the pulse width is CCx.

Figure 60 Timing Diagram of Single-pulse Mode



16.6.8 Forced output mode

In the forced output mode, the comparison result is ignored, and the corresponding level is directly output according to the configuration instruction.

- CCxSEL=00 for TMRx_CCMx register, set CCx channel as output
- OCxMOD=100/101 for TMRx_CCMx register, set to force OCxREF signal to invalid/valid

In this mode, the corresponding interrupt and DMA request will still be generated.

16.6.9 Debug mode

The TMR9/10/11/12/13/14 can be configured in debug mode and choose to stop or continue to work. It depends on the TMRx_STS bit of DBGMCU_APB1F register or DBGMCU_APB2F register in DBGMCU module.

16.7 TMR9/12 register address mapping

In the following table, all registers of TMR9/12 are mapped to a 16-bit addressable (address) space.

Table 66 TMR9/12 Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
TMRx_CTRL1	Control register 1	0x00
Reserved	-	0x04
TMRx_SMCTRL	Slave mode control register	0x08
TMRx_DIEN	DMA/Interrupt enable register	0x0C
TMRx_STS	Status register	0x10
TMRx_CEG	Control event generation register	0x14

Register name	Description	Offset Address
TMRx_CCM1	Capture/Compare mode register 1	0x18
TMRx_CCEN	Capture/Compare enable register	0x20
TMRx_CNT	Counter register	0x24
TMRx_PSC	Prescaler register	0x28
TMRx_AUTORLD	Auto reload register	0x2C
TMRx_CC1	Channel 1 capture/compare register	0x34
TMRx_CC2	Channel 2 capture/compare register	0x38

16.8 TMR9/12 register functional description

16.8.1 Control register 1 (TMRx_CTRL1)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CNTEN	R/W	Counter Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable When the timer is configured as external clock, gated mode and encoder mode, it is required to write 1 to the bit by software to start regular work; when it is configured as the trigger mode, it can write 1 by hardware.
1	UD	R/W	Update Disable Update event can cause AUTORLD, PSC and CCx to generate the value of update setting. 0: Enable update event (UEV) An update event can occur in any of the following situations: The counter overruns; Set UEG bit; 1: Disable update event
2	URSSEL	R/W	Update Request Source Select If interrupt is enabled, the update event can generate update interrupt. Different update request sources can be selected by this bit. 0: The counter overruns Set UEG bit 1: The counter overruns
3	SPMEN	R/W	Single Pulse Mode Enable When an update event is generated, the output level of the channel can be changed; in this mode, the CNTEN bit will be cleared, the counter will stop, and the subsequent output level of the channel will no long be changed. 0: Disable 1: Enable
6:4	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7	ARPEN	R/W	Auto-reload Preload Enable When the buffer is disabled, modification of TMRx_AUTORLD by program will immediately lead to modification of the values loaded to the counter; when the buffer is enabled, modification of TMRx_AUTORLD by program will lead to modification of the values loaded to the counter at the next update event. 0: Disable 1: Enable
9:8	CLKDIV	R/W	Clock Division For the configuration of digital filter, CK_INT provides the clock, and the clock of the digital filter can be adjusted by this bit. 00：$t_{DTS}=t_{CK\_INT}$ 01：$t_{DTS}=2\times t_{CK\_INT}$ 10：$t_{DTS}=4\times t_{CK\_INT}$ 11: Reserved
15:10	Reserved		

16.8.2 Slave mode control register (TMRx_SMCTRL)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	SMFSEL	R/W	Slave Mode Function Select 000: Disable the slave mode, the timer can be used as the master mode timer to affect the work of slave mode timer; if CTRL1_CNTEN=1, the prescaler is directly driven by the internal clock. 001: Reserved 010: Reserved 011: Reserved 100: Reset mode; the slave mode timer resets the counter after receiving the rising edge signal of TRGI and generates the signal to update the register. 101: Gated mode; when the slave mode timer receives the TRGI high level signal, the counter will start to work; when it receives TRGI low level signal, the counter will stop working; when it receives TRGI high level signal again, the timer will continue to work; the counter is not reset during the whole period. 110: Trigger mode, the slave mode timer starts the counter to work after receiving the rising edge signal of TRGI. 111: External clock mode 1; select the rising edge signal of TRGI as the clock source to drive the counter to work.
3	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:4	TRGSEL	R/W	Trigger Input Signal Select In order to avoid generating false edge detection when changing the value of this bit, it must be changed when SMFSEL=0. 000: Internal trigger ITR0 001: Internal trigger ITR1 010: Internal trigger ITR2 011: Internal trigger ITR3 100: Channel 1 input edge detector TIF_ED 101: Channel 1 post-filtering timer input TI1FP1 110: Channel 2 post-filtering timer input TI2FP2 111: Reserved
7	MSMEN	R/W	Master/slave Mode Enable 0: Invalid 1: Enable the master/slave mode
15:8	Reserved		

Table 67 TMRx Internal Trigger Connection

Slave timer	ITR0 (TS=000)	ITR1 (TS=001)	ITR2 (TS=010)	ITR3 (TS=011)
TMR9	TMR2	TMR3	TMR10	TMR11
TMR12	TMR4	TMR5	TMR13	TMR14

16.8.3 DMA/Interrupt enable register (TMRx_DIEN)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UIEN	R/W	Update Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	CC1IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	CC2IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
5:3	Reserved		
6	TRGIEN	R/W	Trigger Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15:7	Reserved		

16.8.4 Status register (TMRx_STS)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UIFLG	RC_W0	Update Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No update event interrupt occurs 1: Update event interrupt occurred When the counter value is reloaded or reinitialized, an update event will be generated. The bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software; update events are generated in the following situations: (1) UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, and when the value of the repeat counter overruns, an update event will be generated; (2) URSEL=0 and UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, configure UG = 1 on TMRx_CEG register to generate update event, and the counter needs to be initialized by software; (3) URSEL=0 and UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, generate update event when the counter is initialized by trigger event.
1	CC1IFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel1 Interrupt Flag When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output: 0: No matching occurs 1: The value of TMRx_CNT matches the value of TMRx_CC1 When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input: 0: No input capture occurs 1: Input capture occurs When a capture event occurs, set 1 by hardware; clear 0 by software or clear 0 when reading TMRx_CC1 register.
2	CC2IFLG	RC_W0	Capture/Compare Channel2 new Interrupt Flag Refer to STS_CC1IFLG
5:3	Reserved		
6	TRGIFLG	RC_W0	Trigger Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No trigger event interrupt occurs 1: Trigger event interrupt occurs When a trigger event is generated, this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software.
8:7	Reserved		
9	CC1RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel1 Repetition Capture Flag 0: Repeated capture does not occur 1: Repeated capture occurs The value of the counter is captured to TMRx_CC1 register, and CC1IFLG=1; this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software only when the channel is configured as input capture.
10	CC2RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/compare Channel2 Repetition Capture Flag Refer to STS_CC1RCFLG
15:11	Reserved		

16.8.5 Control event generation register (TMRx_CEG)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UEG	W	Update Event Generate 0: Invalid 1: Initialize the counter and generate an update event This bit is set to 1 by software, and cleared to 0 by hardware. Note: When an update event is generated, the counter of the prescaler will be cleared to 0, but the prescaler factor remains unchanged. In the count-down mode, the counter reads the value of TMRx_AUTORLD; in center-aligned mode or count-up mode, the counter will be cleared to 0.
1	CC1EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Event Generation 0: Invalid 1: Generate capture/compare event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware. If Channel 1 is in output mode: When CC1IFLG=1, if CC1IEN bit are set, the corresponding interrupt will be generated. If Channel 1 is in input mode: The value of the capture counter is stored in TMRx_CC1 register; configure CC1IFLG=1, and if CC1IEN bit are also set, the corresponding interrupt will be generated; at this time, if CC1IFLG=1, it is required to configure CC1RCFLG=1.
2	CC2EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Event Generation Refer to CC1EG description
5:3	Reserved		
6	TEG	W	Trigger Event Generate 0: Invalid 1: Generate trigger event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware.
15:7	Reserved		

16.8.6 Capture/Compare mode register 1 (TMRx_CCM1)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000

The timer can be configured as input (capture mode) or output (compare mode) by CCxSEL bit. The functions of other bits of the register are different in input and output modes, and the functions of the same bit are different in output mode and input mode. The OCX in the register describes the function of the channel in the output mode, and the Icx in the register describes the function of the channel in the input mode.

Output compare mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC1SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Select This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC1 channel is output 01: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI1 10: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI2 11: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC1EN=0).
2	OC1FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Fast Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit is used to improve the response of the capture/compare output to the trigger input event.
3	OC1PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Preload Enable 0: Disable preloading function; write the value of TMRx_CC1 register through the program and it will work immediately. 1: Enable preloading function; write the value of TMRx_CC1 register through the program and it will work after an update event is generated. Note: When the protection level is 3 and the channel is configured as output, this bit cannot be modified. When the preload register is uncertain, PWM mode can be used only in single-pulse mode (SPMEN=1); otherwise, the following output compare result is uncertain.
6:4	OC1MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Mode Configure 000: Freeze The output compare has no effect on OC1REF 001: The output value is high when matching. When the value of counter CNT matches the value CCx of capture/compare register, OC1REF will be forced to be high 010: The output value is low when matching. When the value of the counter matches the value of the capture/compare register, OC1REF will be forced to be low 011: Output flaps when matching. When the value of the counter matches the value of the capture/compare register, flap the level of OC1REF 100: The output is forced to be low. Force OC1REF to be low 101: The output is forced to be high. Force OC1REF to be high 110: PWM mode 1 (set to high when the counter value<output compare value; otherwise, set to low) 111: PWM mode 2 (set to high when the counter value>output compare value; otherwise, set to low) Note: When the protection level is 3 and the channel is configured as output, this bit cannot be modified. In PWM modes 1 and 2, the OC1REF level changes when the comparison result changes or when the output compare mode changes from freeze mode to PWM mode.
7	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:8	CC2SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Select This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC2 channel is output 01: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI2 10: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI1 11: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC2EN=0).
10	OC2FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Preload Enable
11	OC2PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Buffer Enable
14:12	OC2MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel2 Mode
15	Reserved		

Input capture mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC1SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Select 00: CC1 channel is output 01: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI1 10: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI2 11: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN bit CC1EN=0).
3:2	IC1PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel1 Perscaler Configure 00：PSC=1 01：PSC=2 10：PSC=4 11：PSC=8 PSC is prescaler factor; capture is triggered once by every PSC events.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:4	IC1F	R/W	Input Capture Channel1 Filter Configure 0000: Disable filter, sampled by f_{DTS} 0001：DIV=1，N=2 0010：DIV=1，N=4 0011：DIV=1，N=8 0100：DIV=2，N=6 0101：DIV=2，N=8 0110：DIV=4，N=6 0111：DIV=4，N=8 1000：DIV=8，N=6 1001：DIV=8，N=8 1010：DIV=16，N=5 1011：DIV=16，N=6 1100：DIV=16，N=8 1101：DIV=32，N=5 1110：DIV=32，N=6 1111：DIV=32，N=8 Sampling frequency=timer clock frequency/DIV; the filter length=N, indicating that a jump is generated by every N events.
9:8	CC2SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 2 Select 00: CC2 channel is output 01: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI2 10: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TI1 11: CC2 channel is input, and IC2 is mapped on TRC, and only works in internal trigger input Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC2EN=0).
11:10	IC2PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel 2 Perscaler Configuration
15:12	IC2F	R/W	Input Capture Channel 2 Filter Configuration

16.8.7 Capture/Compare enable register (TMRx_CCEN)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CC1EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Enable When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output: 0: Disable output 1: Enable output When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input: This bit determines whether the value CNT of the counter can be captured and enter TMRx_CC1 register 0: Disable capture 1: Enable capture

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	CC1POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Polarity Configure When CC1 channel is configured as output: 0: OC1 is active high 1: OC1 is active low When CC1 channel is configured as input: CC1POL and CC1NPOL control the polarity of the triggered or captured signals TI1FP1 and TI2FP1 at the same time 00: Non-phase-inverting/rising edge: TIxFP1 is not phase-inverting (triggered in gated and encoder mode), and is captured at the rising edge of TixFP1 (reset trigger, capture, external clock and trigger mode). 01: Phase inverting/falling edge: TIxFP1 is phase-inverting (triggered in gated and encoder mode), and is captured at the rising edge of TixFP1 (reset trigger, capture, external clock and trigger mode). 10: Reserved 11: Non-phase-inverting/Rising and falling edges: TIxFP1 is not phase-inverting (triggered in gated mode, cannot be used in encoder mode), and is captured at the rising edge of TixFP1 (reset trigger, capture, external clock and trigger mode).
2	Reserved		
3	CC1NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Polarity Configure When CC1 channel is configured as output: CC1NPOL remains in cleared state all the time When CC1 channel is configured as input: This bit and CC1POL control the polarity of the triggered or captured signals TI1FP1 and TI2FP1 at the same time.
4	CC2EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Output Enable Refer to CCEN_CC1EN
5	CC2POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1POL
6	Reserved		
7	CC2NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Output Polarity Configure Refer to CCEN_CC1NPOL
15:8	Reserved		

Table 68 Output Control Bit of Standard Ocx Channel

CcxEN bit	Ocx output state
0	Disable output (OCx=0, OCx_EN=0)
1	Ocx=OCxREF+ polarity, OCx_EN=1

Note: The state of external I/O pin connected to the standard Ocx channel depends on the state of the Ocx channel and the GPIO and AFIO registers.

16.8.8 Counter register (TMRx_CNT)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CNT	R/W	Counter Value

16.8.9 Prescaler register (TMRx_PSC)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	PSC	R/W	Prescaler Value Clock frequency of counter (CK_CNT)＝f_{CK_PSC}/(PSC+1)

16.8.10 Auto reload register (TMRx_AUTORLD)

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value: 0xFFFF

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	AUTORLD	R/W	Auto Reload Value When the value of auto reload is empty, the counter will not count.

16.8.11 Channel 1 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC1)

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC1	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Value When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input mode: CC1 contains the counter value transmitted by the last input capture channel 1 event. When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output mode: CC1 contains the value currently loaded in the capture/compare register Compare the value CC1 of the capture and compare channel 1 with the value CNT of the counter to generate the output signal on OC1. When the output compare preload is disabled (OC1PEN=0 for TMRx_CCM1 register), the written value will immediately affect the output comparison results; If the output compare preload is enabled (OC1PEN=1 for TMRx_CCM1 register), the written value will affect the output comparison result when an update event is generated.

16.8.12 Channel 2 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC2)

Offset address: 0x38

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC2	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel2 Value Refer to TMRx_CC1

16.9 TMR10/11/13/14 register address mapping

In the following table, all registers of TMR10/11/13/14 are mapped to a 16-bit addressable (address) space.

Table 69 TMR10/11/13/14 Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
TMRx_CTRL1	Control register 1	0x00
TMRx_DIEN	DMA/Interrupt enable register	0x0C
TMRx_STS	Status register	0x10
TMRx_CEG	Control event generation register	0x14
TMRx_CCM1	Capture/Compare mode register 1	0x18
TMRx_CCEN	Capture/Compare enable register	0x20
TMRx_CNT	Counter register	0x24
TMRx_PSC	Prescaler register	0x28
TMRx_AUTORLD	Auto reload register	0x2C
TMRx_CC1	Channel 1 capture/compare register	0x34
TMR11_OPT	Option register	0x50

16.10 TMR10/11/13/14 register functional description

16.10.1 Control register 1 (TMRx_CTRL1)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CNTEN	R/W	Counter Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	UD	R/W	Update Disable Update event can cause AUTORLD, PSC and CCx to generate the value of update setting. 0: Enable update event (UEV) An update event can occur in any of the following situations: The counter overruns; Set UEG bit; 1: Disable update event
2	URSSEL	R/W	Update Request Source Select If interrupt or DMA is enabled, the update event can generate update interrupt or DMA request. Different update request sources can be selected by this bit. 0: The counter overruns Set UEG bit 1: The counter overruns

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3	SPMEN	R/W	Single Pulse Mode Enable When an update event is generated, the output level of the channel can be changed; in this mode, the CNTEN bit will be cleared, the counter will stop, and the subsequent output level of the channel will no long be changed. 0: Disable 1: Enable
6:4	Reserved		
7	ARPEN	R/W	Auto-reload Preload Enable When the buffer is disabled, modification of TMRx_AUTORLD by program will immediately lead to modification of the values loaded to the counter; when the buffer is enabled, modification of TMRx_AUTORLD by program will lead to modification of the values loaded to the counter at the next update event. 0: Disable 1: Enable
9:8	CLKDIV	R/W	Clock Division For the configuration of digital filter, CK_INT provides the clock, and the clock of the digital filter can be adjusted by this bit. 00：$t_{DTS}=t_{CK\_INT}$ 01：$t_{DTS}=2\times t_{CK\_INT}$ 10：$t_{DTS}=4\times t_{CK\_INT}$ 11: Reserved
15:10	Reserved		

16.10.2 DMA/Interrupt enable register (TMRx_DIEN)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UIEN	R/W	Update Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	CC1IEN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15:2	Reserved		

16.10.3 Status register (TMRx_STS)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UIFLG	RC_W0	Update Event Interrupt Generate Flag 0: No update event interrupt occurs 1: Update event interrupt occurred When the counter value is reloaded or reinitialized, an update event will be generated. The bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software; update events are generated in the following situations: (1) UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, and when the value of the repeat counter overruns, an update event will be generated; (2) URSEL=0 and UD=0 on TMRx_CTRL1 register, configure UG = 1 on TMRx_CEG register to generate update event, and the counter needs to be initialized by software.
1	CC1IFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel1 Interrupt Flag When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output: 0: No matching occurs 1: The value of TMRx_CNT matches the value of TMRx_CC1 When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input: 0: No input capture occurs 1: Input capture occurs When a capture event occurs, set 1 by hardware; clear 0 by software or clear 0 when reading TMRx_CC1 register.
8:2	Reserved		
9	CC1RCFLG	RC_W0	Captuer/Compare Channel1 Repetition Capture Flag 0: Repeated capture does not occur 1: Repeated capture occurs The value of the counter is captured to TMRx_CC1 register, and CC1IFLG=1; this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software only when the channel is configured as input capture.
15:10	Reserved		

16.10.4 Control event generation register (TMRx_CEG)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	UEG	W	Update Event Generate 0: Invalid 1: Initialize the counter and generate an update event This bit is set to 1 by software, and cleared to 0 by hardware. Note: When an update event is generated, the counter of the prescaler will be cleared to 0, but the prescaler factor remains unchanged. In the count-down mode, the counter reads the value of TMRx_AUTORLD; in center-aligned mode or count-up mode, the counter will be cleared to 0.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	CC1EG	W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Event Generation 0: Invalid 1: Generate capture/compare event This bit is set to 1 by software and cleared to 0 automatically by hardware. If Channel 1 is in output mode: When CC1IFLG=1, if CC1IEN bit are set, the corresponding interrupt will be generated. If Channel 1 is in input mode: The value of the capture counter is stored in TMRx_CC1 register; configure CC1IFLG=1, and if CC1IEN bit are also set, the corresponding interrupt will be generated; at this time, if CC1IFLG=1, it is required to configure CC1RCFLG=1.
15:2	Reserved		

16.10.5 Capture/Compare mode register 1 (TMRx_CCM1)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000

The timer can be configured as input (capture mode) or output (compare mode) by CCxSEL bit. The functions of other bits of the register are different in input and output modes, and the functions of the same bit are different in output mode and input mode. The Ocx in the register describes the function of the channel in the output mode, and the Icxx in the register describes the function of the channel in the input mode.

Output compare mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC1SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Select This bit defines the input/output direction and selects the input pin. 00: CC1 channel is output 01: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI1 10: Reserved 11: Reserved Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN register CC1EN=0).
2	OC1FEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Fast Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit is used to improve the response of the capture/compare output to the trigger input event.
3	OC1PEN	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Preload Enable 0: Disable preloading function; write the value of TMRx_CC1 register through the program and it will work immediately. 1: Enable preloading function; write the value of TMRx_CC1 register through the program and it will work after an update event is generated. Note: When the protection level is 3 and the channel is configured as output, this bit cannot be modified. When the preload register is uncertain, PWM mode can be used only in single-pulse mode (SPMEN=1); otherwise, the following output compare result is uncertain.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:4	OC1MOD	R/W	Output Compare Channel1 Mode Configure 000: Freeze The output compare has no effect on OC1REF 001: The output value is high when matching. When the value of counter CNT matches the value CCx of capture/compare register, OC1REF will be forced to be high 010: The output value is low when matching. When the value of the counter matches the value of the capture/compare register, OC1REF will be forced to be low 011: Output flaps when matching. When the value of the counter matches the value of the capture/compare register, flap the level of OC1REF 100: The output is forced to be low. Force OC1REF to be low 101: The output is forced to be high. Force OC1REF to be high 110: PWM mode 1 (set to high when the counter value<output compare value; otherwise, set to low) 111: PWM mode 2 (set to high when the counter value>output compare value; otherwise, set to low) Note: When the protection level is 3 and the channel is configured as output, this bit cannot be modified. In PWM modes 1 and 2, the OC1REF level changes when the comparison result changes or when the output compare mode changes from freeze mode to PWM mode.
15:7	Reserved		

Input capture mode:

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	CC1SEL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Select 00: CC1 channel is output 01: CC1 channel is input, and IC1 is mapped on TI1 10: Reserved 11: Reserved Note: This bit can be written only when the channel is closed (TMRx_CCEN bit CC1EN=0).
3:2	IC1PSC	R/W	Input Capture Channel1 Perscaler Configure 00：PSC=1 01：PSC=2 10：PSC=4 11：PSC=8 PSC is prescaler factor; capture is triggered once by every PSC events.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:4	IC1F	R/W	Input Capture Channel1 Filter Configure 0000: Disable filter, sampled by f_{DTS} 0001：DIV=1，N=2 0010：DIV=1，N=4 0011：DIV=1，N=8 0100：DIV=2，N=6 0101：DIV=2，N=8 0110：DIV=4，N=6 0111：DIV=4，N=8 1000：DIV=8，N=6 1001：DIV=8，N=8 1010：DIV=16，N=5 1011：DIV=16，N=6 1100：DIV=16，N=8 1101：DIV=32，N=5 1110：DIV=32，N=6 1111：DIV=32，N=8 Sampling frequency=timer clock frequency/DIV; the filter length=N, indicating that a jump is generated by every N events.
15:8	Reserved		

16.10.6 Capture/Compare enable register (TMRx_CCEN)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CC1EN	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Enable When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output: 0: Disable output 1: Enable output When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input: This bit determines whether the value CNT of the counter can be captured and enter TMRx_CC1 register 0: Disable capture 1: Enable capture

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	CC1POL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Polarity Configure When CC1 channel is configured as output: 0: OC1 is active high 1: OC1 is active low When CC1 channel is configured as input: CC1POL and CC1NPOL control the polarity of the triggered or captured signals TI1FP1 and TI2FP1 at the same time 00: Non-phase-inverting/rising edge: TIxFP1 is not phase-inverting (triggered in gated and encoder mode), and is captured at the rising edge of TixFP1 (reset trigger, capture, external clock and trigger mode). 01: Phase inverting/falling edge: TIxFP1 is phase-inverting (triggered in gated and encoder mode), and is captured at the rising edge of TixFP1 (reset trigger, capture, external clock and trigger mode). 10: Reserved 11: Non-phase-inverting/Rising and falling edges: TIxFP1 is not phase-inverting (triggered in gated mode, cannot be used in encoder mode), and is captured at the rising edge of TixFP1 (reset trigger, capture, external clock and trigger mode).
2	Reserved		
3	CC1NPOL	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel1 Output Polarity Configure When CC1 channel is configured as output: CC1NPOL remains in cleared state all the time When CC1 channel is configured as input: This bit and CC1POL control the polarity of the triggered or captured signals TI1FP1 at the same time.
15:4	Reserved		

Table 70 Output Control Bit of Standard Ocx Channel

CcxEN bit	Ocx output state
0	Disable output (OCx=0, OCx_EN=0)
1	Ocx=OCxREF+ polarity, OCx_EN=1

Note: The state of external I/O pin connected to the standard Ocx channel depends on the state of the Ocx channel and the GPIO and AFIO registers.

16.10.7 Counter register (TMRx_CNT)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CNT	R/W	Counter Value

16.10.8 Prescaler register (TMRx_PSC)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	PSC	R/W	Prescaler Value Clock frequency of counter (CK_CNT)=f_{CK_PSC}/(PSC+1)

16.10.9 Auto reload register (TMRx_AUTORLD)

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value: 0xFFFF

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	AUTORLD	R/W	Auto Reload Value When the value of auto reload is empty, the counter will not count.

16.10.10 Channel 1 capture/compare register (TMRx_CC1)

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CC1	R/W	Capture/Compare Channel 1 Value When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as input mode: CC1 contains the counter value transmitted by the last input capture channel 1 event. When the capture/compare channel 1 is configured as output mode: CC1 contains the value currently loaded in the capture/compare register Compare the value CC1 of the capture and compare channel 1 with the value CNT of the counter to generate the output signal on OC1. When the output compare preload is disabled (OC1PEN=0 for TMRx_CCM1 register), the written value will immediately affect the output comparison results; If the output compare preload is enabled (OC1PEN=1 for TMRx_CCM1 register), the written value will affect the output comparison result when an update event is generated.

16.10.11 Option register (TMR11_OPT)

Offset address: 0x50

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	RMPSEL	R/W	Timer11 Input 1 Remap Select 00: TMR11 channel 1 is connected to GPIO 01: TMR11 channel 1 is connected to GPIO 10: HSECLK_RTC clock is connected to TMR11_CH1 input 11: TMR11 channel 1 is connected to GPIO
15:2	Reserved		

17 Watchdog timer (WDT)

17.1 Introduction

The watchdog is used to monitor system faults caused by software errors. There are two watchdog devices on the chip: independent watchdog and window watchdog, which improve the security, and make the time more accurate and the use more flexible.

The independent watchdog will reset only when the counter is reduced to 0, and the value of refresh counter will not be reset until it is not reduced to 0.

The window watchdog will reset when the counter decreases to 0x3F. When the count value of the counter is before the window value of the configuration register, the counter will be reset after refresh.

17.2 Independent watchdog timer (IWDT)

17.2.1 Introduction

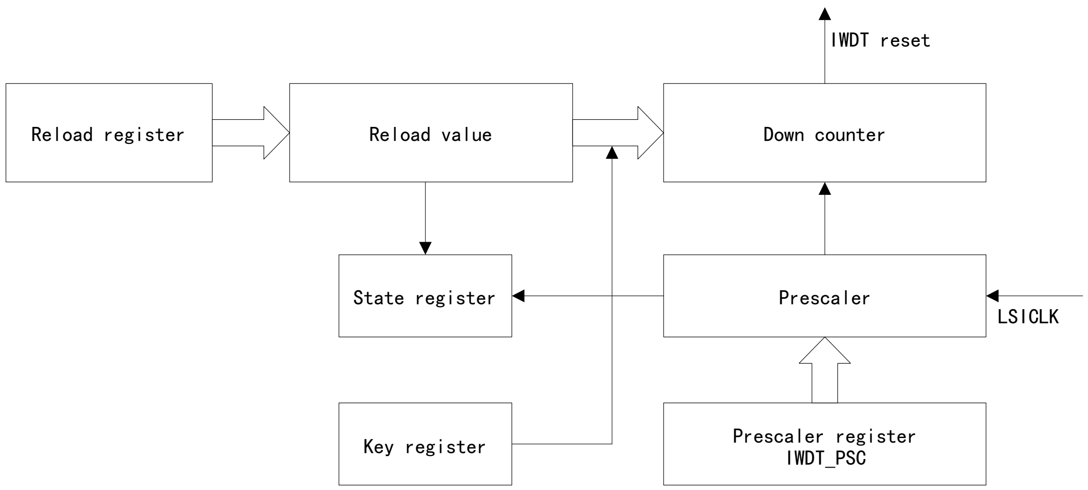
The independent watchdog consists of an 8-bit prescaler IWDT_PSC, 12-bit count-down counter, 12-bit reload register IWDT_CNTRLD, key register IWDT_KEY and state register IWDT_STS.

The independent watchdog has an independent clock source, and even if the master clock fails, it is still valid.

The independent watchdog is applicable when an independent environment is required but the accuracy requirement is not high.

17.2.2 Structure block diagram

Figure 61 Independent Watchdog Structure Block Diagram



Note: The watchdog function is in the V_{DD} power supply area and can work normally in stop or standby mode.

17.2.3 Functional Description

17.2.3.1 Key register

Write 0xCCCC in the key register to enable the independent watchdog, then the counter starts to count down, and when the counter counts to 0x000, a reset will be generated.

Write 0xAAAA in the key register, and the value of the reload register will be reloaded to the counter to prevent the watchdog from resetting.

Write 0X5555 to the key register to rewrite the value of the prescaler register and the reload register.

17.2.3.2 Register access protection

The prescaler register and reload register have write protection function. To rewrite these two registers, it is necessary to write 0X5555 to the key register. If other value is written to the key register, the protection of the register will be enabled again.

Write 0xAAAA to the key register and the write protection function will also be enabled.

17.2.3.3 Hardware watchdog

After the "hardware watchdog" function is enabled, and the system is powered on and reset, the watchdog will run automatically. If 0xAAAA is not written to the key register, reset will be generated after the counter finishes counting.

17.2.3.4 Debug mode

The independent watchdog can be configured in debug mode and choose to stop or continue to work. This depends on the IWDT_STS bit of DBGMCU_APB1F register.

Table 71 Minimum/Maximum timeout value when LSICLK=32kHz

PSC	Minimum timeout value	Maximum timeout value
0	0.125ms	512ms
1	0.25ms	1024ms
2	0.5ms	2048ms
3	1ms	4096ms
4	2ms	8192ms
5	4ms	16384ms
6		32768ms

17.3 Window watchdog timer (WWDT)

17.3.1 Introduction

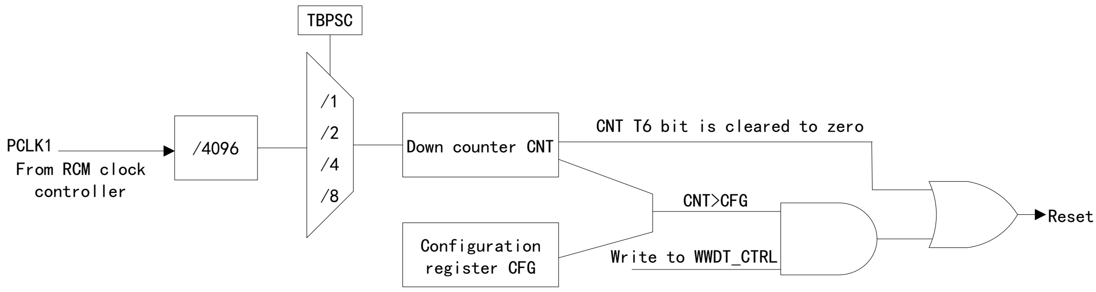
The window watchdog contains a 7-bit free-running down counter, prescaler and control register WWDT_CTRL, configuration register WWDT_CFG and status register WWDT_STS.

The window watchdog clock comes from PCLK1, and the counter clock is obtained from the CK counter clock through frequency division by prescaler (configured by the configuration register).

The window watchdog is applicable when precise timing is needed.

17.3.2 Structure block diagram

Figure 62 Window Watchdog Structure Block Diagram



17.3.3 Functional Description

Enable window watchdog timer, and the reset conditions are:

- When the counter count is less than 0x40, a reset will be generated.
- The reload counter will be reset before the counter counts to the value of the window register.

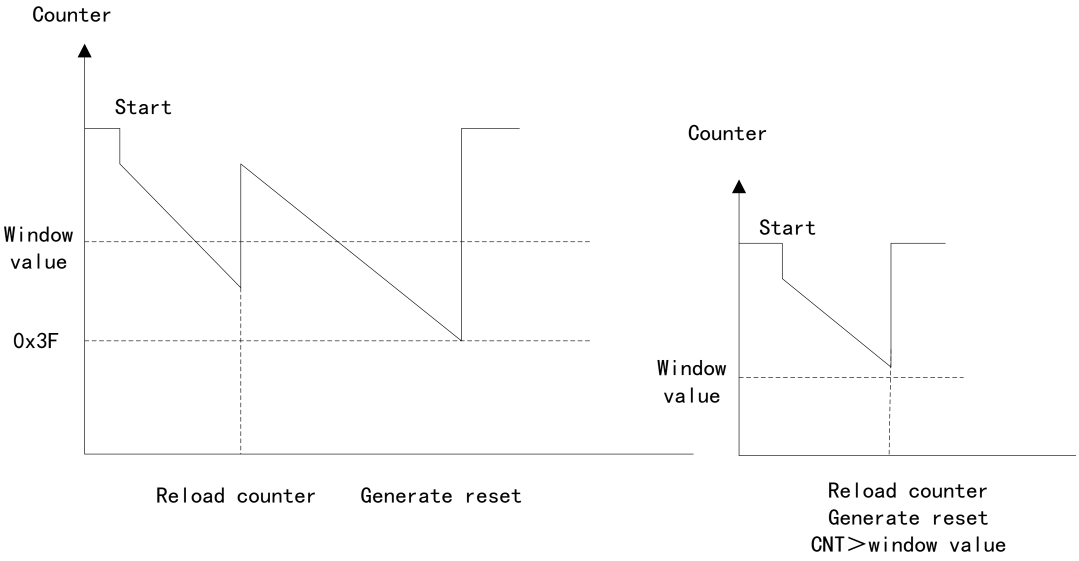
After reset, the watchdog is always closed and the watchdog can be enabled only by setting the WWDTEN bit of WWDT_CTRL control register.

The counter of window watchdog is in free state. When the watchdog is disabled, the counter will continue to count down. The counter must be reloaded between the value of window register and 0x40 to avoid resetting.

Setting the EWIEN bit of the configuration register can enable the early wake-up interrupt. When the count reaches 0x40, an interrupt will be generated. Enter the interrupt service program (ISR) to prevent the window watchdog from resetting. EWIEN interrupt can be cleared by writing 0 in the status register.

The unique window of the window watchdog timer can effectively monitor whether the program is faulty. For example, assuming that the running time of a program segment is T, the value of the window register is set to slightly less than (TR-T), if there is no reload register in the window, it means that the program is faulty, and when the counter counts to 0x3F, a reset will be generated.

Figure 63 Window Watchdog Timing Diagram



The calculation formula of window watchdog timer timeout is as follows:

$$T_{WWDT}=T_{PCLK1}\times4096\times2^{TBPSC}\times(CNT[5:0]+1)$$

Where:

- T_{WWDT}: WWDT timeout
- T_{PCLK1}: Clock cycle of APB1 (in ms)

Minimum/Maximum timeout when PCLK1=30MHz:

Table 72 Minimum/Maximum timeout value when PCLK1=30MHz

TBPSC	Minimum timeout value	Maximum timeout value
0	136.53μs	8.74ms
1	273.07μs	17.48ms
2	546.13μs	34.95ms
3	1092.27μs	69.91ms

17.4 IWDT register address mapping

Table 73 IWDT Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
IWDT_KEY	Key register	0x00
IWDT_PSC	Prescaler register	0x04
IWDT_CNTRLD	Counter reload register	0x08
IWDT_STS	Status register	0x0C

17.5 IWDT register functional description

These peripheral registers can be operated by half word (16 bits) or word (32 bits).

17.5.1 Key register (IWDT_KEY)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 0000 (reset in standby mode)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	KEY	W	Allow Access IWDT Register Key Value Writing 0x5555 means enabled access to IWDT_PSC and IWDT_CNTRLD registers; When the software writes 0xAAAA, it means to execute the reload counter, and a certain interval is required to prevent the watchdog from resetting. Write 0xCCCC and the watchdog will be enabled (the hardware watchdog is unrestricted by this command word); This register is write-only and the read-out value is 0x0000.
31:16	Reserved		

17.5.2 Prescaler register (IWDT_PSC)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	PSC	R/W	Prescaler Factor Configure Support write protection function; when writing 0x5555 to the IWDT_KEY register, it is allowed to access the register; in the process of writing to this register, only when PSCUFLG=0 for IWDT_STS register, can the prescaler factor be changed; in the process of reading this register, only when PSCUFLG=0, can the read-out value of PSC register be valid. 000：PSC=4 001：PSC=8 010：PSC=16 011：PSC=32 100：PSC=64 101：PSC=128 110：PSC=256 111：PSC=256
31:3	Reserved		

17.5.3 Counter reload register (IWDT_CNTRLD)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0FFF(reset in standby mode)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:0	CNTRLD	R/W	Watchdog Counter Reload Value Setup It supports write protection function and defines the value loaded to the watchdog counter when 0xAAAA is written to IWDT_KEY register; in the process of writing this register, this register can be modified only when CNTUFLG=0. In the process of reading this register, only when CNTUFLG=0 in IWDT_STS register, can the read value be valid. The watchdog timeout cycle can be calculated by the reload value and clock prescaler value.
31:12	Reserved		

17.5.4 Status register (IWDT_STS)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000 (not reset in standby mode)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	PSCUFLG	R	Watchdog Prescaler Factor Update Flag When the prescaler factor is updated, it will be set to 1 by hardware; after the prescaler factor is updated, it will be cleared to 0 by hardware; the prescaler factor is updated only when the PSCUFLG bit is cleared to 0.
1	CNTUFLG	R	Watchdog Counter Reload Value Update Flag When the counter reload value is updated, it will be set to 1 by hardware; after the counter reload value is updated, it will be cleared to 0 by hardware; the counter reload value is updated only when the CNTUFLG bit is cleared to 0.
31:2	Reserved		

17.6 WWDT register address mapping

Table 74 WWDT Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
WWDT_CTRL	Control register	0x00
WWDT_CFG	Configuration Register	0x04
WWDT_STS	Status register	0x08

17.7 WWDT register functional description

These peripheral registers can be operated by half word (16 bits) or word (32 bits).

17.7.1.1 **Control register (WWDT_CTRL)**

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 007F

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:0	CNT	R/W	Counter Value Setup This counter is 7 bits, and CNT6 is the most significant bit These bits are used to store the counter value of the watchdog. When the count value decreases from 0x40 to 0x3F, WWDT reset will be generated.
7	WWDTEN	R/S	Window Watchdog Enable This bit is set to 1 by software and can be cleared by hardware only after reset. When WWDTEN=1, WWDT can generate a reset. 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:8	Reserved		

17.7.1.2 **Configuration register (WWDT_CFG)**

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 007F

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:0	WIN	R/W	Window Value Setup This window value is 7 bits, which is used to compare with the down counter.
8:7	TBPSC	R/W	Timer Base Prescaler Factor Configure Divide the frequency on the basis of PCLK1/4096 00: No frequency division 01: 2 divided frequency 10: 4 divided frequency 11: 8 divided frequency
9	EWIEN	R/S	Early Wakeup Interrupt Enable 0: No effect 1: When the counter value reaches 0x40, an interrupt will be generated; this interrupt is cleared by hardware after reset.
31:10	Reserved		

17.7.1.3 **Status register (WWDT_STS)**

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	EWIFLG	RC_W0	Early Wakeup Interrupt Occur Flag 0: Not occur 1: When the counter value reaches 0x40, it is set to 1 by hardware; if the interrupt is not enabled, the bit will also be set to 1; it can be cleared by writing 0 by software.
31:1	Reserved		

18 Real-time clock (RTC)

18.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 75 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Second	SEC
Alarm	ALR
Prescaler	PSC

18.2 Introduction

It has sub-second, time and date registers with BCD coding, as well as corresponding alarm registers, and can realize timestamp function together with external pins. It supports clock calibration function and time compensation.

18.3 Main characteristics

(1) Timebase unit

(2) Clock calibration

(3) Subsecond, time and date

(4) Time error compensation

(5) Alarm (subsecond, time and date mask)

(6) Timestamp

(7) Tamper detection

(8) 2 kinds of RTC outputs

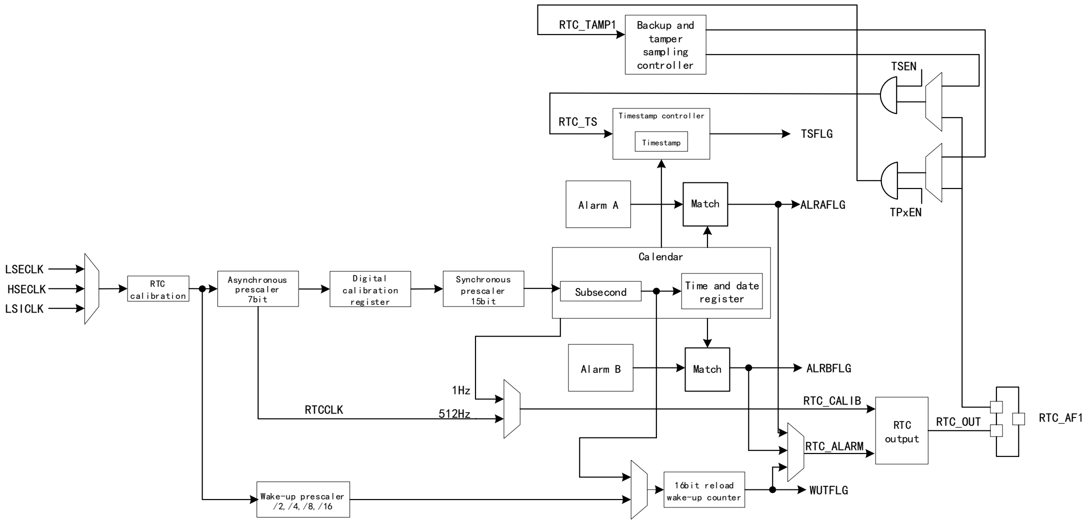
(9) Backup domain

(10) Multiple interrupt control

(11) Automatic wakeup of low power

18.4 Structure block diagram

Figure 64 RTC Structure Block Diagram



Note:

(1) Multiplexing function output: RTC_OUT is output in one of the following two forms

- RTC_CALIB: This output is enabled through CALOEN bit of RTC_CTRL register, and when the frequency of LSECLK is 32.768kHz, the clock output is 512Hz or 1Hz.
- RTC_ALARM: This output, alarm A, is enabled by OUTSEL bit of RTC_CTRL register.

(2) Multiplexing function input:

- RTC_TS: Timestamp event
- RTC_TAMP1: Tamper event detection 1

(3) The multiplexing function of RTC_AF1 is connected to PC13

18.5 Functional Description

18.5.1 Timebase unit

Clock Source

RTC has three clock sources:

- External LSECLK crystal oscillator
- External HSECLK crystal oscillator
- Internal LSICLK

Select different clock sources by configuring the register of the clock controller RCM.

Prescaler

When backup power supply is used, the power consumption of RTC peripherals should be as low as possible. Considering power consumption, RTC internally adopts dual prescaler, 7-bit asynchronous prescaler APSC and 15-bit synchronous prescaler SPSC.

RTCCLK first passes through the asynchronous prescaler, and the clock after frequency division reaches the synchronous prescaler. Two prescalers can be reasonably configured to generate a 1Hz clock for date use.

When the prescaler is used, it is suggested that the asynchronous prescaler should be adjusted as high as possible to reduce power consumption.

The synchronous prescaled value can also be used as the reload value of the subsecond counter.

18.5.2 Clock calibration

Clock synchronization

RTC can realize clock synchronization according to external high-precision clcok and the register RTC_SHIFT. The deviation between RTC clock and external clock is detected mainly by acquiring the timestamps of subsecond time period twice. Since the synchronous prescaled value is used as the reload value of the subsecond counter, and the SFSEC bit of register RTC_SHIFT only works in the subsecond counter, the SFSEC bit can be adjusted to finely tune the RTC clock and increase or decrease several cycles artificially.

Reference clock

RTC supports internal reference clock detection, which can be used to compensate the deviation of external LSECLK crystal oscillator. Set RCLKDEN bit to enable the reference clock detection, compare the external 50Hz or 60Hz reference clock with the internal 1Hz clock of RTC through RTC_REFIN pin, and through this mechanism, the 1Hz clock after LSECLK frequency division is automatically compensated.

After the reference clock detection is enabled, the synchronous and asynchronous prescalers of the clock unit must be configured as the default value.

The reference clock detection cannot be used simultaneously with the clock synchronization, and it should be disabled in standby mode.

RTC coarse digital calibration

RTC_DCAL register can be configured as positive or negative calibration to update the date in advance or with delay, so the effective frequency can be adjusted.

RTC precision digital calibration

RTC uses 2^{20} RTCCLK as a calibration cycle by default. In addition, 2^{19} and 2^{18} RTCCLK can be set as a calibration cycle through the registers CALW16 and CALW8. When LSECLK is used as RTCCLK clock source, the calibration cycle of RTC is 32s, 16s, and 8s.

- 16s calibration cycle; the hardware sets RECALF[0] to "0"
- 8s calibration cycle; the hardware sets RECALF[1:0] to "00"

Taking 32s calibration cycle as an example, the calibration mechanism is to add or reduce some RTCCLK signals in the calibration cycle.

- When RECALF is used, RECALF RTCCLK are reduced every 2^{20} RTCCLK
- When ICALFEN is used and ICALFEN=1, one RTCCLK is added every 2^{11} RTCCLK
- When RECALF and ICALFEN are used, (512*ICALFEN - RECALF) RTCCLK are added every 2^{20} RTCCLK

18.5.3 RTC write protection

In order to prevent counting exception caused by accidental write, RTC register adopts write protection mechanism. Only when the write protection is removed, can the register with write protection function be operated.

After power-on, RTC register will enter the write protection state and the protection cannot be removed by system reset. The write protection can be removed by writing special keywords '0xCA' and '0x53' to the register RTC_WRPROT. If wrong keyword is written, RTC will immediately enable write protection.

18.5.4 Date register

RTC has subsecond, time and date shadow registers encoded by BCD, which are RTC_SUBSEC, RTC_TIME and RTC_DATE respectively. The current date can be obtained by accessing the shadow register or obtained directly from the date register. The time system of 24 hours and 12 hours can be selected by TIMEFCFG bit of configuration register RTC_CTRL.

RTC updates the shadow register every two RTCCLK cycles, and sets the flag bit RSFLG. When it wakes up from stop or standby mode, generally the shadow register will not be updated, which requires waiting for up to 1-2 RTCCLK cycles. The reset of shadow register is caused by system reset.

The shadow register is synchronized with f_{APB1}.

The way to read the date can be selected by RCMCFG bit of configuration register RTC_CTRL.

RCMCFG=0, read the date from the shadow register

In this mode, it is recommended that f_{APB1} should be greater than 7*f_{RTCCLK}. If f_{APB1} is too small, to ensure the normal reading of date value, it is required to read the shadow register twice. If the date obtained twice is the same, the date is read successfully.

After the shadow register is updated, the flag bit RSFLG will be set. The software can read the date only after the bit RSFLG is set. Every time the date is read, the RSFLG flag should be cleared manually.

When waking up from stop or standby mode, since the shadow register is not updated, the RSFLG flag should be cleared immediately.

RCMCFG=1, read the date from the date register

When f_{APB1} is less than 7*f_{RTCCLK} or the system wakes up from low-power mode, it is recommended to read the date directly from the date register.

If RSFLG flag bit is not set to 1 when reading the date just at the stage of change of date register, it is required to read the date twice. Therefore, it is also advised to read the date register twice. When the read date value is the same twice, it means that the date is read successfully.

18.5.5 Time compensation

Due to seasonal changes, time compensation is sometimes needed to make it more suitable for daily needs. RTC integrates time compensation unit and its summer time flag. Users can choose whether to enable time compensation according to their own needs.

By setting STCCFG bit of the register RTC_CTRL, the summer time will increase by 1 hour; by setting WTCCFG bit of the register RTC_CTRL, the winter time will decrease by 1 hour. BAKP flag is used to record whether the summer time is set.

18.5.6 Programmable alarm

As a real-time clock, RTC integrates alarm function, and it runs mainly through alarm configuration register and alarm mask in combination with date register.

Configure the alarm and alarm mask through the registers RTC_ALRMA/RTC_ALRMASS and RTC_ALRMB/RTC_ALRMBSS, and the alarm mask informs RTC to pay attention to the time period of the alarm. After the alarm function is enabled, the alarm will be triggered only when the concerned time period reaches the set value. At this time, the alarm flag is set. If the alarm interrupt is enabled, the interrupt processing will be triggered.

Select "seconds" as the time period of the alarm, and only when the synchronous prescaler value is greater than 3, can the alarm operate normally.

18.5.7 Timestamp

RTC supports timestamp function and the RTC_TS pin works in combination with the timestamp register.

The timestamp polarity is detected through TSETECFG bit of the register RTC_CTRL. When RTC_TS pin recognizes the external timestamp edge signal, RTC will automatically latch the current date in the subsecond, time and date timestamp registers, and the timestamp flag bit TSFLG will be set to 1. If the timestamp interrupt is enabled, the timestamp interrupt processing will be triggered.

When TSFLG flag bit is set to 1, and another timestamp event occurs, the timestamp will overrun, and the flag bit TSOVRFLG will be set to 1. If another timestamp event is detected once TSFLG flag is cleared, both TSFLG and TSOVRFLG flags will be set to 1.

TAMPER multiplexing function

RTC_TAMP1 multiplexing function can be mapped to RTC_AF1, and it is determined by TP1MSEL bit of RTC_TACFG register. After TP1MSEL is modified, clear TP1EN bit to zero to avoid accidental setting of TP1FLG.

18.5.8 Backup domain

After the main power supply V_{DD} is powered off, the backup domain register will be powered by V_{BAT} automatically. System reset, NRST pin reset, and reset after the low-power mode is awakened will not affect the backup domain register. When V_{BAT} is powered off or tamper event occurs, the backup domain register will be reset.

The backup domain register can be used to cache user data, and be used as a state flag to realize some function application by using its characteristics that the data will remain unchanged after system reset.

18.5.9 Tamper detection

Tamper detection is a kind of data self-destruction protection device to prevent data leakage caused by tamper. Through the hardware circuit design, the tamper detection signal is transmitted to the tamper detection pin.

Tamper detection has multiple tamper detection pins, and each pin is enabled by a register bit separately. In order to detect real tamper events better, signal filtering can be configured, and tamper detection polarity can be configured for each pin.

Tamper detection polarity

The low level/rising edge and high level/falling edge can be selected as tamper detection polarity through TPxAL bit of the register RTC_TACFG.

Tamper signal filter

TPSFSEL bit of the register RTC_TACFG is used to configure the sampling frequency of tamper detection, and TPFCSEL bit of RTC_TACFG is used to configure after how many valid tamper signals are detected continuously, a tamper event can be generated.

In particular, if a tamper signal has been generated on the tamper detection pin before the tamper detection pin is enabled, a tamper event will be immediately generated by enabling the tamper detection pin.

Tamper timestamp

At some times, in order to record the tamper detection events, RTC can latch the current tamper timestamp and this function can be enabled quickly through TPTSEN bit of the register RTC_TACFG, not needing to enable the timestamp function additionally.

18.5.10 Automatic wake-up

Compared with RTC alarm, the automatic wake-up has a simple hardware structure, and has no complicated configuration process of RTC alarm, so it is a good scheme to use it to wake up the low power.

There is a 16-bit self-decrement reload counter in RTC, which is used to wake up the device automatically.

The clock of this counter is selected by WUCLKSEL bit of the register RTC_CTRL, and by selecting different clocks, the automatic wake-up cycle can be configured from 122μs to 36h. First disable the automatic wake-up, namely, clear WUTEN; when WUTWFLG flag bit is set to 1, configure WUCLKSEL bit of the RTC_CTRL register and the reload register RTC_AUTORLD.

When the counter decreases to 0 automatically, a wake-up event will be generated, WUTFLG flag bit will be set to 1, and before entering the next round of automatic wake-up, this flag bit must be cleared.

18.5.11 RTC output

RTC output transmits the internal RTC calibration clock, alarm signal, and automatic wake-up signal to the outside.

RTC calibration clock

Calibration clock output is generally used to observe the accuracy of RTC clock source, and the observed value is used to calibrate the clock source. 512Hz and 1Hz signal output sources can be selected through CALOSEL bit of RTC_CTRL register, and CALOEN bit of RTC_CTRL register can enable the calibration output.

Calibration multiplexing function output

When CALOEN bit of RTC_CTRL register is set, RTC_AF1 will enable the calibration multiplexing function.

Alarm and automatic wake-up signal

When the alarm or automatic wake-up is running, these two events can be output as pulse signals. OUTSEL bit of RTC_CTRL register is used to select the signal output source, and POLCFG bit is used to configure the output polarity.

18.6 Register address mapping

Table 76 RTC Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
RTC_TIME	RTC time register	0x00
RTC_DATE	RTC date register	0x04
RTC_CTRL	RTC control register	0x08
RTC_STS	RTC status register	0x0C
RTC_PSC	RTC prescaler register	0x10
RTC_AUTORLD	RTC auto reload register	0x14
RTC_DCAL	RTC coarse calibration register	0x18
RTC_ALRMA	RTC alarm A register	0x1C
RTC_ALRMB	RTC alarm B register	0x20
RTC_WRPROT	RTC write protection register	0x24
RTC_SUBSEC	RTC subsecond register	0x28
RTC_SHIFT	RTC shift register	0x2C
RTC_TSTIME	RTC timestamp time register	0x30
RTC_TSDATE	RTC timestamp date register	0x34
RTC_TSSUBSEC	RTC timestamp subsecond register	0x38
RTC_CAL	RTC calibration register	0x3C
RTC_TACFG	RTC tamper and multiplexing configuration register	0x40
RTC_ALRMASS	RTC alarm A subsecond register	0x44
RTC_ALRMBSS	RTC alarm B subsecond register	0x48
RTC_BAKPx	RTC backup register	0x50-0x9C

18.7 Register functional description

18.7.1 RTC time register (RTC_TIME)

RTC_TIME is time shadow register, and this register can be written only in initialization mode to be put in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: RCMCFG =0: 0x0000 0000; RCMCFG =1: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	SECU	R/W	Second Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
6:4	SECT	R/W	Second Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
7	Reserved		
11:8	MINU	R/W	Minute Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
14:12	MINT	R/W	Minute Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
15	Reserved		
19:16	HRU	R/W	Hour Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
21:20	HRT	R/W	Hour Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
22	TIMEFCFG	R/W	Time Format Configure 0: AM or 24-hour system 1：PM
31:23	Reserved		

18.7.2 RTC date register (RTC_DATE)

RTC_DATE is date shadow register, and this register can be written only in initialization mode to be put in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 2101

System reset: RCMCFG =0: 0x0000 0000; RCMCFG =1: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	DAYU	R/W	Day Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
5:4	DAYT	R/W	Day Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
7:6	Reserved		
11:8	MONU	R/W	Month Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
12	MONT	R/W	Month Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
15:13	WEEKSEL	R/W	Week Day Units Select 000: Disable 001: Monday ... 111: Sunday
19:16	YRU	R/W	Year Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
23:20	YRT	R/W	Year Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
31:24	Reserved		

18.7.3 RTC control register (RTC_CTRL)

(1) The bits 7, 6 and 4 of this register can be written only in initialization mode.

(2) It is not recommended to rewrite this register when the number of hours in the date increases, which is because the correct increment of hours may be masked.

(3) The written values of STCCFG and WTCCFG will take effect from next second.

(4) This register is under write protection.

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	WUCLKSEL	R/W	Wakeup Clock Select 000：RTC/16 001：RTC/8 010：RTC/4 011：RTC/2 10x: clk_spre (usually 1Hz) 11x: clk_spre (usually 1Hz) and add 2^{16} to WUAUTORE counter value
3	TSETECFG	R/W	Time Stamp Event Trigger Edge Configure This bit indicates that RTC_TS generates a timestamp event on rising edge or falling edge. 0: Rising edge 1: Falling edge This bit can be changed only when TSEN=0.
4	RCLKDEN	R/W	RTC_REFIN reference clock detection enable 0: Disable 1: Enable SPSC must be 0x00FF.
5	RCMCFG	R/W	Read Calendar Value Mode Configure 0: The date value is read from the shadow register, and the shadow register is updated every two RTCCLK cycles 1: Read the date value from the date register If the clock frequency of APB1 is lower than seven times of RTCCLK frequency, RCMCFG must be set to 1.
6	TIMEFCFG	R/W	Time Format Configure 0: 24-hour/day format 1: AM/PM time format
7	DCALEN	R/W	Coarse Digital Calibration Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable Require APSC≥6
8	ALRAEN	R/W	Alarm A Function Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9	ALRBEN	R/W	Alarm B Function Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
10	WUTEN	R/W	Wakeup Timer Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	TSEN	R/W	Time Stamp Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
12	ALRAIEN	R/W	Alarm A Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
13	ALRBIEN	R/W	Alarm B Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
14	WUTIEN	R/W	Wakeup Timer Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
15	TSIEN	R/W	Time Stamp Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
16	STCCFG	R/W	Summer Time Change Configure The bit will always be 0 in the reading process; if this bit is set not in the initialization mode, the date time will increase by 1. 0: Invalid 1: The current time increases by 1 hour to calibrate the summer time change
17	WTCCFG	R/W	Winter Time Change Configure The bit will always be 0 in the reading process; if this bit is set not in the initialization mode, and HRx of RCT_TIME register is 0, this bit is invalid, and if HRx is not 0, the date time will decrease by 1. 0: Invalid 1: The current time increases by 1 hour to calibrate the winter time change
18	BAKP	R/W	Backup Value Setup This bit indicates whether the summer time has changed and is written by the user.
19	CALOSEL	R/W	Calibration Output Value Select When CALOEN=1, this bit is used to select the output signal of RTC_CALIB. 0：512Hz 1：1Hz The above frequency is valid when RTCCLK is 32.768kHz and the prescaler is at the default value (APSC=127, SPSC=255).

Field	Name	R/W	Description
20	POLCFG	R/W	Output Polarity Configure This bit indicates the level state of the pin when ALRAFLG/ALRBFLG/WUTFLG bit is set to 1 (depending on OUTSEL bit). 0: High level 1: Low level
22:21	OUTSEL	R/W	Output Way Select This bit is used to select the flag bit associated with RTC_ALARM output 00: Disable 01: Alarm A output 10: Alarm B output 11: Wake-up output
23	CALOEN	R/W	Calibration Output Enable This bit is used to enable RTC_CAL output 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:24	Reserved		

18.7.4 RTC status register (RTC_STS)

This register (except RTC_STS[13:8] bit) is in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0007

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	ALRAWFLG	R	Alarm A Write Occur Flag When ALRAEN=0 for RTC_CTRL, the value of alarm A will change and this bit will be set to 1 by hardware; this bit will be cleared by hardware in initialization mode. 0: The alarm A cannot be updated 1: The alarm A can be updated
1	ALRBWFLG	R	Alarm B Write Occur Flag When ALRBEN=0 for RTC_CTRL, the value of alarm B will change and this bit will be set to 1 by hardware; this bit will be cleared by hardware in initialization mode. 0: The alarm B cannot be updated 1: The alarm B can be updated
2	WUTWFLG	R	Wakeup Timer Write Occur Flag When WUTEN=0 and the value of wake-up timer can be changed, this bit can be set by hardware. 0: It is not allowed to update the wake-up timer configuration 1: It is allowed to update the wake-up timer configuration

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3	SOPFLG	R	Shift Operation Pending Occur Flag 0: Not occur 1: Occurred When a shift operation is generated by writing to RTC_SHIFT register, this bit will be set to 1 by hardware immediately. After corresponding shift operation is performed, this bit will be cleared to 0 by software. It is invalid to write to SOPFLG.
4	INITSFLG	R	Initialization State Occur Flag When the "year" field in the date is not "0", this bit will be set by hardware. 0: Not occur 1: Occurred
5	RSFLG	RC_W0	Registers Synchronization Occur Flag When the content in the date register is copied to the shadow registers (RTC_SUBSEC, RTC_TIME and RTC_DATE), this bit is set to 1 by hardware; when shifting operation is pending (SOPFLG=1) or is in the mode that the shadow register is ignored (RCMCFG=1), this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware in initialized mode; this bit can also be cleared by software. This bit is cleared by hardware/software in initialization mode. 0: Not synchronize 1: Synchronize
6	RINITFLG	R	Register Initialization Occur Flag This bit is set to "1", RTC is in initialization state, and the time, date and prescaler registers can be updated. 0: Cannot initialize 1: Initialize
7	INITEN	R/W	Initialization Mode Enable 0: Free running mode 1: Initialization mode; it can be used to program RTC_TIME, RTC_DATE and RTC_PSC. The counter stops counting, and after INITEN is reset, the counter will start counting from a new value.
8	ALRAFLG	RC_W0	Alarm A Match Occur Flag When RTC_TIME and RTC_DATE match the alarm A register RTC_ALRMA, this flag is set by hardware. This flag can be cleared by writing 0 by software.
9	ALRBFLG	RC_W0	Alarm B Match Occur Flag When RTC_TIME and RTC_DATE match the alarm B register RTC_ALRMB, this flag is set by hardware. This flag can be cleared by writing 0 by software.
10	WUTFLG	RC_W0	Wakeup Timer Occur Flag When the auto refresh counter counts to 0, this bit will be set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared by writing 0 by software. Clear this flag 1.5 RTCCLK cycles before WUTFLG is set to 1 again.
11	TSFLG	RC_W0	Time Stamp Occur Flag When a timestamp event occurs, this flag is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared by writing 0 by software.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
12	TSOVRFLG	RC_W0	Time Stamp Overflow Occur Flag When TSFLG=1 and a timestamp event is generated, this flag bit is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared by writing 0 by software. It is recommended to clear this bit after TSFLG flag bit is cleared.
13	TP1FLG	RC_W0	RTC_TP1FLG Detection Occur Flag When a tamper event is detected in RTC_TP1FLG input, this flag is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared by writing 0 by software.
15:14	Reserved		
16	RCALPFLG	R	Recalibration Pending Occur Flag When the software writes to RTC_CAL, this bit is set to 1 automatically, and the RTC_CAL register is locked. This bit will return 0 when other new calibration setting is performed.
31:17	Reserved		

18.7.5 RTC prescaler register (RTC_PSC)

The register can only be written in the initialization mode, and the initialization must be completed by two independent write accesses, and the register is in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value of backup domain: 0x007F 00FF

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
14:0	SPSC	R/W	Synchronous Prescaler Coefficient ck_spre frequency=ck_apre frequency/(SPSC+1)
15	Reserved		
22:16	APSC	R/W	Asynchronous Prescaler Coefficient ck_apre frequency=RTCCLK frequency/(APSC+1)
31:23	Reserved		

18.7.6 RTC auto reload register (RTC_AUTORLD)

This register can be written only when WUTEFLG of RTC_STS is set to 1, and it is in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 FFFF

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	WUAUTORE	R/W	Wakeup Auto-reload Value Setup When the wake-up timer is activated (WUTEN=1), this flag bit will be set to 1 in each CLK_WUAUTORE cycle, and the CLK_WUAUTORE cycle can be set by WUCLKSEL bit of RTC_CTRL register. When WUCLKSEL[2]=1, the wake-up timer will be set to 17 bits, WUCLKSEL[1] is WUAUTORE[16], and is the most critical bit reloaded to the timer. After WUTEN is set, CLK_WUAUTORE cycle will appear to the first assertion of WUTFLG Disable using WUCLKSEL[2:0]=011(RTCCLK/2) from WUAUTORE[15:0] to 0x0000.
31:16	Reserved		

18.7.7 RTC coarse calibration register (RTC_DCAL)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	DCAL	R/W	Digital Calibration DCALCFG=0 (positive calibration) 00000： + 0 ppm 00001: + 4 ppm (rounded-off value) 00010: + 8 ppm (rounded-off value) .. 11111: + 126 ppm (rounded-off value) DCALCFG=1 (negative calibration) 00000： - 0 ppm 00001: - 2 ppm (rounded-off value) 00010: - 4 ppm (rounded-off value) .. 11111: - 63 ppm (rounded-off value)
6:5	Reserved		
7	DCALCFG	R/W	Digital Calibration Configure 0: Positive calibration - increase the date update frequency 1: Negative calibration - decrease the date update frequency
31:8	Reserved		

18.7.8 RTC alarm A register (RTC_ALRMA)

This register can be written only when ALRWFLG of RTC_STS is set to 1 or in initialization mode, and it is in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	SECU	R/W	Second Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:4	SECT	R/W	Second Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
7	SECMEN	R/W	Alarm A Seconds Mask Enable 0: If the "second" matches, set Alarm A 1: Mask the effect of the "second" value on Alarm A
11:8	MINU	R/W	Minute Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
14:12	MINT	R/W	Minute Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
15	MINMEN	R/W	Alarm A Minutes Mask Enable 0: If the "minute" matches, set Alarm A 1: Mask the effect of the "minute" value on Alarm A
19:16	HRU	R/W	Hour Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
21:20	HRT	R/W	Hour Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
22	TIMEFCFG	R/W	Time Format Configure 0: AM or 24-hour system 1：PM
23	HRMEN	R/W	Alarm A Hours Mask Enable 0: If the "hour" matches, set Alarm A 1: Mask the effect of the "hour" value on Alarm A
27:24	DAYU	R/W	Day Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
29:28	DAYT	R/W	Day Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
30	WEEKSEL	R/W	Week Day Select 0: DAYU means date 1: DAYU means the number of weeks. DAYT has no effect.
31	DATEMEN	R/W	Alarm A Date Mask Enable 0: If the date/week matches, set Alarm A 1: Mask the effect of the date/week value on Alarm A

18.7.9 RTC alarm B register (RTC_ALRMB)

This register can be written only when ALRWFLG of RTC_STS is set to 1 or in initialization mode, and it is in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	SECU	R/W	Second Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
6:4	SECT	R/W	Second Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
7	SECMEN	R/W	Alarm B Seconds Mask Enable 0: If the "second" matches, set Alarm B 1: Mask the effect of the "second" value on Alarm B
11:8	MINU	R/W	Minute Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
14:12	MINT	R/W	Minute Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15	MINMEN	R/W	Alarm B Minutes Mask Enable 0: If the "minute" matches, set Alarm B 1: Mask the effect of the "minute" value on Alarm B
19:16	HRU	R/W	Hour Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
21:20	HRT	R/W	Hour Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
22	TIMEFCFG	R/W	Time Format Configure 0: AM or 24-hour system 1：PM
23	HRMEN	R/W	Alarm B Hours Mask Enable 0: If the "hour" matches, set Alarm B 1: Mask the effect of the "hour" value on Alarm B
27:24	DAYU	R/W	Day Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
29:28	DAYT	R/W	Day Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
30	WEEKSEL	R/W	Week Day Select 0: DAYU means date 1: DAYU means the number of weeks. DAYT has no effect.
31	DATEMEN	R/W	Alarm B Date Mask Enable 0: If the date/week matches, set Alarm B 1: Mask the effect of the date/week value on Alarm B

18.7.10 RTC write protection register (RTC_WRPROT)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	KEY	W	Write Protection Key Value Setup This byte is written by software; read this byte and it is always 0x00.
31:8	Reserved		

18.7.11 RTC subsecond register (RTC_SUBSEC)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	SUBSEC	R	Sub Second Value Setup SUBSEC is the value of synchronous prescaler counter. It is determined by the following formula: Subsecond value=(SPSC-SUBSEC)/(SPSC+1) After one shift operation is performed, SUBSEC may be greater than SPSC. The correct time/date is one second less than RTC_TIME/RTC_DATE.
31:16	Reserved		

18.7.12 RTC shift register (RTC_SHIFT)

This register is in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
14:0	SFSEC	W	Subtract a Fraction of a Second Setup This bit field can only be written; read this byte and it is always 0. Writing to this bit is invalid while an operation is being executed. The set SFSEC value will be added to the synchronous prescaler counter. If the counter counts down, the clock will be delayed, and the delay time is determined by the following formula: Delay (seconds)=SFSEC/(SPSC+1) When it takes effect at the same time with ADD1SECEN, advance the clock and a fraction of a second will be added; the specific added value is determined by the following formula: Advance(seconds)=(1-(SFSEC/(SPSC+1))) Conduct write operation to this bit and RSFLG bit can be cleared. The software keeps running until RSFLG is set to 1 to ensure that the value of the shadow register is synchronized with the shift time.
30:15	Reserved		
31	ADD1SECEN	W	Add One Second Enable 0: Not add 1: The clock/date increases by one second This bit can only be written; read this byte and it is always 0. Writing to this bit is invalid while an operation is being executed. When it takes effect at the same time with SFSEC, it can increase the value of the clock by several tenths of a second.

18.7.13 RTC timestamp time register (RTC_TSTIME)

This register is valid only when TSFLG of RTC_STS is set to 1. When TSFLG bit is reset, the content of this register will be cleared.

Offset address: 0x30

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	SECU	R	Second Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
6:4	SECT	R	Second Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
7	Reserved		
11:8	MINU	R	Minute Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
14:12	MINT	R	Minute Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
15	Reserved		
19:16	HRU	R	Hour Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
21:20	HRT	R	Hour Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup

Field	Name	R/W	Description
22	TIMEFCFG	R	Time Format Configure 0: AM or 24-hour system 1：PM
31:23	Reserved		

18.7.14 RTC timestamp date register (RTC_TSDATE)

This register is valid only when TSFLG bit of RTC_STS is set to 1. When TSFLG bit is reset, this register will be cleared.

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	DAYU	R	Day Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
5:4	DAYT	R	Day Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
7:6	Reserved		
11:8	MONU	R	Month Ones Unit in BCD Format Setup
12	MONT	R	Month Ten's Place Unit in BCD Format Setup
15:13	WEEKSEL	R	Week Day Units Select 000: Disable 001: Monday ... 111: Sunday
31:16	Reserved		

18.7.15 RTC timestamp subsecond register (RTC_TSSUBSEC)

This register is valid only when TSFLG bit of RTC_STS register is set to 1. When TSFLG bit is reset, the content of this register will be cleared.

Offset address: 0x38

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	SUBSEC	R	Sub Second Value Setup When a timestamp event occurs, SUBSEC[15:0] is the value in synchronous prescaler counter.
31:16	Reserved		

18.7.16 RTC precision calibration register (RTC_CAL)

This register is in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x3C

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
8:0	RECALF	R/W	Reduced Calibration Frequency Reduce date frequency: Mask RECALF pulses within 2^{20} RTCCLK pulses (32sec if the output frequency is 32768 Hz) and the date frequency will be reduced (the resolution is 0.9537 ppm). Increase date frequency: It takes effect at the same time with ICALFEN
12:9	Reserved		
13	CAL16CFG	R/W	16 Second Calibration Cycle Period Configure When CAL16CFG is set to 1, 16-second calibration cycle is used, and it cannot be set to 1 at the same time with CAL8CFG bit. When CAL16CFG=1, RECALF[0] is always 0.
14	CAL8CFG	R/W	8 Second Calibration Cycle Period Configure When CAL8CFG is set to 1, 8-second calibration cycle is used, and it cannot be set to 1 at the same time with CAL16CFG bit. When CAL8CFG=1, RECALF[1:0] is always 00.
15	ICALFEN	R/W	Increase Calibration Frequency Enable 0: RTCCLK pulse is not increased 1: One RTCCLK pulse is increased (the frequency increases by 488.5 ppm) every 2^{11} pulses It takes effect at the same time with RECALF, and when the resolution is high, the date frequency will be reduced. If the input frequency is 32768Hz, the number of RTCCLK pulses added in the 32-second window is determined by the following formula: (512*ICALFEN)–RECALF.
31:16	Reserved		

18.7.17 RTC tamper and multiplexing configuration register (RTC_TACFG)

Offset address: 0x40

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TP1EN	R/W	RTC_TAMP1 Input Detection Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	TP1ALCFG	R/W	RTC_TAMP1 Input Active Level Configure When TPFCSEL!=00, this bit determines that RTC_TAMP1 input will trigger a tamper detection event when it remains high/low. 0: Low level 1: High level When TPFCSEL=00, this bit determines that RTC_TAMP1 input will trigger a tamper detection event when it is on rising/falling edge. 0: Rising edge 1: Falling edge
2	TPIEN	R/W	Tamper Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:3	Reserved		
7	TPTSEN	R/W	Tamper Detection Event Timestamp Enable This bit determines whether the timestamp generated by the tamper detection event is saved 0: Not save 1: Save This bit is still valid when TSEN=0 for RTC_CTRL register.
10:8	TPSFSEL	R/W	Tamper Sampling Frequency Select These bits determine the sampling frequency of each RTC_TAMP1 input. 0x0：RTCCLK/32768 0x1：RTCCLK/16384 0x2：RTCCLK/8192 0x3：RTCCLK/4096 0x4：RTCCLK/2048 0x5：RTCCLK/1024 0x6：RTCCLK/512 0x7：RTCCLK/256
12:11	TP1FCSEL	R/W	RTC_TAMP1 Filter Count Select These bits determine the number of sampling times after which a tamper event is activated at specific level (TAMP*TRG). TPFCSEL is valid for each RTC_TAMP1 input. 0x0: Activate the tamper event on the edge where RTC_TAMP1 input is converted into valid level 0x1: Continuous sampling twice 0x2: Continuous sampling for four times 0x3: Continuous sampling for eight times
14:13	TP1PRDUSEL	R/W	RTC_TAMP1 Precharge Duration Select These bits determine the number of RTCCLK cycles which are enabled by pull-up resistor before sampling; which is valid in each RTC_TAMP1 input. 0x0：1 0x1：2 0x2：4 0x3：8
15	TP1PUDIS	R/W	RTC_TAMP1 Pull-up Function Disable This bit determines whether all RTC_TAMP1 pins are precharged before sampling. 0: Enable (enable internal pull-up) 1: Disable
16	TP1MSEL	R/W	RTC_TAMP1 Mapping Select 0: RTC_AF1 is used as RTC_TAMP1 1: Reserved Note: When this bit is changed, TP1EN must be reset, so as to avoid unnecessary setting of TP1FLG.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
17	TSMSEL	R/W	Timestamp Mapping Select 0: RTC_AF1 is used as timestamp 1: Reserved
18	ALRMOT	R/W	RTC_ALARM Output Type Configure 0: Open-drain output 1: Push-pull output
31:19	Reserved		

18.7.18 RTC alarm A subsecond register (RTC_ALRMASS)

This register can be written only when ALRAEN bit of RTC_CTRL is reset or in initialization mode, and it will be in write protection state.

This register is in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x44

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
14:0	SUBSEC	R/W	Sub Second Value Setup The subsecond value is compared with the value in the synchronous prescaler counter to determine whether to activate the alarm A, and only the bits from 0 to MASKSEL-1 are compared.
23:15	Reserved		
27:24	MASKSEL	R/W	Mask the Most-significant Bits Starting at This Bit Select 0x0: Alarm A is not compared. The alarm is set when the second unit increases by 1 0x1: When comparing with alarm A, SUBSEC[14:1] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[0] is involved 0x2: When comparing with alarm A, SUBSEC[14:2] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[1:0] is involved 0x3: When comparing with alarm A, SUBSEC[14:3] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[2:0] is involved ... 0xC: When comparing with alarm A, SUBSEC[14:12] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[11:0] is involved 0xD: When comparing with alarm A, SUBSEC[14:13] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[12:0] is involved 0xE: When comparing with alarm A, SUBSEC[14] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[13:0] is involved 0xE: When comparing the alarm A, 15 SUBSEC bits all take part in, and the alarm can be activated only when all of them match. The synchronous counter overrun bit (Bit 15) is never compared. This bit is not 0 only after shift operation.
31:28	Reserved		

18.7.19 RTC alarm B subsecond register (RTC_ALRMBSS)

This register can be written only when ALRBEN bit of RTC_CTRL is reset or in initialization mode, and it will be in write protection state.

Offset address: 0x48

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

System reset: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
14:0	SUBSEC	R/W	Sub Second Value Setup The subsecond value is compared with the value in the synchronous prescaler counter to determine whether to activate the alarm B, and only the bits from 0 to MASKSEL-1 are compared.
23:15	Reserved		
27:24	MASKSEL	R/W	Mask the Most-significant Bits Starting at This Bit Select 0x0: Alarm B is not compared. The alarm is set when the second unit increases by 1 0x1: When comparing with alarm B, SUBSEC[14:1] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[0] is involved 0x2: When comparing with alarm B, SUBSEC[14:2] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[1:0] is involved 3: When comparing with alarm B, SUBSEC[14:3] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[2:0] is involved ... 0xC: When comparing with alarm B, SUBSEC[14:12] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[11:0] is involved 0xD: When comparing with alarm B, SUBSEC[14:13] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[12:0] is involved 0xE: When comparing with alarm B, SUBSEC[14] is not involved, and only SUBSEC[13:0] is involved 0xF: When comparing with alarm B, 15 SUBSEC bits all are involved, and the alarm can be activated only when all of them match. The synchronous counter overrun bit (Bit 15) is never compared. This bit is not 0 only after shift operation.
31:28	Reserved		

18.7.20 RTC backup register (RTC_BAKPx) (x=0-19)

Offset address: 0x50-0x9C

Reset value of backup domain: 0x0000 0000

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	BAKP	R/W	Backup Value Setup V_{BAT} will supply power after V_{DD} power supply is cut off, so this bit is unaffected by system reset; when a tamper detection event occurs or the flash memory read protection is disabled, this register will be reset, and it will remain reset as long as TP1FLG=1. The contents of this bit field are valid even if the device is running in low-power mode.

19 Universal synchronous/asynchronous transceiver (USART)

19.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 77 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Clear to Send	CTS
Request to Send	RTS
Most Significant Bit	MSB
Least Significant Bit	LSB
Guard	GRD
Overrun	OVR

19.2 Introduction

USART (universal synchronous/asynchronous receiver transmitter) is a serial communication device that can flexibly exchange full-duplex and half-duplex data with external devices, and meets the requirements of external devices for industry standard NRZ asynchronous serial data format. USART also provides a wide range of baud rate and supports multiprocessor communication.

USART not only supports standard asynchronous transceiver mode, but also supports some other serial data exchange modes, such as LIN protocol, smart card protocol, IrDA SIR ENDEC specification and hardware flow control mode.

USART also supports DMA function to realize high-speed data communication.

19.3 Main characteristics

(1) Full-duplex asynchronous communication

(2) Single-line half-duplex communication

(3) NRZ standard format

(4) Characteristics of programmable serial port:

- Data bit: 8 or 9 bits
- Check bits: Even parity check, odd parity check, no check
- Support 0.5, 1, 1.5 and 2 stop bits

(5) Check control

- Transmit the check bit

- Check the received data

(6) Select speed and clock tolerance with programmable 8 or 16-time oversampling rate

(7) Independent transmitter and receiver enable bit

(8) Programmable baud rate generator

(9) Multiprocessor communication:

- If the address does not match, enter the mute mode
- Wake up from mute mode through idle bus detection or address flag detection

(10) Synchronous transmission mode

(11) Generation and detection of LIN break frame

(12) Support smart card interface of ISO7816-3 standard

(13) Support IrDA protocol

(14) Support hardware flow control

(15) DMA can be used for continuous communication

(16) Status flag bit:

- Transmission detection flag: The transmit register is empty, the receive register is not empty, and transmission is completed
- Error detection flag: Overrun error, noise error, parity error, frame error

(17) Multiple interrupt sources:

- The transmit register is empty
- Transmission Completed
- CTS changed
- The receive register is not empty
- Overrun error
- Bus idle
- Parity check error
- LIN break detection
- Noise error
- Overrun error
- Frame error

19.4 Functional Description

Table 78 USAR Pin Description

Pin	Type	Description
USART_RX	Input	Data receiving
USART_TX	Output I/O (single-line mode/smart card mode)	Data transmission When the transmitter is enabled and does not transmit data, the default is high
USART_CK	Output	Clock output
USART_nRTS	Input	Request to transmit in hardware flow control mode
USART_nCTS	Output	Clear to send in hardware flow control mode
IrDA_RDI	Input	Data input in IrDA mode
IrDA_TDO	Output	Data output in IrDA mode

19.4.1 Single-line half-duplex communication

HDEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register determines whether to enter the single-line half-duplex mode.

When USART enters single-line half-duplex mode:

- The CLKEN and LINMEN bits of USART_CTRL2 register, and IREN and SCEN bits of USART_CTRL3 register must be cleared to 0.
- RX pin is disabled.
- TX pin should be configured as open-drain output and connected with RX pin inside the chip.
- Transmitting data and receiving data can not be carried out at the same time. The data cannot be received before they are transmitted. If needing to receive data, enable receiving can be turned on only after TXCFLG bit of USART_STS register is set to 1.
- If there is data collision on the bus, software is required to manage the distributed communication process.

19.4.2 Frame format

The frame format of data frame is controlled by USART_CTRL1 register

- DBLCFG bit controls the character length, which can be set to 8 or 9 bits.
- PCEN bit controls whether to enable the check bit or not.
- PCFG bit controls whether the parity bit is odd or even.

Table 79 Frame Format

DBLCFG bit	PCEN bit	USART data frame
0	0	Start bit+8-bit data+stop bit

0	1	Start bit+7-bit data+parity check bit+stop bit
1	0	Start bit+9-bit data+stop bit
1	1	Start bit+8-bit data+ parity check bit+stop bit

Configurable stop bit

Four different stop bits can be configured through STOPCFG bit of USART_CTRL2 register.

- 1 stop bit: Default stop bit.
- 0.5 stop bit: Used when receiving data in smart card mode.
- 2 stop bits: Used in normal mode, single-line mode and hardware flow control mode.
- 1.5 stop bits: Used when transmitting and receiving data in smart card mode.

Check bit

PCFG bit of USART_CTRL1 determines the parity check bit; when PCFG=0, it is even parity check, on the contrary, it is odd parity check.

- Even parity check: When the number of frame data and check bit 1 is even, the even parity check bit is 0; otherwise it is 1.
- Odd parity check: When the number of frame data and check bit 1 is even, the odd parity check bit is 1; otherwise it is 0.

19.4.3 Transmitter

When TXEN bit of the register USART_CTRL1 is set, the transmit shift register will output data through TX pin and the corresponding clock pulses will be output through CK pin.

19.4.3.1 Character transmission

During transmission period of USART, the least significant bit of the data will be moved out by TX pin first. In this mode, USART_ DATA register has a buffer between the internal bus and the transmit shift register.

A data frame is composed of the start bit, character and stop bit, so there is a low-level start bit in front of each character; then there is a high-level stop bit who number is configurable.

Transmission configuration steps

- Set UEN bit of USART_CTRL1 register to enable USART.
- Decide the word length by setting DBLCFG bit of USART_CTRL1 register.
- Decide the number of stop bits by setting STOPCFG bit of USART_CTRL2 register.

- If multi-buffer communication is selected, DMA should be enabled in USART_CTRL3 register.
- Set the baud rate of communication in USART_BR register.
- Enable TXEN bit in USART_CTRL1 register, and transmit an idle frame.
- Wait for TXBEFLG bit of USART_STS register to be set to 1.
- Write data to USART_DATA register (if DMA is not enabled, repeat steps 7-8 for each byte to be transmitted).
- Wait for TXCFLG bit of USART_STS register to be set to 1, indicating transmission completion.

Note: TXEN bit cannot be reset during data transmission; otherwise, the data on TX pin will be destroyed, which is because if the baud rate generator stops counting, the data being transmitted will be lost.

19.4.3.2 **Single-byte communication**

TXBEFLG bit can be cleared to 0 by writing USART_DATA register. When the TXBEFLG bit is set by hardware, the shift register will receive the data transferred from the data transmit register, then the data will be transmitted, and the data transmit register will be emptied. The next data can be written in the data register without overwriting the previous data.

(1) If TXBEIEN in USART_CTRL1 register is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated.

(2) If USART is in the state of transmitting data, write to the data register to save the data to the DATA register, and transfer the data to the shift register at the end of the current data transmission.

(3) If USART is in idle state, write to the data register, put the data into the shift register, start transmitting data, and set TXBEFLG bit to 1.

(4) When a data transmission is completed and TXBEFLG bit is set, TXCFLG bit will be set to 1; at this time if TXCIEN bit in USART_CTRL1 register is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated.

(5) After the last data is written in the USART_DATA register, before entering the low-power mode or before disabling the USART module, wait to set TXCFLG to 1.

19.4.3.3 **Break frame**

The break frames are considered to receive 0 in a frame period. Setting TXBF bit of USART_CTRL1 register can transmit a break frame, and the length of the break frame is determined by DBLCFG bit of USART_CTRL1 register. If the TXBF bit is set, after completion of transmission of current data, the TX line will transmit a break frame, and after completion of transmission of break frame, the TXBF bit will be reset. At the end of the break frame, the transmitter inserts one or two stop bits to respond to the start bit.

Note: If the TXBF bit is reset before transmission of the break frame starts, the break frame will not be transmitted. To transmit two consecutive break frames, the TXBF bit should be set after the stop bit of the previous break symbol.

19.4.3.4 **Idle frame**

The idle frame is regarded as a complete data frame composed entirely of 1, followed by the start bit of the next frame containing the data. Set TXEN bit of USART_CTRL1 register to 1 and one idle frame can be transmitted before the first data frame.

19.4.4 Receiver

19.4.4.1 **Character receiving**

During receiving period of USART, RX pin will first introduce the least significant bit of the data. In this mode, USART_DATA register has a buffer between the internal bus and the receive shift register. The data is transmitted to the buffer bit by bit. When the data is fully received, the corresponding receive register is not empty, then the user can read USART_ DATA.

Receiving configuration steps

- Set UEN bit of USART_CTRL1 register to enable USART.
- Decide the word length by setting DBLCFG bit of USART_CTRL1 register.
- Decide the number of stop bits by setting STOPCFG bit of USART_CTRL2 register.
- If multi-buffer communication is selected, DMA should be enabled in USART_CTRL3 register.
- Set the baud rate of communication in USART_BR register.
- Set RXEN bit of USART_CTRL1 to enable receiving.

Note:

(1) RXEN bit cannot be reset during data receiving period; otherwise, the bytes being received will be lost.

(2) In the process of the receiver receiving a data frame, if an overrun error, noise error or frame error is detected, the error flag will be set to 1.

(3) When data is transferred from the shift register to USART_DATA register, the RXBNEFLG bit of USART_STS will be set by hardware.

(4) An interrupt will be generated if RXBNEIEN bit is set.

(5) In single buffer mode, the RXBNEFLG bit can be cleared by reading USART_DATA register by software or by writing 0.

(6) In multi-buffer mode, after each byte is received, the RXBNEFLG bit of USART_STS register will be set to 1, and can be cleared to 0 by reading the data register by DMA.

19.4.4.2 **Break frame**

When the receiver receives a break frame, USART will handle it as receiving a frame error.

19.4.4.3 **Idle frame**

When the receiver receives an idle frame, USART will handle it as receiving an ordinary data frame; if IDLEIEN bit of USART_CTRL1 is set, an interrupt will be generated.

19.4.4.4 **Oversampling rate**

OSMCFG bit of USART_CTRL1 register determines the oversampling rate.

If the oversampling rate is 8 times the baud rate, the speed is higher, but the clock tolerance is smaller. If it is 16 times, the speed is lower, but the clock tolerance is bigger.

19.4.4.5 **Overrun error**

When RXBNEFLG bit of USART_STS register is set to 1 and a new character is received at the same time, an overrun error will be caused. Only after RXEN is reset, can the data be transferred from the shift register to DATA register. RXBNEFLG bit will be set to 1 after receiving the byte. This bit needs to be reset before receiving the next data or serving the previous DMA request; otherwise, an overrun error will be caused.

When an overrun error occurs

- USART_STS OVREFLG bit is set to 1.
- The data in DATA register will not be lost.
- The data in the shift register received before will be overwritten, but the data received later will not be saved.
- If RXBNEIEN bit of USART_CTRL1 is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated.
- When OVREFLG bit is set to 1, it means that the data has been lost. There are two possibilities:
  - When RXBNEFLG=1, the previous valid data is still on DATA register, and can be read.
  - When RXBNEFLG=0, there is no valid data in DATA register.
- The OVREFLG bit can be reset by reading USART_STS and USART_DATA registers successively.

19.4.4.6 **Noise error**

When noise is detected in receiving process of the receiver:

- Set NE flag on the rising edge of RXBNEFLG bit of USART_STS register.
- Invalid data is transmitted from the shift register to USART_DATA register.

Note: 8-time oversampling ratio cannot be used in LIN, smart card and IrDA modes.

19.4.4.7 **Frame error**

If the stop bit is not received and recognized at the expected receiving time due to excessive noise or lack of synchronization, a frame error will be detected.

When a frame error is detected in receiving process of the receiver:

(1) Set the FEFLG bit of USART_STS register.

(2) Invalid data is transmitted from the shift register to USART_DATA register.

(3) In single byte communication, there is no interrupt, but in multi-buffer communication, an interrupt will be generated by setting the ERRIEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register.

19.4.5 Baud rate generator

The baud rate division factor (USARTDIV) is a 16-digit number consisting of 12-digit integer part and 4-digit decimal part. Its relationship with the system clock:

Tx/Rx Baud rate

Formula 1 Baud rate in smart card, LIN and IrDA modes

$$\text{Baud rate}=PCLK/16\times(USARTDIV)$$

Formula 2 applies to the baud rate of standard USART (including SPI mode)

$$\text{Baud rate}= PCLK/(8 \times (2- OVER8) \times USARTDIV)$$

The system clock of USART2/3 is PCLK1, and that of USART1 is PCLK2. USART can be enabled only after the clock control unit enables the system clock.

Example 1:

If IBR = 0d20 and IBR = 0d12, (USART_BRR = 0x14c)

The mantissa (USARTDIV) = 0d20

Decimal (USARTDIV) = 12/16 = 0.75

So USARTDIV = 0d20.75

19.4.6 Multiprocessor communication

In multiprocessor communication, multiple USART are connected to form a network. In this network, two devices communicate with each other, and the mute mode can be enabled for other devices not participating in the communication to reduce the burden of USART. In mute mode, no receive state bit will be set and all receive interrupts are disabled.

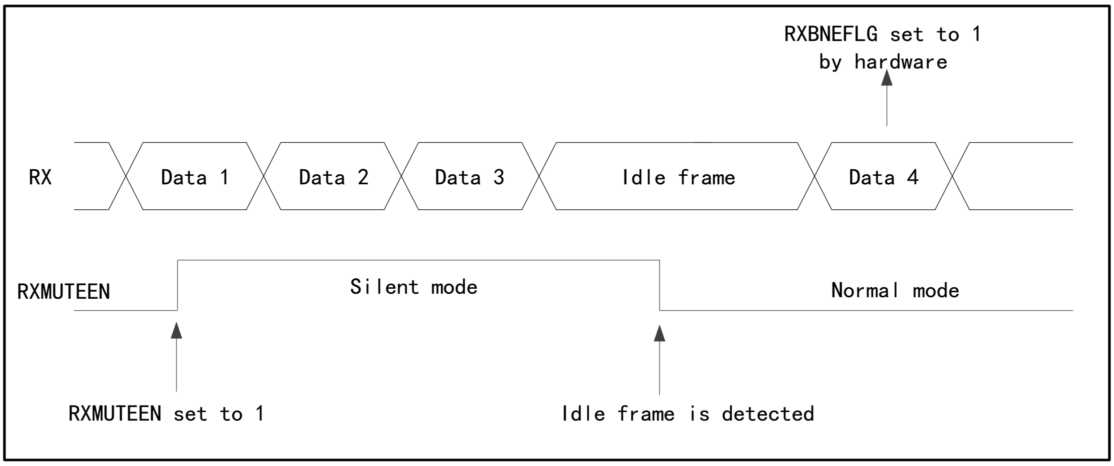
When mute mode is enabled, there are two ways to exit the mute mode:

- Exit the mute mode when WUPMCFG bit is cleared and the bus is idle.
- Exit the mute mode when WUPMCFG bit is set and the address flag is received.

Idle bus detection (WUPMCFG=0)

When RXMUTEEN is set to 1, USART enters the mute mode, and it can be waken up from the mute mode when an idle frame is detected, meanwhile, the RXMUTEEN bit will be cleared to 0 by hardware. RXMUTEEN can also be cleared to 0 by software.

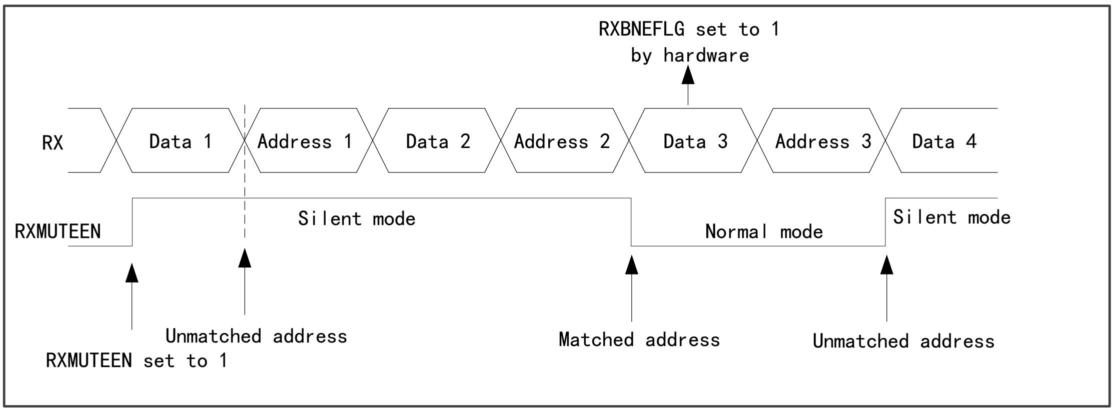
Figure 65 Idle Bus Exits Mute Mode



Address flag detection (WUPMCFG=1)

If the address flag bit is 1, this byte is regarded as the address. The address bytes are low four-byte storage address. When the receiver receives the address byte, it will be compared with its own address. If the addresses do not match, the receiver will enter the mute mode. If the addresses match, the receiver will wake up from the mute mode and be ready to receive the next byte. If the address byte is received again after exiting the mute mode, but the address does not match its own address, the receiver will enter the mute mode again.

Figure 66 Address Flag Exits Mute Mode



19.4.7 Synchronous mode

The synchronous mode supports full-duplex synchronous serial communication in master mode, and has one more signal line USART_CK which can output synchronous clock than the asynchronous mode.

CLKEN bit of USART_CTRL2 register decides whether to enter the synchronous mode.

When USART enters the synchronous mode:

- The LINMEN bit of USART_CTRL2 register, and IREN, HDEN and SCEN bits of USART_CTRL3 register must be cleared to 0.
- The start bit and stop bit of data frame have no clock output.
- Whether the last data bit of data frame generates USART_CK clock is decided by the LBCPOEN bit of USART_CTRL2 register.
- The clock polarity of USART_CK is decided by CPOL bit of USART_CTRL2 register.
- The phase of USART_CK is decided by the CPHA bit of USART_CTRL2 register.
- The external CK clock cannot be activated when the bus is idle or the break frame appears.

Figure 67 USART Synchronous Transmission Example

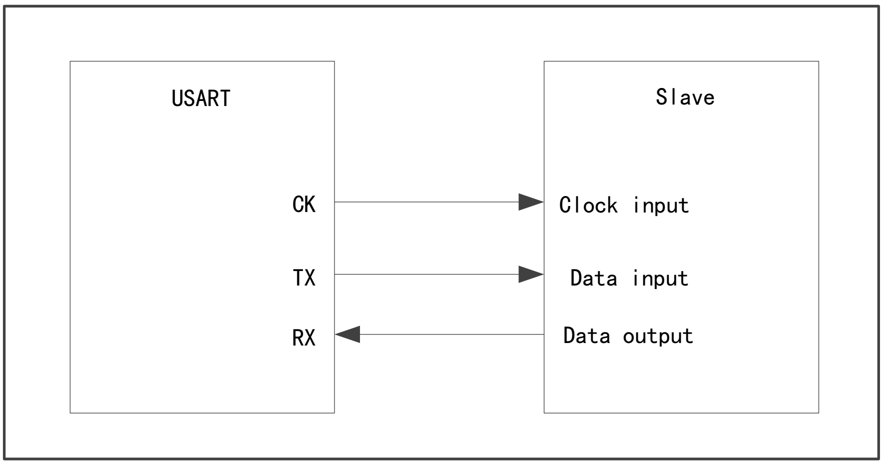


Figure 68 USART Synchronous Transmission Timing Diagram (DBLCFG=0)

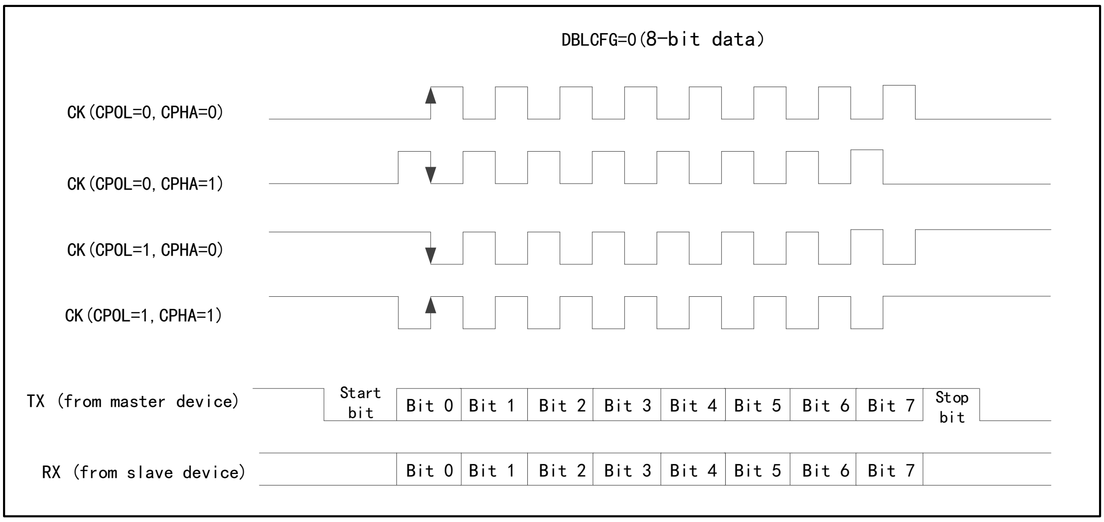
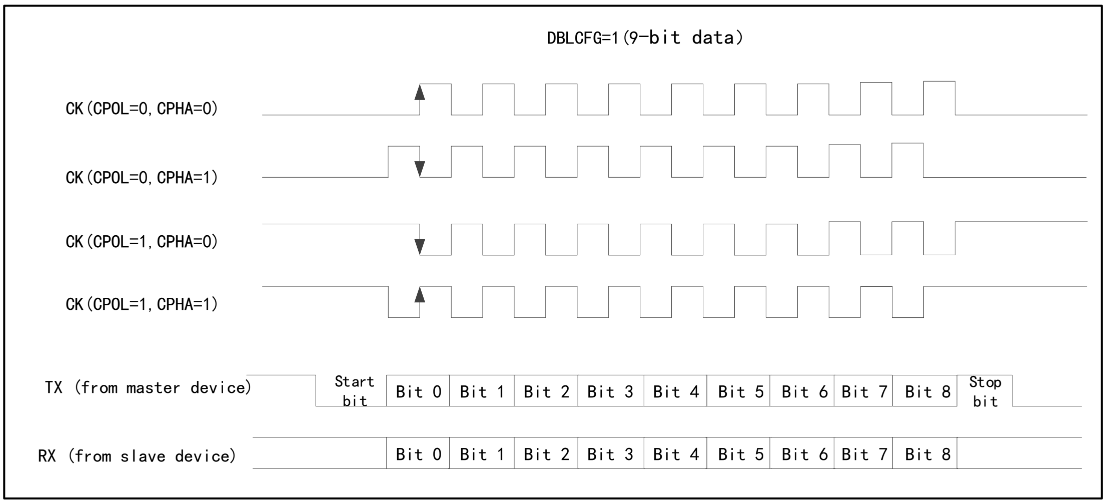


Figure 69 USART Synchronous Transmission Timing Diagram (DBLCFG=1)



19.4.8 LIN mode

LINMEN bit of USART_CTRL2 register decides whether to enter LIN mode.

When entering LIN mode:

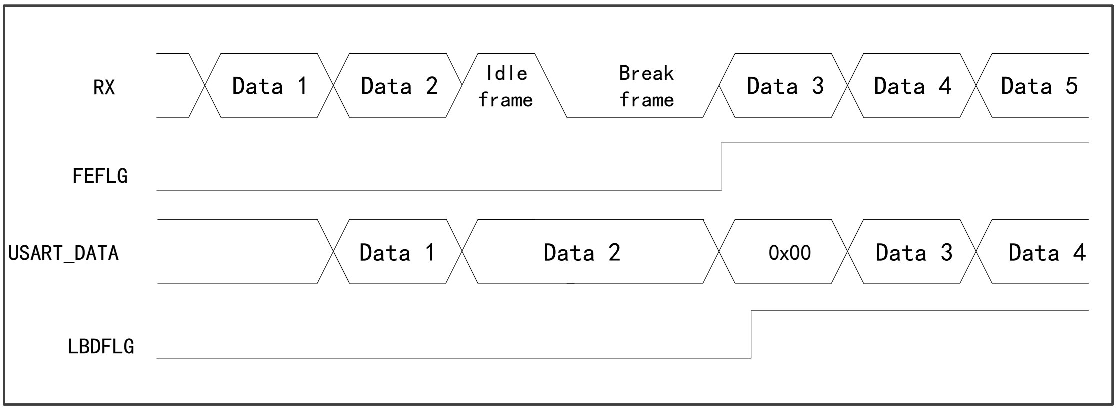
- All data frames are 8 data bits and 1 stop bit.
- The CLKEN bit and STOPCF bit of USART_CTRL2 register and IREN bit, HDEN bit and SCEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register need to be cleared to 0.

In LIN master mode, USART can generate break frame, and the detection length of break frame can be set to 10 or 11 bits through LBDLCFG bit of USART_CTRL2. The break frame detection circuit is independent of USART receiver, and no matter in idle state or in data transmission state, RX pin can detect the break frame, and LBDFLG bit of USART_STS register is set to 1; at this time, if LBDIEN bit of USART_CTRL2 is enabled, an interrupt will be generated.

Detection of break frame in idle state

In idle state, if a break frame is detected on RX pin, the receiver will receive a data frame of 0 and generate FEFLG.

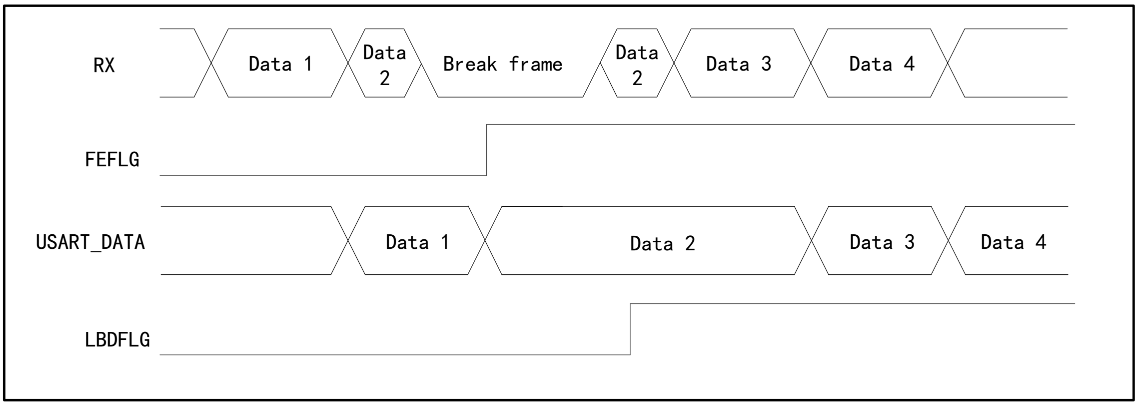
Figure 70 Break Frame Detection in Idle State



Break frame detection in data transmission state

In the process of data transmission, if the RX pin detects the break frame, the currently transmitted data frame will generate FEFLG.

Figure 71 Break Frame Detection in Data Transmission State



19.4.9 Smart card mode

Smart card mode is a single-line half-duplex communication mode. The interface supports ISO7816-3 standard protocol and can control the reading and writing of smart cards that meet the standard protocol.

SCEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register decides whether to enter the smart card mode.

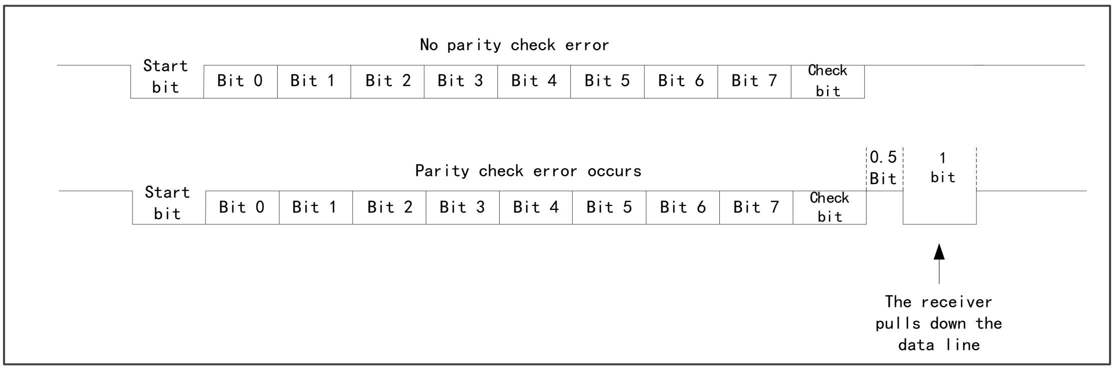
When USART enters the smart card mode:

- The LINMEN bit of USART_CTRL2 register, and IREN and HDEN bits of USART_CTRL3 register must be cleared to 0.
- The data frame format is 8 data bits and 1 check bit, and 0.5 or 1.5 stop bits are used. (To avoid switching between two configurations, it

is recommended that 1.5 stop bits should be used when transmitting and receiving data)

- CLKEN bit of USART_CTRL2 register can be set to provide clocks for smart card.
- During the communication, when the receiver detects a parity check error, in order to inform the transmitter that the data has not been received successfully, the data line will be pulled down after half a baud rate clock, and keep pulling down for one baud rate clock.
- The break frame has no meaning in smart card mode. A 00h data with frame error will be regarded as a data instead of break symbol.

Figure 72 ISO7816-3 Standard Protocol



19.4.10 Infrared (IrDA SIR) function mode

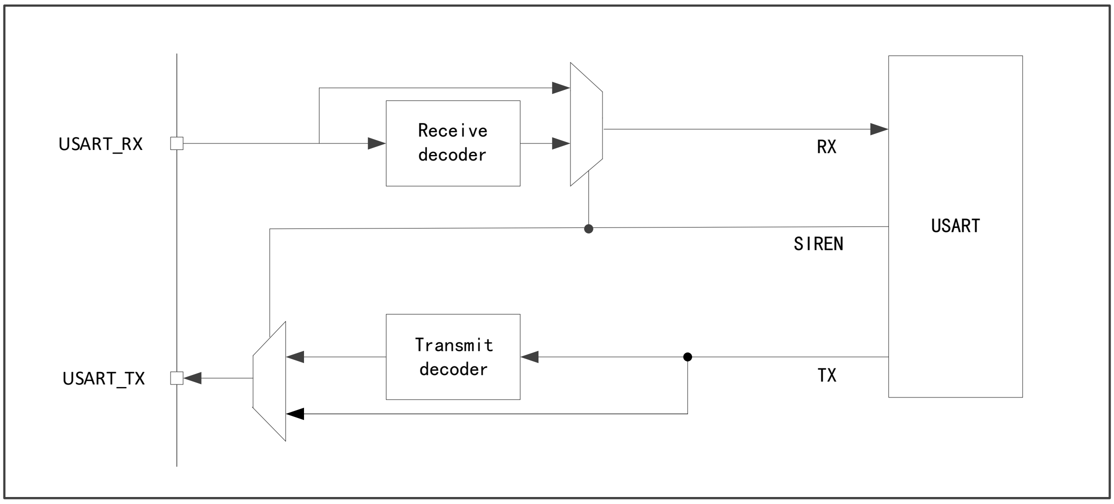
IrDA mode is a half-duplex protocol, transmitting and receiving data can not be carried out at the same time, and the delay between data transmitting and receiving should be more than 10ms.

IREN bit of USART_CTRL3 register decides whether to enter the IrDA mode.

When USART enters the IrDA mode:

- The CLKEN bit, STOPCF bit and LINMEN bit of USART_CTRL2 register and HDEN bit and SCEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register must be cleared to 0.
- The data frame uses 1 stop bit and the baud rate is less than 115200Hz.
- Using infrared pulse (RZI) indicates logic 0, so in normal mode, its pulse width is 3/16 baud rate cycle. In IrDA low-power mode, it is recommended that the pulse width be greater than 3 DIV frequency division clocks to ensure that this pulse can be detected by IrDA normally.

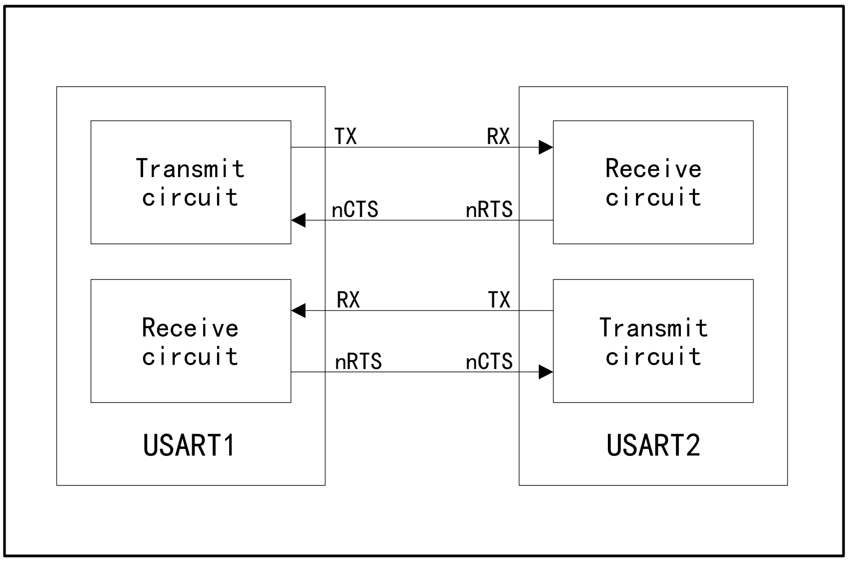
Figure 73 IrDA Mode Block Diagram



19.4.11 Hardware flow control

The function of hardware flow control is to control the serial data stream between two devices through nCTS pin and nRTS pin.

Figure 74 Hardware Flow Control between Two USART



CTS flow control

CTSEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register determines whether to enable CTS flow control. If CTS flow control is enabled, the transmitter will detect whether the data frame of nCTS pin can be transmitted. If TXBEFLG bit=0 for USART_STS register and nCTS is pulled to low, the data frame can be transmitted. If nCTS becomes high during transmission, the transmitter will stop transmitting after the current data frame is transmitted.

RTS flow control

RTSEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register determines whether to enable RTS flow control. If RTS flow control is enabled, when the receiver receives data, nRTS will be pulled to low. When a data frame is received, nRTS will become high to inform the transmitter to stop transmitting data frame.

19.4.12 DMA multi-buffer communication

USART can access the data buffer in DMA mode to reduce the burden of processors.

Transmission in DMA mode

DMATXEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register determines whether to transmit in DMA mode. When transmitting by DMA, the data in the designated SRAM will be transmitted to the buffer by DMA.

Configuration steps of transmission by DMA:

- Clear the TXCFLG bit of USART_STS register to zero.
- Set the address of SRAM memory storing data as DMA source address.
- Set the address of USART_DATA register as DMA destination address.
- Set the number of data bytes to be transmitted.
- Set channel priority.
- Set interrupt enable.
- Enable DMA channel.
- Wait for TXCFLG bit of USART_STS register to be set to 1, indicating transmission completion.

Receive by DMA

DMARXEN bit of USART_CTRL3 register determines whether to use DMA mode to receive; when DMA is used to receive, every time one byte is received, the data of receive buffer will be transmitted to the specified SRAM area by DMA.

Configuration steps of receiving by DMA:

- Set the address of USART_DATA register as DMA source address.
- Set the address of SRAM memory storing data as DMA destination address.
- Set the number of data bytes to be transmitted.
- Set channel priority.
- Set interrupt enable.
- Enable DMA channel.

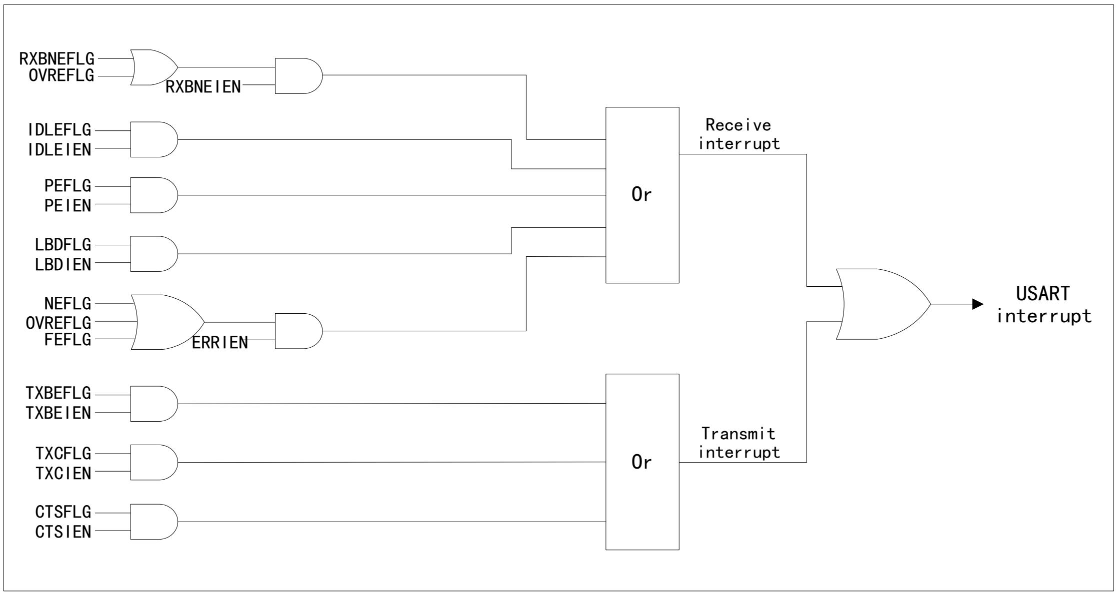
19.4.13 Interrupt request

Table 80 USART Interrupt Request

Interrupt event		Event flag bit	Enable bit
The receive register is not empty		RXBNEFLG	RXBNEIEN
Overrun error		OVREFLG	
Idle line is detected		IDLEFLG	IDLEIEN
Parity check error		PEFLG	PEIEN
LIN break frame flag		LBDFLG	LBDIEN
Receiving error in DMA mode	Noise error	NEFLG	ERRIEN
	Overrun error	OVREFLG	
	Frame error	FEFLG	
Data transmit register is empty		TXBEFLG	TXBEIEN
Transmission Completed		TXCFLG	TXCIEN
CTS flag		CTSFLG	CTSIEN

All interrupt requests of USART are connected to the same interrupt controller, and the interrupt requests have logical or relation before they are transmitted to the interrupt controller.

Figure 75 USART Interrupt Mapping



19.4.14 Comparison of USART supporting functions

Table 81 Comparison of USART Supporting Functions

USART mode	USART1	USART2	USART3	UART4	UART5	USART6
Half duplex (single-line mode)	√	√	√	√	√	√
Multi-processor communication	√	√	√	√	√	√
Synchronize	√	√	√	—	—	√
Asynchronous mode	√	√	√	√	√	√
LIN	√	√	√	√	√	√
Smart card	√	√	√	—	—	√
IrDA	√	√	√	√	√	√
Hardware flow control	√	√	√	—	—	√
Multi-buffer communication (DMA)	√	√	√	√	√	√

Note: "√" means this function is supported, while "—" means that this function is not supported.

19.5 Register address mapping

Table 82 USART Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
USART_STS	Status register	0x00
USART_DATA	Data register	0x04
USART_BR	Baud rate register	0x08
USART_CTRL1	Control register 1	0x0C
USART_CTRL2	Control register 2	0x10
USART_CTRL3	Control register 3	0x14
USART_GTPSC	Protection time and prescaler register	0x18

19.6 Register functional description

19.6.1 State register (USART_STS)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x00C0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	PEFLG	R	Parity Error Occur Flag 0: No error 1: Parity check error occurs In the receiving mode, when a parity check error occurs, set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; after setting of RXBNEFLG, first read USART_STS register, and then read USART_DATA register to clear to 0.
1	FEFLG	R	Frame Error Occur Flag 0: No frame error 1: A frame error or break symbol appears When there is synchronous dislocation, too much noise or break symbol, set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; first read USART_STS register, and then read USART_DATA register to clear to 0.
2	NEFLG	R	Noise Error Occur Flag 0: No noise 1: There is noise error When there is noise error, set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; first read USART_STS register, and then read USART_DATA register to clear to 0.
3	OVREFLG	R	Overrun Error Occur Flag 0: No overrun error 1: Overrun error occurs When the RXBNEFLG bit is set and the data in the shift register is to be transmitted to the receive register, it will be set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; first read USART_STS register, and then read USART_DATA register to clear to 0.
4	IDLEFLG	R	IDLE Line Detected Flag 0: Idle bus is not detected 1: Idle bus is detected When idle bus is detected, it will be set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; first read USART_STS register, and then read USART_DATA register to clear to 0.
5	RXBNEFLG	RC_W0	Receive Data Buffer Not Empty Flag 0: The receive data buffer is empty 1: The receive data buffer is not empty When the data register receives the data transmitted by the receive shift register, it will be set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; read USART_DATA to clear to 0, or write 0 to this bit to clear it.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6	TXCFLG	RC_W0	Transmit Data Complete Flag 0: Transmitting data is not completed 1: Transmitting data is completed After the last frame of data is transmitted and the TXBEFLG is set, it will be set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; first read USART_STS register, and then write USART_DATA register to clear to 0; or this bit can be cleared by writing 0 to it.
7	TXBEFLG	R	Transmit Data Buffer Empty Flag 0: The transmit data buffer is not empty 1: The transmit data buffer is empty When the shift register receives the data transmitted by the transmit data register, it will be set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; write USART_DATA register to clear to 0.
8	LBDFLG	RC_W0	LIN Break Detected Flag 0: LIN break is not detected 1: LIN break is detected When LIN disconnection is detected, set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; or cleared by writing 0 to this bit.
9	CTSFLG	RC_W0	CTS Change Flag 0: No change on nCTS state line 1: There is change on nCTS state line If the CTSEN bit is set, when switching to the nCTS input, set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared to 0 by software; or cleared by writing 0 to this bit.
31:10	Reserved		

19.6.2 Data register (USART_DATA)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX, X=undefined bit

Field	Name	R/W	Description
8:0	DATA	R/W	Data Value Transmit or receive the data value; read data when receiving data, and write data to the register when transmitting data. When the parity bit is enabled, for 9 data bits, the 8 bit of DATA is parity bit; for 8 data bits, the 7 bit of DATA is parity bit.
31:9	Reserved		

19.6.3 Baud rate register (USART_BR)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	FBR[3:0]	R/W	Fraction of USART Baud Rate Divider factor The decimal part of USART baud rate division factor is determined by these four bits.
15:4	IBR[15:4]	R/W	Integer of USART Baud Rate Divider factor The integral part of USART baud rate division factor is determined by these 12 bits.
31:16	Reserved		

19.6.4 Control register 1 (USART_CTRL1)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TXBF	R/W	Transmit Break Frame 0: Not transmit 1: Will transmit This bit can be set by software and cleared to 0 by hardware when the stop bit of the break frame is transmitted.
1	RXMUTEEN	R/W	Receive Mute Mode Enable 0: Normal working mode 1: Mute mode This bit is set or cleared to 0 by software, or cleared to 0 by hardware when wakeup sequence is detected. USART must receive a data before it is put in the mute mode, so that it can be detected and awakened by idle bus. In the wake-up of address flag detection, if the RXBNEFLG bit is set, the RXMUTEEN bit cannot be modified by software.
2	RXEN	R/W	Receive Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable, and start to detect the start bit on RX pin
3	TXEN	R/W	Transmit Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable Except in smart card mode, if there is a 0 pulse on this bit at any time of transmitting data, an idle bus will be transmitted after the current data is transmitted. After this bit is set, the data will be transmitted after delay of one-bit time.
4	IDLEIEN	R/W	IDLE Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: An interrupt will be generated when IDLEFLG is set
5	RXBNEIEN	R/W	Receive Buffer Not Empty Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: An interrupt will be generated when OVREFLG or RXBNEFLG is set

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6	TXCIEN	R/W	Transmit Complete Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: An interrupt will be generated when TXCFLG is set
7	TXBEIEN	R/W	Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt generation 1: An interrupt will be generated when TXBEFLG is set
8	PEIEN	R/W	Parity Error interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt generation 1: An interrupt will be generated when PEFLG is set
9	PCFG	R/W	Odd/Even Parity Configure 0: Even parity check 1: Odd parity check The selection will not take effect until the current transmission of bytes is completed.
10	PCEN	R/W	Parity Control Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable If this bit is set, a check bit will be inserted in the most significant bit when transmitting data; when receiving data, check whether the check bit of the received data is correct. The check control will not take effect until the current transmission of bytes is completed.
11	WUPMCFG	R/W	Wakeup Method Configure 0: Idle bus wakeup 1: Address tag wakeup
12	DBLCFG	R/W	Data Bits Length Configure 0: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, n stop bits 1: 1 start bit, 9 data bits, n stop bits This bit cannot be modified during transmission of data.
13	UEN	R/W	USART Enable 0: Disable USART frequency divider and output 1: Enable USART module
14	Reserved		
15	OSMCFG	R/W	Oversampling Mode Configure 0: 16-time oversampling 1: 8-time oversampling This bit can be set only when USART is not enabled.
31:16	Reserved		

19.6.5 Control register 2 (USART_CTRL2)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	ADDR[3:0]	R/W	USART Device Node Address Setup

Field	Name	R/W	Description
			This bit is valid only in the mute mode of multiprocessor communication, and decides to enter the mute mode or wake up depending on whether the detected address tags are consistent.
4	Reserved		
5	LBDLCFG	R/W	LIN Break Detection Length Configure 0: 10 bits 1: 11 bits
6	LBDIEN	R/W	LIN Break Detection Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: An interrupt is generated when LBDFLG bit is set
7	Reserved		
8	LBCPOEN	R/W	Last Bit Clock Pulse Output Enable 0: Not output from CK 1: Output from CK This bit is valid only in synchronous mode; this bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
9	CPHA	R/W	Clock Phase Configure This bit indicates on the edge of which clock sampling is conducted 0: The first 1: The second This bit is valid only in synchronous mode; this bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
10	CPOL	R/W	Clock Polarity Configure The state of CK pin when USART is in idle state 0: Low level 1: High level This bit is valid only in synchronous mode; this bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
11	CLKEN	R/W	Clock Enable (CK pin) 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
13:12	STOPCFG	R/W	STOP Bit Configure 00: 1 stop bit 01: 0.5 stop bit 10: 2 stop bits 11: 1.5 stop bits This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
14	LINMEN	R/W	LIN Mode Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:15	Reserved		

Note: These three bits (CPOL, CPHA and LBCPOEN) cannot be changed after transmission is enabled.

19.6.6 Control register 3 (USART_CTRL3)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	ERRIEN	R/W	Error interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable; when DMARXEN is set and one among FEFLG, OVREFLG or NEFLG is set, an interrupt will be generated.
1	IREN	R/W	IrDA Function Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	IRLPEN	R/W	IrDA Low-power Mode Enable 0: Normal mode 1: Low-power mode
3	HDEN	R/W	Half-duplex Mode Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	SCNACKEN	R/W	NACK Transmit Enable During Parity Error in Smartcard Function 0: Not transmit NACK 1: Transmit NACK This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
5	SCEN	R/W	Smartcard Function Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
6	DMARXEN	R/W	DMA Receive Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
7	DMATXEN	R/W	DMA Transmit Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
8	RTSEN	R/W	RTS Hardware Flow Control Function Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable RTS interrupt RTS: Require To Send, which is output signal, indicating it has been ready to receive. Request is made to receive data only when there is space in the receive buffer; when data can be received, RTS output is pulled to low. This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9	CTSEN	R/W	CTS Hardware Flow Control Function Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable CTS: Clear To Send, which is input signal Only when CTS input signal is low, the data can be transmitted; otherwise, the data cannot be transmitted; if CTS signal is pulled high during data transmission, the data transmission will be stopped after the data transmission is completed; if write operation is performed for the data register when CTS is high, the data will not be transmitted until CTS is valid. This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
10	CTSIEN	R/W	CTS Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: An interrupt will be generated when CTSFLG is set This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.
11	SAMCFG	R/W	Sample Method Configure 0: Sampling for three times 1: Single sampling; flag of noise detection disabled This bit can be set only when USART is not enabled.
31:12	Reserved		

19.6.7 Protection time and prescaler register (USART_GTPSC)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	PSC	R/W	Prescaler Factor Setup Divide the frequency of the system clock and provide the clock; in different working modes, the significant bits of PSC have difference, specifically as follows: In infrared low-power mode: PSC[7:0] is significant. 00000000: Reserved 00000001: 1 divided frequency 00000010: 2 divided frequency …… 11111111: 255 divided frequency In infrared normal mode: PSC can only be set to 00000001 In smart card mode: PSC[7:5] is insignificant, PSC[4:0] is significant 00000: Reserved 00001: 2 divided frequency 00010: 4 divided frequency 00011: 6 divided frequency …… 11111: 62 divided frequency This bit does not exist on UART4 or UART5.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:8	GRDT	R/W	Guard Time Value Setup After transmitting data, TXCFLG can be set only after the protection time; the time unit is baud clock; it can be applied to smart card mode; this bit does not exist on UART4 and UART5.
31:16	Reserved		

20 Internal integrated circuit interface (I2C)

20.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 83 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Serial Data	SDA
Serial Clock	SCL
System Management Bus	SMBus
Clock	CLK
Serial Clock High	SCLH
Serial Clock Low	SCLL
Address Resolution Protocol	ARP
Negative Acknowledgement	NACK
Packet Error Checking	PEC
Address Resolution Protocol	ARP

20.2 Introduction

I2C is a short-distance bus communication protocol. In physical implementation, I2C bus is composed of two signal lines (SDA and SCL) and a ground wire. These two signal lines can be used for bidirectional transmission.

- Two signal lines, SCL clock line and SDA data line. SCL provides timing for SDA, and SDA transmits/receives data in series
- Both SCL and SDA signal lines are bidirectional
- The ground is common when the two systems use I2C bus for communication

20.3 Main characteristics

(1) Multi-master function

(2) The master can generate the clock, start bit and stop bit

(3) Slave function

- Programmable I2C address detection
- Double-address mode
- Detection of stop bit

(4) 7-bit and 10-bit addressing mode

(5) Response to broadcast

(6) Three communication speeds
- Standard mode
- Fast mode
- Fast mode plus

(7) Programmable clock extension

(8) State flag
- Transmitter/Receiver mode flag
- Flag for end of byte transmission
- Busy bus flag

(9) Error flag
- Arbitration loss
- Acknowledgment error
- Detection of wrong start bit or stop bit

(10) Interrupt source
- Address/Data communication succeeded
- Error interrupt

(11) Support DMA function

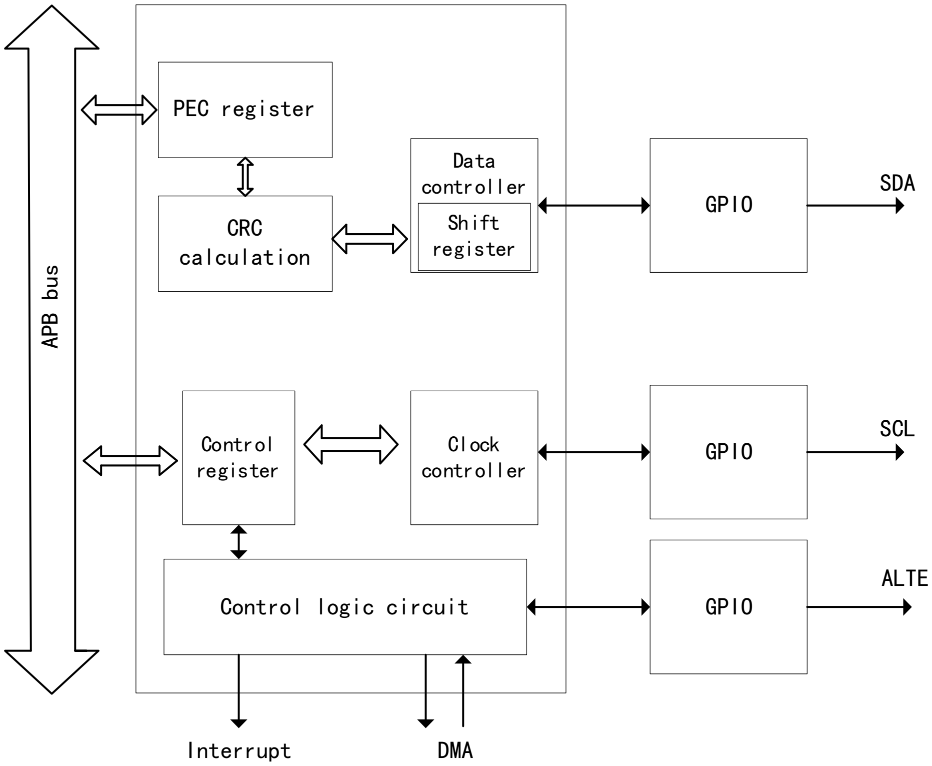
(12) Programmable digital noise filter

(13) Programmable PEC
- Final transmission in transmission mode
- PEC error check after the last byte is received

(14) SMBus specific function
- Hardware PEC
- Address resolution protocol

20.4 Structure block diagram

Figure 76 I2C Function Structure Diagram



The interface can be configured to the following modes:

- Slave transmitting
- Slave receiving
- Master transmitting
- Master receiving

In the initial state of I2C interface, the working mode is slave mode. After I2C interface transmits the start signal, it will automatically switch from slave mode to master mode.

20.5 Functional Description

Table 84 Description of Proper Noun of I2C Bus

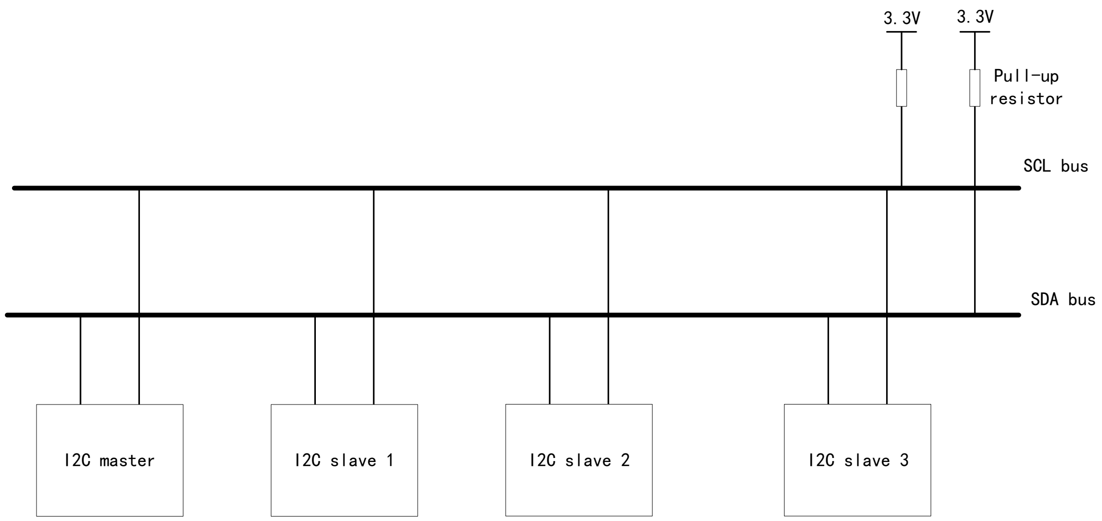
Proper nouns	Description
Transmitter	Device transmitting data to the bus
Receiver	Device receiving data from the bus
Master	Device that initiates data transmission, generates clock signals and ends data transmission
Slave	Device addressed by master

Multiple masters	Multiple masters that control the bus at the same time without destroying information
Synchronize	The process of synchronizing the clock signals between two or more devices
Arbitration	If more than one master tries to control the bus at the same time, only one master can control the bus, and the information of the controlled master will not be destroyed

20.5.1 I2C physical layer

The commonly used connection modes between I2C communication devices are shown in the figure below:

Figure 77 Common I2C Communication Connection Diagram



Characteristics of physical layer:

(1) It supports the buses of multiple devices (signal line shared by multiple devices), which, in I2C communication bus, can connect multiple communication masters and communication slaves.

(2) An I2C bus only uses two bus lines, namely, a bidirectional serial data line (SDA) and a serial clock line (SCL). The data line is used for data transmission, and the clock line is used for synchronous receiving and transmission of data.

(3) Each device connected to the bus has an independent address (seven or ten bits), and the master addresses and accesses the slave devices according to the address of the device.

(4) The bus needs to connect the pull-up resistor to the power supply. When I2C bus is idle, the output is in high-impedance state. When all devices are idle, the output is in high-impedance state, and the pull-up resistor pulls the bus to high.

(5) Three communication modes: Standard mode (up to 100KHz), fast mode (up to 400KHz), and fast mode plus (up to 1MHz).

(6) When the bus is used by multiple masters at the same time, to prevent data collision, the bus arbitration mode is adopted to determine which device occupies the bus.

(7) Able to program the setup and hold time, and program the high-level time and low-level time of SCL in I2C.

20.5.2 I2C protocol layer

Characteristics of protocol layer

(1) Data is transmitted in the form of frame, and each frame is composed of 1 byte (8 bits).

(2) In the rising edge phase of SCL, SDA needs to keep stable and SDA changes when SCL is low.

(3) In addition to data frame, I2C bus also has start signal, stop signal and acknowledgment signal.

- Start bit: During the stable high level period of SCL, a falling edge of SDA starts transmission.
- Stop bit: During the stable high level period of SCL, a rising edge of SDA stops transmission.
- Acknowledge bit: Used to indicate successful transmission of one byte. After the bus transmitter (regardless of the master or slave) transmits 8-bit data, SDA will release (from output to input). During the ninth clock pulse period, the receiver will pull down SDA to acknowledge receiving of data.

I2C communication reading and writing process

Figure 78 Master Writes Data to Slave

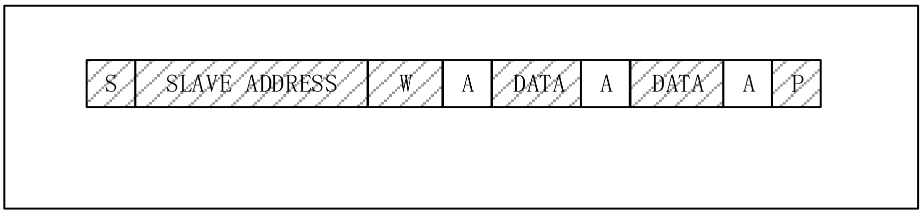
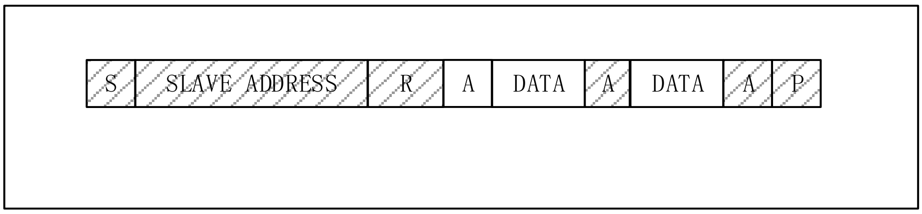
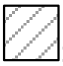


Figure79 Master Reads Data from Slave

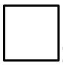


Remarks:

(1) : This data is transmitted from master to slave

(2) S: Start signal

(3) SLAVE ADDRESS: Slave address

(4) : This data is transmitted from slave to master

(5) R/W: Selection bit of transmission direction

(6) 1 means read

(7) 0 means write

(8) P: Stop signal

After the start signal is generated, all slaves will wait for the slave address signal transmitted by the master. In I2C bus, the address of each device is unique. When the address signal matches the device address, the slave will be selected, and the unselected slave will ignore the future data signal.

When the master direction is writing data

After broadcasting the address and receiving the acknowledge signal, the master will transmit data to the slave, the data length is one byte, and every time the master transmits one byte of data, it needs to wait for the acknowledge signal transmitted by the slave. After all the bytes have been transmitted, the master will transmit a stop signal (STOP) to the slave, indicating that the transmission is completed.

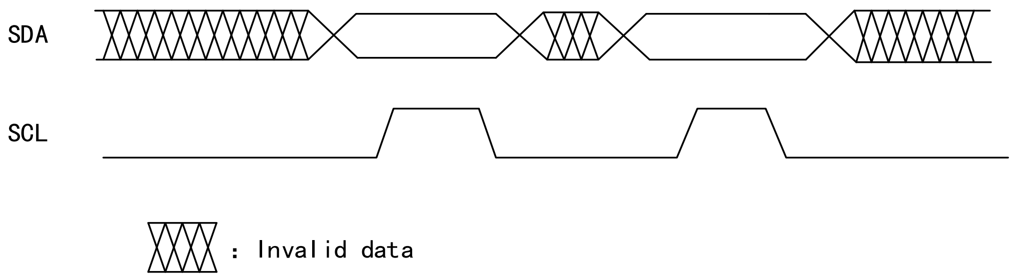
When the master direction is reading data

After broadcasting the address and receiving the acknowledge signal, the slave will transmit the data to the master. The size of the data package is 8 bits. Every time the slave transmits one byte of data, it needs to wait for the acknowledge signal of the master. When the master needs to stop receiving data, it needs to return a non-acknowledge signal to the slave, then the slave will stop transmitting the data automatically.

20.5.3 Data validity

In the process of data transmission, the data on SDA line must be stable when the clock signal SCL is at high level. Only when the SCL is at the low level, can the level state of SDA be changed, and the bit transmission of each data needs a clock pulse.

Figure 80 SDA Timing Diagram



20.5.4 Start and stop signals

All data transmission must have start signal (START) and stop signal (STOP).

Figure 81 START signal is defined as: when SCL is at high level, SDA will convert from high level to low level

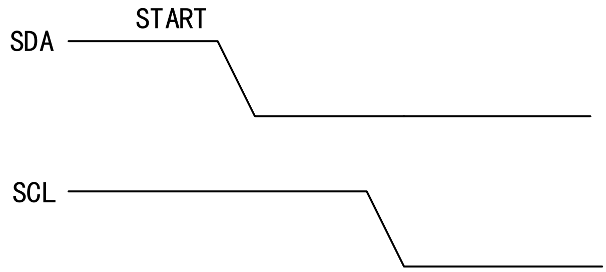
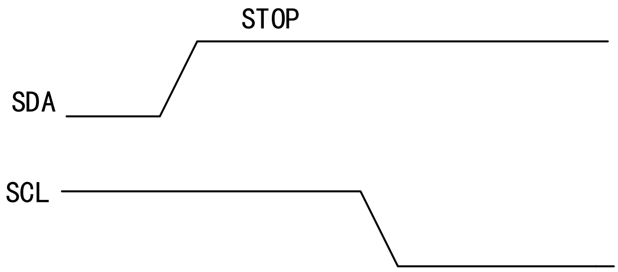


Figure 82 STOP signal is defined as: when SCL is at high level, SDA will convert from low level to high level



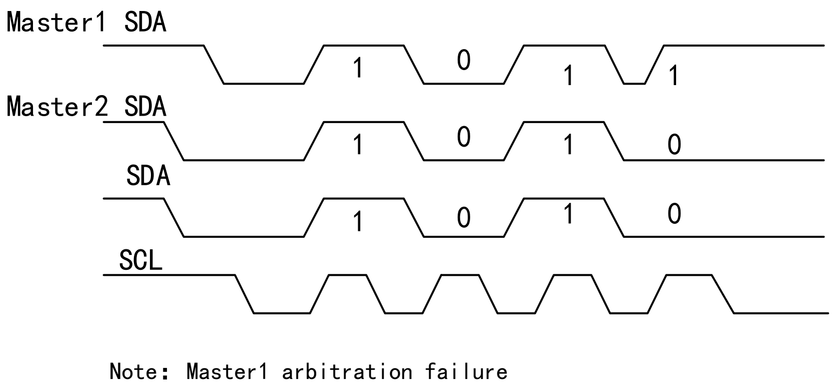
20.5.5 Arbitration

Arbitration is also used to solve the bus control conflict in case of multiple masters. The arbitration process takes place on the master and has nothing to do with the slave.

The master can start transmission only when the bus is idle. Two masters may generate an effective START signal on the bus within the shortest hold time of the START signal. In this situation, it is required that arbitration should decide which master completes the transmission.

Arbitration is conducted by bit. During each arbitration, when SCL is high, each master will check whether the SDA level is the same as that transmitted by itself. The arbitration process needs to last for many bits. Theoretically, if two masters transmit exactly the same content, they can successfully transmit without arbitration failure. If one master transmits high level, but it is detected that SDA is at low level, an arbitration failure error will occur, the SDA output of the master will be disabled, and the other master will complete its own transmission.

Figure 83 SDA Timing Diagram



20.5.6 SMBus specific function

System management bus (SMBus) is a simple single-end double-wire bus, which can meet the requirements of lightweight communication.

SMBus is commonly used in computer motherboard, mainly for power transmission ON/OFF instructions. SMBus is the derivative bus of I2C. It is mainly used for communication of low-bandwidth devices on computer motherboard, and power-related chip.

Address resolution protocol

SMBus specification includes an address resolution protocol, which can realize dynamic address assignment. Dynamic recognition hardware and software enable the bus to support hot plugging, and the bus devices will be automatically identified and assigned with a unique address.

SMBus alarm

SMBus alarm is an optional signal with an interrupt line. It is used for pins that are sacrificed to extend their control ability.

20.5.7 Error flag bit

Table 85 The following several error flag bits exist in I2C communication

Error flag bit	Description of error flag bit
Answer error flag bit (AEFLG)	No acknowledgment received
Bus error flag bit (BERRFLG)	An external stop or start condition is detected
Arbitration loss flag bit (ALFLG)	Arbitration loss is detected by the interface
Overrun/Underrun error flag bit (OVRURFLG)	In slave mode, the received data is not read out, the next data has arrived, and an overrun error occurs. The transmitting data clock has arrived, but the data has not been written to the DATA register, and an underrun error occurs.
Timeout or Tlow error flag bit (TTEFLG)	SCL is pulled down for more than a certain time
PEC comparison error flag bit (PECEFLG)	CRC values are not equal

20.5.8 Packet error check (PEC)

I2C module has a PEC module, which checks the message of I2C data by CRC-8 calculator. The CRC-8 polynomial used by the calculator is: C(x)= X8+X2+X+1.

When PECEN bit is set to 1 and PEC function is enabled, PEC module will calculate all data transmitted by I2C bus, including address data.

20.5.9 DMA mode

According to the software process of I2C, when the transmit register is empty or the receiver register is full, MCU needs to write or read bytes, then we can complete the operation more quickly through the DMA function of I2C.

DMA transmission

Set the DMAEN bit in I2C_CTRL2 register to enable the DMA mode. When the transmit register is empty (TXBEFLG is set to 1), the data will be directly loaded from the memory area to the DATA register through DMA.

DMA receiving

Set DMAEN bit in I2C_CTRL2 register to enable DMA mode. When the receive register is full (RXBNEFLG is set to 1), DMA will transmit DATA register data to the set storage area.

20.5.10 Programmable noise filter

In Fm mode, the I2C standard requires that the spikes on SDA and SCL lines should be suppressed to a length of 50ns.

The analog noise filter is implemented by SDA and SCL I/O. The analog noise filter is enabled by default and can be disabled by setting ANFEN bit of I2C_FILTER register.

The digital noise filter can be enabled and its filtering capability can be configured by DNFCFG bit of I2C_FILTER register.

20.5.11 I2C interrupt

Table 86 I2C Interrupt Request

Interrupt event	Event flag bit	Interrupt control bit
Start bit transmission completed	STARTFLG	EVIEN
Transmission completed/Address matching address signal	ADDRFLG	
10-bit address head segment transmission completed	ADDR10FLG	
Stop signal received	STOPFLG	
Data byte transmission completed	BTCFLG	
Receive buffer not empty	RXBNEFLG	EVIEN and BUFIEN
Transmit buffer empty	TXBEFLG	
Bus error	BERRFLG	ERRIEN
Arbitration loss	ALFLG	
Answer failed	AEFLG	
Overrun/Underrun	OVRURFLG	
PEC error	PECEFLG	
Timeout or Tlow error	TTEFLG	
SMBus reminder	ALERTEN	

20.6 Register address mapping

Table 87 I2C Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
I2C_CTRL1	Control register 1	0x00
I2C_CTRL2	Control register 2	0x04
I2C_SADDR1	Slave address register 1	0x08
I2C_SADDR2	Slave address register 2	0x0C
I2C_DATA	Data register	0x10
I2C_STS1	State register 1	0x14
I2C_STS2	State register 2	0x18
I2C_CLKCTRL	Master clock control register	0x1C

Register name	Description	Offset Address
I2C_RISETMAX	Maximum rising time register	0x20

20.7 Register functional description

20.7.1 Control register 1 (I2C_CTRL1)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	I2CEN	R/W	I2C Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	SMBEN	R/W	SMBus Mode Enable 0: I2C mode 1: SMBus mode
2	Reserved		
3	SMBTCFG	R/W	SMBus Type Configure 0: SMBus device 1: SMBus master
4	ARPEN	R/W	ARP Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable If SMBTCFG=0, use the default address of SMBus device If SMBTCFG=1, use the master address of SMBus
5	PECEN	R/W	PEC Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	SRBEN	R/W	Slave Responds Broadcast Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable Note: The broadcast address is 0X00
7	CLKSTRETCHD	R/W	Slave Mode Clock Stretching Disable 0: Enable 1: Disable In slave mode, enabling extending the low-level time of the clock can avoid overrun and underrun errors.
8	START	R/W	Start Bit Transfer This bit can be set to 1 and cleared to 0 by software; when transmitting the start bit or 2CEN=0, it is cleared to 0 by hardware. 0: Not transmit 1: Transmit

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9	STOP	R/W	Stop Bit Transfer This bit can be set to 1 or cleared to 0 by software; when transmitting the stop bit, it is cleared to 0 by hardware; when timeout error is detected, it is set to 1 by hardware. 0: Not transmit 1: Transmit
10	ACKEN	R/W	Acknowledge Transfer Enable This bit can be set to 1 or cleared to 0 by software; when I2CEN=0, it is cleared by hardware. 0: Not transmit 1: Transmit
11	ACKPOS	R/W	Acknowledge /PEC Position Configure This bit can be set to 1 or cleared to 0 by software; when I2CEN=0, it is cleared by hardware. 0: When receiving current byte, whether transmitting NACK/ACK, whether PEC is in shift register 1: When receiving next byte, whether transmitting NACK/ACK and whether PEC is in the next byte of shift register
12	PEC	R/W	Packet Error Check Transfer Enable This bit can be set to 1 or cleared to 0 by software; after PEC, start bit or stop bit is transmitted, or when I2CEN=0, it is cleared to 0 by hardware. 0: Disable 1: Enable
13	ALERTEN	R/W	SMBus Alert Enable This bit can be set to 1 or cleared to 0 by software; when I2CEN=0, it is cleared to 0 by hardware. 0: Release the SMBAlert pin to make it higher, and transmit the response address header immediately after prompt is given to transmit the NACK signal 1: Drive SMBAlert pin to make it lower, and transmit the response address header immediately after prompt is given to transmit the ACKEN signal
14	Reserved		
15	SWRST	R/W	Software Configure I2C under Reset State 0: Not reset 1: Reset; before I2C is reset, ensure that I2C pin is released and the bus is in idle state.

20.7.2 Control register 2 (I2C_CTRL2)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:0	CLKFCFG	R/W	I2C Clock Frequency Configure The clock frequency is frequency of the clock of I2C module, namely, the clock input from APB bus. 0: Disable 1: Disable 2：2MHz ... 50：50MHz Greater than 100100: Disable. Minimum clock frequency of I2C bus: 1MHz in standard mode, and 4MHz in fast mode.
7:6	Reserved		
8	ERRIEN	R/W	Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable; when the bit of any of the following state registers is set to 1, this interrupt will be generated: SMBALTFLG, TTEFLG, PECEFLG, OVRURFLG, AEFLG, ALFLG, and STS1_BERRFLG
9	EVIEN	R/W	Event Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable; when the bit of any of the following state registers is set to 1, the interrupt will be generated: STARTFLG, ADDRFLG, ADDR10FLG, STOPFLG, BTCFLG, TXBEFLG is set to 1 and BUFIEN is set to 1, RXBNEFLG is set to 1 and BUFIEN is set to 1.
10	BUFIEN	R/W	Buffer Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable; when the bit of any of the following state registers is set to 1, the interrupt will be generated: TXBEFLG and RXBNEFLG
11	DMAEN	R/W	DMA Requests Enable 0: Disable 1: When TXBEFLG=1 or RXBNEFLG=1, enable DMA request
12	LTCFG	R/W	DMA Last Transfer Configure Configure whether the EOT of the next DMA is the last transmission received, and only used for the master receiving mode. 0: No 1: Yes
15:13	Reserved		

20.7.3 Slave mode address register 1 (I2C_SADDR1)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	ADDR[0]	R/W	Slave Address Setup When the address mode is 7 bits, the bit is invalid; when the address mode is 10 bits, this bit is the 0 bit of the address.
7:1	ADDR[7:1]	R/W	Slave Address Setup The 7:1 bit of slave address

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:8	ADDR[9:8]	R/W	Slave Address Setup When the address mode is 7 bits, the bit is invalid; when the address mode is 10 bits, this bit is the 9:8 bit of the address.
14:10	Reserved		
15	ADDRLEN	R/W	Slave Address Length Configure 0: 7-bit address mode 1: 10-bit address mode

20.7.4 Slave address register 2 (I2C_SADDR2)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	ADDRNUM	R/W	Slave Address Number Configure In 7-bit address mode, the slave can be configured to identify the single-address mode and double-address mode; only ADDR1 is identified in single-address mode; both ADDR1 and ADDR2 can be identified in double-address mode Single or double-address registers can be identified in 7-bit address mode, specifically as follows: 0: Identify 1 address (ADDR1) 1: Identify 2 addresses (ADDR1 and ADDR2)
7:1	ADDR2[7:1]	R/W	Slave Dual Address Mode Address Setup The 7:1 bit of the address in double-address mode
15:8	Reserved		

20.7.5 Data register (I2C_DATA)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	DATA	R/W	Data Register In I2C transmission mode, write the data to be transmitted to this register; in I2C receiving mode, read the received data from this register.
15:8	Reserved		

20.7.6 State register 1 (I2C_STS1)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	STARTFLG	R	Start Bit Sent Finished Flag 0: Not transmit 1: Transmitted When the start bit is transmitted, this bit can be set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared after the software first reads STS1 register and then writes the DATA register; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	ADDRFLG	R	Address Transfer Complete /Receive Match Flag Whether the matching address is received in slave mode: 0: Not received 1: Received Whether master mode address transmission is completed: 0: Not completed 1: Completed The bit can be set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared after the software first reads STS1 register and then reads STS2 register; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.
2	BTCFLG	R	Byte Transfer Complete Flag 0: Not completed 1: Completed When receiving data, if the data received in DATA register fails to be read , and a new data is received then, it will be set to 1 by hardware; When transmitting data, if the DATA register is empty, it will be set to 1 by hardware to transmit the data in the shift register. This bit can be cleared after the software first reads STS1 register, and then reads or writes the DATA register; this bit can be cleared to 0 by hardware by transmitting a start bit and stop bit during the transmission, or when I2CEN=0.
3	ADDR10FLG	R	10-Bit Address Header Transmit Flag 0: Not transmit 1: Transmitted The bit can be set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared after the software first reads STS1 register and then writes the DATA register; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.
4	STOPFLG	R	Stop Bit Detection Flag 0: Not detected 1: Detected If ACKEN=1, after one answer, when the slave detects the stop bit on the bus, it will be set to 1 by hardware; This bit can be cleared after the software first reads STS1 register and then writes the CTRL1 register; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.
5	Reserved		
6	RXBNEFLG	R	Receive Buffer Not Empty Flag 0: The receive buffer is empty 1: The receive buffer is not empty This bit can be set to 1 by hardware when there is data in DATA register; When BTCFLG is set to 1, since the data register is still full, the RXBNEFLG bit cannot be cleared by reading DATA register; This bit can be cleared after the software reads and writes DATA register; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7	TXBEFLG	R	Transmit Buffer Empty Flag 0: The transmit buffer is not empty 1: The transmit buffer is empty This bit can be set to 1 by hardware when the content of DATA register is empty; When the software writes the first data to the DATA register, it will immediately move the data to the shift register, then the data in the DATA register is empty and this bit cannot be cleared; This bit can be cleared after the software writes data to DATA register; after transmitting the start bit and stop bit, or when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.
8	BERRFLG	RC_W0	Bus Error Flag 0: No bus error 1: Bus error occurred Bus error means exception of start bit or stop bit; when an error is detected, this bit can be set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared by writing 0 by software; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.
9	ALFLG	RC_W0	Master Mode Arbitration Lost Flag 0: No arbitration loss 1: In case of arbitration loss, I2C interface will automatically switch back to slave mode "Arbitration loss in master mode" means the master loses the control of buses; this bit can be set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared by writing 0 by software; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.
10	AEFLG	RC_W0	Acknowledge Error Flag 0: No acknowledgment error 1: Acknowledgment error occurred This bit is set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared by writing 0 by software; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.
11	OVRURFLG	RC_W0	Overrun/Underrun Flag 0: Not occur 1: Occurred This bit can be set to 1 by hardware when CLKSTRETCHD=1 and any of the following conditions is met: (1) In the slave receiving mode, when the data in the DATA register is not read out, but a new data is received (this data will be lost), overrun occurs; (2) In the slave transmission mode, no data is written in the data register but data still needs to be transmitted (the same data is transmitted twice), and then underrun occurs. This bit can be cleared by writing 0 by software; and be cleared to 0 by hardware when I2CEN=0.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
12	PECEFLG	RC_W0	PEC Error in Reception Flag 0: No PEC error: when ACKEN=1, after PEC is received, the receiver will return ACKEN 1: There is PEC error: regardless of the value of ACKEN, as long as PEC is received, the receiver will return NACK This bit can be cleared by writing 0 by software; and be cleared to 0 by hardware when I2CEN=0.
13	Reserved		
14	TTEFLG	RC_W0	Timeout or Tlow Error Flag 0: No timeout error 1: When a timeout error occurs, in slave mode, the slave is reset and the bus is released; in master mode, the hardware transmits the stop bit. This bit can be set to 1 by hardware when timeout error occurs in any of the following situations: (1) SCL maintains low level for more than 25ms; (2) SCL low-level extension time of the master device is more than 10ms; (3) SCL low-level extension time of the slave device is more than 25ms. This bit can be cleared by writing 0 by software; and be cleared to 0 by hardware when I2CEN=0.
15	SMBALTFLG	RC_W0	SMBus Alert Occur Flag 0: SMBus master mode, without alarm; SMBus slave mode, without alarm, SMBAlert pin level unchanged 1: SMBus master mode, with an alarm generated on the pin; SMBus slave mode, receiving an alarm, causing SMBAlert pin level to become low This bit is set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared by writing 0 by software; when I2CEN=0, it can be cleared to 0 by hardware.

20.7.7 State register 2 (I2C_STS2)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	MSFLG	R	Master Slave Mode Flag 0: Slave mode 1: Master mode This bit can be set to 1 by hardware when I2C is configured as master mode; This bit can be cleared to 0 by hardware when any of the following conditions is met: (1) Stop bit is generated (2) Bus arbitration is lost （3）I2CEN=0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	BUSBSYFLG	R	Bus Busy Flag 0: The bus is idle (no communication) 1: The bus is busy (in the progress of communication) This bit can be set to 1 by hardware when SDA or SCL is at low level; and cleared to 0 by hardware after the stop bit is generated.
2	TRFLG	R	Transmitter / Receiver Mode Flag 0: The device is in receiver mode (read) 1: The device is in transmitter mode (write) Decide the bit value according to R/W bit; This bit can be cleared to 0 by hardware when any of the following conditions is met: (1) Stop bit is generated (2) Repeated start bit is generated (3) Bus arbitration is lost （4）I2CEN=0
3	Reserved		
4	GENCALLFLG	R	Slave Mode Received General Call Address Flag 0: Failed to receive the broadcast address 1: Received the Broadcast address This bit can be set to 1 by hardware; and cleared to 0 by hardware when any of the following conditions is met: (1) Stop bit is generated (2) Repeated start bit is generated （3）I2CEN=0
5	SMBDADDRFLG	R	SMBus Device Received Default Address Flag in Slave Mode 0: Failed to receive the default address 1: Received the default address when ARPEN=1 This bit can be set to 1 by hardware; and cleared to 0 by hardware when any of the following conditions is met: (1) Stop bit is generated (2) Repeated start bit is generated （3）I2CEN=0
6	SMMHADDR	R	SMBus Device Received Master Header Flag in Slave Mode 0: Failed to receive the master head address 1: Received the master head address when SMBTSEL=1 and ARPEN=1 This bit can be set to 1 by hardware; and cleared to 0 by hardware when any of the following conditions is met: (1) Stop bit is generated (2) Repeated start bit is generated （3）I2CEN=0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7	DUALADDRFLG	R	Slave Mode Received Dual Address Match Flag 0: The received address matches the content of ADDR1 register 1: The received address matches the content of ADDR2 register This bit can be set to 1 by hardware; and cleared to 0 by hardware when any of the following conditions is met: (1) Stop bit is generated (2) Repeated start bit is generated （3）I2CEN=0
15:8	PECVALUE	R	Save Packet Error Checking Value When PECEN=1, the internal PEC value is saved in PECVALUE.

20.7.8 Master clock control register (I2C_CLKCTRL)

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:0	CLKS [11:0]	R/W	Clock Setup in Fast/Standard Master Mode In I2C standard mode or SMBus mode: T_{high}=CLKS × T_{PCLK1} T_{low}=CLKS × T_{PCLK1} In I2C fast mode: When FDUTYCFG=0: T_{high}=CLKS×T_{PCLK1} T_{low}=2×CLKS× T_{PCLK1} When FDUTYCFG=1: T_{high}=9 × CLKS × T_{PCLK1} T_{low}=16 × CLKS × T_{PCLK1}
13:12	Reserved		
14	FDUTYCFG	R/W	Fast Mode Duty Cycle Configure Duty cycle = t_{low}/t_{high} 0: SCLK duty cycle is 2 1: SCLK duty cycle is 16/9
15	SPEEDCFG	R/W	Master Mode Speed Configure 0: Standard mode 1: Fast mode

20.7.9 Maximum rising time register (I2C_RISETMAX)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0002

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:0	RISETMAX	R/W	Master Mode Maximum Rise Time in Fast/Standard Mode The time is in T_{PCLK1}, and RISETMAX is the maximum rising time unit of SCL plus 1.
15:6	Reserved		

20.7.10 Filter control register (I2C_FILTER)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	DNFCFG	R/W	Digital Noise Filter Filtering Capability Configure 0000: Disable 0001： 1 × T_{PCLK1} …… 1111： 15 × T_{PCLK1} Note: These bits can be configured only when I2CEN=1.
4	ANFDIS	R/W	Analog Noise Filter Disable 0: Enable 1: Disable
15:5	Reserved		

21 Serial peripheral interface/Inter-IC sound interface (SPI/I2S)

21.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 88 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Most Significant Bit	MSB
Least Significant Bit	LSB
Master Out Slave In	MOSI
Master In Slave Out	MISO
Serial Clock	SCK
Serial Data	SD
Master Clock	MCK
Word Select	WS
Pulse-code Modulation	PCM
Inter-IC Sound	I2S
Transmit	TX
Receive	RX
Busy	BSY

21.2 Introduction

SPI interface can be configured to support SPI protocol and I2S audio protocol. It works in SPI mode by default, and the functions can be switched in I2S mode by software.

Serial peripheral interface (SPI) provides data transmitting and receiving functions based on SPI protocol, which allows chips to communicate with external devices in half duplex, full duplex, synchronous and serial modes, and can work in master or slave mode.

The inter-IC sound interface (I2S) supports four audio standards: Philips I2S standard, MSB alignment standard, LSB alignment standard and PCM standard. It can work in master/slave mode during half-duplex communication.

21.3 Main characteristics

21.3.1 Main characteristics of SPI

(1) Master and slave operation with 3-wire full duplex synchronous transmission and receiving

(2) Simplex synchronous transmission can be realized by two wires (the third bidirectional data line can be included/not included)

(3) Select 8-bit or 16-bit transmission frame format

(4) Support multi-master device mode

(5) Support special transmission and receiving mark and can trigger interrupts

(6) Have SPI bus busy state flag

(7) The communication rate of SPI is up to 50mbit/s

(8) Clock polarity and phase are programmable

(9) Data sequence is programmable; select MSB or LSB in front

(10) An interrupt can be triggered by master mode fault, overrun and CRC error flag

(11) Have DMA transmit and receive buffers

(12) SPI TI mode

(13) Calculate, transmit and verify by hardware CRC

21.3.2 Main characteristics of I2S

(1) Have master/slave mode of simplex communication (transmit/receive only)

(2) Four audio standards
- I2S Philips standard
- MSB alignment standard
- LSB alignment standard
- PCM standard

(3) 16/24/32-bit data length can be selected

(4) 16-bit or 32-bit channel length

(5) Clock polarity is programmable

(6) 16-bit data register is used for transmitting and receiving

(7) MSB is always the first in the data direction

(8) Transmitting and receiving supports DMA function

21.4 SPI functional description

21.4.1 Description of SPI signal line

Table 89 SPI Signal Line Description

Pin Name	Description
SCK	Master device: SPI clock outputs Slave device: SPI clock inputs
MISO	Master device: Input the pin and receive data Slave device: Output the pin and transmit data Data direction: From slave device to master device
MOSI	Master device: Output the pin and transmit data Slave device: Input the pin and receive data Data direction: From master device to slave device
NSS	Software NSS mode: NSS pin can be used for other purposes. NSS mode of master device hardware: NSS output, single master mode. Disable NSS output: Operation of multiple master environments is allowed. NSS mode of slave device hardware: NSS signal is set to low level as chip selection signal of slave.

21.4.2 Phase and polarity of clock signal

The clock polarity and clock phase are CPOL and CPHA bits of SPI_CTRL1 register.

Clock polarity CPOL means the level signal of SCK signal line when SPI is in idle state.

- When CPOL=0, SCK signal line is low in idle state
- When CPOL=1, SCK signal line is high in idle state

Clock phase CPHA means the sampling moment of data

- When CPHA=0, the signal on MOSI or MISO data line will be sampled by the "odd edge" on SCK clock line.
- When CPHA=1, the signal on MOSI or MISO data line will be sampled by the "even edge" on SCK clock line.

SPI can be divided into four modes according to the states of clock phase CPHA and clock polarity CPOL.

Table 90 Four Modes of SPI

SPI mode	CPHA	CPOL	Sampling moment	Idle SCK clock
0	0	0	Odd edge	Low level
1	0	1	Odd edge	High Level
2	1	0	Even edge	Low level

SPI mode	CPHA	CPOL	Sampling moment	Idle SCK clock
3	1	1	Even edge	High Level

21.4.3 Data frame format

Set MSB or LSB to be first by configuring LSBSEL bit of SPI_CTRL1 register. Select to transmit/receive in 8/16-bit data frame format by configuring DFLSEL bit of SPI_CTRL1 register.

21.4.4 NSS mode

Software NSS mode: Select to enable or disable this mode by configuring SSEN bit of SPI_CTRL1 register, and the internal NSS signal level is driven by ISSEL bit of SPI_CTRL1 register.

Hardware NSS mode:

- Enable NSS output: When SPI is in master mode, enable SSOEN bit, NSS pin will be pulled to low and SPI will automatically enter the slave mode.
- Disable NSS output: Operation is allowed in multi-master environments.

21.4.5 SPI mode

21.4.5.1 **SPI master mode**

In master mode, generate serial clock on SCK pin

Master mode configuration

- Configure MSMSEL=1 in SPI_CTRL1 register
- Select the polarity and phase by configuring CPOL and CPHA bits of SPI_CTRL1 register.
- Select 8/16-bit data frame format by configuring DFLSEL bit of SPI_CTRL1 register
- Select LSB or MSB first by configuring LSBSEL in SPI_CTRL1 register
- NSS configuration:
  - NSS pin works in input mode: in hardware mode, it is required to connect NSS pin to high level during the entire data frame transmission; in software mode, it is required to set SSEN bit and ISSEL bit in SPI_CTRL1 register
  - NSS works in output mode and it is required to configure SSOEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 register
- Configure FRFCFG bit of SPI_CTRL2 register to select TI mode protocol for serial communication
- Enable SPI by configuring SPIEN bit in SPI_CTRL1 register

In master mode: MOSI pin is data output, while MISO is data input

TI protocol

In slave mode, SPI interface supports TI protocol. It is controlled by FRFCFG bit of SPI_CTRL2 register. Both clock polarity and phase conform to TI protocol. NSS management is specific to TI protocol, not needing to configure SPI_CTRL1 and SPI_CTRL2 registers.

21.4.5.2 SPI slave mode

In slave mode, SCK pin receives the serial clock transmitted from the master device

Configuration of slave mode

- Configure MSMSEL=0 in SPI_CTRL1 register
- Select the polarity and phase by configuring CPOL and CPHA bits of SPI_CTRL1 register.
- Select 8/16-bit data frame format by configuring DFLSEL bit of SPI_CTRL1 register
- Select LSB or MSB first by configuring LSBSEL in SPI_CTRL1 register
- NSS configuration:
  - In hardware mode: NSS pin must be low in the whole data frame transmission process
  - In software mode: Set SSEN bit in SPI_CTRL1 register and clear ISSEL bit (this step is not required for TI mode)
- Configure FRFCFG bit of SPI_CTRL2 register to select TI mode protocol for serial communication
- Enable SPI by configuring SPIEN bit in SPI_CTRL1 register

In slave mode: MOSI pin is data input, while MISO is data output

TI protocol

In slave mode, SPI interface supports TI protocol. It is controlled by FRFCFG bit of SPI_CTRL2 register. Both clock polarity and phase conform to TI protocol. NSS management is specific to TI protocol, not needing to configure SPI_CTRL1 and SPI_CTRL2 registers.

In slave mode, SPI baud rate prescaler can use any baud rate to control the moment of switching MISO pin state to high-impedance state, so it can determine this moment very flexibly. The baud rate is generally the baud rate of external master clock. The baud rate value set by BRSEL[2:0] of SPI_CTRL1 register and the internal circuit of the chip synchronously determine the time when the MISO pin state changes to high-impedance state.

21.4.5.3 Half-duplex communication of SPI

One clock line and one bidirectional data line

- Enable this mode by setting BMEN of SPI_CTRL1 register

- Control the data line to be input or output by setting BMOEN bit of SPI_CTRL1 register
- SCK pin is used as clock, MOSI pin is used in master device to transmit data, and MISO pin is used in slave device to transmit data

21.4.6 Data transmission and receiving process in different modes of SPI

Table 91 Run Mode of SPI

Mode	Configure	Data pin
Full-duplex mode of master device	BMEN=0，RXOMEN=0	MOSI transmits; MISO receives
Unidirectional receiving mode of master device	BMEN=0，RXOMEN=1	MOSI is not used; MISO receives
Bidirectional transmitting mode of master device	BMEN=1，BMOEN=1	MOSI transmits; MISO is not used
Bidirectional receiving mode of master device	BMEN=1，BMOEN=0	MOSI is not used; MISO receives
Full-duplex mode of slave device	BMEN=0，RXOMEN=0	MOSI receives, and MISO transmits
Unidirectional receiving mode of slave device	BMEN=0，RXOMEN=1	MOSI receives, and MISO is not used
Bidirectional transmitting mode of slave device	BMEN=1，BMOEN=1	MOSI is not used, and MISO transmits
Bidirectional receiving mode of slave device	BMEN=1，BMOEN=0	MOSI receives, and MISO is not used

Figure 84 Connection in Full-duplex Mode

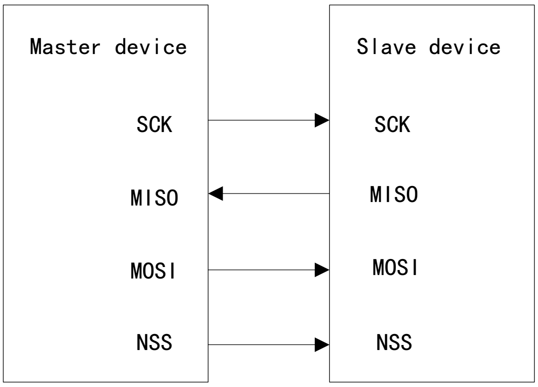


Figure 85 Connection in Half-duplex Mode (the master receives, while the slave transmits)

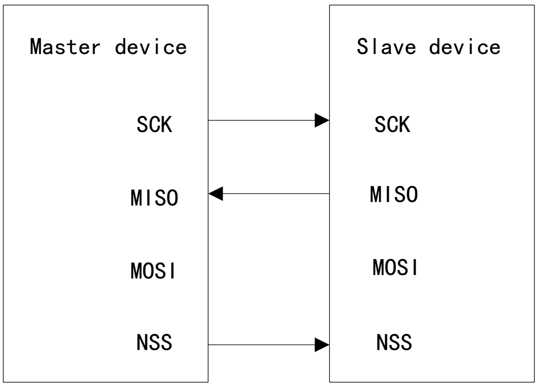


Figure 86 Connection in Half-duplex Mode (the master only transmits, while the slave receives)

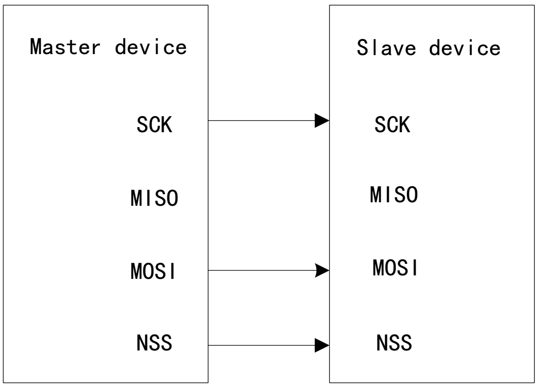
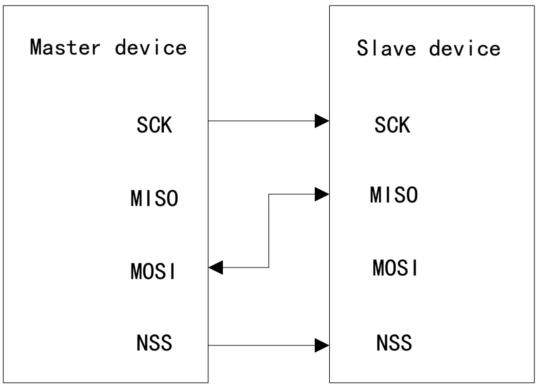


Figure 87 Bidirectional Line Connection



21.4.6.1 **Transmitting and receiving of processed data**

Data transmission

After the mode configuration is completed, the SPI module is enabled to remain idle.

Master mode: The software writes a data frame to the transmit buffer, and the transmission process starts

Slave mode: The SCK signal on the SCK pin starts to jump, while the NSS pin level is low, and the transmission process starts (before starting data transmission, make sure that the data has been written to the transmit buffer in advance).

When SPI is transmitting a data frame, it will load the data frame from the data buffer to the shift register, and then start to transmit data. After one bit of data frame is transmitted, TXBEFLG is set to 1. To continue to transmit data, the software needs to wait and when TXBEFLG=1 data will be written to the SPI_DATA register. (TXBEFLG flag is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software).

Data receiving

BSYFLG flag is always set to 1 in the data receiving process.

At the last edge of the sampling clock, the received data is transmitted from the shift register to the receive buffer; set the RXBNEFLG flag, and the software reads the data in data register (SPI_DATA) to obtain the content of the receive buffer; if RXBNEIEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 register is set, an interrupt will be generated, and after data is read, the BSYFLG flag will be automatically cleared.

21.4.6.2 **Full duplex transmitting and receiving mode under master/slave device**

Full duplex mode under master device

- After writing data to SPI_ DATA register (transmit buffer), data transmission starts.
- When SPI transmits the first bit of data, the data is transmitted from the transmit buffer to the shift register and then transmitted to the MOSI pin serially according to the sequence.
- The data received on MISO pin is serially transmitted to SPI_DATA register (receive buffer) according to the sequence.

Transmitting and receiving are synchronous.

Full duplex mode under slave device

- When the slave device receives the clock signal and the first data bit appears on the MOSI pin, data transmission starts, and the subsequent data bits will be transmitted to the shift register in turn.
- When SPI transmits the first bit of data, the data is transmitted from the transmit buffer to the shift register and then transmitted to the MISO pin serially according to the sequence.
- The software must ensure that the data to be transmitted has been written before the SPI master device starts to transmit data.

Transmitting and receiving are synchronous.

Full duplex transmitting and receiving process under master/slave device

(1) Enable SPI module: Configure SPIEN=1 for SPI_CTRL1 register.

(2) Write the first data to be transmitted to SPI_DATA register, and the TXBEFLG flag will be cleared.

(3) Wait until TXBEFLG flag bit is set to 1 (controlled by hardware), and write the second data bit to be transmitted.

(4) Wait until RXBNEFLG flag bit is set to 1 (controlled by hardware), read the first received data in the SPI_DATA register, at the same time, clear the RXBNEFLG flag (cleared to 0 by software). Repeat the operation, and transmit and receive data at the same time.

(5) Wait until RXBNEFLG=1 and receive the last data.

(6) Wait until TXBEFLG=1 and disable SPI module after BSYFLG=0.

21.4.6.3 **Bidirectional transmission mode under master/slave device**

Bidirectional transmission under master device

- After the data is written to SPI_DATA register, start transmission
- The data in the transmit buffer is transmitted to the shift register in parallel, and then transmitted to the MOSI pin serially according to the sequence.

Bidirectional transmission under slave device

- When the slave device receives the clock signal and the first data bit appears on the MISO pin, data transmission starts.
- At the same time, the data to be transmitted by the transmit buffer is transmitted to the shift register in parallel, and then transmitted to the MISO pin serially (before data transmission, make sure that the data has been written to the transmit buffer in advance).

Bidirectional transmission process under master/slave device

(1) Enable SPI module: Configure SPIEN=1 for SPI_CTRL1 register.

(2) Write the first data to be transmitted to SPI_DATA register, and the TXBEFLG flag will be cleared.

(3) Wait until TXBEFLG=1, write the second data, repeat the operation and transmit the subsequent data

(4) After the last data is written, wait until TXBEFLG=1 and BSYFLG=0 and transmission is completed

21.4.6.4 **Unidirectional/Bidirectional receiving mode under master/slave device**

(1) Enable SPI module: Configure SPIEN=1 for SPI_CTRL1 register.

(2) In the master device: Generate SCK clock immediately, and continuously receive data before SPI is disabled.

(3) Slave device: When SPI master device pulls down NSS and generates a clock, receive data.

(4) Wait until the RXBNEFLG flag is set to 1, read data through SPI_DATA, and repeat the operation to receive data.

21.4.7 CRC functions

SPI module contains two CRC computing units, which are used for data receiving and data transmission respectively.

CRC computing unit is used to define polynomials in SPI_CRCPOLY register.

Enable CRC computing by configuring CRCEN bit in SPI_CTRL1 register; at the same time, reset the CRC register (SPI_RXCRC and SPI_TXCRC).

To obtain the CRC value of transmission calculation, after the last data is written to the transmit buffer, it is required to set CRCNXT bit of SPI_CTRL1; indicate that the hardware transmits the CRC value after the last data is transmitted, and the CRCNXT bit will be cleared; at the same time, compare the values of CRC and SPI_RXCRC, and if they do not match, it is required to set CRCEFLG bit of SPI_STS register, and after ERRIEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 register is set, an interrupt will occur.

Note:

(1) If SPI is under slave device and CRC function is used, CRC computing will continue when NSS pin is at high level. For example, when the master device communicates with multiple slave devices alternately, the above situation will occur, so it is necessary to avoid faulty operation of CRC.

(2) In the process of a slave device from being unselected (NSS is at high level) to being selected (NSS is at low level 0), it is required to clear the CRC value at both ends of the master and slave devices to keep the next CRC computing results of the master and slave devices synchronized.

(3) When SPI is in slave mode, CRC computing can be enabled after the clock becomes stable.

(4) When the SPI clock frequency is too high, the CPU operation will affect the SPI bandwidth. It is recommended to use DMA mode to avoid reduction of SPI speed.

(5) When the SPI clock frequency is too high, during the CRC transmission period, the CPU utilization frequency will be reduced, and the function call is disabled in the CRC transmission process to avoid errors when receiving the last data and CRC.

(6) When NSS hardware mode is used in slave mode, NSS pin should be kept low during data transmission and CRC transmission period.

Sequence of clearing CRC values

(1) Disable SPI (SPIEN=0)

(2) Clear CRCEN bit

(3) Set CRCEN bit to 1

(4) Enable SPI (SPIEN=1)

21.4.8 DMA function

The request/response DMA mechanism in SPI facilitates high-speed data transmission, improves the system efficiency and enable to transfer data to SPI transmit buffer promptly, and the receive buffer can read the data in time to prevent overrun.

When SPI only transmits data, it is only necessary to enable DMA transmission channel; when SPI only receives data, it is only necessary to enable DMA receiving channel.

DMA function of SPI mode can be enabled by configuring TXDEN and RXDEN bits of SPI_CTRL2 register.

- During transmitting: When TXBEFLG flag bit is set to 1, issue the DMA request, DMA controller writes data to SPI_DATA register, and then the TXBEFLG flag bit will be cleared.
- When receiving: When setting RXBNEFLG flag bit to 1, issue the DMA request, DMA controller reads data from SPI_DATA register, and then RXBNEFLG flag bit is cleared.

By monitoring BSYFLG flag bit, confirm whether SPI communication is over after DMA has transferred all data to be transmitted in transmitting mode, which can avoid damaging the transmission of last data.

DMA function with CRC

By the end of communication, if SPI enables both CRC operation and DMA function, transmitting and receiving of CRC bytes will be completed automatically.

At the end of data and CRC transmission, if CRCEFLG flag bit of SPI_STS register is set to 1, it indicates that an error occurred during transmission.

21.4.9 Disable SPI

After data transmission is over, end the communication by disabling SPI module. In some configurations, if SPI is disabled before data transmission is completed, a data transmission error may be caused. Different methods are required in different operation modes to disable SPI

Maser mode/Full-duplex slave mode

(1) Wait until RXBNEFLG flag bit is set to 1, and receive the last data

(2) Wait until TXBEFLG flag bit is set to 1

(3) Wait for clearing BSYFLG flag bit to 0

(4) Disable SPI (set SPIEN=0 for SPI_CTRL1 register)

Unidirectional transmit-only/Bidirectional transmitting mode of master mode/slave mode

After the last data is written into SPI_DATA register:

(1) Wait until TXBEFLG flag bit is set to 1

(2) Wait for clearing BSYFLG flag bit to 0

(3) Disable SPI (set SPIEN=0 for SPI_CTRL1 register)

Unidirectional receive-only/bidirectional receiving mode of master mode/slave mode

(1) Wait until No. n-1 RXBNEFLG flag bit is set to 1

(2) Wait for one SPI clock cycle before SPI is disabled (set SPIEN=0 for SPI_CTRL1 register)

(3) Before entering the stop mode, wait until the last RXBNEFLG flag bit is set to 1

Receive-only/bidirectional receiving mode in slave mode

SPI can be disabled at any time (set SPIEN=0 for SPI_CTRL1 register) and it will be disabled when the transmission is over. To enter the stop mode, wait until BSYFLG flag bit is cleared to 0.

21.4.10 SPI interrupt

21.4.10.1 Status flag bit

Transmit buffer idle flag TXBEFLG

TXBEFLG=1 indicates that the transmit buffer bit is empty, and the next data to be transmitted can be written. When the data is written to SPI_DATA register, clear the TXBEFLG flag bit.

Receive buffer non-empty flag RXBNEFLG

RXBNEFLG=1 indicates that the receive buffer contains valid data and the data can be read through SPI_DATA register; and the RXBNEFLG flag can be cleared.

Busy flag BSYFLG

BSYFLG flag is set and cleared by hardware, which can indicate the state of SPI communication layer. BSYFLG=1 indicates SPI is communicating, but in the two-line receiving mode under the master device, BSYFLG=0 during the period of receiving data.

BSYFLG flag can be used to detect whether transmission is over to avoid destroying the last transmitted data.

BSYFLG flag bit can be used to avoid conflict when writing data in multi-master mode.

BSYFLG flag will be cleared to 0 when the transmission ends (except for continuous communication in master mode), SPI is disabled and the master mode fails.

BSYFLG=0 between data item and data item when communication is discontinuous.

When communication is continuous:

- In master mode: BSYFLG=1 in the whole transmission process
- In save mode: BSYFLG is kept low within one SCK clock cycle between transmission of data

Note: It is better to use TXBEFLG and RXBNEFLG flags to process the transmitting and receiving of each data item.

21.4.10.2 **Error flag bit**

Master mode error MEFLG

MEFLG is an error flag bit. The master mode error occurs when: in hardware NSS mode, the NSS pin of the master device is pulled down; in software NSS mode, ISSEL bit is cleared to 0; MEFLG bit is set automatically.

Influence of master mode failure: MEFLG is set to 1, and SPI interrupt is generated when ERRIEN is set; SPIEN is cleared to 0 (output stops, and SPI interface is disabled); MSMSEL is cleared to 0 and the device is forced to enter the slave mode.

Operation of clearing the MEFLG flag bit: When MEFLG bit is set to 1, it is required to read or write SPI_STS register, and then write to SPI_CTRL1 register.

When MEFLG flag bit is 1, it is not allowed to set SPIEN and MSMSEL bits.

Overrun error OVRFLG

Overrun error: After the master device transmits the data, the RXBNEFLG flag bit is still 1, which indicates that an overrun error occurred. Then OVRFLG bit is set to 1, and if the ERRIEN bit is also set, an interrupt will be generated.

After an overrun error occurs, the data in the receive buffer is not the data transmitted by the master device, then the read data in SPI_DATA register is the data not read before, while the data transmitted later will not be read.

OVRFLG flag can be cleared by reading SPI_DATA register and SPI_STS register according to the sequence.

CRC error flag CRCEFLG

By setting CRCEN bit of SPI_CTRL1 register, enable CRC computing, and CRC error flag can be used to check whether the received data is valid.

When the value transmitted by SPI_TXCRC register does not match the value in SPI_RXCRC register, a CRC error will be generated, and CRCEFLG flag bit in SPI_STS register will be set to 1.

CRCEFLG can be cleared by writing 0 to CRCEFLG bit of SPI_STS register.

TI frame format error flag FREFLG

If SPI supports TI protocol in slave mode, TI frame format error will be detected when NSS pulse occurs during communication. When this error appears, SPI_STS[FREFLG]=1, SPI will not be disabled, but NSS pulse will be ignored, and SPI will start new transmission when next NSS pulse arrives. As the error detection may cause the loss of two data bytes, the data may be damaged.

FREFLG flag will be cleared to 0 when reading SPI_STS register. If ERRIEN=1, and a frame format error is detected, an interrupt will be generated. The continuity of data cannot be guaranteed at this time, the SPI shall be disabled and after the slave SPI is enabled again, the master will restart the communication.

Table 92 SPI Interrupt Request

Interrupt flag	Interrupt event	Enable control bit	Clearing method
TXBEFLG	Transmit buffer empty flag	TXBEIEN	Write SPI_DATA register
RXBNEFLG	Receive buffer non-empty flag	RXBNEIEN	Read SPI_DATA register
MEFLG	Master mode failure event	ERRIEN	Read/Write SPI_STS register, and then write SPI_CTRL1 register
OVRFLG	Overrun error		Read SPI_DATA register, and then read SPI_STS register
CRCEFLG	CRC error flag		Write 0 to CRCEFLG bit
FREFLG	TI frame format error		Read SPI_STS register

21.5 I2S functional description

Enable I2S function by setting I2SMOD bit of SPI_I2SCFG.

I2S and SPI share four pins:

- SD: Serial data, transmitting and receiving the data of 2-way time division multiplexing channel
- WS: Chip selection, switching the data of left and right channels
- CK: Serial clock; the clock signal is output in master mode, and is input in slave mode
- MCK: Master clock; in master mode, when MCOEN bit of SPI_I2SPSC register is set to 1, it can be used as the pin for outputting the extra clock signal.

21.5.1 I2S full duplex

In addition to I2S2 and I2S3, two extended I2S can also be used to support I2S full-duplex mode. Therefore, the first I2S full-duplex interface is based on I2S2 and I2S2_ext, and the second is based on I2S3 and I2S3_ext.

I2Sx can work in master mode:

(1) Output SCK and WS in half-duplex mode

(2) Provide SCK and WS for I2S2_ext and I2S3_ext in full-duplex mode

Extended I2S is only used for full-duplex mode and always works in slave mode. Both I2Sx and I2Sx_ext can be used for transmitting and receiving.

21.5.2 I2S audio standard

I2S audio standard is selected by setting I2SSSEL bit and PFSSEL bit of SPI_I2SCFG register, and four audio standards can be selected in total: I2S Philips standard, MSB alignment standard, LSB alignment standard and PCM standard. Except PCM standard, other audio standards have two channels: left and right channels.

The data length and channel length can be configured by DATALEN and CHLEN bits in SPI_I2SCFG register. The channel length must be greater than or equal to the data length. There are four data formats to transmit data: 16-bit data packed into 16-bit frame, 16-bit data packed into 32-bit frame, 24-bit data packed into 32-bit frame, and 32-bit data packed into 32-bit frame.

When the 16-bit data is extended to 32 bits, the first 16 bits are valid data, and the last 16 bits are forced to be 0. No external intervention is needed in this process.

Since the data buffers used for transmitting and receiving are all 16 bits, SPI_DATA needs to read/write twice when 24-bit and 32-bit data are transmitted. If DMA is used, DMA transmission twice is required.

For all communication standards and data formats, the most significant bit of data is always transmitted first.

For time division multiplexing, the left channel is always transmitted first, and then the right channel is transmitted.

21.5.2.1 **I2S Philips standard**

In I2S Philips standard, the pin WS can indicate the data being transmitted comes from the left channel or the right channel.

In I2S Philips standard, both WS and SD change on the falling edge of CK clock signal.

The sender will change the data on the falling edge of the clock signal CK, while the receiver will change the data on the rising edge of the clock signal CK.

Figure 88 I2S Philips Protocol Waveform (16/32 bits)

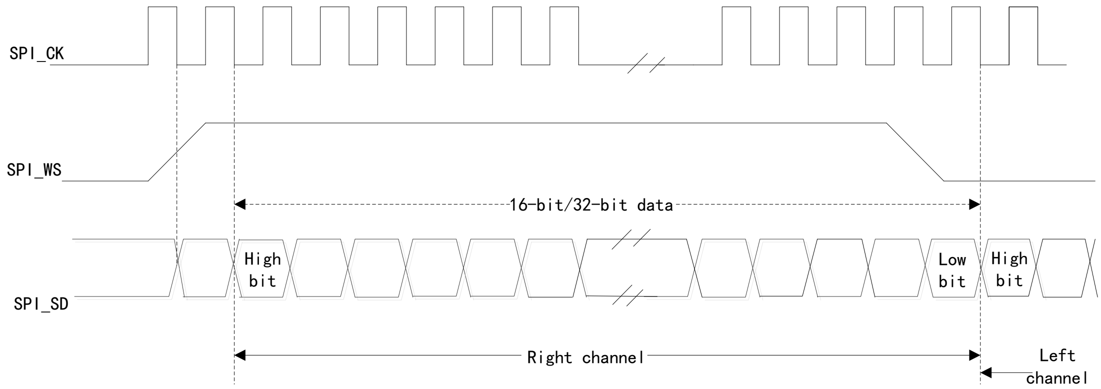
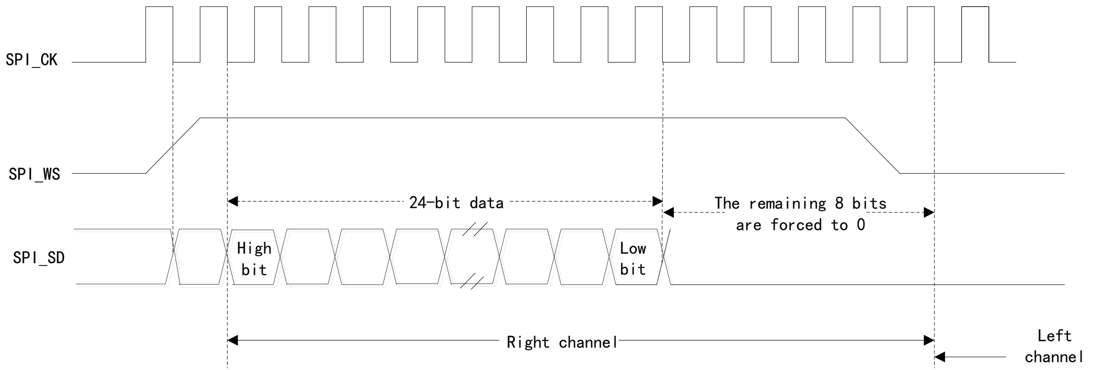


Figure 89 I2S Philips Protocol Waveform (24 bits)



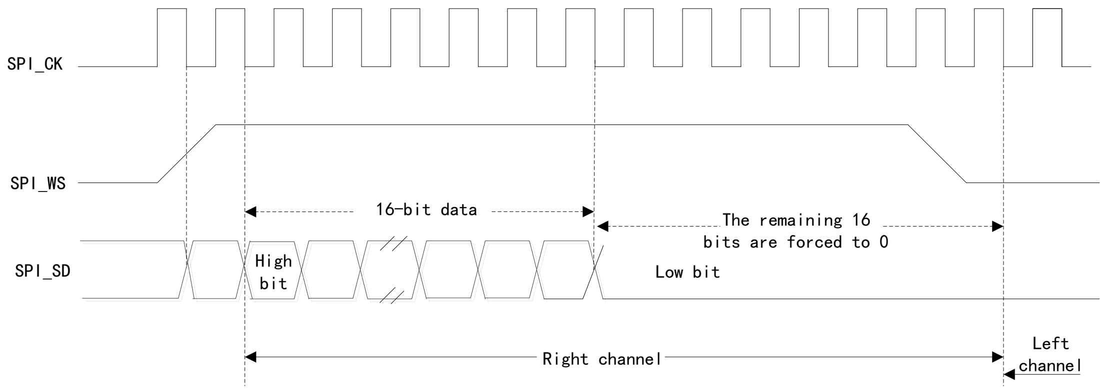
In I2S Philips standard, if you want to transmit/receive 24-bit and 32-bit data, the SPI_DATA register needs to read/write twice; for example:

- If you need to transmit 0x9FBB88 (24-bit data), write 0x9FBB to SPI_DATA register for the first time, and write 0x88XX to the register for the second time.
- If you need to receive 0x9FBB88 (24-bit data), read out 0x9FBB from SPI_DATA register for the first time and read out 0x8800 from the register for the second time.

In I2S configuration, when selecting the frame format of extending 16-bit data to 32-bit data frame, it is required to access SPI_DATA register, and the remaining 16-bit data will be set to 0x0000 by hardware by force; for example:

- The data to be received or transmitted is 0x62d8, which becomes 0x62D80000 after it is extended to 32 bits, and it is necessary to write 0x62D8 to SPI_DATA register or read out from SPI_DATA register.

Figure 90 I2S Philips Protocol Waveform (extending from 16 bits to 32 bits)



In the transmission process, the MSB should be written to the register SPI_DATA, and when TXBEFLG flag bit is set to 1, new data can be written; if there is corresponding interrupt, an interrupt can be generated.

In the receiving process, every time the MSB is received, the RXBNEFLG flag bit will be set to 1; if there is corresponding interrupt, an interrupt can be generated.

21.5.2.2 **MSB alignment standard**

In MSB standard, WS signal and the first data bit are generated at the same time

In the transmission process, the data is changed on the falling edge of the clock signal; in the receiving process, the data is read on the rising edge of the clock signal.

Figure 91 MSB Alignment Standard Waveform (16/32-bit data)

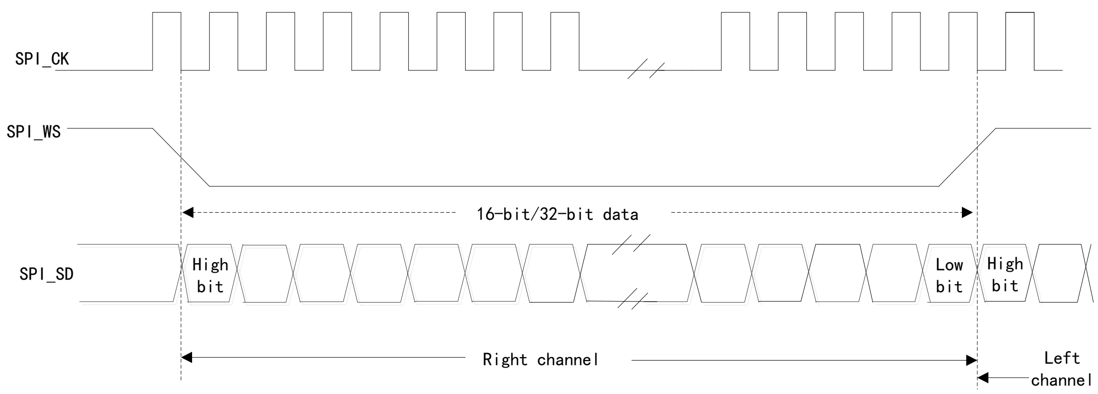


Figure 92 MSB Alignment Standard Waveform (24-bit data)

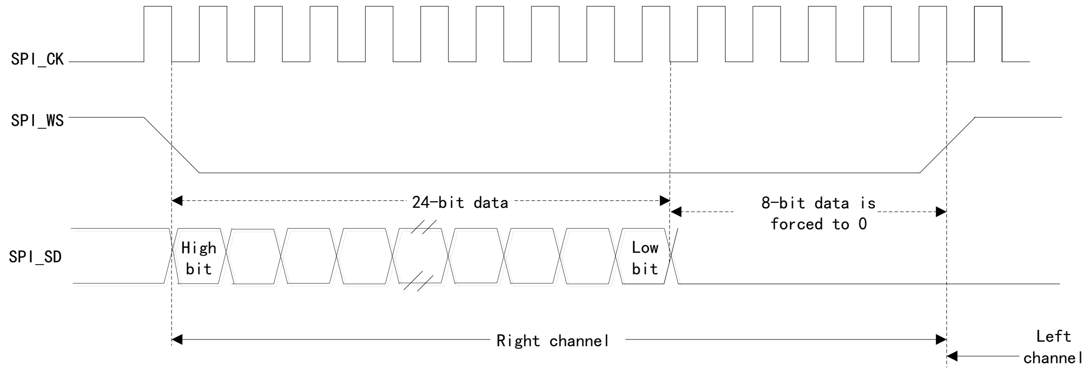
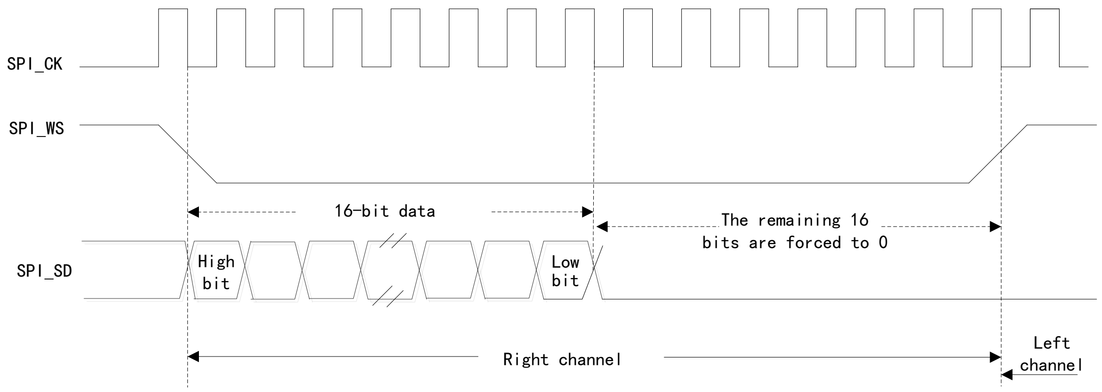


Figure 93 MSB Alignment Standard Waveform (extending from 16 bits to 32 bits)



21.5.2.3 **LSB alignment standard**

In the transmission process of LSB alignment standard, the data is changed on the falling edge of the clock signal; in the receiving process, the data is read on the rising edge of the clock signal. When the channel length is the same as the data length, the LSB alignment standard is the same as the MSB alignment standard. If the channel length is larger than the data length, the valid data of the LSB alignment standard is aligned with the least significant bit.

Figure 94 LSB Alignment Standard Waveform (16/32-bit data)

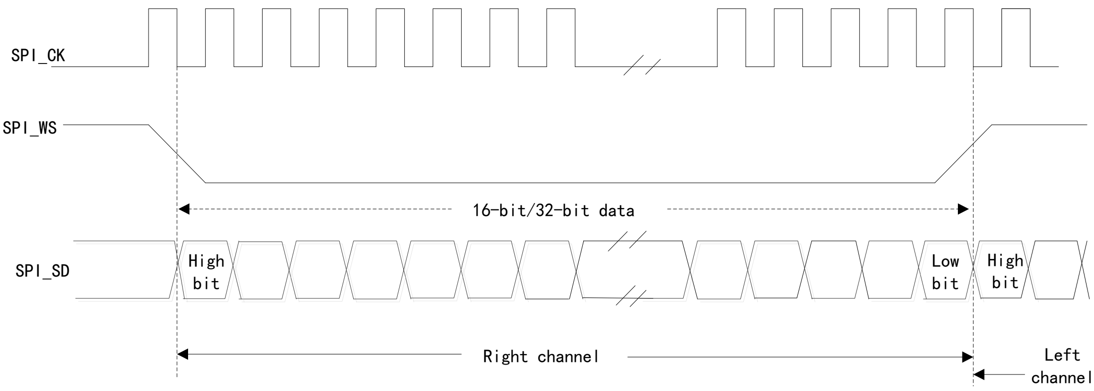
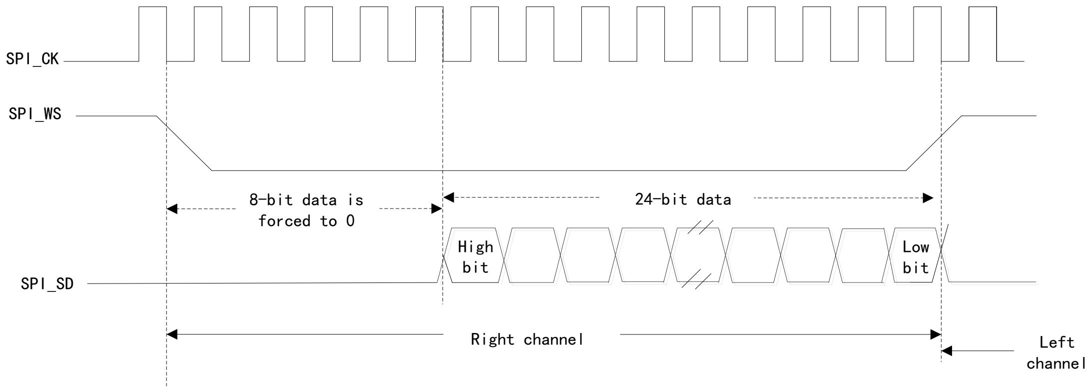


Figure 95 LSB Alignment Standard Waveform (24-bit data)



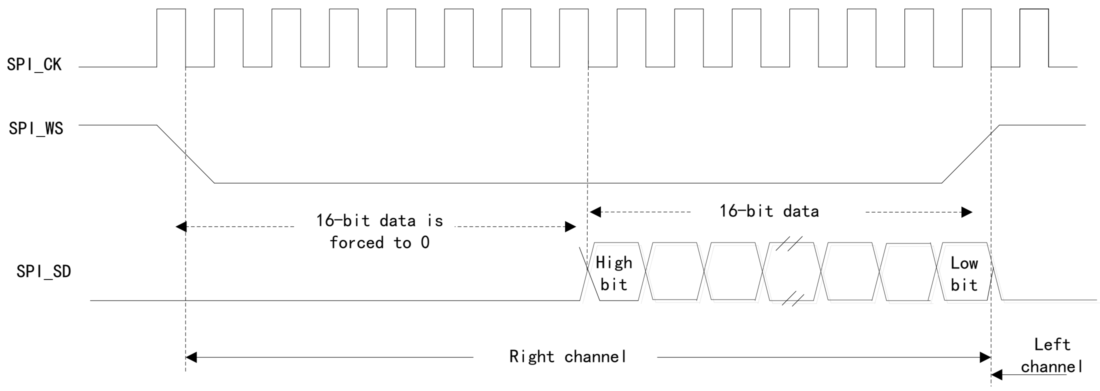
In the transmission process, if you want to transmit/receive 24-bit data, it is required to read/write the SPI_DATA register twice; for example:

- When 0x56EA98 needs to be transmitted, first write 0xXX56 to SPI_DATA register, and then write 0xEA98 to SPI_DATA register.
- When you need to receive 0x56EA98, read out 0x0056 from SPI_DATA register for the first time, ad read out 0xEA98 from SPI_DATA register for the second time.

In I2S configuration, when selecting the frame format of extending from 16-bit data to 32-bit data frame, it is required to access SPI_DATA register, and the high 16-bit data will be set to 0x0000 by hardware by force; for example:

- The data to be received or transmitted is 0x98A5, which becomes 0x000098A5 after it is extended to 32 bits, and it is necessary to write 0x98A5 to SPI_DATA register or read out from SPI_DATA register.

Figure 96 Under LSB Alignment Standard (extending from 16 bits to 32 bits)

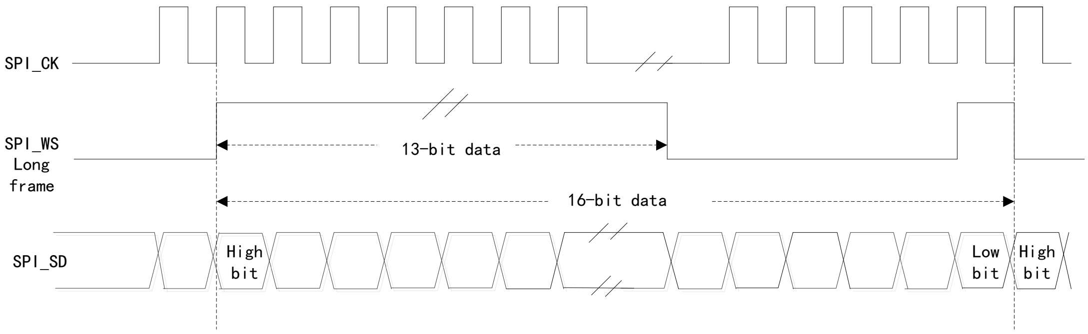


21.5.2.4 **PCM standard**

There is no sound channel selection in PCM standard. Short frame and long frame of PCM standard are selected by configuring PFSSEL bit in SPI_I2SCFG register.

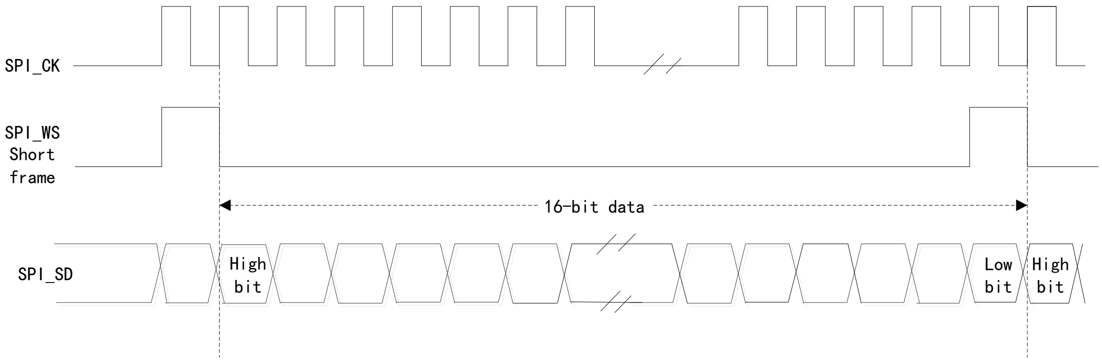
In the master mode, the valid time of synchronous WS signal of the long frame structure is 13 bits.

Figure 97 PCM Standard Waveform



In the master mode, the length of the synchronous WS signal of the short frame structure is 1 bit.

Figure 98 PCM Standard Waveform



21.5.3 I2S clock

The clock source of I2SxCLK is PLL2CLK or external clock projected to I2S_CKIN pin

The bit rate of I2S determines the data stream on I2S data line and the clock signal frequency of I2S.

- I2S bit rate = the number of bits per channel × the number of sound channels × audio sampling frequency
- There are two channels of 16-bit audio signal: I2S bit rate=16×2×Fs

The relationship between audio sampling frequency (Fs) and I2S bit rate (I2S) is defined by the following formula:

Table 93 Audio Sampling Frequency (Fs) Formula

MCOEN	CHLEN	Audio sampling frequency (Fs)
1	0	I2SxCLK/[（16*2）*（(2*I2SPSC）+ODDPSC）*8]
1	1	I2SxCLK/[（32*2）*（(2*I2SPSC）+ODDPSC）*4]
0	0	I2SxCLK/[（16*2）*（(2*I2SPSC）+ODDPSC）]

MCOEN	CHLEN	Audio sampling frequency (Fs)
0	1	I2SxCLK/[（32*2）*（(2*I2SPSC）+ODDPSC）]

21.5.4 I2S mode

I2S can be configured as follows:

(1) Transmit master or receive master which uses I2Sx in half-duplex mode

(2) Master that receives and transmits concurrently in full-duplex mode

Table 94 I2S Run Mode

Operation Modes	SD	WS	CK	MCK
Master transmitting	Output	Output	Output	Output/Not use
Master receiving	Input	Output	Output	Output/Not use
Slave transmitting	Output	Input	Input	Output/Not use
Slave receiving	Input	Input	Input	Output/Not use

21.5.4.1 I2S master mode

When I2S works in master mode, the serial clock is output by pin CK, and the word selection signal is generated by pin WS. SPI_I2SPSC[MCOEN] controls whether to output master clock.

Configuration process:

(1) Configure I2SPSC bit and ODDPSC bit of SPI_I2SPSC register to define the baud rate of serial clock and the actual frequency division factor corresponding to the audio sampling frequency.

(2) Configure CPOL bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to define the clock polarity of SPI in idle state.

(3) Configure I2SMOD bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to activate I2S function and configure I2SMOD and PFSSEL bits of SPI_I2SCFG register to select I2S standard; configure DATALEN bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to select the data bits of the sound channel, and configure I2SMOD bit to select I2S master mode and transmitting terminal/receiving terminal.

(4) Configure SPI_CTRL2 register to select to enable the interrupt and DMA function or not (select required or not).

(5) Configure WS pin and CK pin to output mode; when MCOEN bit of SPI_I2SPSC is set to 1, the MCK pin should also be configured to output mode.

(6) Set the running mode of I2S by configuring the I2SMOD bit of SPI_I2SCFG.

(7) Set I2SEN bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to 1.

I2S master mode transmission process

When the data is written to the transmit buffer, the transmission will start, and the data will be transmitted from the transmit buffer to the shift register, the TXBEFLG flag position is set to 1, and the SCHDIR flag bit indicates the corresponding sound channel of the currently transmitted data. The value of SCHDIR flag bit will be updated when TXBEFLG flag bit is 1.

When transmitting the first bit of data, 16-bit data will be transmitted to the 16-bit shift register in parallel, and then transmitted from the pin MISO/SD in serial. The next data needs to be written to SPI_DATA register when TXBEFLG flag bit is 1. If TXBEIEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 is 1, an interrupt will be generated.

Before the completion of the current data transmission, write the next data to be transmitted to ensure continuous transmission of audio data.

When I2S is disabled, I2SEN can be cleared to 0 only when the flag bit TXBEFLG is 1 and BSYFLG is 0.

I2S master mode receiving process

RXBNEFLG flag is used to control the receiving sequence. RXBNEFLG flag indicates whether the receive buffer is empty; when the receive buffer is full, the RXBNEFLG flag bit will be set to 1. If RXBNEIEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 is configured, an interrupt will occur and after the user reads out the data from SPI_DATA register, the RXBNEFLG flag bit will be cleared to 0. Make sure to receive new data after reading operation; otherwise, overrun will occur and the OVRFLG flag bit will be set to 1.

The value of SCHDIR should be updated immediately after receiving data, and it depends on the WS signal generated by I2S.

Regardless of the data type and the channel length, the audio data is always received in the form of 16 bits. According to the configured data and the length of the channel, the data needs to be transmitted to the receive buffer once or twice.

Disable the I2S function, and for different audio protocols, the data length and channel length operation steps are as follows:

16-bit data length, 32-bit channel length (DATALEN=00, CHLEN=1, I2SSSEL=10), in LSB alignment mode

- Wait until the penultimate RXBNEFLG is set to 1
- Wail for 17 I2S clock cycles (software delay)
- I2SEN=0

16-bit data length, 32-bit channel length (DATALEN=00, CHLEN=1, I2SSSEL=10), in MSB alignment mode

- Wait until the last RXBNEFLG is set to 1

- Wail for 1 I2S clock cycle (software delay)
- I2SEN=0

All the other situations

- Wait until the penultimate RXBNEFLG is set to 1
- Wail for 1 I2S clock cycle (software delay)
- I2SEN=0

BSYFLG flag clock is low during data transmission.

21.5.4.2 I2S slave mode

The configuration method of slave mode is basically the same as that of master mode. In slave mode, the clock signal and WS signal are provided by external I2S device instead of I2S.

Configuration process:

(1) Configure I2SMOD bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to activate I2S function.

(2) Configure I2SSSEL bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to select the I2S standard; configure DATALEN[1:0] bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to select the bits of data; configure CHLEN bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to select the data bits per channel; configure I2SMOD bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to select I2S slave mode as transmitting terminal/receiving terminal.

(3) Configure SPI_CTRL2 register to select to enable the interrupt and DMA function or not (select required or not).

(4) Set I2SEN bit of SPI_I2SCFG register to 1.

I2S slave mode transmission process

Enable the slave device, write the data to the I2S data register, the external master device will start to communicate, and the external master device will transmit the clock signal, and when the data transmission starts, the transmitting process will begin.

When the first bit data is transmitted, the 16-bit data will be transmitted to the 16-bit shift register in parallel, and then transmitted from the pin MOSI/SD in series. When the data is transmitted from the data register to the shift register, the TXBEFLG flag bit will be set to 1; at this time if TXBEIEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 register is set, an interrupt will be generated. In order to ensure the continuity of data transmission, before the data transmission is completed, the next data should be written to SPI_DATA register; otherwise, "underrun" will occur, and the UDRFLG flag bit will be set to 1.

SCHDIR bit of SPI_STS register indicates the channel corresponding to the transmitted data. In the slave mode, the SCHDIR bit is determined by the WS signal of the external master device.

In MSB and LSB alignment mode of I2S, the first data written to the data register corresponds to the data of the left channel.

To disable I2S, wait until TXBEFLG flag bit is set to 1 and BSYFLG flag bit is cleared to 0.

I2S slave mode receiving process

RXBNEFLG bit is used to control the receiving sequence. The RXBNEFLG bit indicates whether the receive buffer is empty; after the receive buffer is full, the RXBNEFLG bit will be set to 1; if RXBNEIEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 register is configured, an interrupt will occur, and after the data is read out from SPI_DATA register, RXBNEFLG bit will be cleared to 0; make sure to receive new data after read operation; otherwise, "overrun" will occur, and the OVRFLG flag bit will be set to 1.

The value of SCHDIR should be updated immediately after receiving data, and it depends on the WS signal generated by I2S.

Regardless of the data type and the channel length, the audio data is always received in the form of 16 bits. According to the configured data and the length of the channel, the data needs to be transmitted to the receive buffer once or twice.

To disable I2S, I2SEN flag bit shall be cleared to 0 when the last RXBNEFLG received is set to 1.

21.5.5 I2S interrupt

21.5.5.1 Status flag bit

There are three state flag bits in I2S to monitor the state of I2S bus.

Transmit buffer empty flag bit TXBEFLG

When the TXBEFLG bit is 1, it indicates that the transmit buffer is empty, and the data to be transmitted can be written to the transmit buffer; after data is written, the TXBEFLG bit will be cleared to 0. (When I2S is disabled, the TXBEFLG bit is 0).

Receive buffer non-empty flag bit RXBNEFLG

When the RXBNEFLG flag bit is 1, it indicates that the receive buffer has data to be received; after read operation is performed on the SPI_DATA register, RXBNEFLG flag bit will be cleared to 0.

Busy flag bit BSYFLG

When the BSYFLG bit is 1, it indicates that I2S is in communication state (set and cleared to 0 by hardware), but in the master receiving mode, the BSYFLG flag bit is always 0 during the receiving period.

When I2S is disabled and data transmission is over, the BSYFLG flag bit will be cleared to 0.

During continuous communication:

- In the master transmitting mode, the BSYFLG flag bit is always high during the transmission period
- In the slave mode, during transmission of each data item, the BSYFLG flag bit is set to 0 within one I2S clock cycle

Channel flag bit SCHDIR

In the transmitting mode, the SCHDIR flag bit indicates whether the data transmitted on the SD pin is in the left channel or the right channel. This flag bit will be refreshed when TXBEFLG=1.

In the transmitting process of slave mode, if an underrun error occurs, the value of SCHDIR flag bit will be invalid. If communication needs to be restarted, the I2S function shall be disabled and then enabled.

In the receiving mode, the SCHDIR flag bit indicates whether the received data is from the left channel or the right channel. This flag bit is refreshed when SPI_DATA register receives data.

If an underrun error occurs in the receiving mode, the SCHDIR flag bit will be invalid. If communication needs to be restarted, the I2S function shall be disabled and then enabled.

As there is no channel selection in PCM standard, the SCHDIR flg bit is meaningless.

When OVRFLG and UDRFLG flag bits of SPI_STS register are 1 and ERRIEN=1 for SPI_CTRL2, an interrupt will be generated. The interrupt flag can be cleared by reading the value of SPI_STS register.

21.5.5.2 **Error flag bit**

Underrun flag bit UDRFLG

In the transmitting mode, if new data to be transmitted is written to SPI_DATA register before the data is transmitted, UDRFLG bit will be set to 1; at this time if ERRIEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 register is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated.

This flag bit will take effect only after I2SMOD bit of SPI_I2SCFG is set to 1. Clear the UDRFLG bit by reading SPI_STS register.

Overrun flag bit OVRFLG

In the receiving mode, if a new data is received before the data is read, OVRFLG flag bit will be set to 1. At this time if ERRIEN bit of SPI_CTRL2 register is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated, indicating the occurrence of the error.

Read SPI_DATA register to return the last correctly received data, and all the other newly received data will be lost. OVRFLG bit can be cleared by first reading SPI_STS register and then reading SPI_DATA register.

Frame error flag FREFLG

When I2S is configured in slave mode, this flag will be set to 1 by hardware. If the external maser arbitrarily changes the WS signal, this flag will be set to 1. When synchronization is lost, to recover from this state and resynchronize the external master with the I2S slave, first disable the I2S, and then re-enable it when correct level is detected on the WS line.

The loss of synchronization between the master and the slave may be caused by noise interference on the SCK communication clock or WS frame synchronization signal line. If ERRIEN bit is set, an error interrupt will be generated. When reading SPI_STS register, this flag will be cleared to 0 by software.

Table 95 I2S Interrupt Request

<table>
<tr><th>Interrupt flag</th><th>Interrupt event</th><th>Enable control bit</th><th>Clearing method</th></tr>
<tr><td>TXBEFLG</td><td>Transmit buffer empty flag</td><td>TXBEIEN</td><td>Write SPI_DATA register</td></tr>
<tr><td>RXBNEFLG</td><td>Receive buffer non-empty flag</td><td>RXBNEIEN</td><td>Read SPI_DATA register</td></tr>
<tr><td>OVRFLG</td><td>Underrun flag bit</td><td rowspan="3">ERRIEN</td><td>Read SPI_STS register</td></tr>
<tr><td>UDRFLG</td><td>Overrun flag bit</td><td>Read SPI_STS register
Read SPI_DATA register again</td></tr>
<tr><td>FREFLG</td><td>Frame error flag</td><td>Read SPI_STS register</td></tr>
</table>

21.5.5.3 **DMA function**

In I2S mode, the work mode of DMA is the same as that in SPI mode, except that it does not support CRC function.

21.6 Register address mapping

Table 96 SPI and I2S Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
SPI_CTRL1	SPI control register 1	0x00
SPI_CTRL2	SPI control register 2	0x04

Register name	Description	Offset Address
SPI_STS	SPI status register	0x08
SPI_DATA	SPI data register	0x0C
SPI_CRCPOLY	SPI CRC polynomial register	0x10
SPI_RXCRC	SPI receive CRC register	0x14
SPI_TXCRC	SPI transmit CRC register	0x18
SPI_I2SCFG	SPI I2S configuration register	0x1C
SPI_I2SPSC	SPI I2S prescaler register	0x20

21.7 Register functional description

These peripheral registers can be operated by half word (16 bits) or word (32 bits).

21.7.1 SPI control register 1 (SPI_CTRL1) (not used in I2S mode)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CPHA	R/W	Clock Phase Configure This bit indicates on the edge of which clock to start sampling 0: On the edge of the first clock 1: On the edge of the second clock Note: This bit cannot be modified during communication.
1	CPOL	R/W	Clock Polarity Configure The level state maintained by SCK when SPI is in idle state. 0: Low level 1: High level Note: This bit cannot be modified during communication
2	MSMCFG	R/W	Master/Salve Mode Configure 0: Configure as slave mode 1: Configure as master mode Note: This bit cannot be modified during communication
5:3	BRSEL	R/W	Baud Rate Divider Factor Select 000：DIV=2 001：DIV=4 010：DIV=8 011：DIV=16 100：DIV=32 101：DIV=64 110：DIV=128 111：DIV=256 Baud rate=F_{PCLK}/DIV Note: This bit cannot be modified during communication

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6	SPIEN	R/W	SPI Device Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable Note: When SPI device is disabled, please operate according to the process of disabling SPI.
7	LSBSEL	R/W	LSB First Transfer Select 0: First transmit the most significant bit (MSB) 1: First transmit the least significant bit (LSB)
8	ISSEL	R/W	Internal Slave Device Select When CTRL1_SSEN=1 (software NSS mode), configure this bit to select internal NSS level 0: Internal NSS is low 1: Internal NSS is high
9	SSEN	R/W	Software Slave Device Enable 0: Software NSS mode is disabled, and the internal NSS level is determined by external NSS pin 1: Software NSS mode is enabled, and the internal NSS level is determined by external NSS pin
10	RXOMEN	R/W	Receive Only Mode Enable 0: Transmit and receive at the same time 1: Receive-only mode RXOMEN bit and BMEN bit together determine the transmission direction in the two-line and two-way mode. In the configuration of multiple slave devices, in order to avoid data transmission collision, it is necessary to set RXOMEN bit to 1 on the slave devices that are not accessed.
11	DFLSEL	R/W	Data Frame Length Format Select 0: 8-bit data frame format 1: 16-bit data frame format Note: To ensure proper operation, write to this bit only when SPI (SPIEN = "0") is disabled.
12	CRCNXT	R/W	CRC Transfer Next Enable 0: The next transmitted data is from transmit buffer 1: The next transmitted data is from CRC register Note: After the last data is written to SPI_DATA register, set CRCNXT bit immediately.
13	CRCEN	R/W	CRC Calculate Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable CRC check function only applies to full-duplex mode. Note: To ensure proper operation, write to this bit only when SPI (SPIEN = "0") is disabled.
14	BMOEN	R/W	Bidirectional Mode Output Enable 0: Disable, namely, receive-only mode 1: Enable, namely, transmit-only mode When BMEN=1, namely, in single-line/double-line mode, this bit decides the transmission direction of transmission line.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15	BMEN	R/W	Bidirectional Mode Enable 0: Double-line unidirectional mode 1: Single-line bidirectional mode Single-line bidirectional transmission: the transmission between MOSI pin of data master and MISO pin of slave

21.7.2 SPI control register 2 (SPI_CTRL2)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	RXDEN	R/W	Receive Buffer DMA Enable When RXDEN=1, once RXBNEFLG flag is set, DMA request will be issued. 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	TXDEN	R/W	Transmit Buffer DMA Enable When this bit is set, once TXBEFLG flag is set, DMA request will be issued. 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	SSOEN	R/W	SS Output Enable SS output in master mode 0: Disable SS output, and it can work in multi-master mode. 1: Enable SS output, and it cannot work in multi-master mode. Note: Not available in I2S mode.
3	Reserved		
4	FRFCFG	R/W	Frame Format Configure 0: SPI Motorola mode 1: SPI TI mode Note: Not available in I2S mode.
5	ERRIEN	R/W	Error interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable When an error occurs, ERRIEN bit controls whether to generate the interrupt.
6	RXBNEIEN	R/W	Receive Buffer Not Empty Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable When RXBNEFLG flag bit is set to 1, an interrupt request will be generated
7	TXBEIEN	R/W	Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable When TXBEFLG fag bit is set to 1, an interrupt request will be generated
15:8	Reserved		

21.7.3 SPI status register (SPI_STS)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0002

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	RXBNEFLG	R	Receive Buffer Not Empty Flag 0: Empty 1: Not empty
1	TXBEFLG	R	Transmit Buffer Empty Flag 0: Not empty 1: Empty
2	SCHDIR	R	Sound Channel Direction Flag 0: Indicate that the left channel is transmitting or receiving the required data 1: Indicate that the right channel is transmitting or receiving the required data Note: Not used in SPI mode, without left and right channels in PCM mode.
3	UDRFLG	R	Underrun Occur Flag 0: Not occur 1: Occurred This flag bit is set by hardware, and it can be cleared by writing 0 to this bit by software. Note: It is not used in SPI mode
4	CRCEFLG	RC_W0	CRC Error Occur Flag This bit indicates whether the received CRC value matches the value of RXCRC register 0: Match 1: Not match This bit is set by hardware, can be cleared by writing 0 to this bit by software, and is not used in I2S mode.
5	MEFLG	R	Mode Error Occur Flag 0: Not occur 1: Occurred This bit is set by hardware, can be cleared by writing 0 to this bit by software, and is not used in I2S mode.
6	OVRFLG	R	Overrun Occur Flag 0: Not occur 1: Occurred This bit is set by hardware, and can be cleared by writing 0 to this bit by software.
7	BSYFLG	R	SPI Busy Flag 0: SPI is idle 1: SPI is communicating It is set or cleared by hardware.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
8	FREFLG	R	Frame Format Error Flag 0: Not occur 1: Occurred Note: This flag is used when working in TI slave mode or I2S slave mode. This bit is set to 1 by hardware and can be cleared to 0 when reading SPI_STS register.
15:9	Reserved		

21.7.4 SPI data register (SPI_DATA) (not used in I2S mode)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	DATA	R/W	Transmit Receive Data register When writing this register, the data will be written to the transmit buffer; when reading this register, the data in receive buffer will be read. The size of the buffer is consistent with the length of the data frame, that is, for 8-bit data, only DATA[7:0] will be used when transmitting and receiving data, and DATA[15:8] is invalid; for 16-bit data, DATA[15:0] will be used when transmitting and receiving data.

21.7.5 SPI CRC polynomial register (SPI_CRCPOLY) (not used in I2S mode)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0007

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CRCPOLY	R/W	CRC Polynomial Value Setup This register contains CRC polynomial of CRC computing, which can be modified, and the reset value is 0x0007.

21.7.6 SPI receive CRC register (SPI_RXCRC) (not used in I2S mode)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	RXCRC	R	Receive Data CRC Value The CRC data of the data received and calculated by hardware are stored in this register; the bits and the length of data frames are consistent, that is, if the received data are 8 bits, the CRC computing is made based on CRC8; if the received data are 16 bits, the CRC computing is made based on CRC16. When CRCEN is set, the hardware clears the register. Note: When BSYFLG bit is set to 1, the value of reading RXCRC register may be wrong.

21.7.7 SPI transmit CRC register (SPI_TXCRC) (not used in I2S mode)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	TXCRC	R	Transmit Data CRC Value The CRC data of transmitted data calculated by hardware is stored in this register; the bits and the length of data frames are consistent, that is, if the transmitted data are 8 bits, the CRC computing is made based on CRC8; if the transmitted data is are 16 bits, the CRC computing is made based on CRC16. When CRCEN is set, the hardware clears the register. Note: When BSYFLG bit is set to 1, the value of reading RXCRC register may be wrong.

21.7.8 SPI_I2S configuration register (SPI_I2SCFG)

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value: 0x0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CHLEN	R/W	Channel Length Configure The channel length refers to the data bits per audio channel 0: 16-bit width 1: 32-bit width The sound channel length can be configured successfully only when the sound channel length is greater than the data length; otherwise, the hardware will automatically adjust the sound channel length; this bit can only be configured when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.
2:1	DATALEN	R/W	Configure the Length of the Data to Be Transferred 00: 16-bit data length 01: 24-bit data length 10: 32-bit data length 11: Disable This bit can only be configured when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.
3	CPOL	R/W	Idle State Clock Polarity Configure 0: Low level 1: High level This bit can only be configured when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.
5:4	I2SSSEL	R/W	I2S Standard Select 00: I2S Philips standard 01: High-byte alignment standard (left alignment) 10: Low-byte alignment standard (right alignment) 11: PCM standard This bit can only be configured when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.
6	Reserved		
7	PFSSEL	R/W	PCM Frame Synchronization Mode Select 0: Synchronization of short frames 1: Synchronization of long frames Apply only to PCM standard (I2SSSEL=11); this bit can only be configured when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:8	I2SMOD	R/W	I2S Master/Slave Transmit/Receive Mode Configure 00: Slave device transmits 01: Slave device receives 10: Master device transmits 11: Master device receives This bit can only be configured when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.
10	I2SEN	R/W	I2S Enable 0: Disable I2S 1: Enable I2S Note: It is not used in SPI mode.
11	MODESEL	R/W	SPI/I2C Mode Select 0: Select SPI mode 1: Select I2S mode Note: This bit can be set only when SPI or I2S is disabled.
15:12	Reserved		

21.7.9 SPI_I2S prescaler register (SPI_I2SPSC) (not used in SPI mode)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0002

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	I2SPSC	R/W	I2S Linear Prescaler Factor Configure I2SPSC cannot be set to 0 and 1; this bit can be configured only when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.
8	ODDPSC	R/W	Configure the prescaler factor to be odd 0: Actual division factor=I2SPSC*2 1: Actual division factor=(I2SPSC*2)+1 This bit can only be configured when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.
9	MCOEN	R/W	Master Device Clock Output Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable This bit can only be configured when I2SEN=0, and is not used in SPI mode.
15:10	Reserved		

22 Quad serial peripheral interface (QSPI)

22.1 Introduction

QSPI is a serial data bus interface, which consists of clock (SCLK), chip selection signal (CS), and four data lines (IO[0:3]). It connects single, double or four-line external SPI Flash memory media. The interface has four transmission modes: transmit and receive, transmit only, receive only, and EEPROM read. The transmission mode is controlled by software.

22.2 Main characteristics

QSPI has programmable clock polarity and clock phase. Integrate FIFO used for transmitting and receiving, with FIFO depth of 8, and FIFO bit width of 32-bit, with four transmission modes, support transmission of data frame from 1 bit to 16 bits, support hardware or software to control the chip selection signal line; in the four -line transmission mode, support clock extension, variable instruction length, address length, wait cycle, and data frame size; when receiving serial data, the programmable delay of sampling time can achieve higher sampling ratio of serial data bits.

22.3 Functional Description

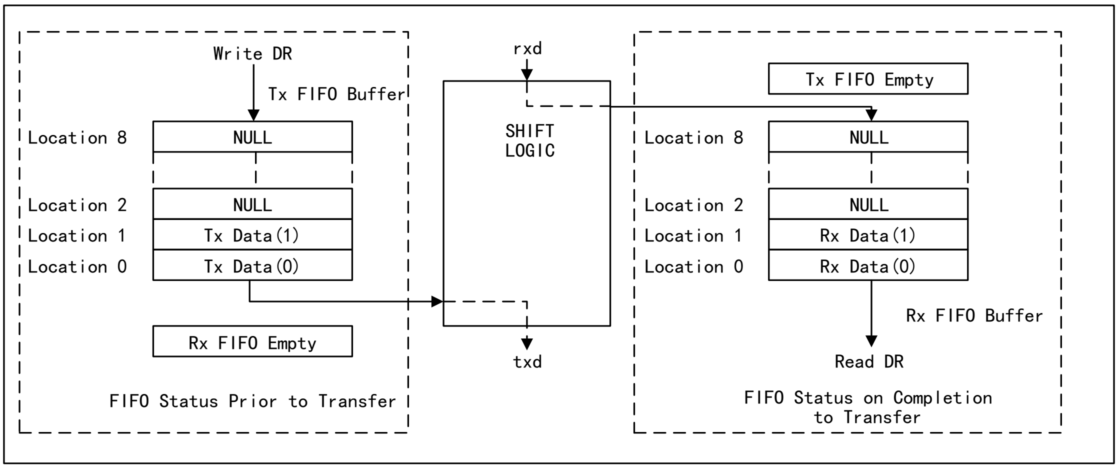
22.3.1 Transmission mode

This chapter discusses the operation of QSPI in different modes when data are transmitted on the serial bus. The transmission mode (TXMODE) is determined by TXMODE of the control register 1 (QSPI_CTRL1).

22.3.2 Transmitting and receiving

When TXMODE=2'b00, both transmit and receive logic are valid. When the data is written to the transmit FIFO and the number of data is greater than the FIFO transmitting threshold (TFTH of QSPI_TFTL register), the transmission will start. The serial data is transmitted to the transmitting data line and reaches the target device. Meanwhile, the data on the receive data line will be transmitted from the receive shift register to the receive FIFO.

Figure 99 QSPI Transmit FIFO State in Transmitting and Receiving State

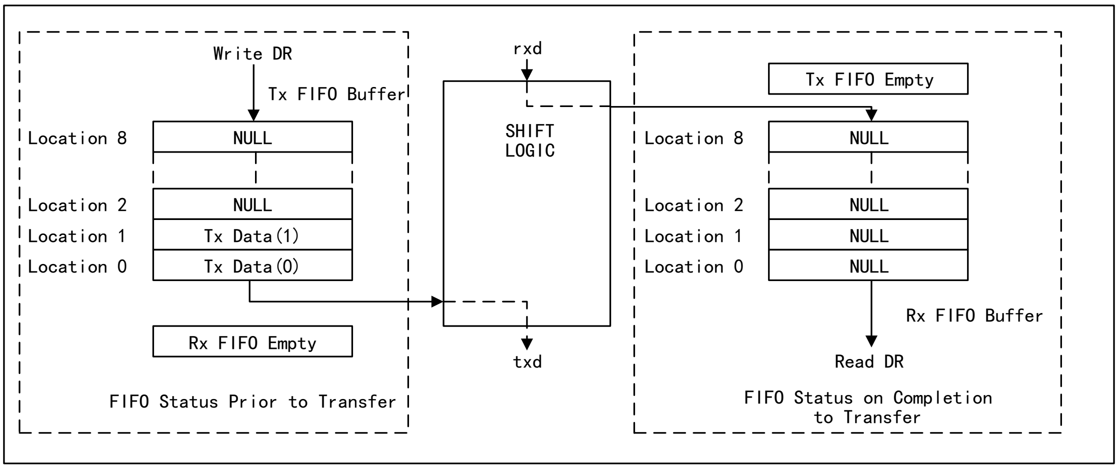


Transmit only

When TXMODE=2'b01, only the transmitting logic unit is effective. The receiving logic unit is ineffective, when the data is written to the transmit FIFO and the number of data is greater than the FIFO transmitting threshold (TFTH of QSPI_TFTL register), the transmission will start, and the serial data will be transmitted to the transmitting data line and reach the target device. Data on the receive data line will be ignored. Therefore, no data is stored in the receive FIFO.

The following figure shows the FIFO level before the serial transfer starts and after the transfer is completed respectively. In this example, two data words are transferred from QSPI in a continuous transfer form to an external serial device.

Figure 100 QSPI Transmit FIFO State in Transmitting State

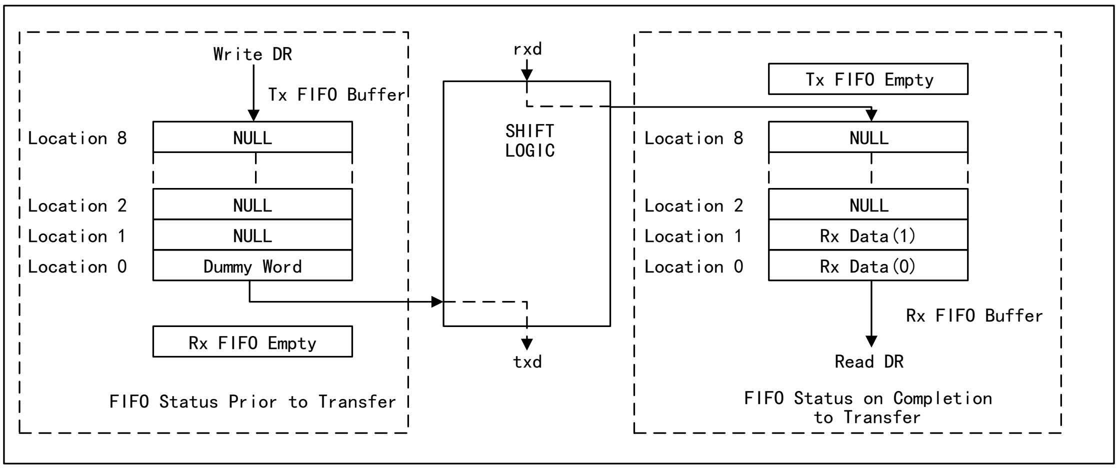


Receive only

When TXMODE=2'b10, only the receiving logic unit is effective, and the transmitting logic unit is ineffective. No data will be transmitted. The data on the receive data line will be transmitted from the receive shift register to the receive FIFO. To start a transmission, an invalid data should be written to the transmit FIFO.

The following figure shows the FIFO level before the serial transfer starts and after the transfer is completed respectively. In this example, QSPI continuously receives two data from an external serial device.

Figure 101 QSPI Transmit FIFO State in Receive-only State

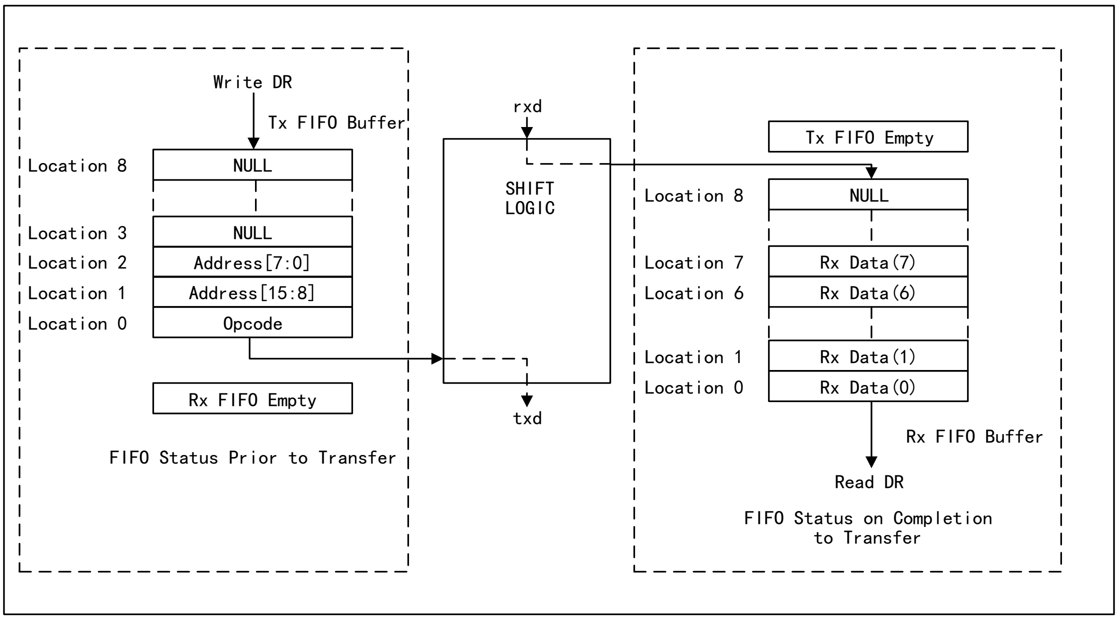


22.3.2.1 **EEPROM (electrically erasable programmable read-only memory) read**

When TXMODE=2'b11, the transmitted data is used to transmit the instruction/address to the corresponding external device. Three data frames (8-bit instruction code, 8-bit high address, and 8-bit low address.) are usually required. In the process of transmitting data, the receiving logic unit will not capture any data on the receiving data line until the transmit FIFO is empty. Namely, when the transmit FIFO is empty, the receive logic unit starts to become effective and starts to receive data until the number of data frames received by QSPI is equal to the value of NDF field in QSPI_CTRL2 register plus one.

The following figure shows the FIFO level before the serial transfer starts and after the transfer is completed respectively. In this example, QSPI continuously receives two data from an external serial device.

Figure 102 FIFO State in EEPROM Read Transmission Mode



22.3.3 Data transfer

Data transfer is started by external master. After entering the transmit FIFO, the number of valid data will be more than the TFTH number of QSPI_TFTL register, and an external slave device will be selected. When data is being transmitted, the register state is set as the BUSY flag. A new external transfer can be tried only after the BUSY flag is cleared.

22.3.4 Clock ratio

Overview of clock ratio

QSPI works in an oversampling structure. For the master mode of operation, the clock (sclk_out) cycle of peripheral device is a multiple core clock (qspi_clk).

Description of clock ratio

When the QSPI macro cell is set as a master device, the maximum frequency (sclk_out) of the bit rate clock is half the qspi_clk frequency. This allows shift control logic to capture data at one clock edge of sclk_out and derive data at the opposite edge.

Sclk_out frequency can be obtained from the following formula:

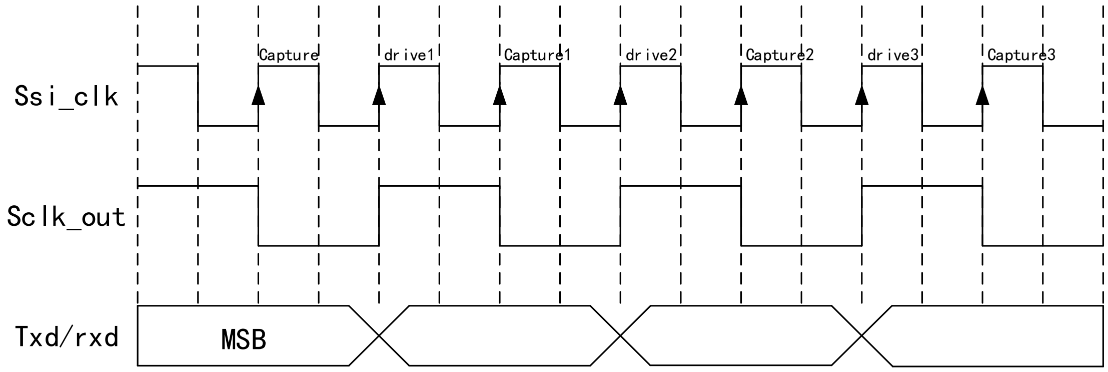
$$F_{sclk\_out}=F_{ssi\_CLK}/SCKDIV$$

The SCKDIV programmable register is kept within a range with an average value of 0-65,534. Assuming SCKDIV=0, sclk_out will be disabled.

sclk_out line can be switched only when an active transfer is in progress. During the rest of the time, as defined by the serial protocol of its operation, it will stay idle.

The figure below shows the maximum ratio between sclk_out and qspi_clk.

Figure 103 Maximum Ratio between sclk_out and qspi_clk



Overview of maximum ratio

The frequency ratio rule between (sclk_out/sclk_in) bit rate and QSPI peripheral device clock (qspi_clk) is summarized as follows:

Fqspi_clk>= 2×（maximum Fsclk_out）

22.3.5 Receive and transmit FIFO buffers

Overview of receive and transmit FIFO buffers

The FIFO buffer used by QSPI is an internal Class-D trigger. The serial specification states that the length of a serial transfer (data frame) is 4-32 bits, so the length of transmit and receive FIFO buffer is fixed at 32 bits. Data frames less than 32 bits must be right aligned when they are written to the transmit FIFO buffer. The shift control logic will automatically right align the data received by the receive FIFO buffer. QSPI_TFTL determines the level of FIFO entries that generate interrupts.

AHB transmits the read instruction to QSPI data register (QSPI_ DATA) and the data will pop up from the receive FIFO. When the number of FIFO entries is greater than or equal to FIFO threshold plus 1, FIFO full interrupt request (qspi_rxf_intr) will occur to receive FIFO. The threshold that is set by the programmable register QSPI_RFTL determines the level of FIFO entries that generate interrupts.

The threshold allows an instruction of which the FIFO will be empty to be transmitted to the processor. When the receive shift logic attempts to transfer data to the nearly full receive FIFO, an receive FIFO excess interrupt will be generated. Then, the newly received data will be lost. If you attempt to read data from an empty receive FIFO, a receive FIFO underrun interrupt will be generated. In such case, the processor will be warned that the read data is invalid.

22.3.6 Receive data (RXD) sampling delay

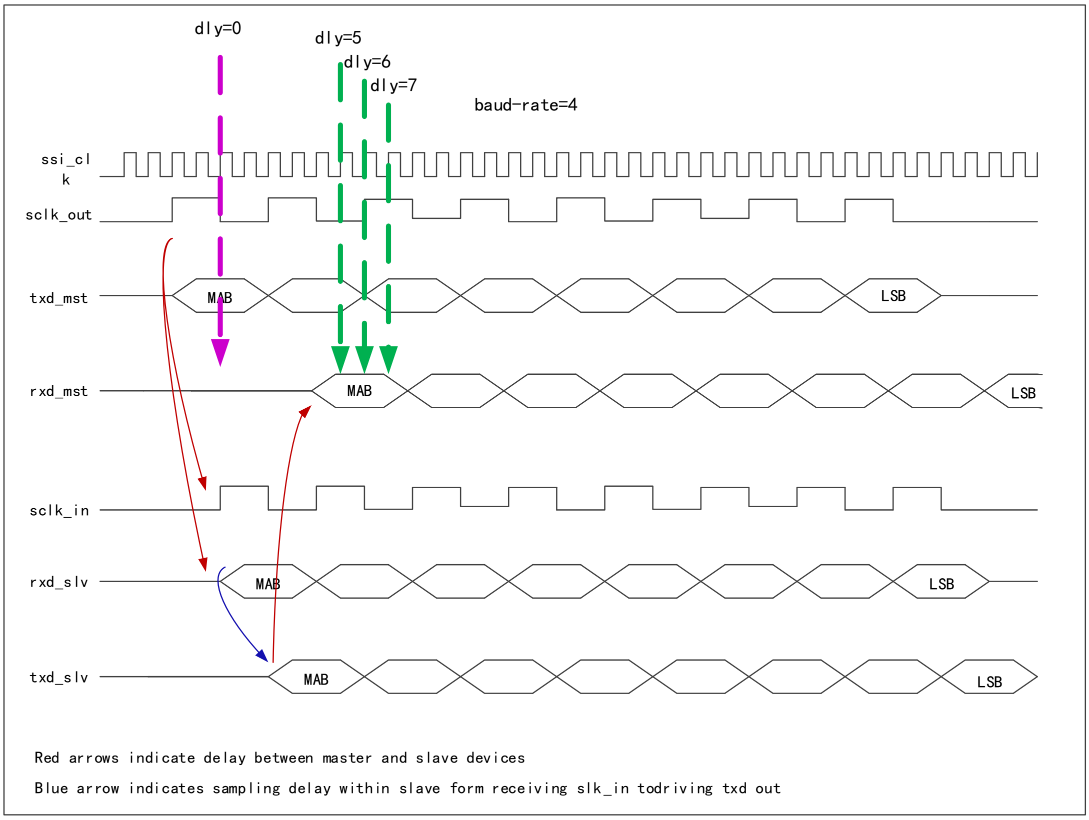
Overview of receive data (RXD) sample delay

When QSPI is set as the master, other logics can be included in the design to delay the default sampling time of the received data signal. Additional logic helps to increase the maximum achievable frequency of the serial bus.

Description of receive data (RXD) sample delay

The delay on the round-trip route between the sclk_out signal issued by the master and the RXD signal transmitted by the slave can be considered as the timing of the received signal-as seen by the master-has left the normal sampling time. This is illustrated by the following figure:

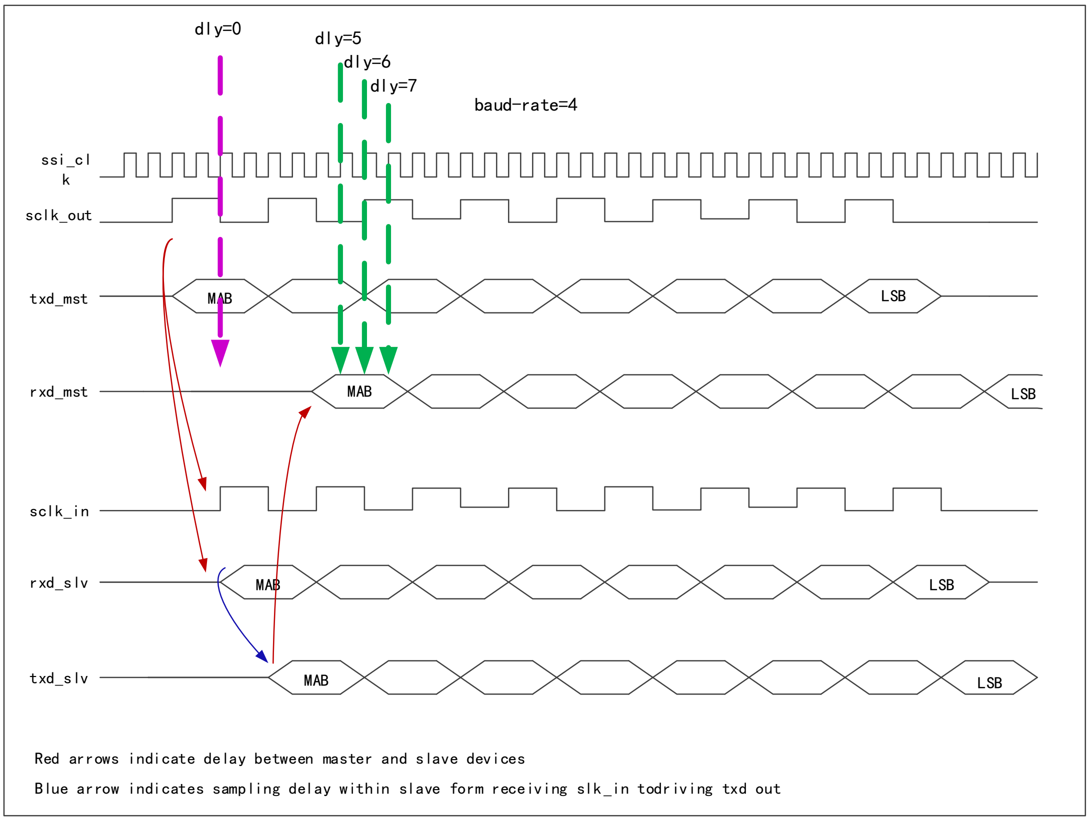
Figure 104 Description of Receive Data (RXD) Sample Delay



The slave uses the sclk_out signal issued by the master as the gate in order to obtain the data of the RXD signal mapped to the serial bus. The routing and sampling delay of the slave device for the signal issued by sclk_out can mean that the RXD bit is not stable to a correct value before the master collects the RXD signal sample. The following figure shows how the routing delay of an RXD signal generates an incorrect RXD value at the default time of the master acquisition port. If there is no received sample delay logic, it is required to improve the baud rate of transfer to ensure that the installation time of the received data signal is within the range, which will result in reduction of the frequency of the serial interface.

When the RXD sample delay logic is included, the delay value can be dynamically edited to change the sampling time of RXD signal from the default value to the number of cycles of qspi_clk. RXD sample delay logic can be set to use both the positive and negative edges of qspi_clk to collect RXD signal samples. This will increase the number of sampling points in one sclk_out cycle, and help to satisfy the need for timing of higher frequency. QSPI uses QSPI_RSD register to change the sampling point of RXD signal.

Figure 105 Collection of RXD Signal Samples with QSPI



22.3.7 QSPI interrupt

22.3.7.1 QSPI interrupt description

qspi_txe_intr

It is set when the transmit FIFO is less than or equal to its threshold. The threshold that is set by the programmable register QSPI_RFTL determines the level of FIFO entries that generate interrupts. When data is written to the transmit FIFO buffer, the interrupt will be cleared by hardware to exceed the threshold level.

qspi_txo_intr

It is set when an AHB access attempts to write to a fully written transmit FIFO. After set, the data written from AHB will be ignored. Before the transmit FIFO overrun interrupt clear register (QSPI_TFOIC) is read, the interrupt still remains set.

qspi_rxf_intr

When the receive FIFO is equal to or greater than its threshold, it will be set and the lower prevention service is required. The threshold that is set by the programmable register QSPI_RFTL determines the level of FIFO entries that generate interrupts. When data is read from the receive FIFO buffer, the interrupt will be cleared by hardware to exceed the threshold level.

qspi_rxo_intr

It is set when the receive logic attempts to put data in the fully written receive FIFO. When set, the newly received data will be ignored. Before the receive FIFO overrun interrupt clear register (QSPI_RFOIC) is read, the interrupt still remains set.

qspi_rxu_intr

It is set when an AHB access attempts to read from an empty receive FIFO. After set, it is read as zero from the receive FIFO. Before the receive FIFO underrun interrupt clear register (QSPI_RFUIC) is read, the interrupt still remains set.

qspi_mst_intr

Displayed only when the QSPI component is set as a serial master device. When the serial master on another serial bus selects the QSPI master as the serial slave and actively transfers data, the interrupt is set. This will notify the processor of possible contention on the serial bus. Before the multi-master interrupt clear register (QSPI_MIC) is read, the interrupt still remains set.

22.3.8 Enhanced SPI mode

22.3.8.1 Enhanced SPI mode write operation

QSPI write operation can be divided into three phases, namely, instruction phase, address phase and data phase.

The following register locations are used for a write operation

Specified frame transmission format of QSPI_CTRL1 FRF bit

Specified instruction length of QSPI_CTRL3 INSLEN bit

Specified address length of QSPI_CTRL3 ADDRLEN bit

Specified data length of QSPI_CTRL1 DFS bit

Only when both the instruction and address are written to the data register, will QSPI start a write transmission.

To initiate a Quad write operation, FRF of QSPI_CTRL1 must be set to 10, which means that the type of transfer is set. For each write instruction, the data will be transferred in the specified format of FRF bit of QSPI_CTRL1.

The followings are some possible situations of enhanced SPI mode write operation:

- Case A: Both the instruction and address are transmitted in standard SPI format
- Case B: The instruction is transmitted in standard format, while the address is transmitted in enhanced SPI format
- Case C: Both the instruction and address are transmitted in enhanced SPI format

Enhanced SPI mode read operation

QSPI read operation can be divided into four phases, namely, instruction phase, address phase, wait cycle and data phase.

The wait cycle can be programmed with WAITCYC of QSPI_CTRL3. The wait cycle is used to lock and change the slave mode, from input to output, and can vary with the devices. For a read operation, QSPI transmits the instruction and control data at one time, and after receiving the NDF (QSPI_CTRL2 register) number of data frame, disable the slave selection signal. To initiate a Quad read operation, FRF of QSPI_CTRL1 is set to 00/01/10 respectively. This will set the type of transfer, and the data of each read instruction will be transferred in the specified form in FRF of QSPI_CTRL1.

The followings are four possible situations of enhanced SPI mode write operation:

- Case A: Both the instruction and address are transmitted in standard SIP format
- Case B: The instruction is transmitted in standard format, while the address is transmitted in enhanced SPI format
- Case C: Both the instruction and address are transmitted in enhanced SPI format
- Case D:There is no instruction read and address read transmission

Clock extension function

When QSPI and external SPI devices are transmitting data, since the software may not guarantee the timeliness of transmission, the transmit FIFO may be empty when QSPI is transmitting data, so no valid data can be transmitted and overrun error will occur. When receiving, the receive FIFO may be full, the subsequent data could not be received normally and overrun error will occur. To avoid the above problems, the software must abandon the transmission and restart a transmission. To handle the above problems, QSPI provides clock extension function. If the transmit FIFO is empty by the end of one transmission of transmitting data, QSPI will close the clock signal. When there are enough data (the data volume is higher than the transmit data threshold TFTH) in the transmit FIFO, QSPI will output the clock signal again and continue the transmission. If the receive FIFO has been full by the end of receiving of data, QSPI will close the clock signal until the data in the receive FIFO is read (the data volume is lower than the receive data threshold value QSPI_ RFTL). Set the No. 30 bit of QSPI_CTRL3 register and the clock extension function can be enabled or disabled. If the clock extension function is enabled, the length of the transmitted data frame must be filled out in the QSPI_CTRL2 register.

22.3.9 DMA function

The request/response DMA mechanism in QSPI facilitates high-speed data transmission and improves system efficiency.

DMA function of QSPI mode can be enabled by configuring RDMAEN and TDMAEN bits of QSPI_DMACTRL register.

- When transmitting: When the valid data in the transmit FIFO level register QSPI_TFL is equal to or lower than the value configured by the DMATDL bit, a DMA transmitting data request will be generated.
- When receiving: When the valid data in the receive FIFO level register QSPI_RFL is equal to or higher than the value configured by the DMARDL bit, a DMA receiving data request will be generated.

22.4 Register address mapping

Table 97 QSPI Register Address Mapping Table

Register name	Description	Offset Address
QSPI_CTRL1	Control register 1	0x0
QSPI_CTRL2	Control register 2	0x4
QSPI_SSIEN	Enable register	0x8
QSPI_SLAEN	Slave enable register	0x10
QSPI_BR	Baud rate register	0x14
QSPI_TFTL	Transmit FIFO threshold level register	0x18
QSPI_RFTL	Receive FIFO threshold level register	0x1C
QSPI_TFL	Transmit FIFO level register	0x20
QSPI_RFL	Receive FIFO level register	0x24
QSPI_STS	Status register	0x28
QSPI_INTEN	Interrupt enable register	0x2C
QSPI_ISTS	Interrupt state register	0x30
QSPI_RIS	Original interrupt state register	0x34

Register name	Description	Offset Address
QSPI_TFOIC	Transmit FIFO overrun interrupt clear register	0x38
QSPI_RFOIC	Receive FIFO overrun interrupt clear register	0x3C
QSPI_RFUIC	Receive FIFO underrun interrupt clear register	0x40
QSPI_MIC	Multi-master interrupt clear register	0x44
QSPI_ICF	Interrupt clear register	0x48
QSPI_DMACTRL	DMA control register	0x4C
QSPI_DMATDL	DMA transmitting data level register	0x50
QSPI_DMARDL	DMA receive data level register	0x54
QSPI_DATA	Data register	0x60
QSPI_RSD	RX sample delay register	0xF0
QSPI_CTRL3	Control register	0xF4
QSPI_IOSW	IO shift register	0x200

22.5 Register functional description

22.5.1 Control register 1 (QSPI_CTRL1)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 4007

Description: This register controls the transmission of serial data. When QSPI is started, it is not possible to write to this register. Enable or disable QSPI by writing QSPI_CTRL2 register.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	DFS	RW	Data frame size Select the data frame length. When the data frame size is programmed to be less than 32 bits, the receive data will be automatically right aligned by the receiving logic, and the high bit will be filled with the receive FIFO zero. Before writing the transmit FIFO, the transmission data must be right adjusted. The transmission logic ignores the unused high bits when transferring data. If SPI_FRF =01, the value of DFS must be a multiple of 2 If SPI_FRF =10, the value of DFS must be a multiple of 4: 0x0 (DFS_01_BIT): Reserved 0x1 (DFS_02_BIT): Reserved 0x2 (DFS_03_BIT): Reserved 0x3 (DFS_04_BIT): 04-bit serial data transmission 0x4 (DFS_05_BIT): 05-bit serial data transmission 0x5 (DFS_06_BIT): 06-bit serial data transmission 0x6 (DFS_07_BIT): 07-bit serial data transmission 0x7 (DFS_08_BIT): 08-bit serial data transmission 0x8 (DFS_09_BIT): 09-bit serial data transmission 0x9 (DFS_10_BIT): 10-bit serial data transmission 0xa (DFS_11_BIT): 11-bit serial data transmission 0xb (DFS_12_BIT): 12-bit serial data transmission 0xc (DFS_13_BIT): 13-bit serial data transmission 0xd (DFS_14_BIT): 14-bit serial data transmission 0xe (DFS_15_BIT): 15-bit serial data transmission 0xf (DFS_16_BIT): 16-bit serial data transmission 0x10 (DFS_17_BIT): 17-bit serial data transmission 0x11 (DFS_18_BIT): 18-bit serial data transmission 0x12 (DFS_19_BIT): 19-bit serial data transmission 0x13 (DFS_20_BIT): 20-bit serial data transmission 0x14 (DFS_21_BIT): 21-bit serial data transmission 0x15 (DFS_22_BIT): 22-bit serial data transmission 0x16 (DFS_23_BIT): 23-bit serial data transmission 0x17 (DFS_24_BIT): 24-bit serial data transmission 0x18 (DFS_25_BIT): 25-bit serial data transmission 0x19 (DFS_26_BIT): 26-bit serial data transmission 0x1a (DFS_27_BIT): 27-bit serial data transmission 0x1b (DFS_28_BIT): 28-bit serial data transmission 0x1c (DFS_29_BIT): 29-bit serial data transmission 0x1d (DFS_30_BIT): 30-bit serial data transmission 0x1e (DFS_31_BIT): 31-bit serial data transmission 0x1f (DFS_32_BIT): 32-bit serial data transmission
7:5	Reserved		
8	CPHA	R/W	Clock phase 0x0: Data sampling starts from the edge of the first clock 0x1: Data sampling starts from the edge of the second clock.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9	CPOL	R/W	Clock polarity 0x0: In idle state, the clock is effective at low level 0x1: In idle state, the clock is effective at high level
11:10	TXMODE	R/W	Transport Mode Select the transmission mode of serial communication. This field does not affect the repeatability of the transmission, and only indicates whether the receive or transmit data is valid. In the transmit-only mode, the data received from external device is invalid and is not stored in the receive FIFO memory. In the receive-only mode, the data transmitted is invalid. After the first write to the transmit FIFO, the same word will be retransmitted during transmission. In the transmit and receive mode, both the transmit and receive data are valid. The data received from the external device are stored in the receive FIFO memory. 0x0 (TX_ AND_ RX): Transmit and receive; not applicable to enhanced SPI operation mode 0x1 (TX_ONLY): Transmit-only mode; or write in enhanced SPI operation mode 0x2 (RX_ONLY): Receive-only mode; or read in enhanced SPI operation mode 0x3 (EEPROM_ READ): EEPROM read mode; not applicable to enhanced SPI operation mode
13:12	Reserved		
14	SSTEN	R/W	Enable chip selection reversal When working in normal SPI mode and the clock phase (SCPH) is 0, this register controls the chip selection signal line between data frames 1: Between continuous frames, the chip selection signal line will be reversed; when the chip selection signal line is at high level, the level of CLK signal will be default value.
21:15	Reserved		
23:22	FRF	R/W	Frame format Select the data frame format to transmit/receive data 00 (SPI_STANDARD): Standard SPI mode 01 (SPI_DUAL): Dual SPI mode 10 (SPI_QUAD): Quad SPI mode 11: Reserved
31:24	Reserved		

22.5.2 Control register 2 (QSPI_CTRL2)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	NDF	R/W	Number of data frames When TXMODE=10 or TXMODE=11, the register field sets the number of data frames continuously received by QSPI. QSPI continues to receive serial data until the number of data frames received equals the register value plus 1, so that you can receive up to 64kb data in continuous transmission.
31:16	Reserved		

22.5.3 Enable register (QSPI_SSIEN)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	EN	R/W	Enable QSPI Enable or disable all QSPI operations. When QSPI is disabled, all serial transmissions will stop immediately. When the device is disabled, the transmit and receive FIFO buffers will be cleared. When the device is enabled, it will be impossible to program some QSPI control registers.
31:1	Reserved		

22.5.4 Slave enable register (QSPI_SLAEN)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	SLAEN	R/W	Enable the slave 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:1	Reserved		

22.5.5 Baud rate register (QSPI_BR)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	CLKDIV	R/W	SSI clock divider The LSB of this field is always set to 0, unaffected by write operation, which ensures that an even number is stored in this register. If this value is 0, the serial output clock (sclk_out) will be disabled. Output frequency of Sclk_out is obtained by the following equation: Fsclk_out=Fqspi_clk/SCKDIV SCKDIV is any even number between 2 and 65534. For example: When Fqspi_clk=3.6864MHz and SCKDIV=2 Fsclk_out=3.6864/2=1.8432MHz
31:16	Reserved		

22.5.6 Transmit FIFO threshold level register (QSPI_TFTL)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	TFT	R/W	Transmit FIFO threshold Transmit FIFO controller triggers the control of interrupt entry level (or lower). FIFO depth can be set within the range of 8-256; the size of this register is the same as the number of address bits needed to access FIFO. If you attempt to set this value to be greater than or equal to the depth of the FIFO, this field will not be written and will stay at its current value. When the number of transmit FIFO entries is less than or equal to this value, the transmit FIFO empty interrupt will be triggered.
15:3	Reserved		
18:16	TFTH	R/W	Transmit triggering FIFO level Used to control the entry level in the transmit FIFO, above which the transmission will start on the serial line. This register can be used to ensure that there are enough data in the transmit FIFO before the write operation starts on the serial line. These fields are only valid for the master operation mode.
31:19	Reserved		

22.5.7 Receive FIFO threshold level register (QSPI_RFTL)

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	RFT	R/W	Receive FIFO threshold Receive FIFO controller triggers the control of interrupt entry level (or higher). FIFO depth can be set within the range of 8-256; the size of this register is the same as the number of address bits needed to access FIFO. If you attempt to set this value to be greater than the depth of the FIFO, this field will not be written and will stay at its current value. When the number of receive FIFO entries is greater than or equal to this value plus 1, the receive FIFO full interrupt will be triggered.
31:3	Reserved		

22.5.8 Transmit FIFO level register (QSPI_TFL)

Offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	TFL	R/W	Transmit FIFO level Include the quantity of valid data entries in transmit FIFO.
31:3	Reserved		

22.5.9 Receive FIFO level register (QSPI_RFL)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	RFL	R/W	Receive FIFO level Include the quantity of valid data entries in receive FIFO.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:3	Reserved		

22.5.10 State register (QSPI_STS)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value: 0x0000 0006

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	BUSYF	R/W	SSI Busy flag When it is set, it means serial transmission is in progress; when it is cleared, it means QSPI is in idle or disabled state. 0x1 (ACTIVE): QSP is actively transmitting data 0x0 (INACTIVE): QSP is in idle or disabled state
1	TFNF	R/W	Flag that transmit FIFO is not full Set when the transmit FIFO contains one or more idle positions; clear when FIFO is full. 0x1 (NOT_FULL): Transmit FIFO is not full 0x0 (FULL): Transmit FIFO is full
2	TFEF	R/W	Flag that the transmit FIFO is empty When the transmit FIFO is completely empty, set this bit. When the transmit FIFO contains one or more valid entries, clear this bit. This bit field does not request interrupt. 0x1 (EMPTY): Transmit FIFO has been empty 0x0 (NOT_EMPTY): Transmit FIFO is not empty
3	RFNEF	R/W	Flag that the receive FIFO is not empty Set when the receive FIFO contains one or more entries; clear when the receive FIFO is empty. The software can poll this bit to completely clear the receive FIFO. 0x1 (NOT_EMPTY): Receive FIFO is not empty 0x1 (EMPTY): Receive FIFO has been empty
4	RFFF	R/W	Flag that the receive FIFO is full When the receive FIFO is completely full, set this bit. When the receive FIFO contains one or more empty positions, clear this bit. 0x1 (FULL): Receive FIFO is full 0x1 (NOT_FULL): Receive FIFO is not full
5	Reserved		
6	DCEF	R/W	Data conflict error flag bit Related only when QSPI is configured as the master. When the QSPI master is in the process of transmission, if other master enables ss_in_n input, the bit will be set. This will inform the processor that the last data transmission is stopped before it is completed. This bit is cleared when read. 0x1 (TX_COLLISION_ERROR): Transmit data conflict error 0x0 (NO_ERROR_CONDITION: No error
31:7	Reserved		

22.5.11 Interrupt enable register (QSPI_INTEN)

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value: 0x0000 007F

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TFEIE	R/W	Transmit FIFO interrupt enable 0 (MASKED): qspi_txe_intr interrupt masked 1 (UNMASKED): qspi_txe_intr interrupt enabled
1	TFOIE	R/W	Transmit FIFO overrun interrupt enable 0 (MASKED): qspi_txo_intr interrupt masked 1 (UNMASKED): qspi_txo_intr interrupt enables
2	RFUIE	R/W	Receive FIFO underrun interrupt enable 0 (MASKED): qspi_rxu_intr interrupt masked 1 (UNMASKED): qspi_rxu_intr interrupt enabled
3	RFOIE	R/W	Receive FIFO overrun interrupt enable 0 (MASKED): qspi_rxo_intr interrupt masked 1 (UNMASKED): qspi_rxo_intr interrupt enabled
4	RFFIE	R/W	Receive FIFO full interrupt enable 0 (MASKED): qspi_rxf_intr interrupt masked 1 (UNMASKED): qspi_rxf_intr interrupt enabled
5	MSTIE	R/W	Multi-master contention interrupt enable If QSPI is set to serial master, this bit field does not exist. 0 (MASKED): qspi_mst_intr interrupt masked 1 (UNMASKED): qspi_mst_intr interrupt enabled
31:6	Reserved		

22.5.12 Interrupt state register (QSPI_ISTS)

Offset address: 0x30

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TFEIF	R	Transmit FIFO empty interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): Interrupt unactivated after qspi_txe_intr is masked 1 (ACTIVE): Interrupt activated after qspi_txe_intr is masked
1	TFOIF	R	Transmit FIFO overrun interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): Interrupt unactivated after qspi_txo_intr is masked 1 (ACTIVE): Interrupt activated after qspi_txo_intr is masked
2	RFUIF	R	Receive FIFO underrun interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): Interrupt unactivated after qspi_rxu_intr is masked 1 (ACTIVE): Interrupt activated after qspi_rxu_intr is masked
3	RFOIF	R	Receive FIFO overrun interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): Interrupt is unactivated after qspi_rxo_intr is masked 1 (ACTIVE): Interrupt activated after qspi_rxo_intr is masked
4	RFFIF	R	Receive FIFO full interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): Interrupt unactivated after qspi_rxf_intr is masked 1 (ACTIVE): Interrupt activated after qspi_rxf_intr is masked
5	MSTIF	R	Multi-master contention interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): Interrupt unactivated after qspi_mst_intr is masked 1 (ACTIVE): Interrupt activated after qspi_mst_intr is masked

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:6	Reserved		

22.5.13 Original interrupt state register (QSPI_RIS)

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TFEIF	R	Transmit FIFO empty original interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): qspi_txe_intr interrupt unactivated before masked 1 (ACTIVE): qspi_txe_intr interrupt activated before masked
1	TFOIF	R	Transmit FIFO overrun original interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): qspi_txo_intr interrupt is unactivated before masked 1 (ACTIVE): qspi_txo_intr interrupt is activated before masked
2	RFUIF	R	Receive FIFO underrun original interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): qspi_rxu_intr interrupt is unactivated before masked 1 (ACTIVE): qspi_rxu_intr interrupt is activated before masked
3	RXOIR	R	Receive FIFO overrun original interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): qspi_rxo_intr interrupt is unactivated before masked 1 (ACTIVE): qspi_rxo_intr interrupt is activated before masked
4	RXFIR	R	Receive FIFO full original interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): Interrupt unactivated after qspi_rxf_intr is masked 1 (ACTIVE): Interrupt activated after qspi_rxf_intr is masked
5	MSTIR	R	Multi-master contention original interrupt state 0 (INACTIVE): Interrupt is unactivated after qspi_mst_intr is masked 1 (ACTIVE): Interrupt activated after qspi_mst_intr is masked
31:6	Reserved		

22.5.14 Transmit FIFO overrun interrupt clear register (QSPI_TFOIC)

Offset address: 0x38

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TFOIC	R	Clear transmit FIFO overrun interrupt This register reflects the state of the interrupt and reads and clears the qspi_txo_intr interrupt from this register, and write is invalid.
31:1	Reserved		

22.5.15 Receive FIFO overrun interrupt clear register (QSPI_RFOIC)

Offset address: 0x3C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	RFOIC	R	Clear receive FIFO overrun interrupt This register reflects the state of the interrupt. Read from this register and qspi_rxo_intr interrupt will be cleared; write is invalid.
31:1	Reserved		

22.5.16 Receive FIFO underrun interrupt clear register (QSPI_RFUIC)

Offset address: 0x40

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	RFUIC	R	Clear receive FIFO underrun interrupt This register reflects the state of the interrupt. Read from this register and qspi_rxu_intr interrupt will be cleared; write is invalid.
31:1	Reserved		

22.5.17 Multi-master interrupt clear register (QSPI_MIC)

Offset address: 0x44

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	MIC	R	Clear multi-master contention interrupt This register reflects the state of the interrupt. Read from this register and qspi_mst_intr interrupt will be cleared; write is invalid.
31:1	Reserved		

22.5.18 Interrupt clear register (QSPI_ICF)

Offset address: 0x48

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	ICF	R	Clear interrupt If any interrupt below is in active state, set this register. Read and qspi_txo_intr, qspi_rxu_intr, qspi_rxo_intr and qspi_mst_intr interrupts will be cleared; write is invalid.
31:1	Reserved		

22.5.19 DMA control register (QSPI_DMACTRL)

Offset address: 0x4C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	RDMAEN	R/W	Receive DMA enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	TDMAEN	R/W	Transmit DMA enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:2	Reserved		

22.5.20 DMA transmit data level register (QSPI_DMATDL)

Offset address: 0x50

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	DMATDL	R/W	Transmitting data level line: When the valid data in the transmit FIFO is equal to or lower than the value configured by the DMATDL, a DMA transmitting data request will be generated, and it is valid when TDMAEN=1. The configuration range is 0~7
31:3	Reserved		

22.5.21 DMA receive data level register (QSPI_DMARDL)

Offset address: 0x54

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	DMARDL	R/W	Receiving data level line: When the valid data in the receive FIFO is equal to or higher than the value configured by the DMATDL, a DMA receiving data request will be generated, and it is valid when RDMAEN=1. The configuration range is 0~7
31:3	Reserved		

22.5.22 Data register (QSPI_DATA)

Offset address: 0x60

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	DATA	R/W	Data When writing this register, the data must be right adjusted; read data and the data will be right aligned automatically. Read=Receive FIFO buffer Write=Transmit FIFO buffer

22.5.23 RX sample delay register (QSPI_RSD)

Offset address: 0xF0

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	RSD	R/W	Receive data (RXD) sample delay This register is used for delaying the sampling of RXD input port. Each value represents the single qspi_clk delay on RXD sample.
15:8	Reserved		
16	RSE	R/W	Receive data (RXD) sampling edge This register is used to confirm the sampling edge of RXD signal with qspi_clk. Then set this bit to 1, and use the negative edge of qspi_clk to sample the input data; otherwise, use the positive edge for sampling.
31:17	Reserved		

22.5.24 Control register 3 (QSPI_CTRL3)

Offset address: 0xf4

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	IAT	R/W	Address and instruction of transmission format Choose whether QSPI transmits the instruction/address in standard SPI mode or the SPI mode selected in the ctrl0.spi_frf field. 00 (TT0): Transmit the instruction and address in standard SPI mode 01 (TT1): Transmit the instruction in standard SPI mode Transmit the address in QSPI_CTRL1.SPI_FRF specified mode 10 (TT2): Transmit the instruction and address in SPI_FRF specified mode 11 (TT3): Reserved
5:2	ADDRLEN	R/W	Address length of transmission Transmission will start only after these bits have been compiled to FIFO. 0x0 (ADDR_L0): No address. 0x1 (ADDR_L4): 4-bit address length. 0x2 (ADDR_L8: 8-bit address length. 0x3 (ADDR_L12): 12-bit address length. 0x4 (ADDR_L16): 16-bit address length. 0x5 (ADDR_L20): 20-bit address length. 0x6 (ADDR_L24): 24-bit address length. 0x7 (ADDR_L28): 28-bit address length. 0x8 (ADDR_L32): 32-bit address length. 0x9 (ADDR_L36): 36-bit address length. 0xA (ADDR_L40): 40-bit address length. 0xB (ADDR_L44): 44-bit address length. 0xC (ADDR_L48): 48-bit address length. 0xD (ADDR_L52): 52-bit address length. 0xE (ADDR_L56): 56-bit address length. 0xF (ADDR_L60): 60-bit address length.
7:6	Reserved		
9:8	INSLEN	R/W	Length of instructions in four-line mode 00 (INST_L0): No instruction 01 (INST_L4): 4 -bit instruction 10 (INST_L8): 8 -bit instruction 11 (INST_L16): 16 -bit instruction
10	Reserved		
15:11	WAITCYC	R/W	The number of clocks to wait before transmitting/receiving data in four-line mode.
29:16	Reserved		
30	CSEN	R/W	Enable clock stretching SPI transmission capacity. If written, FIFO will become empty, and QSPI will extend the clock until FIFO has enough data to continue to transmit. If read, receive FIFO will become full, and QSPI will stop the clock until data is read from FIFO.
31	Reserved		

22.5.25 IO shift register (QSPI_IOSW)

Offset address: 0x200

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	IOSW	R/W	If this bit is set to "1", IO will be remapped to spi2 and USART3 will switch to remap to QSPI.
31:1	Reserved		

23 Controller area network (CAN)

23.1 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Table 98 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
First Input First Output	FIFO
Request	REQ

23.2 Introduction

CAN is abbreviation of Controller Area Network, and is serial communication protocol of ISO international standardization and supports CAN Protocol 2.0A and 2.0B. In CAN protocol, the sender transmits the message to all receivers in the form of broadcast. When the node receives the message, it will go through the filter group and decide whether the message is needed according to the identifier. This design saves the CPU overhead.

23.3 Main Features

(1) Support CAN protocol 2.0A and 2.0B

(2) The maximum baud rate of communication is 1Mbit/s

(3) Transmitting function

- There are three transmit mailboxes
- The priority of transmitting message can be configured
- Record the transmission time

(4) Receiving function

- Have two receive FIFO with three depth levels
- Have 28 filter groups
- Record the receiving time

23.4 Functional Description

23.4.1 Characteristics of CAN physical layer

Multiple communication nodes can be designed on the CAN bus, and each node consists of a CAN controller and a transceiver. The controller and the transceiver are connected through CAN_TX and CAN_RX to transmit logic signals; the transceiver and the bus are connected through CAN_High and CAN_Low to transmit differential signals.

23.4.2 Message structure

Figure 106 Standard Data Frame

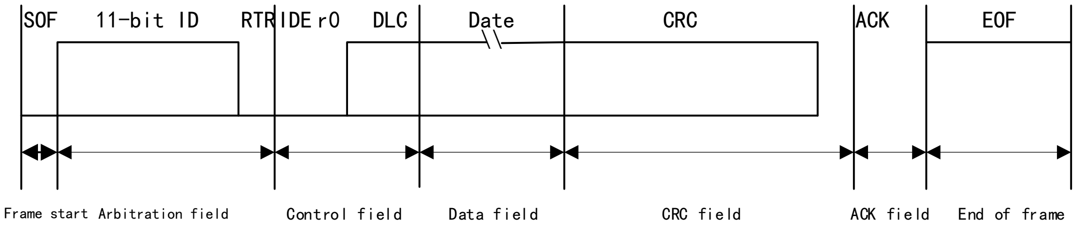
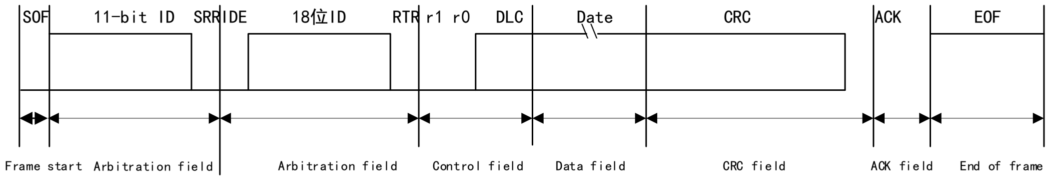


Figure 107 Extended Data Frame



Note:

(1) Frame start: It is used to inform each node that there will be data for transmission.

(2) Arbitration segment: It is used to decide which message can be transmitted when multiple messages are transmitted. Main content of this segment is ID information, the ID in standard format is 11 bits, and the ID in extended format is 29 bits.

(3) Control segment: The main content of this segment is data length code (DLC), which is used to indicate the number of bytes in the data segment of the message. The data segment has up to 8 bytes.

(4) Data segment: Include the data information to be transmitted by the node.

(5) CRC segment: CRC check code is used to ensure correct transmission of the messages.

(6) ACK segment: This segment includes ACK slot bit and ACK delimiter bit. The transmitting node in ACK slot transmits recessive bits, while the receiving node transmits the dominant bit in this bit to acknowledge.

(7) Frame end: Seven recessive bits transmitted by the transmitting nodes are used to indicate the end.

23.4.3 Working mode

CAN has three main working modes: initialization mode, normal mode and sleep mode.

23.4.3.1 Initialization mode

Set the INITREQ bit of the configuration register CAN_MCTRL to 1 to request to enter the initialization mode; clear the INITFLG bit to 0 to confirm entering the initialization mode.

Clear the INITREQ bit of the configuration register CAN_MCTRL to 0 to request exiting the initialization mode; clear the INITFLG bit to 0 to confirm exiting the initialization mode.

Message receiving and transmitting is disabled in initialization mode.

23.4.3.2 **Normal Mode**

Clear the INITREQ bit of the configuration register CAN_MCTRL to 0 by software to request to enter the normal mode from the initialization mode; wait for the hardware to clear the INITFLG bit to 0 to confirm entering the normal mode.

Message receiving and transmitting is allowed in normal mode.

23.4.3.3 **Sleep mode**

Set the SLEEPREQ bit of the configuration register CAN_MCTRL to 1 to request to enter the sleep mode.

The clock of CAN stops work in sleep mode, the software can normally access the mailbox register, and the CAN is in low-power state.

23.4.4 Communication mode

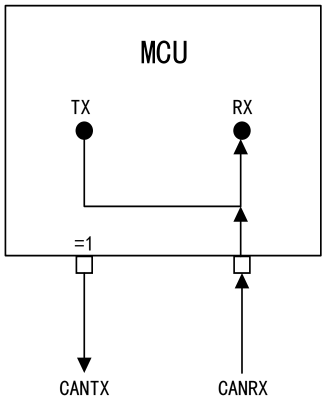
There are four communication modes: mute mode, loopback mode, mute loopback mode and normal mode. Different communication modes can be selected only in initialization mode.

23.4.4.1 **Mute mode**

Set the SILMEN bit of the configuration register CAN_BITTIM to 1 and select the mute mode.

In this mode, only the recessive bit (logic 1) can be transmitted to the bus, the dominant bit (logic 0) cannot be transmitted, and data can be received from the bus.

Figure 108 CAN Works in Mute Mode

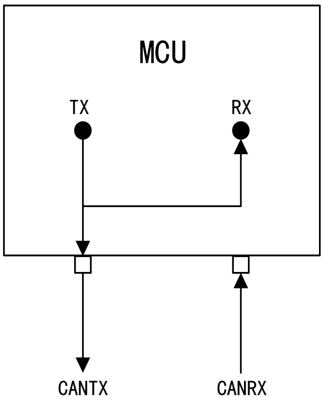


23.4.4.2 **Loopback mode**

Set the LBKMEN bit of the configuration register CAN_BITTIM to 1 and select the loopback mode.

In this mode, the transmitted data are directly transmitted to the input end for receiving, the data are not received from the bus, and all data can be transmitted to the bus.

Figure 109 CAN Works in Loopback Mode

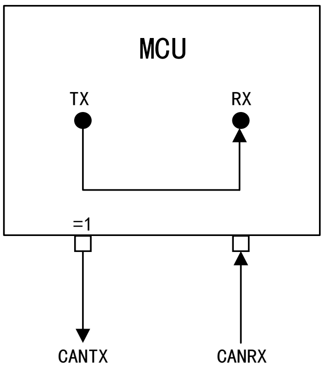


23.4.4.3 **Loopback mute mode**

Set the LBKMEN and SILMEN bits of the configuration register CAN_BITTIM to 1 and select the loopback mute mode.

In this mode, the transmitted data are directly transmitted to the input end for receiving, and the data are not received from the bus; only recessive bit (logic 1) can be transmitted to the bus, while the dominant bit (logic 0) cannot be transmitted.

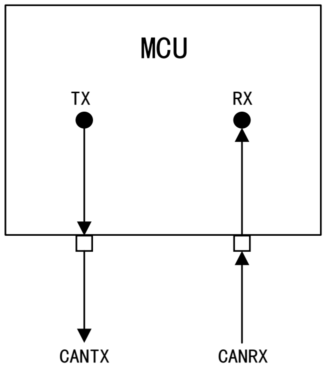
Figure 110 CAN Works in Mute Loopback Mode



23.4.4.4 **Normal Mode**

In this mode, data can be transmitted to the bus and be received from the bus.

Figure 111 CAN Works in Normal Mode



23.4.5 Data transmission

23.4.5.1 Conversion of transmit mailbox state

Conversion process of transmit mailbox state:

(1) First select an empty mailbox to set, submit the transmission request to the CAN bus controller by setting the TXMREQ bit of the configuration register CAN_TXMIDx to 1, and then the mailbox immediately enters the registration state.

(2) When multiple mailboxes are in the registered state, conduct priority scheduling. When a mailbox has the highest priority, it will enter the predetermined state.

(3) When the message in the transmit mailbox is transmitted to the bus, it will enter the transmitting state.

(4) After the message is transmitted successfully, the mailbox will become idle again.

23.4.5.2 Transmitting priority

When multiple messages are waiting for transmitting, determine the transmitting sequence by the TXFPCFG bit of the configuration register CAN_MCTRL:

- When the TXFPCFG bit is set to 0, the priority is determined by the message identifier, the identifier is the lowest, and the priority is the highest; if the identifier is equal, the message with small mailbox number will be transmitted first
- When the TXFPCFG bit is set to 1, the priority will be determined by the sequence of transmitting requests

23.4.5.3 Abort

Transmit the abort request by setting the ABREQFLG bit of the configuration register CAN_TXSTS to 1.

If the mailbox is in registered or predetermined state, stop transmitting the request immediately; if the mailbox is in the transmitting state, there are two situations: one is that the mailbox is successfully transmitted, and the mailbox becomes empty, in such case, the TXSUSFLG bit of the CAN_TXSTS register is set to 1 by hardware; the other is that the mailbox fails to transmit, the mailbox becomes predetermined and the transmitting request is aborted.

23.4.5.4 **Disable automatic retransmission**

Generally, in time triggered communication mode, automatic retransmission should be disabled.

In the mode that the automatic retransmission is disabled, the message is transmitted only once, and no matter what the result is (success, error or arbitration loss), the hardware will not transmit the message again automatically.

When the transmission process is finished, set the REQCFLG bit of the CAN_TXSTS register to 1, and the transmission result will be on the TXSUSFLG, ARBLSTFLG and TXERRFLG bits

23.4.6 Data receiving

23.4.6.1 **Receive FIFO**

CAN has two receive FIFO, and each FIFO has three mailboxes. The FMNUM[1:0] bit of the register CAN_RXF reflects the number of messages currently stored; set the RFOM bit to 1 to release the output mailbox of receive FIFO; FFULLFLG is the full state flag bit; FOVRFLG is overrun state flag bit.

23.4.6.2 **Receive FIFO state conversion**

At the beginning FIFO is in empty state, and after receiving the message, it will become registered.

When FIFO is in registered state and three mailboxes are full, the next effective message received will enter overrun state, and there are two situations for loss of messages in overrun state:

- If FIFO lock function is disabled, the finally received message will be overwritten by new message
- If FIFO lock function is enabled, the newly received message will be discarded

23.4.7 Filtering mechanism

Function of the filter: The receiving node decides whether the message is required according to the message identifier, and only the required message will be received after filtering. CAN controller has 28 filter groups.

23.4.7.1 **Bit width**

Each group of filters can configure two kinds of bit width.

Figure 112 One 32-bit Filter

ID	CAN_FiBANK1[31:24]	CAN_FiBANK1[23:16]		CAN_FiBANK1[15:8]	CAN_FiBANK1[7:0]			
Mapping	STDID[10:3]	STDID[2:0]	EXTID[17:13]	EXTID[12:5]	EXTID[4:0]	IDTYPESEL	TXRFREQ	0

Figure 113 Two 16-bit Filters

ID	CAN_FiBANK1[15:8]	CAN_FiBANK1[7:0]				CAN_FiBANK2[15:8]	CAN_FiBANK2[7:0]			
Mapping	STDID[10:3]	STDID [2:0]	TXRF REQ	IDTYP ESEL	EXTID [17:15]	STDID[12:5]	STDID [2:0]	TXRF REQ	IDTYP ESEL	EXTID [17:15]

23.4.7.2 **Filtering mode**

Mask bit mode

In this mode, it is only required to list some bits of the message identifier to form the mask, and the message ID should be the same as the mask, and then the message can be received

Table 99 Mask Bit Mode Example

ID	**1**	**0**	**1**	**1**	**0**	**0**	**1**	**0**	**.......**
Mask	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	......
Screened ID	1	X	1	1	0	X	X	0	......

Identifier list mode

In this mode, each bit of the message ID needs to be the same as the filter identifier, and then the message can be received.

Table 100 Identifier List Mode Example

ID	**1**	**1**	**1**	**0**	**1**	**0**	**0**	**1**	**1**
ID	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1
Screened ID	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1

23.4.7.3 **Filter priority**

The priority rules are as follows:

- The priority of the filter with bit width of 32 bits is higher than that with bit width of 16 bits
- Under the condition of the same bit width, the priority of the identifier list mode is higher than that of mask bit mode
- Under the condition of the same bit width and mode, the priority of the small filtering number is high

23.4.8 Bit timing and baud rate

23.4.8.1 Bit timing

The CAN peripheral bit timing of APM32 contains three segments: synchronization segment (SYNC_SEG), time segment 1 (BS1) and time segment 2 (BS2), and the sampling points are at the junction of BS1 and BS2 segments.

- Synchronization segment (SYNC_SEG): This bit occupies one time cell
- Time segment 1 (BS1): This segment occupies 1 to 16 time cells, and it contains PROP_SEG and PHASE_SEG1 in CAN standard
- Time segment 2 (BS2): This segment occupies 1 to 8 time cells, and it represents PHASE_SEG2 in CAN standard

23.4.8.2 Calculation of baud rate

Time of BS1 segment: Ts1=Tq* (TIMSEG1[3:0]+1)

Time of BS2 segment:Ts2=Tq* (TIMSEG2[2:0]+1)

Time of one data bit: T1bit=1Tq+Ts1+Ts2

Baud rate=1/ T1bit

Tq =（BRPSC+1）* TPCLK

23.4.9 Error management

Transmit the error counter through the TXERRCNT bit of the configuration register CAN_ERRSTS and receive the error counter through the RXERRCNT bit of the register CAN_ERRSTS to reflect the error management of CAN bus.

Control the generation of interrupts in error state through the ERRIEN bit of the configuration register CAN_INTEN.

23.4.9.1 Bus-off recovery

When the TXERRCNT of the CAN error status register is greater than 255, the CAN bus controller will enter the bus-off state, then the BOFLG bit of the register CAN_ERRSTS will be set to 1, and in this state, the CAN bus controller cannot receive and transmit messages.

Decide the bus-off recovery mode through the ALBOFFM bit of the configuration register CAN_MCTRL:

- If the ALBOFFM bit is set to 1, once the hardware detects 11 continuous recessive bits for 128 times, it will exit the bus-off state automatically;
- If the ALBOFFM bit is set to 0, after the software requests entering and then exiting the initialization mode, it will exit the bus-off state.

23.4.10 Interrupt

Events generating transmission interrupt:

- The hardware sets REQCFLG0 bit of the register CAN_TXSTS to 1, and the transmit mailbox 0 becomes empty
- The hardware sets REQCFLG1 bit of the register CAN_TXSTS to 1, and the transmit mailbox 1 becomes empty
- The hardware sets REQCFLG2 bit of the register CAN_TXSTS to 1, and the transmit mailbox 2 becomes empty

Events generating FIFO0 interrupt:

- Set the FMNUM0[1:0] bit of the register CAN_RXF0 to a number rather than 0 by the hardware, and FIFO0 will receive a new message
- Set the FFULLFLG0 bit of the register CAN_RXF0 to 1 by hardware, and FIFO0 will be full
- Set the FOVRFLG0 bit of the register CAN_RXF0 to 1 by hardware and FIFO0 will overrun

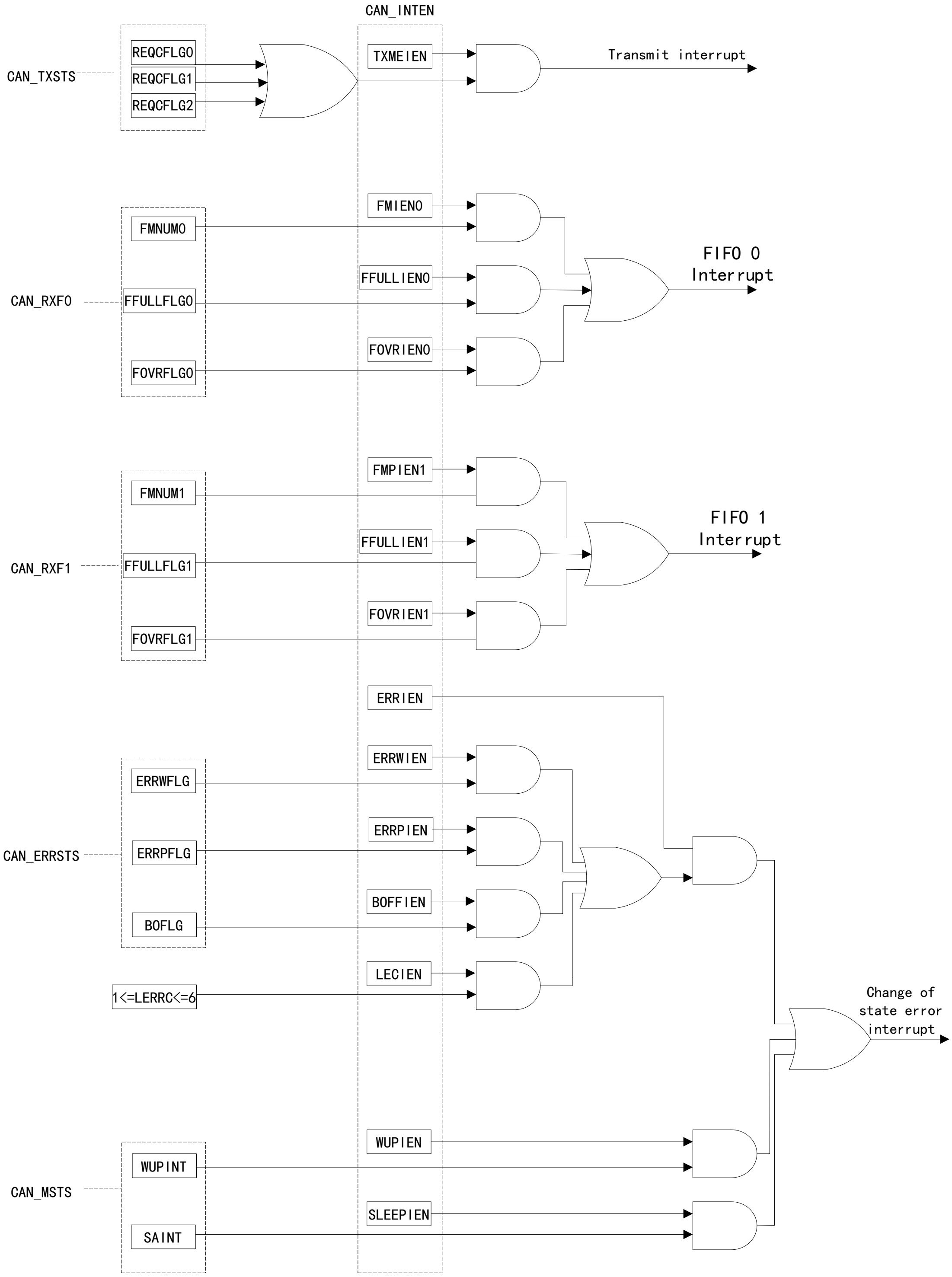
Events generating FIFO1 interrupt:

- Set the FMNUM1[1:0] bit of the register CAN_RXF1 to a number rather than 0 by hardware, and FIFO1 will receive a new message
- Set the FFULLFLG1 bit of the register CAN_RXF1 to 1 by hardware, and FIFO1 will be full
- Set the FOVRFLG1 bit of the register CAN_RXF1 to 1 by hardware and FIFO1 will overrun

Events generating state change and error interrupt:

- Set the SLEEPIEN bit of the register CAN_INTEN to 1 by hardware and it will enter the sleep mode
- Set the WUPIEN bit of the register CAN_INTEN to 1 by hardware and interrupt enable will wake up
- Set the ERRWFLG bit of the register CAN_ERRSTS to 1 by hardware, and it means that the number of errors has reached the threshold
- Set the ERRPFLG bit of the register CAN_ERRSTS to 1 by hardware, and it means that the number of errors has reached the threshold of passive error
- Set the LERRC[2:0] bit of the register CAN_ERRSTS by the hardware, and it indicates the condition of last error

Figure 114 Event Flag and Interrupt Generation



23.5 Register address mapping

CAN1 base address: 0x4000_6400

CAN2 base address: 0x4000_6800

Note: Except base address, the register and offset addresses of CAN1 and CAN2 are exactly the same.

Table 101 CAN Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
CAN_MCTRL	CAN main control register	0x00
CAN_MSTS	CAN main status register	0x04
CAN_TXSTS	CAN transmit status register	0x08
CAN_RXF0	CAN receive FIFO 0 register	0x0C
CAN_RXF1	CAN receive FIFO 1 register	0x10
CAN_INTEN	CAN interrupt enable register	0x14
CAN_ERRSTS	CAN error status register	0x18
CAN_BITTIM	CAN bit timing register	0x1C
CAN_TXMIDx	Transmitting mailbox identifier register	0x180，0x190，0x1A0
CAN_TXDLENx	Transmit mailbox data length register	0x184，0x194，0x1A4
CAN_TXMDLx	Transmit mailbox low-byte data register	0x188，0x198，0x1A8
CAN_TXMDHx	Transmit mailbox high-byte data register	0x18C，0x19C，0x1AC
CAN_RXMIDx	Receive FIFO mailbox identifier register	0x1B0，0x1C0
CAN_RXDLENx	Receive FIFO mailbox data length register	0x1B4，0x1C4
CAN_RXMDLx	Receive FIFO mailbox low-byte data register	0x1B8，0x1C8
CAN_RXMDHx	Receive FIFO mailbox high-byte data register	0x1BC，0x1CC
CAN_FCTRL	CAN filter control register	0x200
CAN_FMCFG	CAN filter mode register	0x204
CAN_FSCFG	CAN filter bit width configuration register	0x20C
CAN_FFASS	CAN filter FIFO association register	0x214
CAN_FACT	CAN filter activation register	0x21C
CAN_FiBANKx	Register x of CAN filter group i	0x240..0x31C

23.6 Register functional description

23.6.1 CAN control and status register

23.6.1.1 CAN main control register (CAN_MCTRL)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0001 0002

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	INITREQ	R/W	Request to Enter Initialization Mode 0: Enter the normal work mode from the initialization mode 1: Enter the initialization mode from the normal work mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	SLEEPREQ	R/W	Request to Enter Sleep Mode 1: Exit the sleep mode 1: Request to enter the sleep mode. If the AWUPCFG bit is set to 1, when the RX signal detects CAN message, this bit will be cleared to 0 by hardware; after reset, reset this bit to 1, and enter the sleep mode.
2	TXFPCFG	R/W	Transmit FIFO Priority Configure This bit is used to determine which parameters determine the transmission priority when multiple messages are waiting for transmission. 0: Determine by the message identifier 1: Determine by the sequence of transmission request
3	RXFLOCK	R/W	Receive FIFO Locked Mode Configure This bit is used to determine whether FIFO is locked when receiving overrun, and how to deal with the next received message when the message of the receive FIFO has not been read out. 0: Unlocked; if the message of the receive FIFO is not read out, the next received message will overwrite the original message 1: Locked; when the message of the receive FIFO is not read out, the next received message will be discarded
4	ARTXMD	R/W	Automatic Retransmission Message Disable 0: Enable automatic retransmission, and the message will be retransmitted automatically until it is transmitted successfully 1: Disable automatic retransmission and the message will be transmitted only once
5	AWUPCFG	R/W	Automatic Wakeup Mode Configure 0: Software wakes up the sleep mode by clearing the SLEEPREQ bit of the CAN_MCTRL register 1: Hardware wakes up the sleep mode by detecting CAN message
6	ALBOFFM	R/W	Automatic Leaving Bus-Off Status Condition Management 0: After the software resets the INITREQ bit of the CAN_MCTRL register to 1 and then clears it, when the hardware detects 11 continuous recessive bits for 128 times, it will exit from the bus-off state 1: When the hardware detects 11 continuous recessive bits for 128 times, it will exit from the bus-off state automatically
14:7	Reserved		
15	SWRST	R/S	Software Reset CAN 0: Work normally 1: CAN is reset by force, and after reset, CAN enters the sleep mode; the hardware will clear this bit to 0 automatically
16	DBGFRZE	R/W	Debug Freeze 0: Invalid 1: During debugging, CAN cannot receive/transmit, but it still can read and write and control the receive FIFO normally
31:17	Reserved		

23.6.1.2 **CAN main status register (CAN_MSTS)**

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0C02

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	INITFLG	R	Being Initialization Mode Flag This bit is set to 1 and cleared to 0 by hardware. 1: Exit the initialization mode 1: Being in the initialization mode; this bit is confirmation for initialization request bit of the CAN_MCTRL register.
1	SLEEPFLG	R	Being Sleep Mode Flag This bit is set to 1 or cleared to 0 by hardware 1: Exit the sleep mode 1: Being in the sleep mode; this bit is confirmation for sleep mode request bit of the CAN_MCTRL register.
2	ERRIFLG	RC_W1	Error Interrupt Occur Flag This bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Not occur 1: Occurred
3	WUPIFLG	RC_W1	Wakeup Interrupt Occur Flag When entering the sleep mode and detecting SOP wake-up, the bit is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Fail to wake up from the sleep mode 1: Wake up from the sleep mode
4	SLEEPIFLG	RC_W1	Being Sleep Mode Interrupt Flag When entering the sleep mode, this bit is set to 1 by hardware and corresponding interrupt will be triggered; when exiting the sleep mode, this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Fail to enter the sleep mode 1: Enter the sleep mode
7:5	Reserved		
8	TXMFLG	R	Being Transmit Mode Flag 0: CAN is not in transmission mode 1: CAN is in transmission mode
9	RXMFLG	R	Being Receive Mode Flag 0: CAN is not in receiving mode 1: CAN is in receiving mode
10	LSAMVALUE	R	CAN Rx Pin Last Sample Value
11	RXSIGL	R	CAN Rx Pin Signal Level
31:12	Reserved		

23.6.1.3 **CAN transmitting status register (CAN_TXSTS)**

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x1C00 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	REQCFLG0	RC_W1	Mailbox 0 Request Completed Flag When the last transmission or abortion request of mailbox 0 is completed, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; when receiving the transmission request, this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Being transmitted 1: Transmission completed
1	TXSUSFLG0	RC_W1	Mailbox 0 Transmission Success Flag When mailbox 0 attempts to transmit successfully, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Last transmission attempt failed 1: Last transmission attempt succeeded
2	ARBLSTFLG0	RC_W1	Mailbox 0 Arbitration Lost Flag When the mailbox 0 loses arbitration, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Meaningless 1: Lost
3	TXERRFLG0	RC_W1	Mailbox 0 Transmission Error Flag When mailbox 0 fails to transmit, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; this bit can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Meaningless 1: Failed to transmit
6:4	Reserved		
7	ABREQFLG0	R/S	Mailbox 0 Abort Request Flag If there is no message waiting for transmission in mailbox 0, this bit is invalid. 0: The transmitting message of mailbox 0 is cleared, and this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware 1: Set this bit to 1 to abort the transmission request of mailbox 0
8	REQCFLG1	RC_W1	Mailbox 1 Request Completed Flag When the last transmission or abortion request of mailbox 1 is completed, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; when receiving the transmission request, this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Being transmitted 1: Transmission completed
9	TXSUSFLG1	RC_W1	Mailbox 1 Transmission Success Flag When mailbox 1 attempts to transmit successfully, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Last transmission attempt failed 1: Last transmission attempt succeeded
10	ARBLSTFLG1	RC_W1	Mailbox 1 Arbitration Lost Flag When the mailbox 1 loses arbitration, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Meaningless 1: Lost

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11	TXERRFLG1	RC_W1	Mailbox 1 Transmission Error Flag When mailbox 1 fails to transmit, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Meaningless 1: Failed to transmit
14:12	Reserved		
15	ABREQFLG1	R/S	Mailbox 1 Abort Request Flag If there is no message waiting for transmitting in mailbox 1, this bit is invalid. 0: The transmitting message of mailbox 1 is cleared, and this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware 1: Set this bit to 1 to abort the transmission request of mailbox 1
16	REQCFLG2	RC_W1	Mailbox 2 Request Completed Flag When the last transmission or abortion request of mailbox 2 is completed, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; when receiving the transmission request, this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Being transmitted 1: Transmission completed
17	TXSUSFLG2	RC_W1	Mailbox 2 Transmission Success Flag When mailbox 2 attempts to transmit successfully, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Last transmission attempt failed 1: Last transmission attempt succeeded
18	ARBLSTFLG2	RC_W1	Mailbox 2 Arbitration Lost Flag When the mailbox 2 loses arbitration, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Meaningless 1: Lost
19	TXERRFLG2	RC_W1	Mailbox 2 Transmission Error Flag When mailbox 2 fails to transmit, this bit is set to 1 by hardware; it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Meaningless 1: Failed to transmit
22:20	Reserved		
23	ABREQFLG2	R/S	Mailbox 2 Abort Request Flag If there is no message waiting for transmitting in mailbox 2, this bit is invalid. 0: The transmitting message of mailbox 2 is cleared, and this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware 1: Set this bit to 1 to abort the transmission request of mailbox 2
25:24	EMNUM[1:0]	R	Empty Mailbox Number This bit is applicable when there is empty mailbox. When all the transmit mailboxes are empty, it means the number of the transmit mailbox with the lowest priority; when the mailbox is not empty but not all empty, it means the number of next mailbox to be transmitted.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
26	TXMEFLG0	R	Transmit Mailbox 0 Empty Flag When the transmit mailbox 0 is empty, this bit is set to 1 by hardware. 0: There is message to be transmitted in mailbox 0 1: There is no message to be transmitted in mailbox 0
27	TXMEFLG1	R	Transmit Mailbox 1 Empty Flag When the transmit mailbox 1 is empty, this bit is set to 1 by hardware. 0: There is message to be transmitted in mailbox 1 1: There is no message to be transmitted in mailbox 1
28	TXMEFLG2	R	Transmit Mailbox 2 Empty Flag When the transmit mailbox 2 is empty, this bit is set to 1 by hardware. 0: There is message to be transmitted in mailbox 2 1: There is no message to be transmitted in mailbox 2
29	LOWESTP0	R	The Lowest Transmission Priority Flag For Mailbox 0 0: Meaningless 1: The priority of mailbox 0 is the lowest among those mailboxes waiting to transmit messages Note: If there is only one mailbox waiting, LOWESTP[2:0] is cleared to 0.
30	LOWESTP1	R	The Lowest Transmission Priority Flag For Mailbox 1 0: Meaningless 1: The priority of mailbox 1 is the lowest among those mailboxes waiting to transmit messages
31	LOWESTP2	R	The Lowest Transmission Priority Flag For Mailbox 2 0: Meaningless 1: The priority of mailbox 2 is the lowest among those mailboxes waiting to transmit messages

23.6.1.4 CAN receive FIFO 0 register (CAN_RXF0)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x00

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	FMNUM0[1:0]	R	The number of Message in receive FIFO0 These bits are used to reflect the number of messages stored in current receive FIFO0. Every time a new message is received, add 1 to FMNUM0 bit; every time the mailbox message is released and output, subtract 1 from FMNUM0 bit.
2	Reserved		
3	FFULLFLG0	RC_W1	Receive FIFO0 full flag (Receive FIFO0 Full Flag) When there are three messages in FIFO0, it means the FIFO0 has been full; this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Not full 1: Full

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4	FOVRFLG0	RC_W1	Receive FIFO 0 Overrun Flag When there are three messages in FIFO0 and then a new message is received, it means the FIFO0 overruns; this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: No overrun 1: Generate overrun
5	RFOM0	R/S	Release Receive FIFO0 Output Mailbox to Receive Massage This bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software. If there is no message in FIFO, this bit is invalid. When FIFO contains more than two messages, the output mailbox must be first released to access the second message. 0: Meaningless 1: Release the output mailbox of receive FIFO0
31:6	Reserved		

23.6.1.5 **CAN receive FIFO 1 register (CAN_RXF1)**

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x00

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	FMNUM1[1:0]	R	The number of Message in receive FIFO1 These bits are used to reflect the number of messages stored in current receive FIFO1. Every time a new message is received, add 1 to FMNUM1 bit; every time the mailbox message is released and output, subtract 1 from FMNUM1 bit.
2	Reserved		
3	FFULLFLG1	RC_W1	Receive FIFO0 Full Flag When there are three messages in FIFO1, it means the FIFO1 has been full; this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: Not full 1: Full
4	FOVRFLG1	RC_W1	Receive FIFO1 Overrun Flag When there are three messages in FIFO1 and then a new message is received, it means the FIFO1 overruns; this bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by writing 1 by software. 0: No overrun 1: Generate overrun
5	RFOM1	R/S	Release Receive FIFO1 Output Mailbox to Receive Massage This bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software. If there is no message in FIFO, this bit is invalid. When FIFO contains more than two messages, the output mailbox must be first released to access the second message. 0: Meaningless 1: Release the output mailbox of receive FIFO1
31:6	Reserved		

23.6.1.6 **CAN interrupt enable register (CAN_INTEN)**

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TXMEIEN	R/W	Transmit Mailbox Empty Interrupt Enable When REQCFLGx bit is set to 1, it means transmission has been completed, and the transmit mailbox is empty; if this bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
1	FMIEN0	R/W	Generate an interrupt when enabling the number of messages in FIFO0 to be not 0 （Interrupt Enable When The Number Of FIFO0 Message Is Not 0） When FMNUM0[1:0] bit of FIFO 0 is not zero, it means that the number of messages in FIFO0 is not 0; if this bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
2	FFULLIEN0	R/W	FIFO0 Full Interrupt Enable When the FFULLFLG0 bit of FIFO0 is set to 1, it means that the message of FIFO0 is full; if this bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
3	FOVRIEN0	R/W	FIFO0 Overrun Interrupt Enable When the FOVRFLG0 bit of FIFO0 is set to 1, it means that the FIFO0 has overrun; if this bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
4	FMPIEN1	R/W	Generate an interrupt when enabling the number of messages in FIFO1 to be not 0 （I Interrupt Enable wnhen the number of FIFO1 Message is not 0） When FMNUM1[1:0] bit of FIFO 1 is not zero, it means that the number of messages in FIFO1 is not 0; if this bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
5	FFULLIEN1	R/W	FIFO1 Full Interrupt Enable When the FFULLFLG1 bit of FIFO1 is set to 1, it means that the message of FIFO1 is full; if this bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
6	FOVRIEN1	R/W	FIFO1 Overrun Interrupt Enable When the FOVRFLG1 bit of FIFO1 is set to 1, it means that the FIFO1 has overrun; if this bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7	Reserved		
8	ERRWIEN	R/W	Error Warning Interrupt Enable When ERRWFLG bit is set to 1, an error warning will occur; if this bit is set to 1, ERRIFLG shall be set and a warning error interrupt will be generated. 0: ERRIFLG bit is not set 1: ERRIFLG bit is set to 1
9	ERRPIEN	R/W	Error Passive Interrupt Enable When ERRPFLG bit is set to 1, a passive error will occur; if this bit is set to 1, ERRIFLG shall be set and a passive error interrupt will be generated. 0: ERRIFLG bit is not set 1: ERRIFLG bit is set to 1
10	BOFFIEN	R/W	Bus-Off Interrupt Enable When BOFFFLG bit is set to 1, bus-off will occur; if this bit is set to 1, ERRIFLG shall be set and a bus-off interrupt will be generated. 0: ERRIFLG bit is not set 1: ERRIFLG bit is set to 1
11	LECIEN	R/W	Last Error Code Interrupt Enable When an error is detected and the LERRC[2:0] is set by hardware, the last error code is recorded. If this bit set to 1, the ERRIFLG is set to generate the last error interrupt. 0: ERRIFLG bit is not set 1: ERRIFLG bit is set to 1
14:12	Reserved		
15	ERRIEN	R/W	Error interrupt Enable When the corresponding error status register is set to 1, if this bit is set to 1, an error interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
16	WUPIEN	R/W	Wakeup interrupt Enable When WUPINT bit is set to 1, if this bit is set to 1, a wake-up interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
17	SLEEPIEN	R/W	Sleep Interrupt Enable When SLEEPIFLG bit is set to 1, if this bit is set to 1, a sleep interrupt will be generated. 0: No interrupt is generated 1: Generate interrupt
31:18	Reserved		

23.6.1.7 **CAN error status register (CAN_ERRSTS)**

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	ERRWFLG	R	Error Warning Occur Flag When the value of the receiving error counter or transmitting error counter ≥96, this bit is set to 1 by hardware. 0: No error warning occurred 1: Error warning occurred
1	ERRPFLG	R	Error Passive Occur Flag When the value of the receiving error counter or transmitting error counter >127, this bit is set to 1 by hardware. 0: No passive error occurred 1: Passive error occurred
2	BOFLG	R	Enter Bus-Off Flag When the value of the transmitting error counter TXERRCNT is greater than 255, CAN will enter the bus-off state and this bit is set to 1 by hardware. 0: CAN not in bus-off state 1: CAN in bus-off state
3	Reserved		
6:4	LERRC	R/W	Record Last Error Code When an error is detected on CAN bus, it is set by hardware according to the error category; when the message is transmitted or received correctly, this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware. 000: No error 001: Bit stuffing error 010: Form (Form) error 011: Acknowledgment (ACK) error 100: Recessive bit error 101: Dominant bit error 110: CRC error 111: Set by software
15:7	Reserved		
23:16	TXERRCNT	R	Least Significant Byte Of The 9-Bit Transmit Error Counter The counter is implemented according to the transmission part of fault definition mechanism of CAN protocol.
31:24	RXERRCNT	R	Receive Error Counter The receiving error counter is implemented according to the receiving part of fault definition mechanism of CAN protocol. When a receiving error occurs, according to the condition of the error, add 1 or 8 to the counter, and subtract 1 after receiving successfully. When the value of the counter is greater than 127, set the counter value to 120.

23.6.1.8 **CAN bit timing register (CAN_BITTIM)**

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value: 0x0123 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:0	BRPSC	R/W	Baud Rate Prescaler Factor Setup Time unit t_q =(BRPSC+1)× t_{PCLK}

15:10	Reserved		
19:16	TIMSEG1	R/W	Set the time segment 1 (Time Segment 1 Setup) Time occupied by time period 1 $t_{BS1} = t_{CAN} \times (TIMSEG1+1)$.
22:20	TIMSEG2	R/W	Time Segment 2 Setup Time occupied by time period 2 $t_{BS2} = t_{CAN} \times (TIMSEG2+1)$.
23	Reserved		
25:24	RSYNJW	R/W	Resynchronization Jump Width Time that CAN hardware can extend or shorten in this bit: $t_{RJW} = t_{CAN} \times (RSYNJW+1)$.
29:26	Reserved		
30	LBKMEN	R/W	Loop Back Mode Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31	SILMEN	R/W	Silent Mode Enable 0: Normal state 1: Mute mode

Note: When CAN is in initialization mode, this register can be accessed only by software

23.6.2 CAN mailbox register

This section describes the transmit and receive mailbox registers.

The transmit and receive mailboxes are almost the same except the following examples:

- FMIDX domain of CAN_RXDLENx register;
- The receive mailbox is read-only;
- The transmit mailbox is writable only when it is empty, and if the corresponding TXMEFLG bit of CAN_TXSTS register is 1, it means the transmit mailbox is empty.

There are three transmit mailboxes and two receive mailboxes in total. Each receive mailbox is FIFO with level-3 depth, and can only access the message that is received first in FIFO.

23.6.2.1 Transmit mailbox identifier register (CAN_TXMIDx) (x=0..2)

Offset address: 0x180, 0x190, 0x1A0

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX, X=undefined bit (except Bit 0, TXMREQ=0 after reset)

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TXMREQ	R/W	Transmit Mailbox Data Request 0: When the data in the mailbox is transmitted, the mailbox is empty and this bit is cleared to 0 by hardware 1: Software writes 1, to enable request to transmit mailbox data
1	TXRFREQ	R/W	Transmit Remote Frame Request 0: Data frame 1: Remote frame

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2	IDTYPESEL	R/W	Identifier Type Select 0: Standard identifier 1: Extended identifier
20:3	EXTID[17:0]	R/W	Extended Identifier Setup Low byte of extended identifier label.
31:21	STDID[10:0]/EXTID[28:18]	R/W	Standard Identifier Or Extended Identifier According to the content of IDTYPESEL bit, see whether these bits are standard identifier STDID[10:0] or high byte EXTID[28:18] of extended identifier.

Note: 1. When its mailbox is in the state of waiting for transmission, this register is write-protected

2. This register realizes transmission request control function (No. 0 bit) - the reset value is 0

23.6.2.2 **Transmit mailbox data length register (CAN_TXDLENx) (x=0..2)**

When the mailbox is not idle, all bits of this register are write-protected.

Offset address: 0x184, 0x194, 0x1A4

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	DLCODE	R/W	Transmit Data Length Code Setup
31:4	Reserved		

23.6.2.3 **Transmit mailbox low-byte data register (CAN_TXMDLx) (x=0..2)**

When the mailbox is not idle, all bits of this register are write-protected, and the message contains 0 to 7-byte data and starts from the byte 0.

Offset address: 0x188, 0x198, 0x1A8

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	DATABYTE0	R/W	Data Byte 0 of the Message
15:8	DATABYTE1	R/W	Data Byte 1 of the Message
23:16	DATABYTE2	R/W	Data Byte 2 of the Message
31:24	DATABYTE3	R/W	Data Byte 3 of the Message

23.6.2.4 **Transmit mailbox high-byte data register (CAN_TXMDHx) (x=0..2)**

When the mailbox is not idle, all bits of this register are write-protected.

Offset address: 0x18C, 0x19C, 0x1AC

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX, X=undefined bit

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	DATABYTE4	R/W	Data Byte 4 of the Message
15:8	DATABYTE5	R/W	Data Byte 5 of the Message
23:16	DATABYTE6	R/W	Data Byte 6 of the Message
31:24	DATABYTE7	R/W	Data Byte 7 of the Message

23.6.2.5 Receive FIFO mailbox identifier register (CAN_RXMIDx) (x=0..1)

Offset address: 0x1B0, 0x1C0

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX, X=undefined bit

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	Reserved		
1	RFTXREQ	R	Remote Frame Transmission Request 0: Data frame 1: Remote frame
2	IDTYPESEL	R	Identifier Type Select 0: Standard identifier 1: Extended identifier
20:3	EXTID[17:0]	R	Extended Identifier Setup Low byte of extended identifier.
31:21	STDID[10:0]/EXTID[28:18]	R	Standard Identifier Or Extended Identifier According to the content of IDTYPESEL bit, see whether these bits are standard identifier STDID[10:0] or high byte EXTID[28:18] of extended identifier.

Notes: All receive mailbox registers are read-only.

23.6.2.6 Receive FIFO mailbox data length register (CAN_RXDLENx) (x=0..1)

Offset address: 0x1B4, 0x1C4

Reset value: 0xXXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	DLCODE	R	Receive Data Length Code Setup This bit represents the data length in the frame; for remote frame, DLCODE is constantly 0.
7:4	Reserved		
15:8	FMIDX	R	Filter Match Index Setup
31:16	Reserved		

Notes: All receive mailbox registers are read-only.

23.6.2.7 Receive FIFO mailbox low-byte data register (CAN_RXMDLx) (x=0..1)

Offset address: 0x1B8, 0x1C8; the message contains 0 to 8-byte data, which starts from the byte 0.

Reset value: 0xXXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	DATABYTE0	R	Data Byte 0 of the Message
15:8	DATABYTE1	R	Data Byte 0 of the Message
23:16	DATABYTE2	R	Data Byte 0 of the Message
31:24	DATABYTE3	R	Data Byte 0 of the Message

Notes: All receive mailbox registers are read-only.

23.6.2.8 Receive FIFO mailbox high-byte data register (CAN_RXMDHx) (x=0..1)

Offset address: 0x1BC, 0x1CC

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX, X=undefined bit

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	DATABYTE4	R	Data Byte 0 of the Message
15:8	DATABYTE5	R	Data Byte 0 of the Message
23:16	DATABYTE6	R	Data Byte 0 of the Message
31:24	DATABYTE7	R	Data Byte 0 of the Message

Notes: All receive mailbox registers are read-only.

23.6.3 CAN filter register

23.6.3.1 CAN filter control register (CAN_FCTRL)

Offset address: 0x200

Reset value: 0x2A1C 0E01

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	FINITEN	R/W	Filter Init Mode Enable 0: Normal mode 1: Initialization mode
7:1	Reserved		
13:8	CAN2SB	R/W	CAN2 Start Bank This bit is used to define the start memory area of CAN2, within a range of 0-27 Note: When CAN2SB=28d, all filters can be used by CAN1; when CAN2SB=0, all filters can be used by CAN2.
31:14	Reserved		

Notes: The non-reserved bit of this register is completely controlled by software.

23.6.3.2 CAN filter mode configuration register (CAN_FMCFG)

Offset addres: 0x204

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
27:0	FMCFGx	R/W	Filter Mode Configure The value of x is 0-27. 0: Identifier mask bit mode 1: Identifier list mode
31:28	Reserved		

Note: Only when CAN_FCTRL (FINITEN =1) is set to put the filter in initialization mode, can this register be written.

23.6.3.3 CAN filter bit width configuration register (CAN_FSCFG)

Offset address: 0x20C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
27:0	FSCFGx	R/W	Filterx Scale Configure The value of x is 0-27. 0: 2 16 bits 1: Single 32 bits
31:28	Reserved		

Note: Only when CAN_FCTRL (FINITEN =1) is set to make the filter in initialization mode, can this register be written.

23.6.3.4 **CAN filter FIFO association register (CAN_FFASS)**

Offset address: 0x214

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	FFASS0	R/W	Configure Filter0 Associated with FIFO 0: The filter is associated with FIFO0 1: The filter is associated with FIFO1
1	FFASS1	R/W	Configure Filter1 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
2	FFASS2	R/W	Configure Filter2 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
3	FFASS3	R/W	Configure Filter3 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
4	FFASS4	R/W	Configure Filter4 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
5	FFASS5	R/W	Configure Filter5 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
6	FFASS6	R/W	Configure Filter6 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
7	FFASS7	R/W	Configure Filter7 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
8	FFASS8	R/W	Configure Filter8 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
9	FFASS9	R/W	Configure Filter9 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
10	FFASS10	R/W	Configure Filter10 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
11	FFASS11	R/W	Configure Filter11 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
12	FFASS12	R/W	Configure Filter12 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
13	FFASS13	R/W	Configure Filter13 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
14	FFASS14	R/W	Configure Filter14 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15	FFASS15	R/W	Configure Filter15 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
16	FFASS16	R/W	Configure Filter16 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
17	FFASS17	R/W	Configure Filter17 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
18	FFASS18	R/W	Configure Filter18 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
19	FFASS19	R/W	Configure Filter19 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
20	FFASS20	R/W	Configure Filter20 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
21	FFASS21	R/W	Configure Filter21 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
22	FFASS22	R/W	Configure Filter22 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
23	FFASS23	R/W	Configure Filter23 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
24	FFASS24	R/W	Configure Filter24 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
25	FFASS25	R/W	Configure Filter25 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
26	FFASS26	R/W	Configure Filter26 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
27	FFASS27	R/W	Configure Filter27 Associated with FIFO Refer to FFASS0 for specific description.
31:28	Reserved		

Notes: Only when CAN_FCTRL (FINITEN =1) is set to put the filter in initialization mode, can this register be written.

23.6.3.5 CAN filter activation register (CAN_FACT)

Offset address: 0x21C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	FACT0	R/W	Filter0 Active 0: Disable 1: Active
1	FACT1	R/W	Filter1 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
2	FACT2	R/W	Filter3 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
3	FACT3	R/W	Filte3 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4	FACT4	R/W	Filter4 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
5	FACT5	R/W	Filter5 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
6	FACT6	R/W	Filte6 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
7	FACT7	R/W	Filter7 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
8	FACT8	R/W	Filter8 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
9	FACT9	R/W	Filter9 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
10	FACT10	R/W	Filter10 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
11	FACT11	R/W	Filter11 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
12	FACT12	R/W	Filter12 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
13	FACT13	R/W	Filter13 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
14	FACT14	R/W	Filter14 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
15	FACT15	R/W	Filter15 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
16	FACT16	R/W	Filter16 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
17	FACT17	R/W	Filter17 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
18	FACT18	R/W	Filter18 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
19	FACT19	R/W	Filter19 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
20	FACT20	R/W	Filter20 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
21	FACT21	R/W	Filter21 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
22	FACT22	R/W	Filter22 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
23	FACT23	R/W	Filter23 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
24	FACT24	R/W	Filter24 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
25	FACT25	R/W	Filter25 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
26	FACT26	R/W	Filter26 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
27	FACT27	R/W	Filter27 Active Refer to FACT0 for specific description.
31:28	Reserved		

23.6.3.6 **Register x of CAN filter group i (CAN_FiBANKx) (i＝0..27；x=1..2)**

Offset address: 0x240..0x31C

CAN_F0BANK1 offset address: 0x240 CAN_F0BANK2 offset address: 0x244

CAN_F1BANK1 offset address: 0x248 CAN_F1BANK2 offset address: 0x24C

The following offset addresses can be obtained in the same way

Reset value: 0xXXXX XXXX

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	FBIT[31:0]	R/W	Filter Bits Setup Identifier list mode: 0: FBITx bit is dominant bit 1: FBITx bit is recessive bit Identifier mask bit mode: 0: FBITx is not used for comparison 1: FBITx must match Note: The value of x is 0~31, indicating the bit number of FBIT.

Note: There are 28 sets of filters in product: i=0..27. Each set of filters consists of two 32-bit registers and CAN_FiBANK[2:1]. The corresponding filter registers can be modified only when the corresponding FACTx bit of CAN_FACT register is cleared to 0 or the FINITEN bit of CAN_FCTRL register is 1.

24 Secure digital input/output interface (SDIO)

24.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 102 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
First Input First Output	FIFO
Command Path State Machine	CPSM
Data Path State Machine	DPSM

24.2 Introduction

The secure digital input/output interface can connect SD card, SD I/O card, multi-media card (MMC) and CE-ATA card master interfaces, and provide data transmission between APB2 system bus and SD memory card, SD I/O card, MMC and CE-ATA device.

24.3 Main characteristics

(1) SD card: Compatible with SD memory card specification version 2.0

(2) SD I/O card: Compatible with SD I/O card specification version 2.0: support two different bus modes: 1 bit (default) and four bits.

(3) MMC: Compatible with multimedia card system specification 4.2 and previous versions. Three different data bus modes are supported:1 bit (default), 4 bits and 8 bits.

(4) CE-ATA: Compatible with CE-ATA digital protocol version 1.1.

(5) The data transmission rate in 8-bit bus mode is up to 50MHz

(6) Interrupt and DMA request

(7) Data and command output enable signal, used for controlling bidirectional driver.

Note: SDIO of current version only supports one SD/SD IO/MMC 4.2 card at the same time; however, it supports multiple MMC4.1 or cards of previous version.

24.4 Functional Description

SDIO structure mainly contains two parts:

SDIO adapter: It realizes the related functions of MMC/SD/SD I/O cards, and consists of control unit, data unit and command unit. The control unit manages the clock signal, the data unit manages the data transmission, and the command unit manages the command transmission.

APB2 bus interface: Operate the registers in SDIO adapter, used for FIFO unit for data transmission, generate an interrupt and DMA request signal.

Figure 115 SDIO Structure Block Diagram

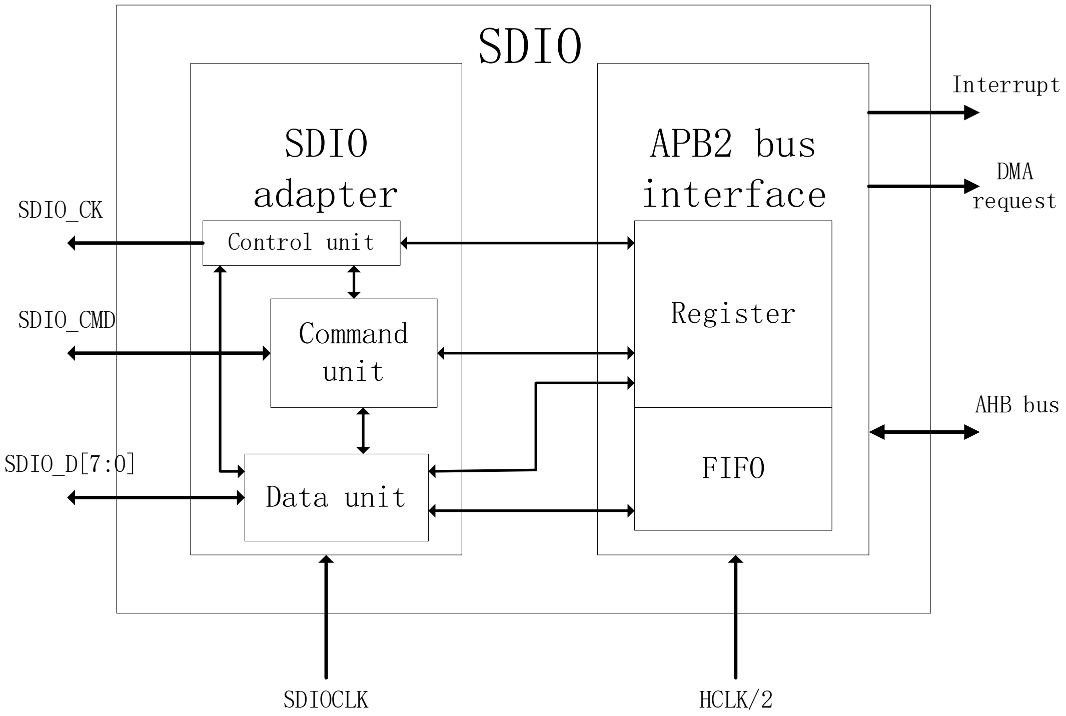


Table 103 SDIO Pin Definition

Pin	Direction	Description
SDIO_CK	Output	MMC/SD/SD I/O card clock, clock line from master to card
SDIO_CMD	Bidirectional	MMC/SD/SD I/O card command, bidirectional command signal
SDIO_D[7:0]	Bidirectional	MMC/SD/SD I/O card data, bidirectional data bus

24.4.1 SDIO bus topology

After power-on reset, the master must initialize the device through a special message-based bus protocol.

Each message is represented by one of the following parts:

- Command: Command is a token to start an operation, from the master to the card, and the command is transmitted to the CMD line serially.
- Response: From the card to the master, as a response to the previously received command, the response is transmitted onto the CMD serially.

● Data: It can be transmitted from the master to the card or from the card to the master. Transmit through data cable. The number of data cables for data transmission can be 1 (D0), 4 (D0-D3), or 8 (D0-D7).

The basic operation on the multimedia card/SD/SD I/O bus is command/response structure.

The data transmitted on SD/SD I/O memory card is transmitted in the form of data block; the data transmitted on MMC is transmitted in the form of data block or data stream; the data transmitted on CE-ATA device is also transmitted in the form of data block.

Figure 116 SDIO "No-response" and "No-data" Operation

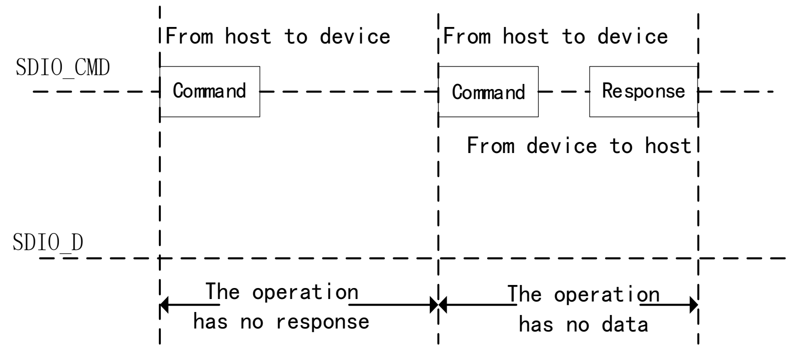


Figure 117 SDIO (Multi-) Data Block Read Operation

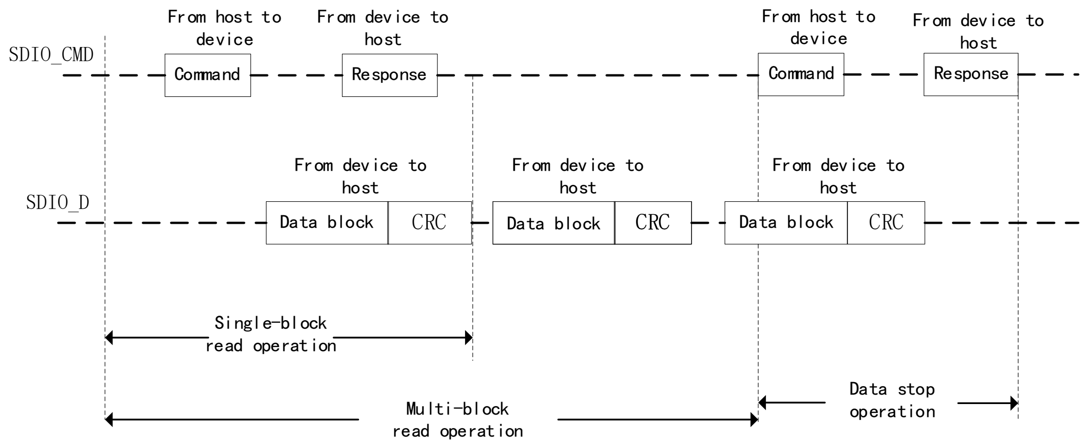


Figure 118 SDIO (Multi-) Data Block Write Operation

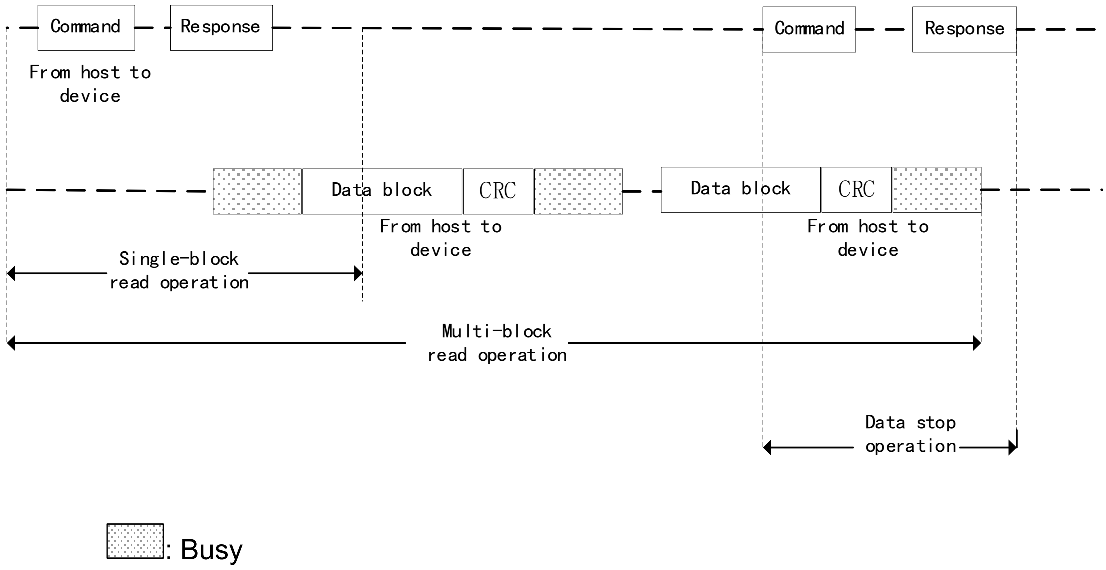


Figure 119 SDIO Data Flow Read Operation

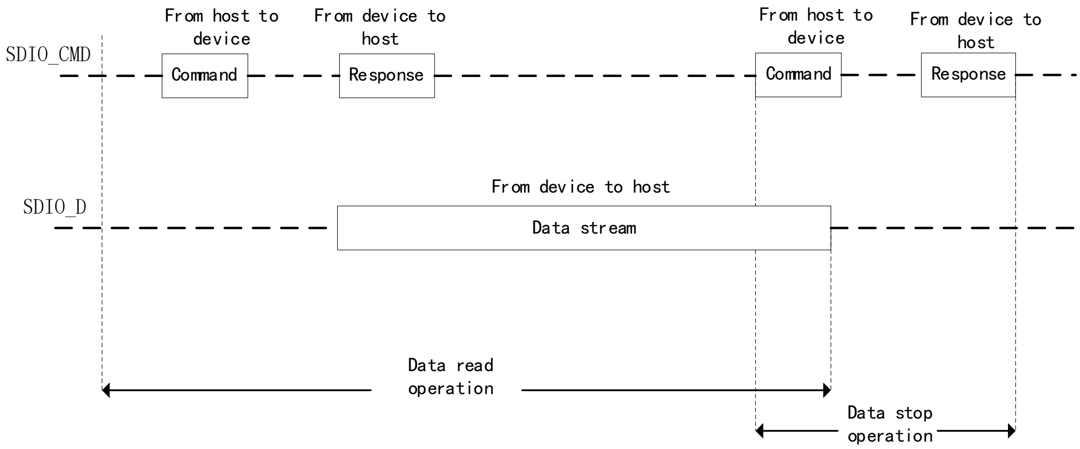
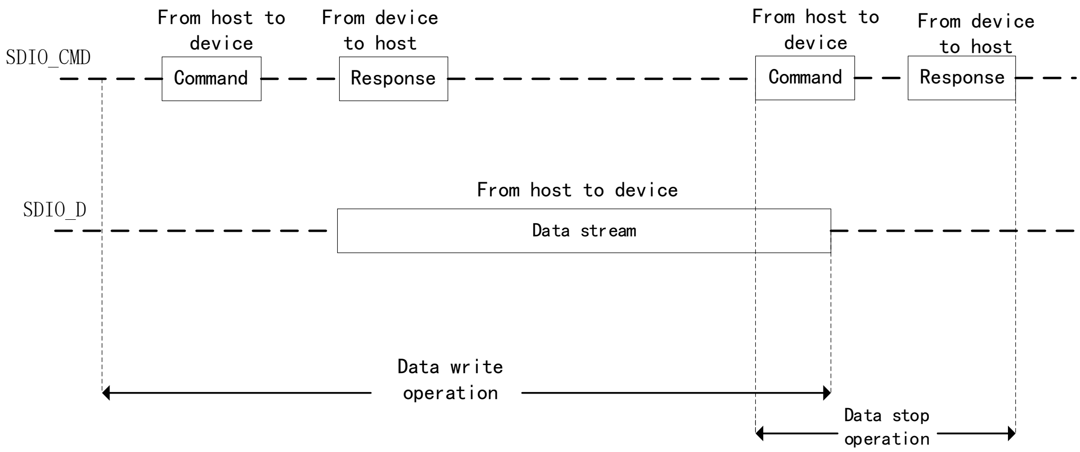


Figure 120 SDIO Data Flow Write Operation



24.4.2 SDIO Adapter

SDIO generates the following signals:

- SDIO_CLK: Clock provided by SDIO controller to the card. Each clock cycle directly transmits 1-bit command or data on the command line (SDIO_ CMD) and all data lines (SDIO)_ D). SDIO_ CLK frequency is 0-20MHz for MMC card V3.31, 0-48MHz for MMC card V4.2, and 0-25MHz for SD or SD I/O card.
- SDIO_CMD: The signal is a bidirectional command channel, which is used for card initialization and command transmission. Command is transmitted from SDIO controller to the card, and the response is transmitted from the card to the master. There are two operation modes of CMD signal: the open-drain mode of initialization (used for MMC card V3.31 and previous versions) and the push-pull modes of command transmitting (SD, SD I/O, and MMC card V4.2 initialization are also push-pull mode).
- SDIO_D[7:0]: The signal lines are bidirectional data channels and in push-pull mode. By default, after power-on or reset, only D0 is used for data transmission. SDIO adapter can be configured with wider data bus for data transmission, using D0-D3 and D0-D7 (only on MMC V4.2).

Control unit

The control unit includes power management and clock management functions.

Command unit

The command unit realizes transmitting commands to the card and receiving commands from the card, and the data transmission is controlled by the command path state machine (CPSM).

Command state machine

CS_Idle gets ready to transmit the command after reset

1. CPSM is enabled and WAITDEND is enabled → CS_Pend
2. CPSM is enabled and WAITDEND is disabled → CS_Send
3. CPSM is turned off → CS_Idle

Note: The idle state of command state machine is maintained for at least 8 SDIO_CLK cycles, so as to meet the timing restriction of N_{CC} and N_{RC}.
N_{CC}: Minimum time interval between two host commands
N_{RC}: Minimum time interval between host command and card response

CS_Pend waits for the end of data transmission

1. Data transmission is completed → CS_Send
2. CPSM is turned off → CS_Idle

CS_Send transmits commands

1. There is response after the command is transmitted → CS_Wait

2. There is no response after the command is transmitted → CS_Idle

3. CPSM is turned off → CS_Idle

CS_Wait waits for response start bit

1. Received the response (the start bit is detected) → CS_Wait

2. Receiving response times out → CS_Idle

3. CPSM is turned off → CS_Idle

Note: The command timeout period is fixed as 64 SDIO_CLK clock cycles

CS_Receive receives response and detects CRC

1. Receive the response in CE-ATA mode, disable CE-ATA interrupt and wait for enabling of CE-ATA device command completion signal → CS_Waitcompl

2. Receive the response in CE-ATA mode, disable CE-ATA interrupt and wait for disabling of CE-ATA device command completion signal → CS_Pend

3. CPSM is turned off → CS_Idle

4. Receive the response → CS_Idle

5. The command CRC detection fails → CS_Idle

CS_Waitcompl waits for CE-ATA device command completion signal

1. Receive CE-ATA command completion signal → CS_Idle

2. CPSM is turned off → CS_Idle

3. The command CRC detection fails → CS_Idle

Data unit

The data unit realizes the data transmission between the master and the card. When the data width is 8 bits, SDIO_D[7:0] signal line is used for data transmission. When the data width is 4 bits, SDIO_D[3:0] signal line is used for data transmission. When the data width is 1 bit, SDIO_D[0] signal line is used for data transmission.

Data transmission stream is controlled by data path state machine (DPSM).

Data state machine

DS_Idle data unit is idle, waiting for transmitting and receiving data		
1. DPSM is enabled and the data are transmitted from host to card	→	DS_WaitS
2. DPSM is enabled and the data are transmitted from card to host	→	DS_WaitR
3. DPSM is enabled, read wait has started and SDIO mode is enabled	→	DS_Readwait

DS_WsitS waits that the empty data FIFO flag is invalid or data transmission ends		
1. Data transmission ends	→	DS_Idle
2. DPSM is turned off	→	DS_Idle
3. The empty data FIFO flag is invalid	→	DS_Send

DS_Send transmits data to the card		
1. The data have been transmitted	→	DS_Busy
2. DPSM is turned off	→	DS_Idle
3. Data FIFO underrun error is transmitted	→	DS_Idle
4. Internal CRC error	→	DS_Idle

DS_Busy waits for CRC state flag		
1. The data have been transmitted	→	DS_Busy
2. DPSM is turned off	→	DS_Idle
3. Data FIFO underrun error is transmitted	→	DS_Idle
4. Internal CRC error	→	DS_Idle

DS_WaitR waits for the start bit of received data		
1. Data receiving ends	→	DS_Idle
2. DPSM is turned off	→	DS_Idle
3. Data timeout	→	DS_Idle
4. Receive the start bit before timeout	→	DS_Receive

DS_Receive receives the card data and writes them to data FIFO		
1. The data block has been received	→	DS_WaitR
2. The data transmission ends	→	DS_WaitR
3. The data FIFO underrun is transmitted	→	DS_Idle
4. The data have been received, read wait starts and SDI/O mode is enabled	→	DS_Readwait
5. DPSM is turned off or CRC error occurs	→	DS_Idle

DS_Readwait waits for "read wait stop" command		
1. "Read wait stop" is enabled	→	DS_WaitR
2. DPSM is turned off	→	DS_Idle

24.4.3 APB2 interface

APB2 interface realizes access to SDIO register, data FIFO and generation of interrupt and DMA request. It includes data FIFO unit, register unit and interrupt/DMA request control logic.

SDIO interrupt

When at least one of the selected state flags is high, the interrupt logic will generate an interrupt request. Interrupt enable register enables the interrupt logic to generate corresponding interrupt.

Data FIFO

The data FIFO unit has a data buffer area for receive and transmit FIFO. FIFO includes a data buffer with 32-bit width for each word and with depth of 32 words. The transmit FIFO is used when data needs to be written to the card; the data to be transmitted is written to the transmit FIFO through APB2 bus, and the data unit in SDIO adapter reads data from the transmit FIFO and then transmits the data to the card. The receive FIFO is used to read data from the card, and then write the data to be transmitted to the receive FIFO.

Register unit

The register unit includes all system registers and generates signals for communication between the control card and the controller.

24.4.4 Card Function Description

24.4.4.1 Card register

The card internally defines the interface registers: OCR, CID, CSD, EXT_CSD, RCA, DSR and SCR. These registers can access only through corresponding commands. OCR, CID, CSD and SCR registers include the specific information of the card. RCA and DSR registers are configuration registers for storing the actual configuration parameters. EXT_CSD register includes both the specific information of the card and the actual structure parameters.

OCR register: 32-bit operating condition register stores V_{DD} voltage description and memory mode indication (MMC) of the card. In addition, the register includes a state information bit. If the card power-on process has been completed, this state bit will be set. This register is slightly different between

MMC and SD card. The master can use CMD1 (MMC), ACMD41 (SD memory card), and CMD5 (SD I/O) to capture the content of this register.

CID register: The card identification register (CID) is 128-bit wide. It contains the card identification information used in the card identification phase. Each read/write (RW) card shall have a unique identification number.

CSD register: The specific card data register provides the content information in the access card. CSD defines data format, error correction type, maximum data access time, and data transmission speed.

Extended CSD register: Only MMC4.2 has this register. Extended CSD register defines the card attributes and selection mode. Its length is 512 bytes. At most 320 bytes are the attribute section, which defines the function of the card and cannot be modified by the master. At least 192 bytes are the mode section, which defines under which configuration the card works.

RCA register: The writable 16-bit relative card address register stores the card address, which is released by the card during card initialization. This address is used for communication between the addressing master and the card after the card identification process.

DSR register: 16-bit drive stage register, which can be used to improve bus performance in extended operating conditions (depending on bus length, transmission rate and other parameters).

SCR register: Only SD/SD I/O has this register.

24.4.4.2 **Commands**

The command for the control card consists of four different types:

Table 104 Command Type

Command type	Meaning
Broadcast command (BC)	Transmit to all cards, but there is no response returned
Broadcast command with response (BCR)	Transmit to all cards and receive response from all cards
Addressing (point-to-point) command (AC)	Transmit to addressing card, and there is no data transmission on SDIO_D line
Addressing (point-to-point) data transmission command (ADTC)	Transmit to addressing card, and there is data transmission on SDIO_D line

Command format

All command formats are 48-bit fixed code length, which requires 1.92us (25MHz), 0.96us (50MHz) and 0.92us (52MHz) transmission time.

Table 105 Command Format

Bit.	47	46	[45:40]	[39:8]	[7:1]	0
Width	1	1	6	32	7	1
Value	0	1	-	-	-	1
Description	Start bit	Transmission bit	Command index	Parameter	CRC7	End bit

SD I/O supports two types of response, both of which support CRC error detection.

- 48-bit short response
- 136-bit long response

Table 106 Short Response Format

Bit.	47	46	[45:40]	[39:8]	[7:1]	0
Width	1	1	6	32	7	1
Value	0	0	-	-	-	1
Description	Start bit	Transmission bit	Command index	Parameter	CRC7 or (1111111)	End bit

Table 107 Long Response Format

Bit.	135	134	[133:128]	[127:1]	0
Width	1	1	6	127	1
Value	0	0	111111	-	1
Description	Start bit	Transmission bit	Reserved	CID or CSD	End bit

Command description

Table 108 Basic Command

Command index	Type	Parameter	Response format	Abbreviation	Description
CMD0	bc	[31:0] Stuffing bit	-	GO_IDLE_STATE	Reset all cards to the idle state.
CMD1	bc	[31:0]OCR	R3	SEND_OP_COND	In the idle state, request the card to transmit the response (including the content of the operating

Command index	Type	Parameter	Response format	Abbreviation	Description
					condition register) through the CMD line
CMD2	bcr	[31:0] Stuffing bit	R2	ALL_SEND_CID	Request any card to transmit CID data through the CMD line (all cards connected to the master will respond)
CMD3	bcr	[31:0] Stuffing bit	R6	SEND_RELATIVE_ADDR	Request the card to release new relative card address (RCA)
CMD4	bc	31:16]DSR [15:0]Stuffing bit	-	SET_DSR	Set DSR registers of all cards.
CMD5	bcr	[31:25]Reserved bit [24]S18R [23:0]I/O OCR	R4	IO_SEND_OP_COND	Only apply to I/O card. Query voltage range of all IO cards.
CMD6	ac	[31:26]Set to 0 [25:24]Access [23:16]Index [15:8]Value [7:3]Set to 0 [2:0]Command set	R1b	SWITCH	Only apply to MMC card. Switch the operation mode of the selected card or modify EXT_CSD register.

Command index	Type	Parameter	Response format	Abbreviation	Description
CMD7	ac	[31:16]RCA [15:0]Stuffing bit	R1b	SELECT/DESELECT_CARD	Used for switching of the card state.
CMD8	bcr	[31:12]Reserved bit [11:8]Operating voltage (VHS) [7:0]Inspection mode	R7	SEND_IF_COND	Transmit interface conditions to SD card, including master power supply voltage information, and query whether the card supports the voltage. The reserved bit should be set to 0.
CMD9	ac	[31:16]RCA [15:0]Stuffing bit	R2	SEND_CSD	The selected card transmits to its card specific data (CSD) through CMD
CMD10	ac	[31:16]RCA [15:0]Stuffing bit	R2	SEND_CID	The selected card transmits to its card identification (CID) through CMD
CMD12	ac	[31:0] Stuffing bit	R1b	STOP_TRANSMISSION	Force the card to stop

Command index	Type	Parameter	Response format	Abbreviation	Description
					transmission .
CMD13	ac	[31:16]RCA [15:0]Stuffing bit	R1	SEND_STATUS	The selected card transmits its state register.
CMD14	adtc	[31:0] Stuffing bit	R1	BUSTEST_R	The master reads the reverse bus test data mode from the card.
CMD15	ac	[31:16]RCA [15:0]Stuffing bit	-	GO_INACTIVE_STATE	Convert the selected card to inactive state.
CMD19	adtc	[31:0] Stuffing bit	R1	BUSTEST_W	The master transmits the bus test mode to the card.

Table 109 Block-oriented Write Command

Command index	Type	Parameter	Response format	Abbreviation	Description
CMD23	ac	[31:16]Set to 0 [15:0]Number of blocks	R1	SET_BLOCK_COUNT	Define the number of blocks to be transferred in subsequent blocks or write commands.
CMD24	adtc	[31:0]Data address	R1	WRITE_BLOCK	Write a block according to the selected length of SET_BLOCKLEN command.
CMD25	adtc	[31:0]Data address	R1	WRITE_MULTIPLE_BLOCK	Continue to write the data block until STOP_TRANSMISSION command is received

Command index	Type	Parameter	Response format	Abbreviation	Description
					or the specified number of blocks is reached.
CMD26	adtc	[31:0] Stuffing bit	R1	PROGAM_CID	Program the card identification register. This command can be transmitted to each card once only. The programming involves hardware changes to prevent subsequent operations after the first programming. Reserved to the manufacturer through this command.
CMD27	adtc	[31:0] Stuffing bit	R1	PROGAM_CSD	Program the programmable bits in the card CSD.
CMD28	ac	[31:0]Data address	R1b	SET_WRITE_PROT	If the card has write protection function, this command will set the write protection bit of the specified group. The write protection characteristic is set in the special data area of the card (WP_GRP_SIZE)
CMD29	ac	[31:0]Data address	R1b	CLR_WRITE_PROT	If the card has write protection function, this command will clear the write protection bit of the addressing group.
CMD30	adtc	[31:0]Write protection data address	R1	SEND_WRITE_PROT	If the card has write protection function, the command requests the card to transmit write protection bit state.

24.4.5 Specific Operations

24.4.5.1 SD I/O card operations

SD I/O card (including IO card and combined card) supports the following specific operations:

- Read wait operation
- Pause/Recovery operation
- Interrupt

SDIO supports these operations only when setting SDIO_DCTRL SDIOEN bit; except for read pause, it does not require special hardware operation.

SD I/O read wait operation

Read wait (RW) is only used for SD I/O 1-bit and 4-bit modes. Read wait operation allows a master to transmit a signal to stop data transmission when performing the operation of reading multiple blocks for the card, and allows the master to transmit commands to any function in the SD I/O card.

Before receiving the first data block, it is allowed to start the read wait process, enable the data channel (DTEN bit is set to 1), enable SDIO specific operation (SDIOEN bit is set to 1), and start read wait. At the same time, the data are transmitted from the card to the SDIO master, and DPSM will directly enter the read wait state from idle state.

In the read wait state, after 2 SDIO_CK clock cycles, DPSM drive SDIO_D2 is 0. In this state, if RWSTOP bit is set, DPSM will stay for 2 more SDIO_CK clock cycles in the waiting state, and (according to SDIO specification) the drive SDIO_D2 is 1 in one clock cycle. Then DPSM starts to wait to receive data from the card. When receiving data block, DPSM will not enter the read wait state even if the start wait is set.

SDIO card cannot perform the above read wait operation, SDIO can stop SDIO_CK entering the read wait and two SDIO_CK cycles later after receiving the current data block, DPSM stops the clock and recovers the clock after setting the read wait start bit.

Figure 121 Read Wait Operation Using SDIO_D2 Signal Line

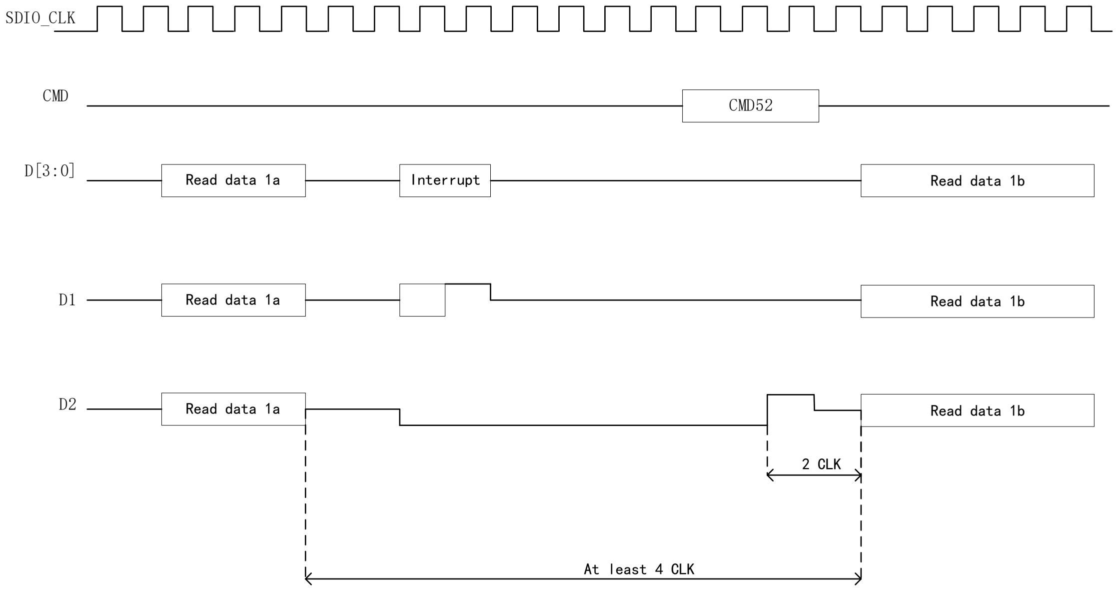
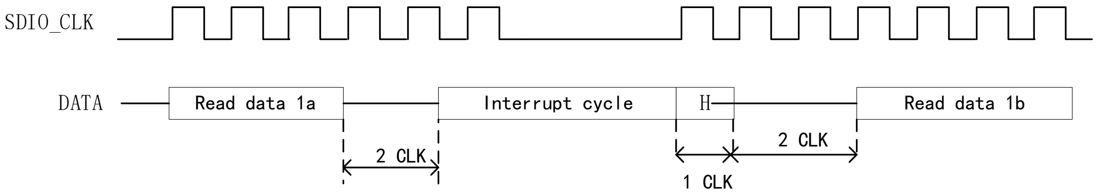


Figure 122 Read Wait Operation through Stop SDIO_CLK



SDIO interrupt

When the SDIOEN bit is set, the SDIO master detects SDIO interrupt on SDIO_D1 signal line.

24.4.5.2 **CE-ATA specific operation**

CE-ATA device supports the following specific operation:

- Receive command completion signal
- Transmit command completion and closing signal

SDIO supports these operations only when SDIO_CMD ATACMD bit is set.

Command completion signal

CE-ATA defines the command completion signal. The device uses this signal to notify the master that the ATA command is completed or encounters an error, and ATA command is terminated

Command completion and closing signal

The master can transmit a command to complete the function of closing the signal and canceling the device return command to complete the signal.

If the "Enable CMD end bit" of ATACMD is not set and the "Non-terminal enable bit" of INTDIS is set, the command completion and closing signal will be transmitted 8-bit cycle later after receiving a short response.

24.4.6 Card state register functional description

The response format R1 contains a 32-bit card state field, which is used to transmit the card state information to the card master (the information may be stored in the local state register). Unless otherwise specified, the state returned by the card is always related to the previous command.

The following table defines different state information:

Table 110 Different State Information Types

Abbreviations	Definitions
E	Error bit
S	Status Bit
R	Detection bit, set according to the actual command response
X	Detection bit, set during the execution of command. The master of SDIO card reads these bits and queries the card state by transmitting the state command.

Table 111 Clear Conditions

Abbreviations	Definitions
A	According to current state of the card
B	Always related to previous command. Able to be cleared once correct command is received (with delay of one command).
C	Clear once read

Table 112 Card State

Bit.	Name	Type	Value	Description	Clear Conditions
1:0	Reserved for the test mode of the manufacturer.				
2	Reserved for the command related to application.				
3	AKE_SEQ_ERROR	ER	0=No error 1=Error	Verification sequence error.	C
4	Reserved for SD I/O card				
5	APP_CMD	SR	0=Not allowed 1=Allowed	The card expects ACMD, or the instruction command has been interpreted as an ACMD command.	C
6	Reserved				

Bit.	Name	Type	Value	Description	Clear Conditions
7	SWITCH_ERROR	EX	0=No error 1=Conversion error	The card is not switched to the desired mode according to the requirements of SWITCH command.	B
8	READY_FOR_DATA	SR	0=Not ready 1=Ready	Corresponding to the empty signal of the buffer on the bus.	
12:9	CURRENT_STATE	SR	0=Idle 1=Ready 2=Identify 3=Standby 4=Transmit 5=Data 6=Receive 7=Program 8=Disconnect 9=Busy test 10~15=Reserved	The state of the state machine in the card when receiving a command. If the execution of a command causes a state change, the change will be reflected in the response of next command. These four bits are interpreted by decimal numbers 0 to 15.	B
13	ERASE_RESET		0=Clear 1=Set	Because a command other than the erase sequence (rather than CMD35, CMD36, CMD38 or CMD13 command) is received, the sequence of entering the erase process is aborted.	C
14	CARD_ECC_DISABLED	SX	0=Allowed 1=Not allowed	Internal ECC is not used during execution of the command.	A
15	WP_ERASE_SKIP	EX	0=Not protected 1=Protected	Existing write protection data block is encountered, and only part of address space is erased.	C
16	CID/CSD_OVERWRITE	EX	0=No error 1=Error	It can be any of the following errors: It has been written into the CID register and cannot be overridden	C

Bit.	Name	Type	Value	Description	Clear Conditions
				The read-only part of the CSD does not match the content of the card Attempt to reverse copy or permanent write protection, i.e., restore or release the write protection.	
17	Reserved				
18	Reserved				
19	ERROR	EX	0=No error 1=Error	Error inside the card (e.g. read or write error) related to execution of the previous master command (not defined in the standard) is generated .	C
20	CC_ERROR	ER	0=No error 1=Error	Error inside the card (not defined in the standard), which has nothing to do with the command of the master.	C
21	CARD_ECC_FAILED	EX	0=Succeeded 1=Failed	ECC check is implemented in the card, but it fails when correcting the data.	C
22	ILLEGAL_COMMAND	ER	0=No error 1=Error	The command is illegal for current card state.	B
23	COM_CRC_ERROR	ER	0=No error 1=Error	CRC parity error in previous command.	B
24	LOCK_UNLOCK_FAILED	EX	0=No error 1=Error	Sequence error of command or wrong password detected in lock/unlock.	C
25	CARD_IS_LOCKED	SR	0=Card unlocked 1=Card locked	When this bit is set, it means the card has been locked.	A
26	WP_VIOLATION	EX	0=No error 1=Error	Attempt to program the data block of a write protection.	C

Bit.	Name	Type	Value	Description	Clear Conditions
27	ERASE_PARAM	EX	0=No error 1=Error	Illegal erase group selected when erasing.	C
28	ERASE_SEQ_ERROR		0=No error 1=Error	The sequence of transmitting erase command is wrong.	C
29	BLOCK_LEN_ERROR		0=No error 1=Error	The parameters of SET_BLOCKLEN command is beyond the maximum allowable range of the card, or the previously defined data block length is illegal for the current command (for example, the master transmits a write command, and the current block length is less than the minimum allowable length of the card, while some data blocks are not allowed to be written).	C
30	ADDRESS_MISALIGN		0=No error 1=Error	The first block defined by the address parameter in the command (compared with the current block length) is not aligned with the physical block of the card. A multi-data block or data stream read/write operation (even starting from a legal address) attempts to read or write a data block that is not aligned with the physical block.	C
31	ADDRESS_OUT_OF_RANGE	ERX	0=No error 1=Error	The address parameter in the command is beyond the allowed range of the card.	C

Bit.	Name	Type	Value	Description	Clear Conditions
				A multi-data block or data stream read/write operation (even starting from a legal address) attempts to read or write the part beyond the capacity of the card.	

24.4.6.1 **SD state register functional description**

The SD state includes the state bits related to the specific functions of the SD memory card and some state bits related to future applications. The length of the SD state is a 512-bit data block. After receiving the ACMD13 command (CMD55, then CMD13), the content of this register will be transmitted to the SDIO card host. The ACMD13 command can be transmitted only when the card is in transmission state (the card has been selected).

The following table defines different SD state register information.

Table 113 SD State Register Information

Abbreviations	Definitions
E	Error bit
S	Status Bit
R	Detection bit, set according to the actual command response
X	Detection bit, set during the execution of command. The master of SDIO card reads these bits and queries the card state by transmitting the state command.

Table 114 Clear Conditions

Abbreviations	Definitions
A	According to current state of the card
B	Always related to previous command. Able to be cleared once correct command is received (with delay of one command).
C	Clear once read

Table 115 SD State

Bit.	Name	Type	Value	Description	Clear Conditions
311:0	Reserved to the manufacturer				
399:312	Reserved				
401:400	ERASE_OFFSET				

Bit.	Name	Type	Value	Description	Clear Conditions
407:402	ERASE_TIMEOUT	S R	Fixed offset value added in erase	(See the instructions below)	A
423:408	ERASE_SIZE	S R	Erase the timeout value of specified range of UNIT_OF_ERASE_AU	(See the instructions below)	A
427:424	Reserved	S R	The number of AU that can be erased at a time	(See the instructions below)	A
431:428	AU_SIZE	S R	AU size (see the instructions below)	(See the instructions below)	A
439:432	PERFORMANCE_MOVE	S R	Transmission performance in 1MB/s (see the instructions below)	(See the instructions below)	A
447:440	SPEED_CLASS	S R	Speed type of the card (see the instructions below)	(See the instructions below)	A
479:448	SIZE_OF_PROTECTED_AREA	S R	Size of protected area (see the instructions below)	(See the instructions below)	A
495:480	SD_CARD_TYPE	S R	'00xxh'= SD memory card in physical specification version 1.01~2.00 ('x' means any value). The defined cards are: '0000'= Universal SD read-write card '0001'= SD ROM card	The low 8 bits of this field can define different variants of SD memory card in the future (each bit can be used to define different SD types). The high 8 bits can be used to define SD cards that do not comply with the current SD	A

Bit.	Name	Type	Value	Description	Clear Conditions
				physical layer specification.	
508:496	Reserved				
509	SECURED_MODE	S R	0=Not in the secret mode 1=In the secret mode	The card is in secret operation mode (see "SD Confidentiality Specification").	A
511:510	DAT_BUS_WIDTH	S R	00=1 (default) 01=Reserve 10=4-bit width 11=Reserved	Current data bus width defined by SET_BUS_WIDTH command.	A

Note: For the abbreviations and definitions of related types and clear condition fields in the table, see SD state register information and SD state.

SIZE_OF_PROTECTED_AREA

The way of setting this bit is different between standard-capacity card and high-capacity card:

- For the standard-capacity card, the capacity of the protected area is calculated as follows:
  Protected area=SIZE_OF_PROTECTED_AREA * MULT * BLOCK_LEN
  The unit of SIZE_OF_PROTECTED_AREA is MULT * BLOCK_LEN.
- For the high-capacity card, the capacity of the protected area is calculated as follows:
  Protected area=SIZE_OF_PROTECTED_AREA
  The unit of SIZE_OF_PROTECTED_AREA is byte.

SPEED_CLASS

These 8 bits indicate the type of speed and can be used for calculating the value of PW/2 (PW is the performance of write).

Table 116 Speed Type Codes

SPEED_CLASS	Definition of Numerical Value
00h	Type 0
01h	Type 2
02h	Type 4
03h	Type 6
04h~FFh	Reserved

PERFORMANCE_MOVE

These 8 bits indicate mobility performance (Pm) in 1MB/s. If the card does not use RU (record unit) mobile data, Pm should be considered to be infinitely great. Setting this field for FFH means infinitely great.

Table 117 Mobility Performance Codes

PERFORMANCE_MOVE	Definition of Numerical Value
00h	Undefined
01h	1MB/s
02h	2MB/s
……	……
Feh	254MB/s
FFh	Infinitely great

AU_SIZE

These four bits indicate the length of AU, and the value is the multiple of the power of 2 in 16K bytes.

Table 118 AU_SIZE Codes

AU_SIZE	Definition of Numerical Value
00h	Undefined
01h	16KB
02h	32KB
03h	64KB
04h	128KB
05h	256KB
06h	512KB
07h	1MB
08h	2MB
09h	4MB
Ah~Fh	Reserved

According to the capacity of the card, the maximum AU length is defined by the following table. The card can set any AU length between the RU length and the maximum AU length.

Table 119 Maximum AU Length

Capacity	Maximum AU length
16MB~64MB	512KB

Capacity	Maximum AU length
128MB~256MB	1MB
512MB	2MB
1GB~32GB	4MB

ERASE_SIZE

This 16-bit field gives the value of N_{ERASE}, and when N_{ERASE} number of AU is erased, ERASE_TIMEOUT defines the timeout period.

If the master can determine the value of N_{ERASE} in a certain erase, the erase progress can be displayed.

Table 120 ERASE_SIZE Codes

ERASE_SIZE	Definition of Numerical Value
0000h	Overtime calculation not supporting erase
0001h	One AU
0002h	Two AUs
0003h	Three AUs
……	……
FFFFh	65535 AUs

ERASE_TIMEOUT

These 6 bits give T_{ERASE}. When multiple AU are erased, T_{ERASE} gives the erase timeout calculated from offset.

Table 121 Erase Timeout Codes

ERASE_TIMEOUT	Definition of Numerical Value
00	Overtime calculation not supporting erase
01	1s
02	2s
03	3 s
……	……
63	63 seconds

ERASE_OFFSET

These two bits give TOFFSET, and when both ERASE_SIZE and ERASE_TIMEOUT are 0, this value is meaningless.

Table 122 Erase Offset Codes

ERASE_OFFSET	Definition of Numerical Value
0	0s
1	1s
2	2s
3	3 s

24.5 Register address mapping

Table 123 SDIO Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
SDIO_PWRCTRL	SDIO power control register	0x00
SDIO_CLKCTRL	SDIO clock control register	0x04
SDIO_ARG	SDIO parameter register	0x08
SDIO_CMD	SDIO command register	0x0C
SDIO_CMDRES	SDIO command response register	0x10
SDIO_RESx	SDIO response x register	0x14 + 4* (x-1), wherein x=1…4
SDIO_DATATIME	SDIO data timer register	0x24
SDIO_DATALEN	SDIO data length register	0x28
SDIO_DCTRL	SDIO data control register	0x2C
SDIO_DCNT	SDIO data counter register	0x30
SDIO_STS	SDIO state register	0x34
SDIO_ICF	SDIO clear interrupt register	0x38
SDIO_MASK	SDIO interrupt mask register	0x3C
SDIO_FIFOCNT	SDIO counter register	0x48
SDIO_FIFODATA	SDIO data FIFO register	0x80

24.6 Register functional description

The device communicates with the system through the 32-bit control registers that can be operated on APB2. These peripheral registers must be operated in word (32-bit) mode.

24.6.1 SDIO power control register (SDIO_PWRCTRL)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	PWRCTRL	R/W	Power Supply Control Select current function state of card clock. 00: Power off, card clock stopped. 01: Reserved. 10: Reserved power-on state. 11: Power-on state, card clock started.
31:2	Reserved		

Note: This register cannot be written within 7 HCLK clock cycles after data write.

24.6.2 SDIO clock control register (SDIO_CLKCTRL)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

SDIO_CLKCTRL register controls the output clock SDIO_CLK .

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	CLKDIV	R/W	Clock Divide Factor This domain defines the division factor between input clock (SDIOCLK) and output clock (SDIO_CLK): SDIO_CLK frequency=SDIOCLK/[CLKDIV + 2].
8	CLKEN	R/W	Clock Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	PWRSAV	R/W	Power Saving Mode Configuration Reduce power consumption by disabling SDIO_ CLK outputs beyond the bus activity. 0: Enable 1: Disable
10	BYPASSEN	R/W	Clock Divider Bypass Enable Before driving SDIO_CLK to output signals, it is required to divide the frequency of SDIOCLK; however, if the divider is bypassed, SDIOCLK will directly drive SDIO_CLK to output signals. 0: Disable 1: Enable
12:11	WBSEL	R/W	Wide Bus Mode Select Select bus mode for different bits, corresponding to different SDIO_D bits. 00: Default, using SDIO_D0 01: 4 bits, using SDIO_D[3:0] 10: 8 bits, using SDIO_D[7:0] 11: Reserved
13	DEPSEL	R/W	SDIO_CLK Dephasing Select Select SDIOCLK rising edge or falling edge to generate SDIO_CLK. 0: Rising edge 1: Falling edge
14	HFCEN	R/W	HW Flow Control Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:15	Reserved		

Notes:

(1) When SD/SD I/O card or multimedia card is in identification mode, the frequency of SDIO_CLK must be less than 400kHz.

(2) When all cards have been assigned the corresponding address, the clock frequency can be changed to the maximum frequency allowed by the card bus.

(3) This register cannot be written to for 3 SDIOCLK (48 MHz) clock cycles and 2 PCLK2 clock cycles after writing data. For SD I/O card, SDIO_CLK can be stopped during read wait period, and then SDIO_CLKCTRL register does not control SDIO_CLK.

24.6.3 SDIO parameter register (SDIO_ARG)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Command parameters are also part of the command, and SDIO_ARG register contains 32-bit command parameters and is transmitted to the card together with the command.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	CMDARG	R/W	Command Argument Store the command argument.

24.6.4 SDIO command register (SDIO_CMD)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

SDIO_CMD register contains command index and command type bit.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:0	CMDINDEX	R/W	Command Index The command index, as part of the command, is transmitted to the card together with the command.
7:6	WAITRES	R/W	Wait for Response Indicate whether CPSM needs to wait for the response, and if it needs to wait for the response, the response type will be indicated. 00: No response, expecting CMDSENT flag 01: Short response, expecting CMDREND or CCRCFAIL flag 10: No response, expecting CMDSENT flag 11: Long response, expecting CMDREND or CCRCFAIL fag
8	WAITINT	R/W	CPSM Waits for Interrupt Request CPSM enables or disables the command timeout control and waits for interrupt request. 0: Enable 1: Disable
9	WENDDATA	R/W	(CPSM Waits for Ends of Data Transfer (CmdPend Internal Signal) 0: Invalid 1: CPSM waits for the end of data transmission before starting to transmit a command.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
10	CPSMEN	R/W	Command Path State Machine (CPSM) Enable Enable CPSM. 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	SDIOSC	R/W	SD I/O Suspend Command 0: Invalid 1: The command to be transmitted is a suspend command (only used for SD I/O card).
12	CMDCPEN	R/W	Enable CMD Completion Enable command completion signal. 0: Disable 1: Enable
13	INTEN	R/W	Interrupt Enable 0: Enable 1: Disable
14	ATACMD	R/W	CE-ATA Command 0: Invalid 1: Switch CPSM to CMD61
31:15	Reserved		

Notes:

(1) This register cannot be written to for 3 SDIOCLK (48 MHz) clock cycles and 2 PCLK2 clock cycles after writing data.

(2) The multimedia card can transmit two kinds of responses: 48-bit short response or 136-bit long response. The SD card and SD I/O card can only transmit short response, parameters can be changed according to the type of response, and the software will distinguish the type of response according to the command transmitted. CE-ATA devices only transmit short responses.

24.6.5 SDIO command response register (SDIO_CMDRES)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
5:0	CMDRES	R	Response Command Index Store the command index in the finally received command response.
31:6	Reserved		

24.6.6 SDIO response x register (SDIO_RESx)

Offset address: 0x14 + 4* (x-1), wherein x=1…4

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

SDIO_RES1/2/3/4 register contains the card state, namely, some information about the received response.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	CARDSTSx	R	See the table below.

The state length of the card is 32 bits or 127 bit according to the response state.

Table 124 Response Type and SDIO_RESPx Register

Register	Short response	Long response
SDIO_RES1	Card state [31:0]	Card state [127:96]
SDIO_RES2	Unused	Card state [95:64]
SDIO_RES3	Unused	Card state [63:32]
SDIO_RES4	Unused	Card state [31:1]

Always receive the most significant bit of card state first, and the lowest bit of SDIO_RES3 register is always 0.

24.6.7 SDIO data timer register (SDIO_DATATIME)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	DATATIME	R/W	Data Timeout Period Record the data timeout period in card bus clock cycle.

Note: Before writing the data control register for data transmission, first write the data timer register and data length register.

24.6.8 SDIO data length register (SDIO_DATALEN)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
24:0	DATALEN	R/W	Data Length Byte length of data to be transmitted.
31:25	Reserved		

Note: For block data transfer, the value in SDIO_DATALEN must be a multiple of the data block length. Before writing SDIO_DCTRL for data transmission, first write SDIO_DATATIME and SDIO_DATALEN.

24.6.9 SDIO data control register (SDIO_DCTRL)

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

SDIO_DCTRL register control data path state machine (DPSM).

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	DTEN	R/W	Data Transfer Enabled 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	DTDRCFG	R/W	Data Transfer Direction Configuration 0: From controller to card 1: From card to controller

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2	DTSEL	R/W	Data Transfer Mode Select 0: Block data transfer 1: Stream data transfer
3	DMAEN	R/W	DMA Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
7:4	DBSIZE	R/W	Data Block Size Define the data bock size: 0000: Block length=20=1 byte 0001: Block length=21=2 bytes 0010: Block length=22=4 bytes 0011: Block length=23=8 bytes 0100: Block length=24=16 bytes 0101: Block length=25=32 bytes 0110: Block length=26=64 bytes 0111: Block length=27=128 bytes 1000: Block length=28=256 bytes 1001: Block length=29=512 bytes 1010: Block length=210=1024 bytes 1011: Block length=211=2048 bytes 1100: Block length=212=4096 bytes 1101: Block length=213=8192 bytes 1110: Block length=214=16384 bytes 1111: Reserved
8	RWSTR	R/W	Read Wait Start 0: Invalid 1: Start read wait operation
9	RWSTOP	R/W	Read Wait Stop Enable If RWSTR is set, stop read operation can be enabled. 0: Disable 1: Enable
10	RDWAIT	R/W	Read Wait Mode 0: Control stop SDIO_D2 1: Control use SDIO_CK
11	SDIOF	R/W	SD I/O Enable Functions If this bit is set, DPSM will execute specific operation of SD I/O card.
31:12	Reserved		

24.6.10 SDIO data counter register (SDIO_DCNT)

Offset address: 0x30

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

When DPSM enters Wait_R or Wait_S state from the idle state, SDIO_DCNT loads values from SDIO_DATALEN, and in the data transmission process, the counter will count down to 0, and then DPSM will enter the idle state and set DATAEND flag.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
24:0	DATACNT	R	Data Count Number Store the number of data bytes to be transmitted.
31:25	Reserved		

Note: This register can be read only by the end of data transmission.

24.6.11 SDIO state register (SDIO_STS)

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

SDIO_STS is a read-only register, and it contains two kinds of flags:

(1) Static flag (bit [23:22, 10:0]): Write SDIO interrupt clear register to clear these bits.

(2) Dynamic flag (bits [21:11]: The state of these bits changes according to the logic of corresponding part.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	COMRESP	R	Command Response Received (CRC detection failure)
1	DBDR	R	Data Block Sent/Received (CRC detection failure)
2	CMDRESTO	R	Command Response Timeout Command timeout period is 64 SDIO_CLK clock cycles.
3	DATATO	R	Data Timeout
4	TXUDRER	R	Transmit FIFO Underrun Error
5	RXOVRER	R	Received FIFO Overrun Error
6	CMDRES	R	Command Response (CRC detection success)
7	CMDSENT	R	Command Sent (No Response Required)
8	DATAEND	R	Data end (data counter, SDIO_DCNT=0)
9	SBE	R	Start Bit Not Detected On All Data Signals In Wide Bus Mode
10	DBCP	R	Data Block Sent/Received
11	CMDACT	R	Command Transfer In Progress
12	TXACT	R	Data Transmit In Progress
13	RXACT	R	Data Receive In Progress
14	TXFHF	R	Transmit FIFO Half Empty At least more 8 words can be written in FIFO.
15	RXFHF	R	Receive FIFO Half Full There are at least eight words in FIFO.
16	TXFF	R	Transmit FIFO Full
17	RXFF	R	Receive FIFO Full If the hardware flow control is used, the RXFF signal will become effective when the FIFO is still 2 words short.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18	TXFE	R	Transmit FIFO Empty If the hardware flow control is used, the TXFE signal will become effective when the FIFO contains 2 words.
19	RXFE	R	Receive FIFO Empty
20	TXDA	R	Data Available In Transmit FIFO
21	RXDA	R	Data Available In Receive FIFO
22	SDIOINT	R	SDIO Interrupt Received
23	ATAEND	R	CE-ATA Command Completion Signal Received For CMD61
31:24	Reserved		

24.6.12 SDIO clear interrupt register (SDIO_ICF)

Offset address: 0x38

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

SDIO_ICF is a write-only register, and the corresponding bit in SDIO_STS state register will be cleared in corresponding register bit.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CRCE	R/W	COMRESP Flag Clear Clear COMRESP flag 0: Invalid 1: Clear
1	DBCE	R/W	DBDR Flag Clear Clear DBDR flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
2	CRTO	R/W	CMDRESTO Flag Clear Clear CMDRESTO flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
3	DTO	R/W	DATATO Flag Clear Clear DATATO flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
4	TXFUE	R/W	TXUDRER Flag Clear Clear TXUDRER flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
5	RXFOE	R/W	RXOVRER Flag Clear Clear RXOVRER flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6	CMDRES	R/W	CMDRES Flag Clear Clear CMDRES flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
7	CMDSENT	R/W	CMDSENT Flag Clear Clear CMDSENT flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
8	DATAEND	R/W	DATAEND Flag clear Clear DATAEND flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
9	SBE	R/W	SBE Flag Clear Clear SBE flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
10	DBCP	R/W	DBCP Flag Clear Clear DBCP flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
21:11	Reserved		
22	SDIOIT	R/W	SDIOIT flag clear bit Clear SDIOIT flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
23	ATAEND	R/W	ATAEND flag clear bit Clear ATAEND flag. 0: Invalid 1: Clear
31:24	Reserved		

24.6.13 SDIO interrupt mask register (SDIO_MASK)

Offset address: 0x3C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Set or clear 0 by software.

When the corresponding bit is set to 1, SDIO_MASK interrupt mask register decides which state bit generates an interrupt.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CCRCFAIL	R/W	Command CRC Fail Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable command block CRC detection failure interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	DCRCFAIL	R/W	Data CRC Fail Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable data block CRC detection failure interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	CMDTO	R/W	Command Timeout Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable command timeout interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	DATATO	R/W	Data timeout interrupt enable Enable/Disable data timeout interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	TXURER	R/W	Tx FIFO Underrun Error Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable transmit FIFO underrun error interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	RXORER	R/W	Rx FIFO Overrun Error Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable receive FIFO overrun error interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	CMDRESRC	R/W	Command Response Received Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable receiving response interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	CMDSENT	R/W	Command Sent Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable command transmitted interrupt since the software has set/cleared this bit. 0: Disable 1: Enable
8	DATAEND	R/W	Data End Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable data transmission end interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	STRTER	R/W	Start Bit Error Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable start bit error interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
10	DBEND	R/W	Data Block End Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable data block transmission end interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	CMDACT	R/W	Command Acting Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable transmitting command interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
12	TXACT	R/W	Data Transmit Acting Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable transmitting data interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
13	RXACT	R/W	Data receive acting interrupt enable Enable/Disable receiving data interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
14	TXHFERT	R/W	Tx FIFO Half Empty Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable transmit FIFO half empty interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
15	RXHFFUL	R/W	Rx FIFO Half Full Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable receive FIFO half full interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
16	TXFUL	R/W	Tx FIFO Full Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable transmit FIFO full interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
17	RXFUL	R/W	Rx FIFO Full Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable receive FIFO full interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
18	TXEPT	R/W	Tx FIFO Empty Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable transmit FIFO empty interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
19	RXFEIE	R/W	Rx FIFO Empty Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable receive FIFO empty interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
20	TXDAVB	R/W	Data Available in Tx FIFO Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable transmit FIFO data available interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
21	RXDAVB	R/W	Data Available in Rx FIFO Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable receive FIFO data available interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
22	SDIOINTREC	R/W	SDIO Mode Interrupt Received Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable SDIO mode interrupt received. 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
23	ATACLPREC	R/W	CE-ATA Command Completion Signal Received Interrupt Enable Enable/Disable receiving CE-ATA command completion signal interrupt. 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:24	Reserved		

24.6.14 SDIO FIFO counter register (SDIO_FIFOCNT)

Offset address: 0x48

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
23:0	FIFOCNT	R	Receive And Transmit FIFO Number The number of data words to be written into FIFO or read out from FIFO. Note: If the data length is not a multiple of 4, the last remaining bytes can be treated as one word.
31:24	Reserved		

24.6.15 SDIO data FIFO register (SDIO_FIFODATA)

Offset address: 0x80

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	DATA	R/W	Receive And Transmit FIFO Data Data to be written into FIFO or read out from FIFO.

25 USB_OTG

25.1 Introduction

One USB_OTG_FS controller is embedded in this chip. It supports both host and slave functions and complies with the On-The-Go supplementary standard of USB 2.0 specification. It can also be configured as "Host only" or "Slave only" mode, fully complies with USB 2.0 specification, and supports host negotiation protocol (HNP) and session request protocol (SRP). In host mode, it supports full-speed (FS, 12Mb/s) and low-speed (LS, 1.5Mb/s) transmission, and in slave mode, it only supports full-speed (FS, 12Mb/s) transmission.

25.2 OTG_FS global register address mapping

Table 125 OTG_FS Global Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
OTG_FS_GCTRLSTS	Full-speed OTG control state register	0x00
OTG_FS_GINT	Full-speed OTG interrupt register	0x04
OTG_FS_GAHBCFG	Full-speed OTG AHB configuration register	0x08
OTG_FS_GUSBCFG	Full-speed OTG USB configuration register	0x0C
OTG_FS_GRSTCTRL	Full-speed OTG reset control register	0x10
OTG_FS_GCINT	Full-speed OTG module interrupt register	0x14
OTG_FS_GINTMASK	Full-speed OTG module interrupt mask register	0x18
OTG_FS_GRXSTS	Full-speed OTG read debug receive state register	0x1C
OTG_FS_GRXSTSP	Full-speed OTG state read and pop register	0x20
OTG_FS_GRXFIFO	Full-speed OTG receive FIFO size register	0x24
OTG_FS_GTXFCFG	Full-speed OTG TXFIFIO configuration register	0x28
OTG_FS_GNPTXFQSTS	Full-speed OTG non-periodic TXFIFIO queue state register	0x2C
OTG_FS_GGCCFG	Full-speed OTG general module configuration register	0x38
OTG_FS_GCID	Full-speed OTG module ID register	0x3C
OTG_FS_GHPTXFSIZE	Full-speed OTG host periodic TXFIFO size register	0x100
OTG_FS_DTXFIFO1	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint TXFIFO size register 1	0x104
OTG_FS_DTXFIFO2	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint TXFIFO size register 2	0x108

Register name	Description	Offset Address
OTG_FS_DTXFIFO3	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint TXFIFO size register 3	0x10C

25.3 OTG_FS global register functional description

25.3.1 Full-speed OTG control state register (OTG_FS_GCTRLSTS)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0001 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	SREQSUC	R	Session Request Success 0: Session request fails 1: Session request succeeds Note: It can be used only in device mode
1	SREQ	R/W	Session Request 0: No request session 1: Request session When HNSUCCHG bit of OTG_FS_GINT register is set, this bit will be cleared by writing 0. This bit will be cleared to 0 when HNSUCCHG is cleared to 0. When USB 1.1 full-speed serial transceiver interface is used for session request, wait for V_{BUS} to discharge to 0.2V after the BSVD bit of the register is cleared to 0. Note: It can be used only in device mode
7:2	Reserved		
8	HNSUC	R	Host Negotiation Success This bit will be cleared to 0 when HNPREQ of this register is set to 1 0: Host negotiation fails 1: Host negotiation succeeds Note: It can be used only in device mode
9	HNPREQ	R/W	Host Negotiation Protocol Request (HNP Request) 0: Not transmit HNP request 1: Transmit HNP request When HNSUCCHG bit of OTG_FS_GINT register is set, this bit will be cleared by writing 0. This bit will be cleared to 0 when HNSUCCHG is cleared to 0. Note: It can be used only in device mode
10	HHNPEN	R/W	Host Set HNP Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable Note: It can be used only in master mode
11	DHNPEN	R/W	Device HNP Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable Note: It can be used only in device mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:12	Reserved		
16	CIDSTS	R	Connector ID Status 0: OTG_FS controller is in Device A mode 1: OTG_FS controller is in Device B mode Note: It can be used in both device and master modes
17	LSDEBT	R	Long/Short Debounce Time Indicate the detected debounce time. The long debounce time is used for physical connection, and the short debounce time is used for software (program) connection. 0: Long debounce time (100ms+2.5μs) 1: Short debounce time (2.5μS) Note: It can be used only in master mode
18	ASVD	R	A-Session Valid 0: Invalid 1: Valid Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
19	BSVD	R	B-Session Valid In OTG mode, this bit is used to confirm whether the device is in connected status. 0: Invalid 1: Valid Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
31:20	Reserved		

25.3.2 Full-speed OTG interrupt register (OTG_FS_GINT)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	Reserved		
2	SEFLG	RC_W1	Session End Flag When V_{BUS} <0.8V, it means that V_{BUS} is not used for B-session, and this bit will be set to 1.
7:3	Reserved		
8	SREQSUCCHG	RC_W1	Session Request Success Bit Change If the value of SREQSUC bit changes, this bit will be set to 1.
9	HNSUCCHG	RC_W1	Host Negotiation Success Bit Change If the value of HNSUC bit changes, this bit will be set to 1.
16:10	Reserved		
17	HNFLG	RC_W1	Host Negotiation Flag When USB host negotiation request is detected, this bit will be set to 1.
18	ADTOFLG	RC_W1	A-Device Timeout Flag If this bit is set to 1, it indicates timeout when A-device is waiting for B-device to connect.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
19	DEBDFLG	RC_W1	Debounce Done Flag When the equipment is connected and debounce is completed, this bit shall be set to 1; when an interrupt is generated, the USB will be reset. This bit is valid only when HNPEN and SRPEN bits of OTG_FS_GUSBCFG register are set to 1. Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
31:20	Reserved		

25.3.3 Full-speed OTG AHB configuration register (OTG_FS_GAHBCFG)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	GINTMASK	R/W	Global Interrupt Mask 0: Mask global interrupt 1: Unmask global interrupt
6:1	Reserved		
7	TXFEL	R/W	TXFIFO Empty Level In device mode: 0: TXFE interrupt means that IN endpoint TXFIFIO is half-empty 1: TXFE interrupt means that IN endpoint TXFIFIO is all-empty In master mode: 0: NPTXFEM interrupt means that non-periodic TXFIFO is half-empty 1: NPTXFEM interrupt means that non-periodic TXFIFO is all-empty
8	PTXFEL	R/W	Periodic TXFIFO Empty Level 0: PTXFE interrupt means that periodic TXFIFIO is half-empty 1: PTXFE interrupt means that periodic TXFIFIO is all-empty Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
31:9	Reserved		

25.3.4 Full-speed OTG USB configuration register (OTG_FS_GUSBCFG)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 1440

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2:0	SEFLG	R/W	FS Timeout Calibrate The additional delay of PHY includes the number of PHY clocks and FS timeout interval. The status of data line may be different for different PHY. The timeout value of OTG_FS is 16~18-bit time.
5:3	Reserved		
6	FSSTSEL	W	Full-Speed Serial Transceiver Select 0: Reserved 1: USB1.1 full-speed serial transceiver This bit is always 1.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7	Reserved		
8	SRPEN	R/W	SRP Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable If the SRP function is disabled, connecting the device cannot be requested to activate V_{BUS} and the session cannot be started.
9	HNPEN	R/W	HNP Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
13:10	TRTIM	R/W	USB Turnaround Time f_{PHYCLK} =48MHZ, in f_{PHYCLK} . TRTIM=4×f_{AHBCLK}÷f_{PHYCLK} Example: When f_{AHBCLK} =72MHz, TRTIM will be set to 7.
28:14	Reserved		
29	FHMODE	R/W	Forced Host Mode 0: Normal mode 1: Master mode
30	FDMODE	R/W	Forced Device Mode 0: Normal mode 1: Device mode
31	CTXP	R/W	Corrupt TX Packet Debug bit, which cannot be set to 1 Note: It can be accessed in both device and master mode

25.3.5 Full-speed OTG reset register (OTG_FS_GRSTCTRL)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x8000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CSRST	R/S	Core Soft Reset This bit controls HCLK and PCLK reset Clear each interrupt and all control state register bits to 0 except the followings: - GCLK bit in OTG_FS_PCGCTRL - PCLKSTOP bit in OTG_FS_PCGCTRL - PHYCLKSEL bit in OTG_FS_HCFG - DSPDSEL bit in OTG_FS_DCFG Reset the AHB slave to the idle state and clear TXFIFO and RXFIFO. When the AHB transmission ends, all transactions of AHB shall be terminated as soon as possible and all transactions on USB shall be aborted immediately. Software reset is used generally in either of the following situations: ● Software development period. ● After the user dynamically changes the PHY selection bit in the USB configuration register listed above. When the user changes the PHY, the corresponding clock will be selected for the PHY and used in the PHY domain. Once a new clock is selected, the PHY domain must be reset so as to ensure normal operation.
1	HSRST	R/S	HCLK Soft Reset This bit is used to refresh the control logic of AHB clock domain. When clearing this interrupt, the corresponding mask interrupt state control bit shall be cleared; when the interrupt state bit is not cleared to zero, the event state after this bit is set to 1 can be read.
2	HFCNTRST	R/S	Host Frame Counter Reset Reset the frame counter in the host by writing this bit, and the SOF frame number transmitted subsequently is 0. Note: It can be accessed only in master mode.
3	Reserved		
4	RXFFLU	R/S	RXFIFO Flush This bit is used to refresh the whole RXFIFO. Before writing to this bit, it is required to ensure that the module does not perform read and write operation on RXFIFO. Only after this bit is cleared to 0, can other operations be performed (usually need to wait for 8 clock cycles).
5	TXFFLU	R/S	TXFIFO Flush This bit is used to refresh one or the whole TXFIFO. Before writing to this bit, it is required to ensure that the module does not perform read and write operation on TXFIFO.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
10:6	TXFNUM	R/W	TXFIFO Number Refresh the FIFO number with TXFIFO refresh bits, and these bits can only be changed after the refresh TXFFIO is cleared to 0. In master mode: 00000: Refresh non-periodic TXFIFO 00001: Refresh periodic TXFIFO 10000: Refresh all TXFIFO In device mode: 00000: Refresh TXFIFO 0 00001: Refresh TXFIFO 1 …… 00101: Refresh TXFIFO 15 10000: Refresh all TXFIFO
30:11	Reserved		
31	AHBMIDL	R	AHB Master Idle This bit indicates whether the AHB master device is idle.

25.3.6 Full-speed OTG module interrupt register (OTG_FS_GCINT)

Offset address: 0x14

Reset value: 0x0400 0020

In order to avoid generating interrupts before initialization, the software must clear this register to zero before enabling the interrupt bit.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	CURMOSEL	R	Current Mode of Operation Select 0: Device mode 1: Master mode
1	MMIS	RC_W1	Mode Mismatch Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when accessing the following registers: ● Access the master mode register in device mode ● Access the device mode register in master mode
2	OTG	R	OTG Interrupt When this bit is set to 1, it indicates that an OTG protocol event has occurred. By reading OTG_FS_GINT register, determine the event that causes the OTG interrupt. This bit can be cleared to zero only after the corresponding bit of the register is cleared.
3	SOF	RC_W1	Start of Frame Interrupt When this bit is set: ● In master mode, it indicates that USB has transmitted one SOF (FS) or Keep-Alive (LS); ● In device mode, it indicates that USB has received one SOF, and the current frame number can be obtained by reading the device state register. An interrupt will be generated only when running in FS mode.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4	RXFNONE	R	RXFIFO Non-empty Interrupt This bit indicates that there are still packets in RXFIFO that have not been read.
5	NPTXFEM	R	Non-periodic TXFIFO Empty Interrupt This interrupt will be triggered when the non-periodic TXFIFO is not empty and there is space for writable entries in the request queue. Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
6	GINNPNAKE	R	Global IN Non-periodic NAK Effective Interrupt This bit indicates that GINAKSET bit of OTG_FS_DCTRL register is valid; this bit can be cleared by clearing GINAKCLR bit of OTG_FS_DCTRL register. As the priority of STALL is higher than that of NAK bit, generation of this interrupt does not mean that USB has transmitted NAK signal. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
7	GONAKE	R	Global OUT NAK Effective Interrupt This bit indicates that GONAKSET bit of OTG_FS_DCTRL register is valid; this bit can be cleared by clearing GONALCLR bit of OTG_FS_DCTRL. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
9:8	Reserved		
10	ESUS	RC_W1	Early Suspend Interrupt When USB has been idle for 3ms, this bit will be set to 1. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
11	USBSUS	RC_W1	USB Suspend Interrupt When USB pending is detected, this bit will be set to 1; when USB has been idle for 3ms, it will enter pending state. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
12	USBRST	RC_W1	USB Reset Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when reset is detected on USB. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
13	ENUMD	RC_W1	Enumeration Done Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when speed enumeration is completed. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
14	ISOPD	RC_W1	Isochronous OUT Packet Dropped Interrupt When the RXFIFO space is insufficient and the module cannot write synchronous OUT data packet to RXFIFO, this bit will be set to 1. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
15	EOPF	RC_W1	End of Periodic Frame Interrupt This bit indicates that the current frame has reached the period specified by PFITV bit of OTG_FS_DCFG register. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
17:16	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18	INEP	R	IN Endpoint Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when a pending interrupt occurs to one IN endpoint Determine the serial number of IN endpoint to which an interrupt occurs by reading OTG_FS_DAEPINT register, and identify the causes of the interrupt by reading OTG_FS_DIEPINTx register. To clear this bit, first clear the corresponding state bit of OTG_FS_DIEPINTx register. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
19	ONEP	R	OUT Endpoint Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when a suspend interrupt occurs to one OUT endpoint Determine the serial number of OUT endpoint to which an interrupt occurs by reading OTG_FS_DAEPINT register, and identify the causes of the interrupt by reading OTG_FS_DOEPINTx register. To clear this bit, first clear the corresponding state bit of OTG_FS_DOEPINTx register. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
20	IIINTX	RC_W1	Incomplete Isochronous IN Transfer Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when the transmission on at least one synchronous IN endpoint in the current frame is not completed. This interrupt is triggered at the same time with EOPF. Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
21	IP_OUTTX	RC_W1	Incomplete Periodic Transfer Interrupt When this bit is set to 1, the interrupts indicated by it are different in different modes. In master mode, if the periodic transaction scheduled to be completed in the current frame is still suspending (i.e. incomplete), the incomplete periodic transfer interrupt will be triggered. In device mode, when the transmission on at least one synchronous OUT endpoint in the current frame is not completed, interrupt of incomplete OUT synchronous transmission will be triggered, and this interrupt will be triggered at the same time with EOPF.
23:22	Reserved		
24	HPORT	R	Host Port Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when the state of full-speed OTG controller port changes in master mode. Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
25	HCHAN	R	Host Channels Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when a suspended interrupt is generated on host channel. Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
26	PTXFE	R	Periodic TXFIFO Empty Interrupt This interrupt will be triggered when the periodic TXFIFO is empty and there is space for writable entries in the request queue. Note: It can be accessed only in master mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
27	Reserved		
28	CINSTSCHG	RC_W1	Connector ID Status Change Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when the state of connector ID line changes. Note: It can be accessed in both master and device mode
29	DEDIS	RC_W1	Device Disconnect Interrupt This bit will be set to 1 when device disconnection is detected. Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
30	SREQ	RC_W1	Session Request/New Session Interrupt The conditions for triggering this interrupt in different modes are: ● Session request is detected in master mode ● In device mode, V_{BUS} is within the range of B-device
31	RWAKE	RC_W1	Resume/Remote Wakeup Interrupt The conditions for triggering this interrupt in different modes are: ● Remote wakeup signal is detected on USB in master mode ● Resume signal is detected on USB bus in device mode

25.3.7 Full-speed OTG module interrupt mask register (OTG_FS_GINTMASK)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

This register is used to mask the interrupt, but the corresponding bit of the interrupt register will still be set to 1.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	Reserved		
1	MMISM	R/W	Mode Mismatch Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
2	OTGM	R/W	OTG Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
3	SOFM	R/W	Frame Start Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
4	RXFNONEM	R/W	RXFIFO Nonempty Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
5	NPTXFEMM	R/W	Nonperiodic TXFIFO Empty Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in master mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6	GINNPNAKEM	R/W	Global IN Nonperiodic NAK Effective Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
7	GONAKEM	R/W	Global OUT NAK Effective Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
9:8	Reserved		
10	ESUSM	R/W	Early Suspend Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
11	USBSUSM	R/W	USB Suspend Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
12	USBRSTM	R/W	USB Reset Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
13	ENUMDM	R/W	Enumeration Done Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
14	ISOPDM	R/W	Isochronous OUT Packet Dropped Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
15	EOPFM	R/W	End of Periodic Frame Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
17:16	Reserved		
18	INEPM	R/W	IN Endpoint Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
19	OUTEPM	R/W	OUT Endpoint Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
20	IIINTXM	R/W	Incomplete Isochronous IN Transfer Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
21	IP_OUTTXM	R/W	Incomplete Periodic Transfer Interrupt Mask In master mode, this bit controls whether to mask incomplete periodic transfer interrupt. In device mode, this bit controls whether to mask the incomplete isochronous OUT Transfer interrupt. 0: Mask 1: Not mask
23:22	Reserved		
24	HPORTM	R/W	Host Port Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
25	HCHM	R/W	Host Channels Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
26	PTXFEM	R/W	Periodic TXFIFO Empty Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in master mode
27	Reserved		
28	CIDSTSCM	R/W	Connector ID Status Change Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed in both master and device mode
29	DEDISM	R/W	Device Disconnect Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed only in device mode
30	SREQM	R/W	Session Request/New Session Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
31	RWAKEM	R/W	Resume/Remote Wakeup Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask Note: It can be accessed in both master and device mode

25.3.8 Full-speed OTG read debug receive state register/full-speed OTG state read and pop register (OTG_FS_GRXSTS/OTG_FS_GRXSTSP)

Read offset address: 0x1C

Pop offset address: 0x20

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Master mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	CHNUM	R	Channel Number This bit indicates by which channel the received data is transmitted.
14:4	BCNT	R	Byte Count This bit indicates the byte count of received IN data packet.
16:15	DPID	R	Data Packet ID This bit indicates the received data packet ID (PID) 00：DATA0 10：DATA1 01：DATA2 11：MDATA
20:17	PSTS	R	Packet Status This bit indicates the status of the received data packet. 0010: Received IN data packet 0011: IN transmission completed 0101: Data synchronization error 0111: Channel stop Others: Reserved
31:21	Reserved		

Device mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3:0	EPNUM	R	Endpoint Number This bit indicates by which endpoint the received data is transmitted.
14:4	BCNT	R	Byte Count This bit indicates the byte count of received data packet
16:15	DPID	R	Data PID This bit indicates the received data packet ID (PID) 00：DATA0 10：DATA1 01：DATA2 11：MDATA
20:17	PSTS	R	Packet Status This bit indicates the status of received data packet 0001: Global OUT NAK 0010: Received OUT data packet 0011: OUT transmission completed 0100: SETUP event completed 0110: Received SETUP data packet Others: Reserved

Field	Name	R/W	Description
24:21	FNUM	R	Frame Number These bits are valid when synchronous OUT endpoint is supported. These bits are the 4 least significant bits of the packet frame number received on the USB
31:25	Reserved		

25.3.9 Full-speed OTG receive FIFO size register (OTG_FS_GRXFIFO)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000 0200

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	RXFDEP	R/W	RXFIFO Depth RXFIFO is in word, and the depth range is: 16~256.
31:16	Reserved		

25.3.10 Full-speed OTG TXFIFO configuration register (OTG_FS_GTXFCFG)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value: 0x0000 0200

Master mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	NPTXSA	R/W	Nonperiodic TXFIFO RAM Start Address This bit indicates the start address of non-periodic TXFIFO RAM.
31:16	NPTXFDEP	R/W	Nonperiodic TXFIFO Depth TXFIFO is in word, and the depth range is: 16~256.

Device mode

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	EPTXSA	R/W	Endpoint0 TXFIFO RAM Start Address This bit indicates the start address of TXFIFO RAM of endpoint 0.
31:16	EPTXFDEP	R/W	Endpoint0 TXFIFO Depth TXFIFO is in word, and the depth range is: 16~256.

25.3.11 Full-speed OTG non-periodic TXFIFO queue state register (OTG_FS_GNPTXFQSTS)

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value: 0x0008 0200

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	NPTXFSA	R	Nonperiodic TXFFIO Space Available These bits indicate the size of available space of non-periodic TXFIFO. (In 32-bit words) 0x0: Non-periodic TXFIFO is full 0x1: 1 word 0x2: 2 words ..... 0xn: n words are available (0≤n≤256) Others: Reserved
23:16	NPTXRSA	R	Non-periodic Transmit Request Space Available This bit indicates the available space size of non-periodic transmit request queue. In master mode: Save IN and OUT requests In device mode: There is only IN request 0x0: The queue is full 0x1: 1 position 0x2: 2 positions ..... 0xn: n positions are available (0≤n≤8) Others: Reserved
30:24	NPTXRQ	R	Nonperiodic Transmit Request Queue Bit 24: Terminate (last data selected for channel/endpoint) Bit [26:25]: 00: IN/OUT token 01: The transmit data packet length is 0 (IN in device mode/OUT in master mode) 10: PING/CPLIT token 11: Stop channel instruction Bit [30:27]: Channel/endpoint number
31	Reserved		

25.3.12 Full-speed OTG general module configuration register (OTG_FS_GGCCFG)

Offset address: 0x38

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	Reserved		
16	PWEN	R/W	Power Down Enable This bit is used to activate the transceiver. 0: Power down is activated 1: Power down is inactivated (activate the transceiver)
17	Reserved		
18	ADVBSEN	R/W	A Device V_{BUS} Sensing Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
19	BDVBSEN	R/W	B Device V_{BUS} Sensing Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
20	SOFPOUT	R/W	SOF Pulse Available on PAD Output This bit selects whether SOF pulse can be output from PAD. 0: No 1: Yes
21	VBSDIS	R/W	V_{BUS} Sensing Disable 0: Enable V_{BUS} sensing 1: Disable V_{BUS} sensing
31:22	Reserved		

25.3.13 Full-speed OTG module ID register (OTG_FS_GCID)

Offset address: 0x3C

Reset value: 0x0000 1200

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	PID	R/W	Product ID Product ID can be programmed by this bit.

25.3.14 Full-speed OTG host periodic TXFIFO size register (OTG_FS_GHPTXFSIZE)

Offset address: 0x100

Reset value: 0x0200 0400

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	HPDTXFSA	R/W	Host Periodic TXFIFO Start Address
31:16	HPDTXFDEP	R/W	Host Periodic TXFIFO Depth TXFIFO is in word, and the minimum value is 16.

25.3.15 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint TXFIFO size register x (OTG_FS_DIEPTXFIFOx) (x=1~3)

Offset address: 0x104+4(x-1)

Reset value: 0x0200 0200

x is FIFO number.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	INEPTXFRSA	R/W	IN Endpoint TXFIFOx Transmit RAM Start Address These bits indicate the start address of the IN endpoint TXFIFOx RAM and need to be aligned with the 32-bit memory.
31:16	INEPTXFDEP	R/W	IN Endpoint TXFIFO Depth TXFIFO is in word, and the minimum value is 16.

25.4 OTG_FS master mode register address mapping

Table 126 Register Address Mapping of OTG_FS Master Mode

Register name	Description	Offset Address
OTG_FS_HCFG	Full-speed OTG host configuration register	0x400
OTG_FS_HFIVL	Full-speed OTG host frame interval register	0x404
OTG_FS_HFIFM	Full-speed OTG host frame information register	0x408
OTG_FS_HPTXSTS	Full-speed OTG host periodic transmission state register	0x410
OTG_FS_HACHINT	Full-speed OTG host all-channel interrupt register	0x414
OTG_FS_HACHIMASK	Full-speed OTG host all-channel interrupt mask register	0x418
OTG_FS_HPORTCSTS	Full-speed OTG host port control state register	0x440
OTG_FS_HCHX	Full-speed OTG host channel-X characteristics register (X=0…7)	0x500+20*X
OTG_FS_HCHINTX	Full-speed OTG host channel-X interrupt register (X=0…7)	0x508+20*X
OTG_FS_HCHIMASKX	Full-speed OTG host channel-X interrupt mask register (X=0…7)	0x50C+20*X
OTG_FS_HCHTSIZEX	Full-speed OTG host channel-X transmission size register (X=0…7)	0x510+20*X

25.5 OTG_FS host mode register functional description

25.5.1 Full-speed OTG host configuration register (OTG_FS_HCFG)

Offset address: 0x400

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	PHYCLKSEL	R/W	FS/LS PHY Clock Select ● In FS mode: 01: PHY clock is 48MHz Others: Reserved ● In LS mode: 00: Reserved 01: PHY clock is 48MHz 10: PHY clock is 6MHz 11: Reserved Note: Software reset is required after the value of this bit is changed.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2	FSSPT	R	FS Support After the host is connected to the device, select whether the host follows the maximum speed supported by the device. If this bit is set to 1, even if the device supports HS mode, the host supports FS at most. 0: Reserved 1: The host only supports FS/LS
31:3	Reserved		

25.5.2 Full-speed OTG host frame interval register (OTG_FS_HFIVL)

Offset address: 0x404

Reset value: 0x0000 EA60

This register can be edited only after the port (PEN bit of OTG_FS_HPORTCSTS register is set to 1) is enabled.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	FIVL	R/W	Frame Interval This bit is used to control the time interval between two continuous SOF (FS) and Keep-Alive (LS). Time interval=frame duration×PHY clock
31:16	Reserved		

25.5.3 Full-speed OTG host frame information register (OTG_FS_HFIFM)

Offset address: 0x408

Reset value: 0x0000 3FFF

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	FNUM	R	Frame Number This bit is used to indicate the current frame number. This bit will be cleared to zero when reaching 0x3FFF.
31:16	FRTIME	R	Frame Remaining Time This bit is used to indicate the current remaining time of frame. The initial value is the value of OTG_FS_HFIVL, and every time one PHY clock is passed, the value of this bit will decrease by 1, and when 0 is reached, this bit will reload the value of frame interval.

25.5.4 Full-speed OTG host periodic transmission state register (OTG_FS_HPTXSTS)

Offset address: 0x410

Reset value: 0x0008 0100

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	FSPACE	R/W	Periodic Transmit Data FIFO Available Space This bit indicates the idle space of periodic TXFIFO (in 32-bit word). 0x0: TXFIFO is full 0x1: 1 word 0x2: 2 words 0xn: n words are available (0≤n≤256) Others: Reserved
23:16	QSPACE	R	Periodic Transmit Request Queue Available Space This bit indicates the available space of periodic transmit request queue. 0x0: The queue is full 0x1: 1 position 0x2: 2 positions 0xn: n positions are available (0≤n≤8) Others: Reserved
31:24	QTOP	R	Top of the Periodic Transmit Request Queue This bit indicates the transaction being processed in periodic transmit request queue. [24]: End [26:25]: Type 00：IN/OUT 01: Zero-length data packet 11: Disable channel command [30:27]: Channel/endpoint number [31]: Odd/even frame 0: Even frame 1: Odd frame

25.5.5 Full-speed OTG host all-channel interrupt register (OTG_FS_HACHINT)

Offset address: 0x414

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	ACHINT	R	All Channels Interrupts No. X bit represents interrupt of Channel X. Up 16 channels.
31:16	Reserved		

25.5.6 Full-speed OTG host all-channel interrupt mask register (OTG_FS_HACHIMASK)

Offset address: 0x418

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	ACHIMASK	R/W	All Channels Interrupts Mask No. X bit represents interrupt mask of Channel X. Up 16 channels. 0: Mask 1: Not mask
31:16	Reserved		

25.5.7 Full-speed OTG host port control state register (OTG_FS_HPORTCSTS)

Offset address: 0x440

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	PCNNTFLG	R	Port Connect Flag 0: The port is not connected 1: Port connected
1	PCINTFLG	RC_W1	Port Connect Interrupt Flag This bit will be set to 1 when the port is connected to the device.
2	PEN	RC_W0	Port Enable After the port resets the sequence, the program cannot write to this bit, and can only enable the port through the module. If this bit is cleared to zero, the port will be disabled. 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	PENCHG	RC_W1	PEN Bit Change This bit will be set to 1 when PEN bit of this register changes.
4	POVC	R	Port Overcurrent This bit indicates whether this port is overloaded. 0: No overload 1: Overload
5	POVCCHG	RC_W1	POVC Bit Change This bit will be set to 1 when POVC bit changes.
6	PRS	R/W	Port Resume 0: Resume signal is not driven 1: Resume signal is driven
7	PSUS	R/S	Port Suspend 0: Port is not suspended 1: Port is suspended
8	PRST	R/W	Port Reset The port can start reset only when this bit is set to 1 and maintained for over 10ms. 0: Not in reset state 1: In reset state
9	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:10	PDLSTS	R	Port Data Line Status This bit indicates the logic level of the USB data line at this time. [10] bit means OTG_FS_FS_DP [11] bit means OTG_FS_FS_DM
12	PP	R/W	Port Power This bit controls the power-on of the port. If there is overload, the port will power down (clear 0). 0: Power down 1: Power on
16:13	PTSEL	R/W	Port Test Mode Select 0000: Test is disabled 0001：Test_J 0010：Test_K 0011：Test_SE0_NAK 0100：Test_Packet 0101：Test_Force_Enable Others: Reserved
18:17	PSPDSEL	R	Port Speed Select 01: Full speed 10: Low speed 11: Reserved
31:19	Reserved		

25.5.8 Full-speed OTG host channel-X characteristics register (OTG_FS_HCHX) (X=0…7)

Offset address: 0x500+20*X

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
10:0	MAXPSIZE	R/W	Maximum Data Packet Size This bit indicates the maximum data packet size of the device endpoint connected to the host.
14:11	EDPNUM	R/W	Endpoint Number This bit indicates the serial number of the device endpoint connected to the host.
15	EDPDRT	R/W	Endpoint Direction 0：OUT 1：IN
16	Reserved		
17	LSDV	R/W	Low-speed Device This bit indicates the low-speed device is connected.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
19:18	EDPTYP	R/W	Endpoint Type This bit is used to select the transmission type of endpoint. 00: Control 01: Synchronous 10: Batch 11: Interrupt
21:20	CNTSEL	R/W	Count Function Select In this register, this bit is only used to indicate the number of transactions that must be executed by the periodic endpoint per frame. 00: Reserved 01: 1 10: 2 11: 3
28:22	DVADDR	R/W	Device Address This bit indicates the device address connected to the host.
29	ODDF	R/W	Odd Frame This bit controls whether the OTG host transmits in odd frame. 0: Even frame 1: Odd frame Note: It applies only to periodic transactions.
30	CHINT	R/S	Channel Interrupt 0: Not interrupt 1: Stop transmitting data through the channel
31	CHEN	R/S	Channel Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

25.5.9 Full-speed OTG host channel-X interrupt register (OTG_FS_HCHINTX) (X=0…7)

Offset address: 0x508+20*X

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TSFCMPN	RC_W1	Transfer Complete Normally
1	TSFCMPAN	RC_W1	Transfer Complete Abnormally
2	Reserved		
3	RXSTALL	RC_W1	STALL Response Received Interrupt
4	RXNAK	RC_W1	NAK Response Received Interrupt
5	RXTXACK	RC_W1	ACK Response Received/Transmitted Interrupt
6	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7	TERR	RC_W1	Transaction Error Indicate that one of the following errors occurs: CRC failure Timeout Bit stuffing error EOP error
8	BABBLE	RC_W1	Babble Error
9	FOVR	RC_W1	Frame Overrun Error
10	DTOG	RC_W1	Data Toggle Error
31:11	Reserved		

25.5.10 Full-speed OTG host channel-X interrupt mask register (OTG_FS_HCHIMASKX) (X=0…7)

Offset address: 0x50C+20*X

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TSFCMPNM	R/W	Transfer Complete Normally Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
1	TSFCMPANM	R/W	Transfer Complete Abnormally Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
2	Reserved		
3	RXSTALLM	R/W	STALL Response Received Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
4	RXNAKM	R/W	NAK Response Received Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
5	RXTXACKM	R/W	ACK Response Received/Transmitted Interrupt 0: Mask 1: Not mask
6	Reserved		
7	TERRM	R/W	Transaction Error Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
8	BABBLEM	R/W	Babble Error Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
9	FOVRM	R/W	Frame Overrun Error Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask

Field	Name	R/W	Description
10	DTOGM	R/W	Data Toggle Error Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
31:11	Reserved		

25.5.11 Full-speed OTG host channel-X transmission size register (OTG_FS_HCHTSIZEX) (X=0…7)

Offset address: 0x510+20*X

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	TSFSIZE	R/W	Transfer Size ● For IN: The value of this bit is the size reserved for the transmission buffer, which is generally an integer multiple of the maximum data packet. ● For OUT: The value of this bit determines the number of bytes to be transmitted by the host.
28:19	PCKTCNT	R/W	Packet Count This bit indicates the value of the transmitted or received data packet. For each data packet transmitted, the value of this bit decreases by 1. When it decreases to 0, it means that the transmission is completed.
30:29	DATAPID	R/W	Data PID This bit is initial PID of data communication. 00：DATA0 01：DATA2 10：DATA1 11: MDATA (controlled transmission)/SETUP (uncontrolled transmission)
31	Reserved		

25.6 OTG_FS device mode register address mapping

Table 127 Address Mapping of OTG_FS Device Mode Register

Register name	Description	Offset Address
OTG_FS_DCFG	Full-speed OTG device configuration register	0x800
OTG_FS_DCTRL	Full-speed OTG device control register	0x804
OTG_FS_DSTS	Full-speed OTG device state register	0x808
OTG_FS_DINIMASK	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint interrupt mask register	0x810
OTG_FS_DOUTIMASK	Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint interrupt mask register	0x814
OTG_FS_DAEPINT	Full-speed OTG device all-endpoint interrupt register	0x818

Register name	Description	Offset Address
OTG_FS_DAEPIMASK	Full-speed OTG device all-endpoint interrupt mask register	0x81C
OTG_FS_DVBUSDTIM	Full-speed OTG device VBUS release time register	0x828
OTG_FS_DVBUSPTIM	Full-speed OTG device VBUS pulse time register	0x82C
OTG_FS_DIEIMASK	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint FIFO empty interrupt mask register	0x834
OTG_FS_DIEPCTRL0	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint 0 control register	0x900
OTG_FS_DIEPCTRLx	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint x control register	0x900+20x
OTG_FS_DIEPINTx	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint x interrupt register (x=0...3)	0x908+20x
OTG_FS_DIEPTRS0	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint 0 transmission size register	0x910
OTG_FS_DIEPTRSx	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint x transmission size register (x=1…3)	0x910+20x
OTG_FS_DITXFSTSx	Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint x TXFIFO state register (x=0...3)	0x918+20x
OTG_FS_DOEPCTRL0	Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint 0 control register	0xB00
OTG_FS_DOEPCTRLx	Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint x control register (x=1…3)	0xB00+20x
OTG_FS_DOEPINTx	Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint x interrupt register (x=0...3)	0xB08+20x
OTG_FS_DOEPTRS0	Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint 0 transmission size register	0xB10
OTG_FS_DOEPTRSx	Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint x transmission size register (x=1…3)	0xB10+20x

25.7 OTG_FS device mode register functional description

25.7.1 Full-speed OTG device configuration register (OTG_FS_DCFG)

Offset address: 0x800

Reset value: 0x0220 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	DSPDSEL	R/W	Device Speed Select This bit selects the maximum enumeration speed of the device connected to the host, 11：FS（48MHz） Others: Reserved

Field	Name	R/W	Description
2	SENDOUT	R/W	Send the Received OUT Packet on Nonzero-length Status 0: After receiving the OUT data packet, transmit the data packet to the application program, and reply to the handshake signal according to the NAK and STALL bits of the endpoint 1: After receiving the OUT data packet (non-zero length), reply to the STALL handshake signal
3	Reserved		
10:4	DADDR	R/W	Device Address This bit is the address of storage device, and the parameters are from SetAddress command.
12:11	PFITV	R/W	Periodic (Micro) Frame Interval This bit is configured to determine the time point of the periodic frame interrupt program, and can determine whether all the synchronous communication of the frame is completed. 00: 80% of frame interval 01: 85% of frame interval 10: 90% of frame interval 11: 95% of frame interval
31:13	Reserved		

25.7.2 Full-speed OTG device control register (OTG_FS_DCTRL)

Offset address: 0x804

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	RWKUPS	R/W	Remote Wakeup Signaling The program wakes up the USB host by setting this bit to 1 to make the module exit the suspended state. Note: According to the protocol, after this bit is set to 1, it should be cleared to 0 within 1~15ms.
1	SDCNNT	R/W	Soft Disconnect Soft disconnect means that the host cannot receive the signal of "Device connected", and the device cannot receive the signal. 0: Normal. The host can receive device connection event 1: Soft disconnection
2	GINAKSTS	R	Global IN NAK Status This bit determines whether to reply to the handshake signal according to the data availability in TXFIFO. 0: Yes 1: No, all non-periodic IN endpoints reply to handshake signal
3	GONAKSTS	R	Global OUT NAK Status 0: Transmit the handshake signal according to FIFO state and NAK and STALL bit state 1: No data is received, and all data packets except the SETUP transaction reply to the NAK signal

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:4	TESTSEL	R/W	Test Mode Select 000: Disable the test 001：Test_J 010：Test_K 011：Test_SE0_NAK 100：Test_Packet 101：Test_Force_Enable Others: Reserved
7	GINAKSET	W	Global IN NAK Setup Set the global non-periodic IN NAK to 1 to make the non-periodic IN endpoint transmit NAK signal. This bit can be set to 1 only when GINNPNAKE bit of OTG_FS_GCINT register is cleared to 0.
8	GINAKCLR	W	Global IN NAK Clear Clear the global non-periodic IN NAK to 0.
9	GONAKSET	W	Global OUT NAK Setup Set the global OUT NAK to 1 to make OUT endpoint transmit NAK signal. This bit can be set to 1 only when GONAKE bit of OTG_FS_GCINT register is cleared to 0.
10	GONAKCLR	W	Global OUT NAK Clear Clear the global OUT NAK to 0.
11	POPROGCMP	R/W	Power-on Programming Complete This bit indicates that the programming operation is completed after the register is awakened.
31:12	Reserved		

25.7.3 Full-speed OTG device state register (OTG_FS_DSTS)

Offset address: 0x808

Reset value: 0x0000 0010

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	SUSSTS	R	Suspend Status When the USB bus has been idle for more than 3ms, the module will enter the suspending state, and this bit will be set to 1. When there is an activity on the USB line or the module receives a remote wake-up signal, the module will exit the suspended state.
2:1	ENUMSPD	R	Enumerated Speed Enumeration speed of full-speed OTG after chirp sequence detection. 11: Full speed (48MHz) Others: Reserved
3	ERTERR	R	Erratic Error If any irregular error occurs, this bit will be set to 1. At this time, communication can be resumed only by performing soft disconnection.
7:4	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
21:8	SOFNUM	R	Frame Number of the Received SOF
31:22	Reserved		

25.7.4 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint interrupt mask register (OTG_FS_DINIMASK)

Offset address: 0x810

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TSFCMPM	R/W	Transfer Completed Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
1	EPDISM	R/W	Endpoint Disable Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
2	Reserved		
3	TOM	R/W	Timeout Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
4	ITXEMPM	R/W	IN Token Received when TxFIFO Empty Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
5	IEPMMM	R/W	IN Token Received with Endpoint Mismatch Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
6	IEPNAKEM	R/W	IN Endpoint NAK Effective Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
12:7	Reserved		
13	NAKM	R/W	NAK Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
31:14	Reserved		

25.7.5 Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint interrupt mask register (OTG_FS_DOUTIMASK)

Offset address: 0x814

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TSFCMPM	R/W	Transfer Completed Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1	EPDISM	R/W	Endpoint Disable Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
2	Reserved		
3	SETPCMPM	R/W	SETUP Phase Complete Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
4	OTXEMPM	R/W	OUT Token Received when Endpoint Disabled Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
5	RXIWCTRLM	R/W	Received Interrupt when Write Control Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
7:6	Reserved		
8	OUTPM	R/W	OUT Packet Error Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
11:9	Reserved		
12	BABBLEM	R/W	Babble Error Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
13	NAKM	R/W	NAK Interrupt Mask 0: Mask 1: Not mask
31:14	Reserved		

25.7.6 Full-speed OTG device all-endpoint interrupt register (OTG_FS_DAEPINT)

Offset address: 0x818

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	INEPINT	R	All IN Endpoint Interrupts No. X bit indicates interrupt of IN endpoint X. Up to 16 IN endpoints.
31:16	OUTEPINT	R	All OUT Endpoint Interrupts No. X bit indicates interrupt of OUT endpoint (X-16). Up to 16 OUT endpoints.

25.7.7 Full-speed OTG device all-endpoint interrupt mask register (OTG_FS_DAEPIMASK)

Offset address: 0x81C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	AINM	R/W	All IN Endpoint Interrupts Mask No. X bit indicates interrupt mask of IN endpoint X. Up to 16 IN endpoints. 0: Mask 1: Not mask
31:16	AOUTM	R/W	All OUT Endpoint Interrupts Mask No. X bit indicates interrupt mask of OUT endpoint (X-16). Up to 16 OUT endpoints. 0: Mask 1: Not mask

25.7.8 Full-speed OTG device V_{BUS} release time register (OTG_FS_DVBUSDTIM)

Offset address: 0x828

Reset value: 0x0000 17D7

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	VBUSDTIM	R/W	Device V_{BUS} Discharge Time Discharge time after V_{BUS} impulses during SRP period. Value=Discharge time (number of PHY clocks)/1024
31:16	Reserved		

25.7.9 Full-speed OTG device V_{BUS} pulse time register (OTG_FS_DVBUSPTIM)

Offset address: 0x82C

Reset value: 0x0000 05B8

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:0	VBUSPTIM	R/W	Device V_{BUS} Pulsing Time V_{BUS} pulse time during SRP. Value=Pulse time (number of PHY clocks)/1024
31:12	Reserved		

25.7.10 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint FIFO empty interrupt mask register (OTG_FS_DIEIMASK)

Offset address: 0x834

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	INEM	R/W	IN Endpoint Tx FIFO Empty Interrupt Mask No. X bit indicates TXFE interrupt mask of IN endpoint X. Up to 16 IN endpoints. 0: Mask 1: Not mask
31:16	Reserved		

25.7.11 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint 0 control register (OTG_FS_DIEPCTRL0)

Offset address: 0x900

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	MAXPS	R/W	Maximum Packet Size This bit configures the maximum data packet size of endpoint. 00: 64 bytes 01: 32 bytes 10: 16 bytes 11: 8 bytes
14:2	Reserved		
15	USBAEP	R	USB Active Endpoint This bit indicates whether the endpoint is activated in the current configuration and interface. This bit is always set to 1.
16	Reserved		
17	NAKSTS	R	NAK Status 0: The module replies to non-NAK handshake signal according to the FIFO state 1: The module replies to the NAK handshake signal on this endpoint. At this time, even if there is space in TXFIFO, the module will still stop transmitting data.
19:18	EPTYPE	R	Endpoint Type This bit is set to 00 by hardware, indicating control type of the endpoint.
20	Reserved		
21	STALLH	R/S	STALL Handshake The program can only set this bit to 1 and when the endpoint receives the SETUP token, this bit will be cleared to 0. The priority of STALL is higher than that of NAK.
25:22	TXFNUM	R/W	TXFIFO Number Set a separate FIFO number for IN endpoint 0.
26	NAKCLR	W	NAK Clear When performing write operation to this bit, the NAK bit of the endpoint 0 will be cleared to 0.
27	NAKSET	W	NAK Set When performing write operation to this bit, the NAK bit will be set to 1.
29:28	Reserved		
30	EPDIS	R	Endpoint Disable Data transmission on the endpoint can be stopped by setting this bit to 1. This bit needs to be cleared to 0 before the endpoint disable interrupt bit is set to 1; this bit can only be set to 1 after EPEN is set to 1.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31	EPEN	R	Endpoint Enable After this bit is set to 1, the endpoint will start to transmit data. When any of the following interrupts is triggered, this bit will be cleared to 0: ● Disable endpoint ● Transmission completed

25.7.12 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint x control register (OTG_FS_DIEPCTRLx) (x=1~3, endpoint number)

Offset address: 0x900+0x20*x; x=1~3

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
10:0	MAXPS	R/W	Maximum Packet Size This bit configures the maximum data packet size of endpoint (in byte).
14:11	Reserved		
15	USBAEP	R/W	USB Active Endpoint This bit indicates whether the endpoint is activated in the current configuration and interface. After USB is reset, this bit will be cleared to 0 (except endpoint 0).
16	EOF_PID	R	Even Odd Frame This bit is used to indicate the frame number transmitted/received by the endpoint (for synchronization IN) or the PID of data packet (for interrupt/batch IN). Used for synchronous IN endpoints: 0: Even frame 1: Odd frame Endpoint Data PID Used for interrupt/batch IN endpoints: 0：DATA0 1：DATA1
17	NAKSTS	R	NAK Status 0: The module replies to non-NAK handshake signal according to the FIFO state 1: The module replies to the NAK handshake signal on this endpoint; at this time, for asynchronous IN: even if there is data available in TXFIFO, the module will still stop transmitting data; for synchronous IN, the module will transmit zero-length data packet even if there is data available in TXFIFO Note: The module always responds to the SETUP data packet through ACK handshake.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
19:18	EPTYPE	R/W	Endpoint Type 00: Control 01: Synchronous 10: Batch 11: Interrupt
20	Reserved		
21	STALLH	RW/RS	STALL Handshake ● For uncontrolled and non-synchronous IN endpoints (read/write mode is R/W): When this bit is set to 1, the device will reply STALL to all tokens from the USB host. This bit can only be cleared to 0 by software. ● Used for control endpoints (read/write mode is R/W): When this bit is set to 1, it means that the module receives SETUP token.
25:22	TXFNUM	R/W	TXFIFO Number These bits indicate the FIFO number associated with the endpoint, and a separate FIFO number needs to be set for each valid IN endpoint
26	NAKCLR	W	NAK Clear When performing write operation to this bit, the NAK bit of the endpoint will be cleared to 0.
27	NAKSET	W	NAK Set When performing write operation to this bit, the NAK bit of the endpoint will be set to 1. This bit can control the transmission of NAK handshake signal.
28	DPIDSET	W	DATA0 PID Set ● Used for interrupt/batch IN endpoints: When performing write operation to this bit, PID will be set to DATA0. Even Frame Set ● Used for synchronous IN endpoints: When performing write operation to this bit, EOF_PID will be set to even frame.
29	OFSET	W	Odd Frame Set It is used for synchronous IN endpoints. When performing write operation to this bit, EOF_PID will be set to odd frame.
30	EPDIS	R/S	Endpoint Disable Data transmission on the endpoint can be stopped by setting this bit to 1. This bit needs to be cleared to 0 before the endpoint disable interrupt bit is set to 1; this bit can only be set to 1 after EPEN is set to 1.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31	EPEN	R/S	Endpoint Enable After this bit is set to 1, the endpoint will start to transmit data. When any of the following interrupts is triggered, this bit will be cleared to 0: ● SETUP completed ● Disable endpoint ● Transmission completed

25.7.13 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint x interrupt register (OTG_FS_DIEPINTx) (x=0~3, endpoint number)

Offset address: 0x908+0x20*x; x=0~3

Reset value: 0x0000 0080

Read this register when ONEP bit of OTG_FS_GCINT register is set to 1; Read OTG_FS_DAEPINT register to obtain the accurate endpoint number of the device endpoint x interrupt register, and then read the register; only when the corresponding bit of the register is cleared to 0, can the corresponding bit of OTG_FS_DAEPINT register and OTG_FS_GCINT register be cleared to 0.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TSFCMP	RC_W1	Transfer Complete Interrupt This bit indicates that the transmission on the endpoint has been completed.
1	EPDIS	RC_W1	Endpoint Interrupt Disable This bit means that the endpoint is disabled.
2	Reserved		
3	TO	RC_W1	Timeout Interrupt This bit is only applicable to the control IN endpoints, indicating that the response to the recently received IN token has timed out.
4	ITXEMP	RC_W1	Receive IN Token Interrupt when FIFO is empty This bit is only applicable to non-periodic IN endpoints, indicating that IN token is received when the corresponding TXFIFO of the endpoint is empty.
5	TXTMEPI	RC_W1	Receive IN Token does not Match EP Interrupt This bit indicates the endpoint outside of the non-periodic TxFIFO IN token received by the module.
6	IEPNAKE	RC_W1	IN Endpoint NAK Effective This bit indicates that the module samples NAK, namely, the NAK bit of the IN endpoint has taken effect. This bit will be cleared to 0 when NAKCLR bit of OTG_FS_DIEPCTRLx register is written.
7	TXFE	R	TXFIFO Empty Interrupt The interrupt will be generated when TXFIFO of this endpoint is empty.
10:8	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11	PDSTS	RC_W1	Packet Dropped Status This bit indicates to the module that ISOC OUT data packet has been dropped.
12	Reserved		
13	INNAK	RC_W1	Input NAK Interrupt An interrupt will be generated when the module transmits or receives NAK.
31:14	Reserved		

25.7.14 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint 0 transmission size register (OTG_FS_DIEPTRS0)

Offset address: 0x910

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

This register can be modified only after EPEN bit of OTG_FS_DIEPCTRLx register is set to 1; this register can be read only when EPEN bit of OTG_FS_DIEPCTRLx register is cleared to 0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:0	EPTRS	R/W	Endpoint Transfer Size This bit indicates the data size contained by endpoint 0 in one data transmission.
18:7	Reserved		
20:19	EPPCNT	R/W	Endpoint Packet Count This bit indicates the number of data packets contained by endpoint 0 in one data transmission.
31:21	Reserved		

25.7.15 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint x transmission size register (OTG_FS_DIEPTRSx) (x=1~3, endpoint number)

Offset address: 0x910+0x20*x; x=1~3

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

This register can be modified only after EPEN bit of OTG_FS_DIEPCTRLx register is set to 1; this register can be read only when EPEN bit of OTG_FS_DIEPCTRLx register is cleared to 0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	EPTRS	R/W	Endpoint Transfer Size This bit indicates the data size contained by endpoint x in one data transmission (in byte).
28:19	EPPCNT	R/W	Endpoint Packet Count This bit indicates the number of data packets contained by endpoint x in one data transmission.
31:29	Reserved		

25.7.16 Full-speed OTG device IN endpoint x TXFIFO state register (OTG_FS_DITXFSTSx) (x=0~3, endpoint number)

Offset address: 0x918+0x20*x; x=0~3

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	INEPTXFSA	R	IN Endpoint TXFIFO Space Available This bit indicates the available space of the IN endpoint TXFIFO (in word). 0x0: IN endpoint TXFIFO is full 0x1: 1 byte 0x2: 2 bytes 0xn: n bytes are available (0<n<256) Other value: Reserved
31:16	Reserved		

25.7.17 Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint 0 control register (OTG_FS_DOEPCTRL0)

Offset address: 0xB00

Reset value: 0x0000 8000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	MAXPS	R	Maximum Packet Size This bit configures the maximum data packet size of endpoint. 00: 64 bytes 01: 32 bytes 10: 16 bytes 11: 8 bytes
14:2	Reserved		
15	USBAEP	R	USB Active Endpoint This bit indicates whether the endpoint is activated in the current configuration and interface. This bit is always set to 1.
16	Reserved		
17	NAKSTS	R	NAK Status 0: The module replies to non-NAK handshake signal according to the FIFO state 1: The module replies to the NAK handshake signal on this endpoint. At this time, even if there is space in RXFIFO, the module will still stop receiving data.
19:18	EPTYPE	R	Endpoint Type This bit is set to 00 by hardware, indicating control type of the endpoint.
20	SNMEN	R/W	Snoop Mode Enable In snoop mode, the correctness of OUT data packets is not checked before they are transmitted to the storage area.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
21	STALLH	R/S	STALL Handshake The program can only set this bit to 1 and when the endpoint receives the SETUP token, this bit will be cleared to 0. The priority of STALL is higher than that of NAK.
25:22	Reserved		
26	NAKCLR	W	NAK Clear When performing write operation to this bit, the NAK bit of the endpoint 0 will be cleared to 0.
27	NAKSET	W	NAK Set When performing write operation to this bit, the NAK bit will be set to 1.
29:28	Reserved		
30	EPDIS	R	Endpoint Disable Data transmission on the endpoint can be stopped by setting this bit to 1. This bit needs to be cleared to 0 before the endpoint disable interrupt bit is set to 1; this bit can only be set to 1 after EPEN is set to 1.
31	EPEN	W	Endpoint Enable After this bit is set to 1, the endpoint will start to transmit data. When any of the following interrupts is triggered, this bit will be cleared to 0: ● SETUP completed ● Disable endpoint ● Transmission completed

25.7.18 Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint x control register (OTG_FS_DOEPCTRLx) (x=1~3, endpoint number)

Offset address: 0xB00+0x20*x; x=1~3

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
10:0	MAXPS	R/W	Maximum Packet Size This bit configures the maximum data packet size of endpoint (in byte).
14:11	Reserved		
15	USBAEP	R/W	USB Active Endpoint This bit indicates whether the endpoint is activated in the current configuration and interface. After USB is reset, this bit will be cleared to 0 (except endpoint 0).

Field	Name	R/W	Description
16	EOF_PID	R	Even Odd Frame This bit is used to indicate the frame number transmitted/received by the endpoint (for synchronization IN) or the PID of data packet (for interrupt/batch IN). Used for synchronous IN endpoints: 0: Even frame 1: Odd frame Endpoint Data PID Used for interrupt/batch IN endpoints: 0：DATA0 1：DATA1
17	NAKSTS	R	NAK Status 0: The module replies to non-NAK handshake signal according to the FIFO state 1: The module replies to the NAK handshake signal on this endpoint. At this time, for OUT endpoint, even if there is remaining space in RXFIFO, the module will still stop receiving data Note: The module always responds to the SETUP data packet through ACK handshake.
19:18	EPTYPE	R/W	Endpoint Type 00: Control 01: Synchronous 10: Batch 11: Interrupt
20	SNMEN	R/W	Snoop Mode Enable In snoop mode, the correctness of OUT data packets is not checked before they are transmitted to the storage area.
21	STALLH	RW/RS	STALL Handshake ● For uncontrolled and non-synchronous IN endpoints (read/write mode is R/W): When this bit is set to 1, the device will reply STALL to all tokens from the USB host. This bit can only be cleared to 0 by software. ● Used for control endpoints (read/write mode is R/W): When this bit is set to 1, it means that the module receives SETUP token.
25:22	Reserved		
26	NAKCLR	W	NAK Clear When performing write operation to this bit, the NAK bit of the endpoint will be cleared to 0.
27	NAKSET	W	NAK Set When performing write operation to this bit, the NAK bit of the endpoint will be set to 1. This bit can control the transmission of NAK handshake signal.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
28	DPIDSET	W	DATA0 PID Set ● Used for interrupt/batch IN endpoints: When performing write operation to this bit, PID will be set to DATA0. Even Frame Set ● Used for synchronous IN endpoints: When performing write operation to this bit, EOF_PID will be set to even frame.
29	OFSET	W	Odd Frame Set ● Used for synchronous OUT endpoints: When performing write operation to this bit, EOF_PID will be set to odd frame. ● Used for interrupt/batch OUT endpoints: When performing write operation to this bit, PID will be set to DATA1.
30	EPDIS	R/S	Endpoint Disable Data transmission on the endpoint can be stopped by setting this bit to 1. This bit needs to be cleared to 0 before the endpoint disable interrupt bit is set to 1; this bit can only be set to 1 after EPEN is set to 1.
31	EPEN	R/S	Endpoint Enable After this bit is set to 1, the endpoint will start to transmit data. When any of the following interrupts is triggered, this bit will be cleared to 0: ● SETUP completed ● Disable endpoint ● Transmission completed

25.7.19 Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint x interrupt register (OTG_FS_DOEPINTx) (x=0~3, endpoint number)

Offset address: 0xB08+0x20*x; x=0~3

Reset value: 0x0000 0080

Read this register when ONEP bit of OTG_FS_GCINT register is set to 1; Read OTG_FS_DAEPINTx register to obtain the accurate endpoint number of the device endpoint x interrupt register, and then read the register; only when the corresponding bit of the register is cleared to 0, can the corresponding bit of OTG_FS_DAEPINT register and OTG_FS_GCINT register be cleared to 0.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	TSFCMP	RC_W1	Transfer Complete Interrupt This bit indicates that the transmission on the endpoint has been completed.
1	EPDIS	RC_W1	Endpoint Interrupt Disable This bit means that the endpoint is disabled.
2	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
3	SETPCMP	RC_W1	SETUP Phase Complete Interrupt This bit is only applicable to the control OUT endpoint, indicating that the SETUP phase has been completed. After an interrupt is generated, the received SETUP data can be decoded.
4	RXOTDIS	RC_W1	Receive OUT Token When Disable Interrupt This bit is only applicable to the control OUT endpoint, indicating that the OUT token is received without enabling the endpoint.
5	RXSTSM	RC_W1	Received Interrupt Status when Write Control Mask This bit indicates to the module that the master has switched from the data phase to the state phase of controlling write transmission.
7:6	Reserved		
8	OUTPERR	RC_W1	OUT Packet Error Interrupt Mask When the module detects an error in the OUT data packet or CRC error, an interrupt is generated.
11:9	Reserved		
12	BABBLE	RC_W1	Babble Error Interrupt When the module receives garbled code, an interrupt is generated.
13	INNAK	RC_W1	Input NAK Interrupt An interrupt will be generated when the module transmits or receives NAK.
31:14	Reserved		

25.7.20 Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint 0 transmission size register (OTG_FS_DOEPTRS0)

Offset address: 0xB10

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

This register can be modified only after EPEN bit of OTG_FS_DOEPCTRLx register is set to 1; this register can be read only after EPEN bit of OTG_FS_DOEPCTRLx register is cleared to 0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:0	EPTRS	R/W	Endpoint Transfer Size This bit indicates the data size contained by endpoint 0 in one data transmission (in byte).
18:7	Reserved		
19	EPPCNT	R/W	Endpoint Packet Count This bit will decrease to 0 after RXFIFO is written to a data packet.
28:20	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
30:29	SPCNT	R/W	SETUP Packet Count These bits indicate the number of SETUP data packets that can be received continuously 01: 1 10: 2 11: 3
31	Reserved		

25.7.21 Full-speed OTG device OUT endpoint x transmission size register (OTG_FS_DOEPTRS) (x=1~3, endpoint number)

Offset address: 0xB10+0x20*x; x=1~3

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

This register can be modified only after EPEN bit of OTG_FS_DOEPCTRLx register is set to 1; this register can be read only after EPEN bit of OTG_FS_DOEPCTRLx register is cleared to 0

Field	Name	R/W	Description
18:0	EPTRS	R/W	Endpoint Transfer Size This bit indicates the data size contained by endpoint x in one data transmission (in byte).
28:19	EPPCNT	R/W	Endpoint Packet Count This bit indicates the number of data packets contained by endpoint x in one data transmission.
30:29	PID_SPCNT	R/W	Receive Data PID or SETUP Packet Count ● For synchronous OUT endpoints, this bit indicates the PID of the last received data packet. 00：DATA0 01：DATA2 10：DATA1 11：MDATA ● For the control OUT endpoint, this bit indicates the number of SETUP data packets that the endpoint can continuously receive. 01: 1 10: 2 11: 3
31	Reserved		

25.8 Full-speed OTG power and clock gating control register (OTG_FS_PCGCTRL)

Offset address: 0xE00

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

This register is applicable to both master mode and device mode.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	PCLKSTOP	R/W	PHY Clock Stop 0: The PHY clock is enabled to start when the USB communication is restored or the session is restarted 1: Stop the PHY clock when USB communication is suspended, the session is invalid, or the device is disconnected
1	GCLK	R/W	Gate HCLK 0: When the USB communication is restored or the session is restarted, it is allowed to stop providing the clock to modules other than AHB bus slave interface, main interface and wake-up 1: When the USB communication is suspended or the session is invalid, stop providing the clock for the modules other than AHB bus slave interface, main interface and wake-up
3:2	Reserved		
4	PHYSUS	R/W	PHY Suspend This bit means that PHY is suspended.
31:5	Reserved		

26 Analog-digital converter (ADC)

26.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 128 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of ADC Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Analog watchdog	AWD
Conversion	C
Injected	INJ
Regular	REG
Start	S
Scan	SCAN
Single	SINGLE
Automatic	A
Group	G
Discontinuous	DISC
Count	CNT
Dual	DUAL
Continuous	C
Calibration	CAL
Reset	RST
Alignment	ALIGN
External	EXT
Event	E
Trigger	TRG
Temperature	T
Sensor	S
Time	TIM
Sample	SMP
Offset	OF
High	H
Low	L
Threshold	T
Sequence	SEQ

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Length	LEN
Regular Channels	REG
Injected Channel	INJ
Injected Group	INJG
Automatic	A
Conversion	C
Analog Watchdog	AWD
Discontinuous Mode	DISC
Scan Mode	SCAN
Continuous Conversion	CONTC
Single Conversion	SINGLEC
External	EXT
External Trigger	EXTTRG
Sample Time	SMPTIM
Sequence	SEQ
Number	NUM

26.2 Introduction

The series of product has 2 ADC with 12-bit precision. Each ADC has up to 16 external channels and 3 internal channels, and the A/D conversion modes of each channel include single, continuous, scan or discontinuous. ADC conversion results can be left-aligned or right-aligned and stored in 16-bit data register.

26.3 Main characteristics

(1) ADC power supply requirements: From 2.4V to 3.6V during full-speed operation; 1.8V during low-speed operation.

(2) ADC input range: $V_{REF-} \leq V_{IN} \leq V_{REF+}$.

(3) 12-bit, 10-bit, 8-bit or 6-bit resolutions are configurable.

(4) ADC conversion time

- Formula: TCONV=sampling time+12 cycles
- The sampling time is controlled by SMPCYCCFGx[2:0], the minimum sample cycle is 3, and when ADCCLK=30MHz, the sample time is 3 cycles: TCONV=3 cycles+12 cycles=15 cycles=0.5μs.

(5) Mode input channel category

- External GPIO input channel
- One internal temperature sensor (V_{SENSE}) input channel
- One internal reference voltage (V_{REFINT}) input channel
- One internal backup voltage (V_{BAT}) input channel

(6) Channel conversion mode

- Single channel conversion mode: single conversion mode, continuous conversion mode
- Input channel classification: regular channel, injected channel
- One-group channel conversion mode: scan mode, discontinuous mode and injected channel management
- ADC mode: Independent ADC mode, and dual/triple ADC mode

(7) Trigger mode

- On-chip timer signal trigger
- External pin

(8) Data register

- Regular data register
- Injected data register
- General regular data register

(9) Interrupt

- End of conversion interrupt
- Analog watchdog interrupt
- Overrun interrupt

(10) DMA request supporting regular data conversion

(11) Data alignment

- Configurable data alignment of DALIGNCFG bit of data register ADC_CTRL2 is left or right alignment.

26.4 Functional Description

26.4.1 ADC pins

Table 129 ADC Pins

Name	Description	Signal type
V_{REF+}	High-end/Positive electrode reference voltage used by ADC, $1.8V \leq V_{REF+} \leq V_{DDA}$	Input, analog reference positive electrode

Name	Description	Signal type
V_{DDA}	Equivalent to analog power supply of V_{DD} and: 2.4V≤V_{DDA} ≤V_{DD} (3.6V) during full-speed operation, 1.8V≤V_{DDA} ≤V_{DD} (3.6V) during low-speed operation	Input, analog power supply
V_{REF-}	Low-end/Negative reference voltage used by ADC, V_{REF-} =V_{SSA}	Input, analog reference negative electrode
V_{SSA}	Equivalent to analog power ground of V_{ss}	Input, analog power ground
ADCx_IN[15:0]	16 analog input channels	Analog input signal

26.4.2 ADC conversion mode

The product has multiple built-in ADC and channels (refer to the data manual for the specific number), which can be combined into a variety of conversion modes.

Multiple ADC are built in; according to the number of ADC, the conversion mode can be classified into independent ADC mode and dual-ADC mode; multiple channels are built-in, and they can be classified into two groups, namely regular channel and injected channel. The internal conversion mode of each group can be divided into scan mode and discontinuous mode; for the internal channels of each group, the conversion mode is divided into single conversion mode and continuous conversion mode.

In the application, according to the actual application requirements, the number of ADC, the number of conversion channels and the conversion mode of each channel, the ADC conversion mode meeting the requirements can be designed.

26.4.2.1 Conversion mode of single ADC and single channel

Single ADC single channel

Single ADC single channel is not enabled by external trigger software. The conversion mode is single and continuous concurrent disabling of scan. The result of data conversion is right alignment. After the single ADC conversion is completed, the interrupt is triggered, and data is read in the interrupt service function, not using DMA transmission.

Single conversion mode

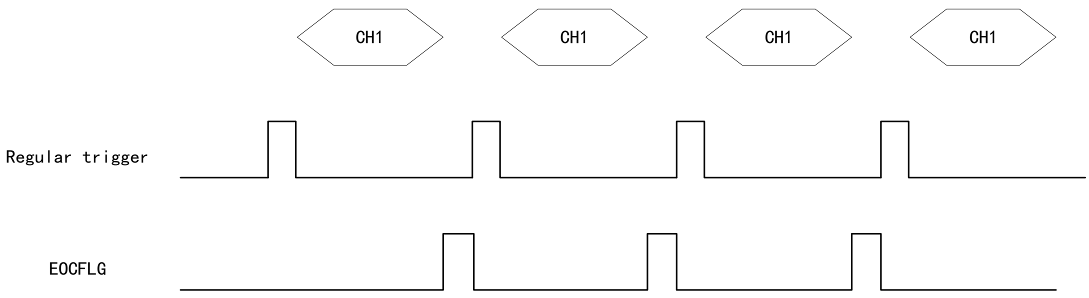
In this mode, for single channel, only one conversion is performed for this channel, and for multiple channels, only one conversion is performed for this group of channels .

This mode is started by the ADCEN bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL2 or is started by external trigger.

After one conversion of regular channel is over, the converted data will be stored in 16-bit ADC_REGDATA register, and EOCFLG bit will be set to 1. If configuration EOCIEN bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated.

After one conversion of injected channel is over, the converted data will be stored in 16-bit ADC_INJDATA1 register, and INJEOCFLG bit will be set to 1. If configuration INJEOCIEN bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated.

Figure 123 Single Conversion Mode Timing Diagram



Continuous conversion mode

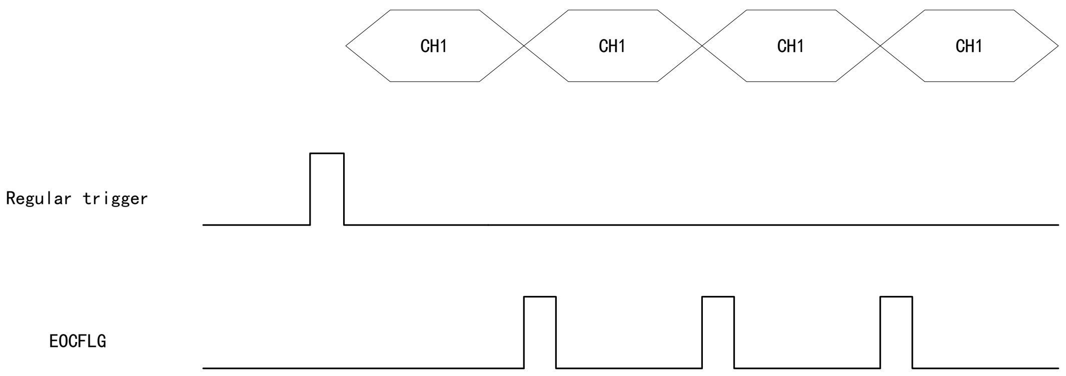
In this mode, for single channel, continuous conversion is conducted for this channel.

This mode is started by the ADCEN bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL2 or is started by external trigger.

After the conversion of one regular channel is over, the converted data will be stored in 16-bit ADC_REGDATA register, and EOCFLG bit will be set to 1. If configuration EOCIEN bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated.

After the conversion of one injected channel is over, the converted data will be stored in 16-bit ADC_INJDATA1 register, and INJEOCFLG bit will be set to 1. If configuration INJEOCIEN bit is set to 1, an interrupt will be generated.

Figure 124 Continuous Conversion Mode Timing Diagram



26.4.2.2 **Conversion mode of single ADC and one group of channels**

Single ADC multi-channel

Enable the scan mode under single-ADC multi-channel condition, the conversion is triggered by software rather than externally, the result of data conversion is right aligned, and the data of ADC conversion results are transmitted to the memory by DMA.

Classification of analog input channels

Regular channel group

- The regular group consists of 16 channels
- Regular channel conversion sequence is determined by the configuration register ADC_REGSEQx
- The total number of conversion channels of regular group is determined by REGSEQLEN bit of configuration register ADC_REGSEQ1

Injected channel group

- The injected group consists of 4 channels
- Injected channel conversion sequence is determined by the configuration register ADC_INJSEQ
- The total number of conversion channels of injected group is determined by INJSEQLEN bit of configuration register ADC_INJSEQ

Internal input channel

Temperature sensor:

- The temperature sensor is used to measure the internal temperature of the chip
- The temperature sensor selects ADC1_IN18 input channel
- Start by configuring TSVREFEN bit of the register ADC_CCTRL

Internal reference voltage V_{REFINT} :

- The internal reference voltage is used to provide a stable voltage output for ADC
- Internal reference voltage V_{REFINT} selects ADC1_IN17 input channel

Internal backup voltage V_{BAT} :

- Internal backup voltage V_{BAT} is used to select ADC1_IN18 input channel

Note: The temperature sensor shares ADC1_IN18 channel with V_{BAT}. Only temperature sensor or V_{BAT} can be selected at once. When temperature sensor and V_{BAT} conversion are set at the same time, only V_{BAT} conversion will be executed.

Channel conversion sequence

Configuration of regular sequence registers:

- Configure REGSEQC1~REGSEQC6 bits of the register ADC_REGSEQ3 to set No. 1~6 conversion channels
- Configure REGSEQC7~REGSEQC12 bits of the register ADC_REGSEQ2 to set No. 7~12 conversion channels
- Configure REGSEQC13~REGSEQC16 bits of the register ADC_REGSEQ1 to set No. 13~16 conversion channels
- Configure REGSEQLEN of the register ADC_REGSEQ1 to set the number of channels for conversion

Configuration of injected sequence register:

- Configure INJSEQC1~INJSEQC4 bit of the register ADC_INJSEQ to set No. 1~4 conversion channels
- Configure INJSEQLEN of the register ADC_INJSEQ to set the number of channels for conversion
- If the value of INJSEQLEN is less than 4, the conversion sequence will be different and start from (4-INJSEQLEN).

Channel conversion mode

Scan Mode

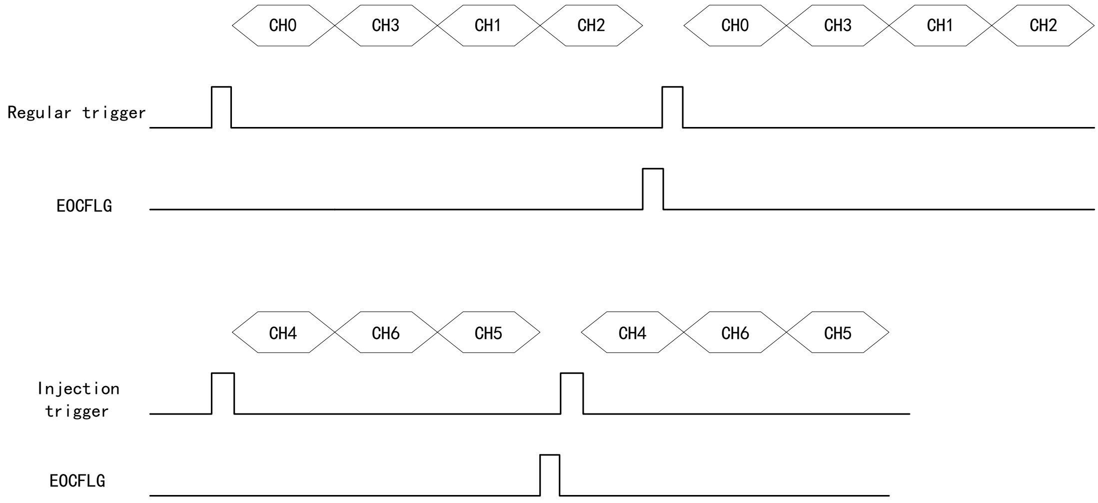
This mode is applicable to one group of channels, which is equivalent to a single conversion on each channel of one group of channels.

This mode is started by SCANEN bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL1, and after startup, ADC scans all channels which are arranged according to the sequence register ADC_REGSEQ or the ADC_INJSEQ, and after each channel conversion is completed, it will be automatically converted to the next channel of the group.

If the configuration CONTCEN bit is set to 1, the conversion will continue from the first channel of the group when the last channel of the group completes conversion.

If the configuration DMAEN bit is set to 1, the DMA controller will transmit the converted data of regular channel to SRAM every time the channel conversion is completed.

Figure 125 Scan Mode Timing Diagram



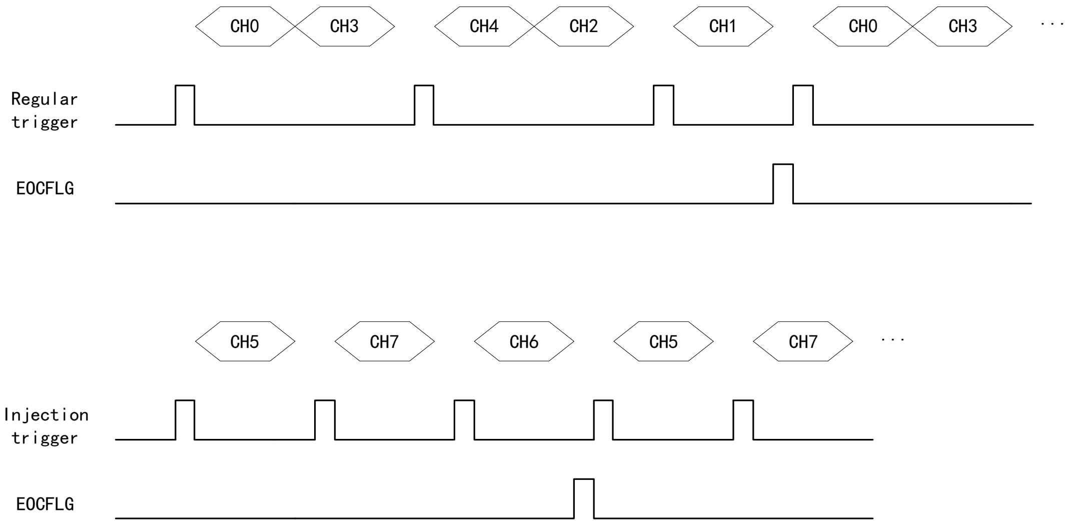
Discontinuous mode

This mode is suitable for a group of channels, which is equivalent to continuous conversion of multiple channels in a group of channels.

For regular groups, this mode is enabled by configuring REGDISCEN bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL1; after startup, conduct short sequence conversion of n channels (n<=8), and n is determined by configuring DISCNUMCFG[2:0] of register ADC_CTRL1; next round of conversion of n channels can be started through software control or external trigger source and when the conversion of all channels of this group is completed, EOCFLG bit will be set to 1.

For injected groups, this mode is enabled by INJDISCEN bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL1; after startup, one channel will be converted according to the configuration sequence of the sequence register; conversion of next channels can be started in sequence by software control or external trigger source, and when the conversion of all channels of this group is completed, EOCFLG bit and INJEOCFLG bit will be set to 1.

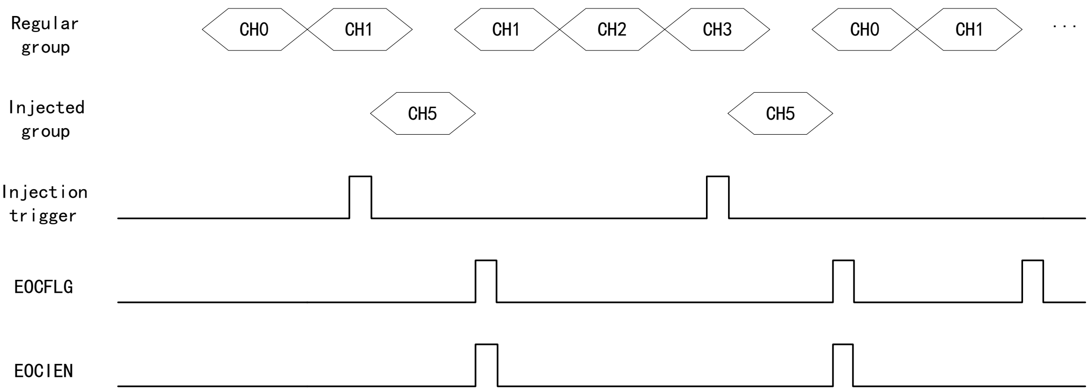
Figure 126 Discontinuous Mode Timing Diagram



Injected channel management

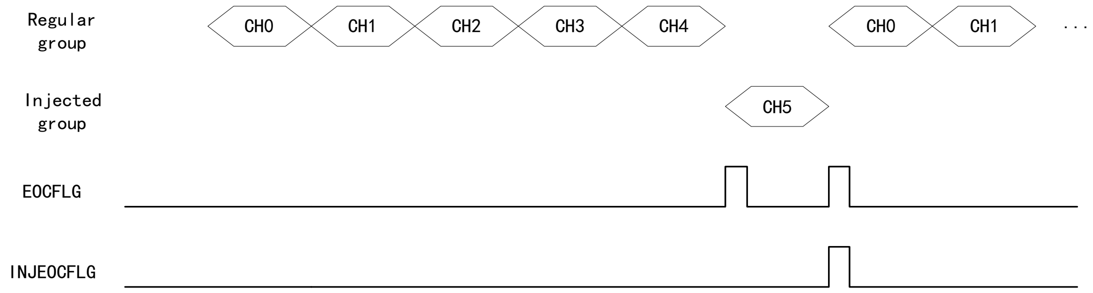
Trigger injection: Start by clearing INJGACEN bit of the register ADC_CTRL1 and configuring the SCANEN bit. If a software trigger or external trigger is generated during the conversion of regular group channels, the injected conversion will be triggered. At this time, the regular channel conversion will stop, the injected channel sequence will start conversion, and after the injected group channel conversion is completed, the regular group channel conversion will be recovered.

Figure 127 Trigger Injection Timing Diagram



Automatic injection: Start by INJGACEN bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL1; after conversion of the regular group channels is completed, the injected group channels will start conversion automatically; in the automatic injection mode, external trigger of the injected group channels must be disabled; if the CONTCEN bit of the register ADC_CTRL2 is also configured, all channels of regular group and injected group will convert continuously.

Figure 128 Automatic Injection Timing Diagram



26.4.3 External trigger

Register configuration of external trigger is as follows:

- The external event trigger of regular group channel is enabled by REGEXTTRGSEL bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL2
- The external event trigger of injected group channel is enabled by INJGEXTTRGSEL bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL2.

Table 130 External Trigger of Regular Channel

Trigger source	REGEXTTRGSEL[3:0]	Trigger type
TMR1_CC1	0000	Internal signal from on-chip timer
TMR1_CC2	0001	
TMR1_CC3	0010	
TMR2_CC2	0011	
TMR2_CC3	0100	
TMR2_CC4	0101	
TMR2_TRGO	0110	
TMR3_CC1	0111	
TMR3_TRGO	1000	
TMR4_CC4	1001	
TMR5_CC1	1010	
TMR5_CC2	1011	
TMR5_CC3	1100	
TMR8_CC1	1101	
TMR8_TRGO	1110	
EINT Line 11	1111	External pin

Table 131 External Trigger of Injected Channel

Trigger source	INJGEXTTRGSEL[3:0]	Trigger type
TMR1_CC4	0000	Internal signal from on-chip timer

Trigger source	INJGEXTTRGSEL[3:0]	Trigger type
TMR1_TRGO	0001	
TMR2_CC1	0010	
TMR2_TRGO	0011	
TMR3_CC2	0100	
TMR3_CC4	0101	
TMR4_CC1	0110	
TMR4_CC2	0111	
TMR4_CC3	1000	
TMR4_TRGO	1001	
TMR5_CC4	1010	
TMR5_TRGO	1011	
TMR8_CC2	1100	
TMR8_CC3	1101	
TMR8_CC4	1110	
EINT Line 15	1111	External pin

26.4.4 Data register

26.4.4.1 Regular data register

ADC_REGDATA is a 32-bit ADC regular data register. In single-ADC mode, only the lower 16 bits are used to store the converted data. In dual-ADC mode, the lower 16 bits are used to store the converted data of ADC1 while the higher 16 bits are used to store the converted data of ADC2. The data are left aligned or right aligned.

Determined whether to use DMA transmission by DALIGNCFG bit of configuration register ADC_CTRL2. There are at most 16 regular channels, but only one regular data register. Therefore, data coverage will occur in multi-channel conversion, and DMA transmission is needed at this time.

26.4.4.2 Injection data memory

ADC_INJDATAx (x=1,2,3,4) is ADC injected data register, and there are four 32-bit registers, of which the low 16 bits are effective and the high 16 bits are reserved. There are at most four injected channels and four injection data registers, so data coverage will not occur in multi-channel conversion. The data are left aligned or right aligned.

26.4.5 Interrupt

26.4.5.1 End of conversion interrupt

Interrupt of end of conversion of regular group channels

An interrupt will be generated by the end of conversion of regular channels; read the value of the regular data register in the interrupt function.

Determine by EOCFLG bit of configuration register ADC_STS.

Interrupt of end of conversion of injected group channels

An interrupt will be generated after the conversion of injected channels is completed; read the value of the regular data register in the interrupt function.

Determine by INJEOCFLG bit of configuration register ADC_STS.

26.4.5.2 Analog watchdog interrupt

If the input analog voltage is not within the threshold range, an analog watchdog interrupt will be generated.

Determine by the AWDFLG bit of the configuration register ADC_STS.

26.4.5.3 Overrun interrupt

When the conversion data is lost (overruns), an overrun interrupt will be generated.

Determine by OVRFLG bit of the configuration register ADC_STS.

26.4.6 DMA

DMA request will be generated after the conversion of regular channels is completed; the converted data result can be transmitted to the memory from the ADC_REGDATA register.

26.5 Register address mapping

Table 132 ADC Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
ADC_STS	ADC status register	0x00
ADC_CTRL1	ADC control register 1	0x04
ADC_CTRL2	ADC control register 2	0x08
ADC_SMPTIM1	ADC sampling time register 1	0x0C
ADC_SMPTIM2	ADC sampling time register 2	0x10
ADC_INJDOFx	ADC injected channel data offset register x	0x14-0x20

Register name	Description	Offset Address
ADC_AWDHT	Analog watchdog high-threshold register	0x24
ADC_AWDLT	Analog watchdog low-threshold register	0x28
ADC_REGSEQ1	ADC regular sequence register 1	0x2C
ADC_REGSEQ2	ADC regular sequence register 2	0x30
ADC_REGSEQ3	ADC regular sequence register 3	0x34
ADC_INJSEQ	ADC injected sequence register	0x38
ADC_INJDATAx	ADC injected data register x	0x3C–0x48
ADC_REGDATA	ADC regular data register	0x4C
ADC_CCTRL	ADC general-purpose control register	0x304

26.6 Register functional description

26.6.1 ADC status register (ADC_STS)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	AWDFLG	RC_W0	Analog Watchdog Occur Flag This bit is set to 1 by hardware and cleared to 0 by software, indicating whether an analog watchdog event occurs. 0: Not occur 1: Occurred
1	EOCFLG	RC_W0	Regular Channel End Of Conversion Flag 0: Not completed 1: Completed
2	INJEOCFLG	RC_W0	Injected Channel End Of Conversion Flag 0: Not completed 1: Completed
3	INJCSFLG	RC_W0	Injected Channel Conversion Start Flag 0: Not start 1: Start
4	REGCSFLG	RC_W0	Regular Channel Conversion Start Flag 0: Not start 1: Start
5	OVRFLG	RC_W0	Overrun Flag 0: Not occur 1: Occurred
31:6	Reserved		

26.6.2 ADC control register 1 (ADC_CTRL1)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	AWDCHSEL	R/W	Analog Watchdog Channel Select 00000: ADC analog input channel 0 00001: ADC analog input channel 1 …… 01111: ADC analog input channel 15 10000: ADC analog input channel 16 Other value: Reserved
5	EOCIEN	R/W	EOC Interrupt Enable Used to enable the generation of interrupt after the conversion is completed. 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	AWDIEN	R/W	Analog Watchdog Interrupt Enable If the bit is set and in scan mode, when the watchdog detects that the value exceeds the threshold, an interrupt will be generated and the scan will be aborted. 0: Disable 1: Enable
7	INJEOCIEN	R/W	Interrupt Enable For Injected Channels End Of Conversion Flag 0: Disable 1: Enable
8	SCANEN	R/W	Scan Mode Enable In the scan mode, convert the channel selected by ADC_REGSEQX or ADC_INJSEQX register. 0: Disable 1: Enable Note: If EOCIEN or INJEOCIEN bit is set respectively, EOC or INJEOC interrupt will be generated only after the last channel is converted.
9	AWDSGLEN	R/W	Enable The Watchdog On A Single Channel In Scan Mode This channel is specified by AWDCHSEL[4:0] bit. 0: Enable on all channels 1: Enable on a single channel
10	INJGACEN	R/W	Automatic Injected Group Conversion Enable Used to enable automatic conversion of injected channels after the conversion of regular channel group is completed. 0: Disable 1: Enable
11	REGDISCEN	R/W	Discontinuous Mode On Regular Channels Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
12	INJDISCEN	R/W	Discontinuous Mode On Injected Channels Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:13	DISCNUMCFG	R/W	Discontinuous Mode Channel Number Configure 000: One channel 001: Two channels …… 111: Eight channels
21:16	Reserved		
22	INJAWDEN	R/W	Enable the Analog Watchdog Function On the Injected Channels 0: Disable 1: Enable
23	REGAWDEN	R/W	Enable the Analog Watchdog Function On the Regular Channels） 0: Disable 1: Enable
25:24	RESSEL	R/W	Resolution Selection 00: 12 bits 01: 10 bits 10: 8 bits 11: 6 bits
26	OVRIEN	R/W	Overrun Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:27	Reserved		

26.6.3 ADC control register 2 (ADC_CTRL2)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	ADCEN	R/W	ADC Enable 0: Disable ADC conversion and enter the power-down mode 1: Enable ADC and start conversion
1	CONTCEN	R/W	Continuous Conversion Mode Enable 0: Single conversion mode 1: Continuous conversion mode
7:2	Reserved		
8	DMAEN	R/W	DMA Mode Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
9	DMADISSEL	R/W	DMA disable selection 0: No new DMA request will be issued after the last transmission 1: DMA request will be issued whenever data conversion occurs and DMA is enabled

Field	Name	R/W	Description
10	EOCSEL	R/W	End of conversion selection 0: EOCFLG bit will be set to 1 at the end of each regular conversion sequence 1: EOCFLG bit will be set to 1 at the end of each regular conversion
11	DALIGNCFG	R/W	Data Alignment Mode Configure 0: Right-aligned 1: Left-aligned
15:12	Reserved		
19:16	INJGEXTTRGSEL	R/W	Select the External Trigger Event to Start the Injected Group Conversion 0000: CC4 event of timer 1 0001: TRGO event of timer 1 0010: CC1 event of timer 2 0011: TRGO event of timer 2 0100: CC2 event of timer 3 0101: CC4 event of timer 3 0110: CC1 event of timer 4 0111: CC2 event of timer 4 1000: CC3 event of timer 4 1001: TRGO event of timer 4 1010: CC4 event of timer 5 1011: TRGO event of timer 5 1100: CC2 event of timer 8 1101: CC3 event of timer 8 1110: CC4 event of timer 8 1111: EINT Line 15
21:20	INJEXTTRGEN	R/W	Enable the External Trigger for Injected Channels 00: Trigger detection is disabled 01: Trigger detection on rising edge 10: Trigger detection on falling edge 11: Trigger detection on rising edge and falling edge
22	INJSWSC	R/W	Software Start Conversion Injected Channels 0: Reset state 1: Start conversion of injected channels
23	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
27:24	REGEXTTRGSEL	R/W	Select the External Trigger Event to Start the Regular Group Conversion 0000: CC1 event of timer 1 0001: CC2 event of timer 1 0010: CC3 event of timer 1 0011: CC2 event of timer 2 0100: CC3 event of timer 2 0101: CC4 event of timer 2 0110: TRGO event of timer 2 0111: CC1 event of timer 3 1000: TRGO event of timer 3 1001: CC4 event of timer 4 1010: CC1 event of timer 5 1011: CC2 event of timer 5 1100: CC3 event of timer 5 1101: CC1 event of timer 8 1110: TRGO event of timer 8 1111: EINT Line 11
29:28	REGEXTTRGEN	R/W	Enable the External Trigger for Regular Channels 00: Trigger detection is disabled 01: Trigger detection on rising edge 10: Trigger detection on falling edge 11: Trigger detection on rising edge and falling edge
30	REGSWSC	R/W	Software Start Conversion Regular Channels 0: Reset state 1: Start conversion of regular channels
31	Reserved		

26.6.4 ADC sampling time register 1 (ADC_SMPTIM1)

Offset address: 0x0C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
26:0	SMPCYCCFGx[2:0]	R/W	Channel x Sample Cycles Configure 000: 3 cycles 001: 15 cycles 010: 28 cycles 011: 56 cycles 100: 84 cycles 101: 112 cycles 110: 144 cycles 111: 480 cycles
31:27	Reserved		

26.6.5 ADC sampling time register 2 (ADC_SMPTIM2)

Offset address: 0x10

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
29:0	SMPCYCCFGx[2:0]	R/W	Channel x Sample Cycles Configure 000: 3 cycles 001: 15 cycles 010: 28 cycles 011: 56 cycles 100: 84 cycles 101: 112 cycles 110: 144 cycles 111: 480 cycles
31:30	Reserved		

26.6.6 ADC injected channel data offset register x (ADC_INJDOFx) (x=1..4)

Offset address: 0x14-0x20

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:0	INJDOFx	R/W	Data Offset For Injected Channel x When converting the injected channels, these bits define the values to be subtracted from the original converted data, and the result of the conversion can be read in the ADC_INJDATAx register.
31:12	Reserved		

26.6.7 Analog watchdog high-threshold register (ADC_AWDHT)

Offset address: 0x24

Reset value: 0x0000 0FFF

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:0	AWDHT[11:0]	R/W	Analog Watchdog High Threshold
31:12	Reserved		

26.6.8 Analog watchdog low-threshold register (ADC_AWDLT)

Offset address: 0x28

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
11:10	AWDLT[11:0]	R/W	Analog Watchdog Low Threshold
31:12	Reserved		

26.6.9 ADC regular sequence register 1 (ADC_REGSEQ1)

Offset address: 0x2C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	REGSEQC13	R/W	13th Conversion In Regular Sequence Define the channel number of No. 13 conversion in regular sequence (0~17)
9:5	REGSEQC14	R/W	14th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
14:10	REGSEQC15	R/W	15th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
19:15	REGSEQC16	R/W	16th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
23:20	REGSEQLEN	R/W	Regular Channel Sequence Length These bits are defined by software as the number of channels in regular channel conversion sequence. 0000: One conversion 0001: Two conversions …… 1111: 16 conversions
31:24	Reserved		

26.6.10 ADC regular sequence register 2 (ADC_REGSEQ2)

Offset address: 0x30

Reset value: 0x0000 000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	REGSEQC7	R/W	7th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
9:5	REGSEQC8	R/W	8th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
14:10	REGSEQC9	R/W	9th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
19:15	REGSEQC10	R/W	10th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
24:20	REGSEQC11	R/W	11th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
29:25	REGSEQC12	R/W	12th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
31:30	Reserved		

26.6.11 ADC regular sequence register 3 (ADC_REGSEQ3)

Offset address: 0x34

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	REGSEQC1	R/W	1st Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
9:5	REGSEQC2	R/W	2nd Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
14:10	REGSEQC3	R/W	3rd Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
19:15	REGSEQC4	R/W	4th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
24:20	REGSEQC5	R/W	5th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
29:25	REGSEQC6	R/W	6th Conversion In Regular Sequence Refer to the description of REGSEQC13.
31:30	Reserved		

26.6.12 ADC injected sequence register (ADC_INJSEQ)

Offset address: 0x38

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
4:0	INJSEQC1	R/W	1st Conversion In Injected Sequence Define the channel number of 1st conversion in injected sequence (0~17)
9:5	INJSEQC2	R/W	2nd Conversion In Injected Sequence
14:10	INJSEQC3	R/W	3rd Conversion In Injected Sequence
19:15	INJSEQC4	R/W	4th Conversion In Injected Sequence
21:20	INJSEQLEN	R/W	Injected Channel Sequence Length These bits are defined by software as the number of channels in injected channel conversion sequence, and the conversion sequence is: $INJSEQC_{(4-INJSEQLEN)}$ →$INJSEQ_{(5-INJSEQLEN)}$ →$INJSEQC_{(6-INJSEQLEN)}$ →$INJSEQC_{(7-INJSEQLEN)}$; the details are as follows: 00: One conversion, only converting INJSEQC4 01: Two conversions; the conversion sequence is INJSEQC3→INJSEQC4 10: Three conversions; the conversion sequence is INJSEQC2→INJSEQC3→INJSEQC4 11: Four conversions; the conversion sequence is INJSEQC1→INJSEQC2→INJSEQC3→INJSEQC4
31:22	Reserved		

26.6.13 ADC injected data register x (ADC_INJDATAx) (x= 1..4)

Offset address: 0x3C-0x48

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	INJDATA	R	Injected conversion data (Injected Conversion Data) Conversion result of injected channel, read-only.
31:16	Reserved		

26.6.14 ADC regular data register (ADC_REGDATA)

Offset address: 0x4C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	REGDATA	R	Regular conversion data (Regular Conversion Data) Conversion result of regular channel, read-only.
31:16	Reserved		

26.6.15 ADC general-purpose control register (ADC_CCTRL)

ADC1 Offset address: 0x04 (this offset address is only related to ADC1 base address+0x300)

ADC2 Offset address: 0x04 (this offset address is only related to ADC2 base address+0x300)

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
15:0	Reserved		
17:16	ADCPRE	R/W	ADC Prescaler 00: PCLK2 2 divided frequency 01: PCLK2 4 divided frequency 10: PCLK2 6 divided frequency 11: PCLK2 8 divided frequency
21:18	Reserved		
22	VBATEN	R/W	V_{BAT} Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
23	TSVREFEN	R/W	Temperature Sensor And V_{REFINT} Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
31:24	Reserved		

27 Comparator (COMP)

27.1 Full Name and Abbreviation of Terms

Table 133 Full Name and Abbreviation Description of Terms

Full name in English	English abbreviation
Comparator	COMP
Invert	INV
Hysteresis	HYS
Input Plus	INP
Input Minus	INM

27.2 Introduction

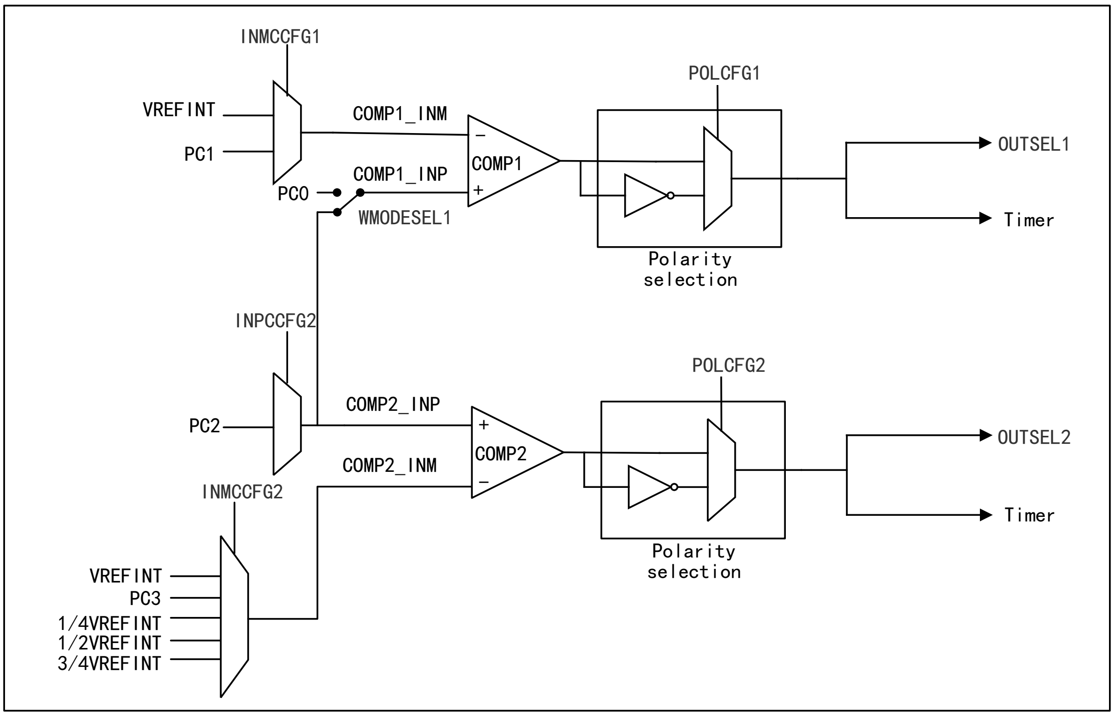
Two independent general-purpose comparators (COMP1 and COMP2) are embedded in MCU, and they can be used in combination with the timer.

27.3 Main characteristics

- Comparator 1 supports ultra-low power
- Comparator 2 supports rail-to-rail input, fast or slow mode
- Two comparators can be combined to form a window comparator
- Both the rate and loss are programmable (only applicable to COMP2)

27.4 Structure block diagram

Figure 129 COMP Structure Block Diagram



27.5 Functional Description

27.5.1 COMP clock

COMP has no separate clock enable control bit and works independent of PCLK clock, but its clock is synchronized with PCLK.

COMP can reset the module only by system reset.

27.5.2 COMP input

When input as a comparator, GPIO is required to configure as analog mode.

COMP input consists of non-inverting input and inverting input. All non-inverting inputs are connected to external IO; the inverting input can be programmed and selected, and the external connection has IO pin; the internal connection has internal reference voltage (V_{REFINT}), and 1/4 or 1/2 or 3/4 of internal reference voltage.

27.5.3 COMP output

The output of the comparator can be connected to the following signals of the internal timer:

- Input capture channel of timer

The output polarity can be modified by programming the POLCFGx bit of COMPx_CSTS register

27.5.4 COMP mode

The rate and loss of the comparator 2 are programmable. Considering the practical application, we can program the SPEEDM2 bit in the register COMP2_CSTS to reach the most appropriate state.

27.6 Register address mapping

Table 134 COMP Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
COMP1_CSTS	COMP control state register	0x18
COMP2_CSTS	COMP2 control state register	0x1C

27.7 Register functional description

27.7.1 COMP control state register (COMP1_CSTS)

Offset address: 0x18

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	EN1	R/W	Comparator 1 Enable This bit is set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK1 bit is not set). 0: Disable 1: Enable
3:1	Reserved		
5:4	INMCCFG1	R/W	Comparator 1 Input Minus Connection Configure These bits are set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK1 bit is not set). 00：VREFINT 01：PC1 1x: Reserved
7:6	Reserved		
8	WMODESEL1	R/W	Comparator 1 Window Mode Select This bit is set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK1 bit is not set). The non-inverting input of the two comparators are connected together to form the window comparator mode. 0: The non-inverting input of comparator 1 is connected to PC0 1: The non-inverting inputs of two comparators are shorted
10:9	Reserved		

Field	Name	R/W	Description
14:11	OUTSEL1	R/W	Comparator 1 Output Select 0000: No selection 0001: Timer 1 disconnect input 0010: Timer 1 input capture 1 0011: Timer 1 ETRF input 0100: Timer 8 disconnect input 0101: Timer 8 input capture 1 0110: Timer 8 ETRF input 100: Timer 2 input capture 4 1000: Timer 2 ETRF input 1001: Timer 3 input capture 1 1010: Timer 3 ETRF input 1011: Timer 4 input capture 1
15	POLCFG1	R/W	Comparator 1 Polarity Configure This bit is set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK1 bit is not set) to invert the polarity of comparator 1. 0: Comparator 1 output value is not inverted 1: Comparator 1 output value is inverted
29:16	Reserved		
30	OUTVAL1	R	Comparator 1 Output Status This bit is read-only and reflects the current output state of comparator 1 under the influence of POLCFG1 bit.
31	LOCK1	R/S	COMP1_CSTS Register Lock This bit is reset by software and cleared to 0 by hardware system. 0: COMP1_CSTS register can read and write 1: COMP1_CSTS register is read-only

27.7.2 COMP2 control state register (COMP2_CSTS)

Offset address: 0x1C

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	EN2	R/W	Comparator 2 Enable This bit is set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK2 bit is not set). 0: Disable 1: Enable
2:1	Reserved		
3	SPEEDM2	R/W	Comparator 2 Speed Mode Select This bit is set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK2 bit is not set). 0: Slow speed 1: Fast speed

Field	Name	R/W	Description
6:4	INMCCFG2	R/W	Comparator 2 Input Minus Connection Configure These bits are set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK2 bit is not set). Used to select the input connected to the inverting input of comparator 2. 000：VREFINT 001：PC3 100：1/4 VREFINT 101：1/2 VREFINT 110：3/4 VREFINT Others: Reserved Note: If VREFINT and related inputs are selected, EN_VREFIN bit of SYSCFG_CFGR3 register must be set to 1.
7	Reserved		
10:8	INPCCFG2	R/W	Comparator 2 Input Plus Connection Configure These bits are set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK2 bit is not set). Used to select the input connected to the non-inverting input of comparator 2. 000：PC2 Others: Reserved
14:11	OUTSEL2	R/W	Comparator 2 output select 0000: No selection 0001: Timer 1 disconnect input 0010: Timer 1 input capture 1 0011: Timer 1 ETRF input 0100: Timer 8 disconnect input 0101: Timer 8 input capture 1 0110: Timer 8 ETRF input 100: Timer 2 input capture 4 1000: Timer 2 ETRF input 1001: Timer 3 input capture 1 1010: Timer 3 ETRF input 1011: Timer 4 input capture 1
15	POLCFG2	R/W	Comparator 2 Polarity Configure This bit is set and cleared by software (assuming the LOCK2 bit is not set) to invert the polarity of comparator 2. 0: Comparator 2 output value is not inverted 1: Comparator 2 output value is inverted
29:16	Reserved		
30	OUTVAL2	R	Comparator 2 Output Status This bit is read-only and reflects the current output state of comparator 2 under the influence of POLCFG2 bit.
31	LOCK2	R/S	COMP2_CSTS Register Lock This bit is reset by software and cleared to 0 by hardware system. 0: COMP2_CSTS register can read and write 1: COMP2_CSTS register is read-only

28 Random number (RNG)

28.1 Introduction

RNG is a random number generator, which provides a 32-bit random number in the master reading based on continuous analog noise.

28.2 Main characteristics

(1) Provide 32-bit random number generated by the analog generator

(2) The interval between two consecutive random numbers is 40 PLLCLK48 clock signal cycles

(3) Monitor RNG entropy to mark abnormal behaviors

(4) Disabling RNG can reduce the power consumption

28.3 Functional Description

The random number generator is realized by analog circuit. This circuit provides seeds for the linear feedback shift register to generate 32-bit random numbers.

Multiple ring oscillators form an analog circuit, and the seeds are generated by XOR operation through the frequency output by the oscillator. PLLCLK48 is dedicated clock of RNG_LFSR, and it provides clock information for it at a constant frequency, so the quality of random numbers has nothing to do with the frequency of HCLK. After RNG_LFSR introduces a large number of seeds, the content will be transferred to RNG_DATA register. The system will monitor the seed and PLLCLK48. The status bit in RNG_STS register indicates the time when an abnormal sequence occurs on the seed or the PLLCLK48 clock frequency is too low. An interrupt will be generated when an error is detected.

28.3.1 Enable RNG

The setting sequence of enabling RNG is as follows:

(1) Enable the interrupt and an interrupt will be generated when the random number is ready or an error occurs.

(2) A random number will be generated when RNG_CTRL[RNGEN]=1. At this time, the analog part, RNG_LFSR and error detector will be activated.

(3) At the time of each interrupt, when CLKERINT bit and FSINT bit of RNG_STS register are set to 0 and DATARDY=1, RNG_DATA register can be read.

The first random number generated after RNGEN bit is set shall not be used, and it shall be saved for comparison with the next random number. Each random number needs to be compared with the previous one. If any pair is equal, it means that the consecutive random number generator test fails.

28.3.2 Error state

28.3.2.1 Clock error

When a clock error occurs because the PLLCLK48 clock is incorrect, RNG cannot generate random numbers again. Check whether the clock controller is configured correctly to provide RNG clock and clear CLKERINT bit. RNG can work normally when CLKERCSTS=0. The clock error does not affect the last random number, so the random number in RNG_DATA register can be used.

28.3.2.2 Seed error

In case of a seed error, the interrupt random number will be generated as long as FSCSTS=1. Since the entropy may be insufficient, if there are already data in RNG_DATA register, the generated interrupt random number cannot be used.

RNGEN bit shall be set after FSINT bit is cleared to reinitialize and restart RNG.

28.4 Register address mapping

Table 135 RNG Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
RNG_CTRL	RNG control register	0x00
RNG_STS	RNG state register	0x04
RNG_DATA	RNG data register	0x08

28.5 Register functional description

28.5.1 RNG control register (RNG_CTRL)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
1:0	Reserved		
2	RNGEN	R/W	RNG Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	INTEN	R/W	Interrupt Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable; when any of DATARDY bit, CLKERINT bit and FSINT bit in RNG_STS register is set to 1, an interrupt will be pending

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:4	Reserved		

28.5.2 RNG state register (RNG_STS)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	DATARDY	R	Data Ready 0: RNG_DATA register is not ready, and the random data is not available 1: RNG_ DATA register is ready, and the random data is available An interrupt will be pending when INTEN=1. After reading RNG_DATA register, this bit will be cleared to zero until a new valid value is figured out.
1	CLKERCSTS	R	RNGCLK Error Current Status 0: PLLCLK48 clock is detected. If CLKERINT bit is set to 1, it means that a clock error is detected and has recovered to normal. 1: PLLCLK48 clock is not detected
2	FSCSTS	R	Faulty Sequence Current Status 0: Sequence error is not detected. If FSINT bit is set to 1, it means that a sequence error is detected and has recovered to normal. 1: More than 64 0/1 or more than 32 alternate 0 and 1 are detected
4:3	Reserved		
5	CLKERINT	RC_W0	RNGCLK Error Interrupt Status 0: PLLCLK48 clock is detected 1: PLLCLK48 clock is not detected This bit is set at the same time with CLKERCSTS bit and can be cleared by writing 0. An interrupt will be pending when INTEN=1.
6	FSINT	RC_W0	Faulty Sequence Interrupt Status 0: Faulty sequence is not detected. 1: More than 64 0/1 or more than 32 alternate 0 and 1 are detected This bit can be set at the same time with FSCSTS bit and be cleared by writing 0. An interrupt will be pending when INTEN=1.
31:7	Reserved		

28.5.3 RNG data register (RNG_DATA)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

This register is read-only and provides 32-bit random number when reading. This register can be read only when DATARDY bit is set to 1; after reading, this register will provide a new random number within 40 RNG_CLK clock cycles.

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	DATA	R	Random Data 32-bit data number.

29 Cyclic redundancy check computing unit (CRC)

29.1 Introduction

The cyclic redundancy check (CRC) computing unit can get 32-bit CRC computing result by calculating the input data through a fixed generator polynomial, and is mainly used to detect or verify the correctness and integrity of the data after transmission or saving.

29.2 Functional Description

29.2.1 Calculation method

Use CRC-32 (Ethernet) polynomial: 0x4C11DB7

$(X^{32}+X^{26}+X^{23}+X^{22}+X^{16}+X^{12}+X^{11}+X^{10}+X^{8}+X^{7}+X^{5}+X^{4}+X^{2}+X+1)$

29.2.2 Calculating Time

The calculation time is four AHB clock cycles.

Every time a new data is written, the result will be a combination of the last calculation result and the new calculation result. (Execute operation for the whole word). Write operation of CPU will be suspended during calculation, so that "Back-to-back" write or continuous "read" -"write" operation can be performed on the register CRC_DATA.

29.3 Register address mapping

Table 136 CRC Register Address Mapping

Register name	Description	Offset Address
CRC_DATA	Data register	0x00
CRC_INDATA	Independent data register	0x04
CRC_CTRL	Control register	0x08

29.4 Register functional description

29.4.1 Data register (CRC_DATA)

Offset address: 0x00

Reset value: 0xFFFF FFFF

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	DATA	R/W	32bit Data) As an input register: Store the new data of CRC calculator when writing. As an output register: Return the results of CRC computing when reading.

29.4.2 Independent data register (CRC_INDATA)

Offset address: 0x04

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	INDATA	R/W	Independent 8bit Data Can be used for temporary storage of 1-byte data. CRC rest generated by RST bit of the register CRC_CTRL has no effect on this register.
31:8	Reserved.		

Note: This register does not take part in calculation and can store any data.

29.4.3 Control register (CRC_CTRL)

Offset address: 0x08

Reset value: 0x0000 0000

Field	Name	R/W	Description
0	RST	W	Reset CRC Calculation Unit Set CRC_DATA register to 0xFFFF FFFF. It can only set this bit, which will be automatically cleared to 0 by hardware.
31:1	Reserved		

30 Chip electronic signature

30.1 Introduction

The chip electronic signature is used to match the firmware or external device.

30.2 Register functional description

30.2.1 96-bit unique chip ID of unique device

Base address: 0x1FFF 7A10

Offset address: 0x00

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	U_ID[31:0]	R	Unique identity flag 31:0 bits

Offset address: 0x04

Read-only, the value has been prepared before leaving the factory

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	U_ID[63:32]	R	Unique identity flag 63:32 bits

Offset address: 0x08

Read-only, the value has been prepared before leaving the factory

Field	Name	R/W	Description
31:0	U_ID[95:64]	R	Unique identity flag 95:64 bits

30.2.2 Main memory area capacity register

This register is used to configure the Flash memory capacity and product ID.

Base address: 0x1FFF 7A20

Offset address: 0x00

Read-only, the value has been prepared before leaving the factory

Field	Name	R/W	Description
7:0	Reserved		
11:8	P_Series	R	产品系列（Product Series） 0000：F411xCxE
15:12	Reserved		
31:16	F_SIZE	R	Flash memory capacity Indicate the capacity of main memory area of the product (in Kb). For example: 0x0400=1024KB

31 Revision

Table 137 Document Revision History

Date	Version	Change History
2023.10.12	V1.0	New
2023.11.16	V1.1	(1) Modify the I/O structure diagram of the GPIO chapter (2) Modify voltage range
2023.12.5	V1.2	(1) Modify the content of the startup configuration chapter
2024.1.24	V1.3	(1) Modify ADC_ CCTRL register offset address description and address mapping (2) Modify the calculation formula of WWDT timeout (3) Modify JTAG ID code
2024.3.29	V1.4	(1) Change the EOF bit domain name in the USL_OTG chapter to EOF_PID (2) Modify I2S clock source description (3) Modify CAN2SB description (4) Modify Device ID
2024.11	V1.5	Modify the "Pin Configuration function Table" of DBGMCU module

Statement

This document is formulated and published by Geehy Semiconductor Co., Ltd. (hereinafter referred to as “Geehy”). The contents in this document are protected by laws and regulations of trademark, copyright and software copyright. Geehy reserves the right to make corrections and modifications to this document at any time. Read this document carefully before using Geehy products. Once you use the Geehy product, it means that you (hereinafter referred to as the “users”) have known and accepted all the contents of this document. Users shall use the Geehy product in accordance with relevant laws and regulations and the requirements of this document.

1. Ownership

This document can only be used in connection with the corresponding chip products or software products provided by Geehy. Without the prior permission of Geehy, no unit or individual may copy, transcribe, modify, edit or disseminate all or part of the contents of this document for any reason or in any form.

The “极海” or “Geehy” words or graphics with “®” or “TM” in this document are trademarks of Geehy. Other product or service names displayed on Geehy products are the property of their respective owners.

2. No Intellectual Property License

Geehy owns all rights, ownership and intellectual property rights involved in this document.

Geehy shall not be deemed to grant the license or right of any intellectual property to users explicitly or implicitly due to the sale or distribution of Geehy products or this document.

If any third party’s products, services or intellectual property are involved in this document, it shall not be deemed that Geehy authorizes users to use the aforesaid third party’s products, services or intellectual property. Any information regarding the application of the product, Geehy hereby disclaims any and all warranties and liabilities of any kind, including without limitation warranties of non-infringement of intellectual property rights of any third party, unless otherwise agreed in sales order or sales contract.

3. Version Update

Users can obtain the latest document of the corresponding models when ordering Geehy products.

If the contents in this document are inconsistent with Geehy products, the agreement in the sales order or the sales contract shall prevail.

4. Information Reliability

The relevant data in this document are obtained from batch test by Geehy Laboratory or cooperative third-party testing organization. However, clerical errors in correction or errors caused by differences in testing environment may occur inevitably. Therefore, users should understand that Geehy does not bear any responsibility for such errors that may occur in this document. The relevant data in this document are only used to guide users as performance parameter reference and do not constitute Geehy's guarantee for any product performance.

Users shall select appropriate Geehy products according to their own needs, and effectively verify and test the applicability of Geehy products to confirm that Geehy products meet their own needs, corresponding standards, safety or other reliability requirements. If losses are caused to users due to user's failure to fully verify and test Geehy products, Geehy will not bear any responsibility.

5. Legality

USERS SHALL ABIDE BY ALL APPLICABLE LOCAL LAWS AND REGULATIONS WHEN USING THIS DOCUMENT AND THE MATCHING GEEHY PRODUCTS. USERS SHALL UNDERSTAND THAT THE PRODUCTS MAY BE RESTRICTED BY THE EXPORT, RE-EXPORT OR OTHER LAWS OF THE COUNTRIES OF THE PRODUCTS SUPPLIERS, GEEHY, GEEHY DISTRIBUTORS AND USERS. USERS (ON BEHALF OR ITSELF, SUBSIDIARIES AND AFFILIATED ENTERPRISES) SHALL AGREE AND PROMISE TO ABIDE BY ALL APPLICABLE LAWS AND REGULATIONS ON

THE EXPORT AND RE-EXPORT OF GEEHY PRODUCTS AND/OR TECHNOLOGIES AND DIRECT PRODUCTS.

6. Disclaimer of Warranty

THIS DOCUMENT IS PROVIDED BY GEEHY "AS IS" AND THERE IS NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW.

GEEHY'S PRODUCTS ARE NOT DESIGNED, AUTHORIZED, OR WARRANTED FOR USE AS CRITICAL COMPONENTS IN MILITARY, LIFE-SUPPORT, POLLUTION CONTROL, OR HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS, NOR WHERE FAILURE COULD RESULT IN INJURY, DEATH, PROPERTY OR ENVIRONMENTAL DAMAGE.

IF THE PRODUCT IS NOT LABELED AS "AUTOMOTIVE GRADE," IT SHOULD NOT BE CONSIDERED SUITABLE FOR AUTOMOTIVE APPLICATIONS. GEEHY ASSUMES NO LIABILITY FOR THE USE BEYOND ITS SPECIFICATIONS OR GUIDELINES.

THE USER SHOULD ENSURE THAT THE APPLICATION OF THE PRODUCTS COMPLIES WITH ALL RELEVANT STANDARDS, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO SAFETY, INFORMATION SECURITY, AND ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS. THE USER ASSUMES FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE SELECTION AND USE OF GEEHY PRODUCTS. GEEHY WILL BEAR NO RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY DISPUTES ARISING FROM THE SUBSEQUENT DESIGN OR USE BY USERS.

7. Limitation of Liability

IN NO EVENT, UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL GEEHY OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO PROVIDES THE DOCUMENT AND PRODUCTS "AS IS", BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, DIRECT, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE DOCUMENT AND PRODUCTS (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO

LOSSES OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY USERS OR THIRD PARTIES). THIS COVERS POTENTIAL DAMAGES TO PERSONAL SAFETY, PROPERTY, OR THE ENVIRONMENT, FOR WHICH GEEHY WILL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE.

8. Scope of Application

The information in this document replaces the information provided in all previous versions of the document.